

NEW COMPLETE
FRENCH GRAMMAR
BY
FRASER SCOTT & COLEMAN

THE UNIVERSITY PRESS OF CANADA LTD., TORONTO, 1925.

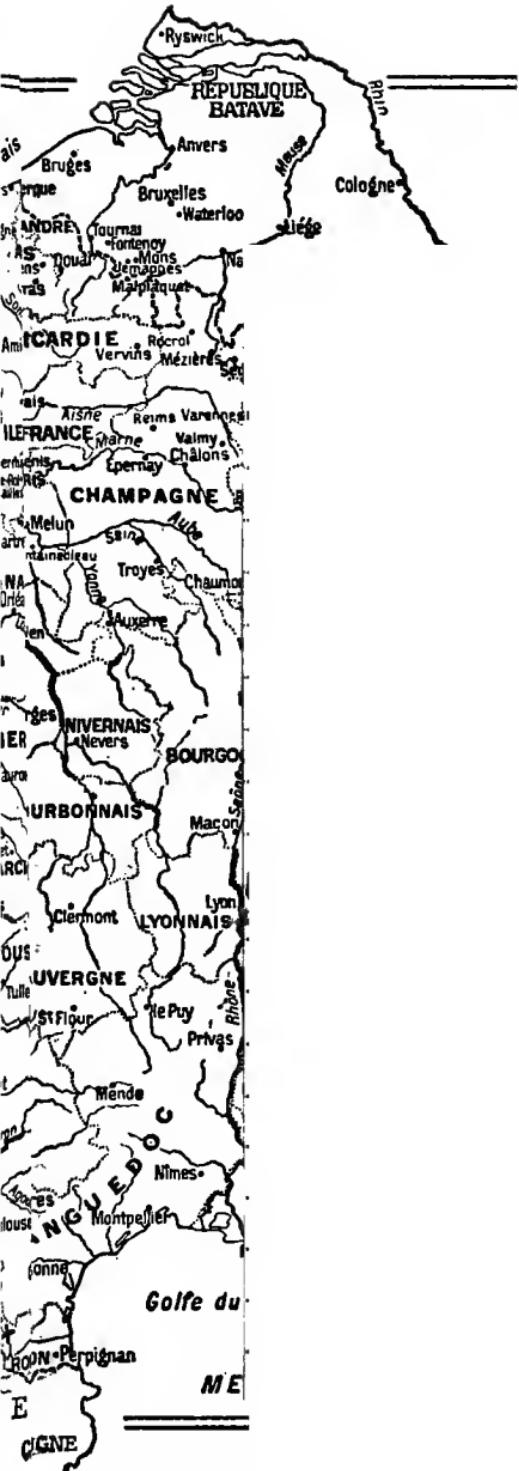
LA FRANCE SOUS L'ANCIEN RÉGIME

Kilomètres
0 50 100 150 200

Océan

ATLANTIQUE





CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 1924 076 024 615



LA RÉPUBLIQUE FRANÇAISE

FRASER AND SQUAIR GRAMMAR SERIES

NEW COMPLETE FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

W. H. FRASER J. SQUAIR

AUTHORS OF A SERIES OF FRENCH GRAMMARS

AND

A. COLEMAN

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO LONDON
ATLANTA DALLAS SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1921,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

3 J 5

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE first American edition of this Grammar was published March 26, 1901. It was received with favor, and since that date numerous reimpressions have been made to meet the demands of the public.

The present revision has been undertaken for the purpose of introducing such changes as time and experience have suggested as likely to be useful, without however disturbing the original character of the book, or changing the paragraph numbers. The use of the phonetic symbols adopted by the Association Phonétique Internationale has been retained throughout the book, wherever needed to aid in the teaching of pronunciation. The pronunciation of all French words in the French-English portion of the Vocabulary is given by phonetic transcription based upon the *Dictionnaire Phonétique* of Michaelis and Passy.

The most considerable changes have been made in the Exercises I-XXXIX of Part I, which have been rewritten by Professor A. Coleman of the Romance Department of the University of Chicago, who, with great unselfishness and in a spirit of admiration for the Grammar, has coöperated with the authors and publishers in their effort to make the book more useful to teachers and students. The grammatical part of each lesson remains substantially as it was in the original edition. In the Exercises an attempt has been made, in accordance with advanced methods of teaching, to provide an abundant and varied apparatus for oral practice and for training in accuracy of pronunciation, in writing from dictation, and in composition; also a section of useful Classroom Expressions has been introduced for the convenience of both teachers and students. In fact, it is everywhere emphasized throughout the book that *learning to speak the language is of prime importance*. The Vocabulary of Part I has been revised; words which are not of

common use have been excluded, and liberal provision has been made for drill on the uses and meanings of the words given.

Attention is called to the following important new features of Part I:

1. In the Lesson vocabularies and in the text of the Exercises great emphasis is laid on *Verb Forms*, particularly on the learning of the forms and the use of a number of common irregular verbs.

2. The difficult topic of *Tense Usage* is especially dealt with, particularly the functions of the present, the imperfect, and the past indefinite forms in past narration.

3. A great variety of drill work and abundant opportunity for *Oral Practice*, based on continuous reading passages, have been provided.

4. Much stress is laid on the acquisition of a *Working Vocabulary*: (a) by abundant repetition and review of the vocabulary in the Exercises; (b) by pointing out differences in usage between words nearly allied in meaning; (c) by the introduction of many common idioms; (d) by formal Review Exercises.

Amongst the new features to which special attention is directed are also the photographic reproductions of important buildings, parks, paintings, sculpture, etc., as well as the Map of France, the appearance of which here is due to the courtesy of the *Literary Digest*.

The first thirty-nine lessons of Part I contain enough grammatical material for four semesters with younger pupils beginning in the Secondary School and for two semesters with beginning classes of High School seniors or of College freshmen. As a rule the A sections are composed of passages for reading, which can also be used for dictation and oral practice, and the B sections of various types of grammar drill. These are followed by composition and translation exercises, as well as by special exercises in pronunciation and dictation.

In regard to the Exercises in Pronunciation in which phonetic transcription is employed, teachers must use their discretion. They may be omitted by those who regard them as unnecessary.

There is little doubt that it is sound pedagogy to spend enough time on the essentials of French grammar contained in these Les-

sons of Part I to go through them, or most of them, twice with great care; for it is only by such repetition, with abundant illustrative exercises, that beginners can acquire that *trained sense for the correct form of expression* and the proper grammatical construction which is essential to a real knowledge of a foreign tongue.

In Part I, Exercises XL-LI have been retained. They have been found useful as furnishing easy reading material in French as well as drill in elementary grammar, particularly in the regular and irregular verb forms. They may, like Exercises I-XXXIX, also be used in teaching by the direct method.

Part II contains a comprehensive statement of the grammatical phenomena of the French language adapted for later study and general reference. The Exercises Ia-LXXVa in this Part have been retained with such changes and additions as seemed necessary or likely to be useful. The Exercises are of two kinds. Exercises Ia-La consist of detached English sentences for translation into French, based directly upon definite sections of the Grammar referred to in the headings and providing a thorough drill on all important points of grammar. Exercises LIa-LXXVa are pieces of continuous English prose of an easy character, to be translated into French, and are fully provided with references to the sections of the Grammar where the particular grammatical points are dealt with. The *French Reader* has been dropped from the present edition. A complete Index has been provided at the end of the book.

By virtue of a decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction, dated February 26, 1901, certain deviations from commonly accepted rules of grammar were permitted as optional at all official examinations. In the Appendix, on the last page, will be found a reference list explaining the bearing of these deviations upon the various sections of the grammar affected thereby. As a matter of fact, it does not appear that careful users of the language, outside examination halls in France, have availed themselves to any extent of these permissions, and hence for English-speaking students they may be regarded as practically non-existent.

It will readily be seen that the aim has been to furnish students with a manual on French grammar so comprehensive in its theoretical treatment and so varied and abundant in the exercises

offered, that it will be useful to all, whether in the elementary or advanced stages of the study of modern or classical French.

Special acknowledgements for suggestions regarding various parts of the book are due to Professor J. Home Cameron of the University of Toronto and to Professor G. D. Morris of Indiana University. The manuscript of the new Exercises to Part I was read by Messrs. Antony Constans and James Kessler of the University of Chicago, by Miss Edna C. Dunlap of Parker High School, Chicago, and by Professor E. C. Hills of Indiana University. To Professor Hills are due particularly thanks for excellent suggestions in regard to the order of the material. The authors are indebted also to Professor H. C. Lancaster of Johns Hopkins University and to Professor D. H. Carnahan of the University of Illinois for reading the proofs of Part I; to the Publishers for their liberal policy which made available all this invaluable assistance; and to Dr. Alexander Green of the Editorial Office, whose zealous efforts have contributed toward rendering the volume more accurate in contents and more attractive in appearance.

October, 1920

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Phonetic Introduction	1
Table of Spelling and Phonetic Symbols	13
Useful Classroom Expressions	14

PART I

LESSON

I. Definite Article. Gender. Case. Agreements	17
II. Indefinite Article	20
III. Possessives. Negation. Interrogation	23
IV. Pronoun Objects	26
V. Plural Forms. Possessive Adjective (<i>continued</i>)	28
VI. Present Indicative of <i>avoir</i> . Partitive Noun and Pro-noun. <i>En</i>	32
VII. <i>Avoir</i> (<i>continued</i>). Interrogation (<i>continued</i>)	36
VIII. Present Indicative of <i>être</i>	39
IX. Regular Conjugations: Present Indicative of <i>donner</i> . Interrogation (<i>continued</i>). Demonstrative adjective	43
X. Plural Forms. Contractions. Use of <i>il y a</i>	47
Review of Vocabulary and Pronunciation No. 1	50
XI. Indefinite Pronoun <i>on</i> . Interrogation (<i>continued</i>). Present Indicative of <i>faire</i>	52
XII. Feminine of Adjectives. Position of Adjectives. Interrogative Adjectives. <i>Y</i>	56
XIII. Present Indicative of <i>donner</i> , <i>finir</i> , <i>vendre</i> . General Noun. <i>Tout</i>	60
XIV. Partitives (<i>continued</i>). <i>Avoir</i> + Undeterminate Noun (<i>besoin</i> , etc.).	64
XV. Past Participles. Past Indefinite. Word-order. Idiomatic Present Indicative	68
XVI. Comparatives. Superlatives. Comparison of Adverbs. Present Indicative of <i>aller</i>	72
XVII. Agreement of Past Participle. Relatives	76

LESSON		PAGE
XVIII.	Tenses with être	80
	Vocabulary Review No. 2	84
XIX.	Pronoun Objects. Orthographical Peculiarities: commencer, manger, and mener	86
XX.	Personal Pronoun Objects. Pronominal Adverbs: y, en. Reflexive Verb. Possessive Force of Article	90
XXI.	Imperfect Indicative. Use of the Imperfect. Im- perfect of faire	94
XXII.	Future Indicative. Use of the Future	100
XXIII.	Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. Ce + être	104
XXIV.	Impersonal Verbs	107
	Vocabulary Review No. 3	111
XXV.	Infinitive. Present Participle. Present Indicative of pouvoir. Il faut	113
XXVI.	Present Subjunctive. Use of the Subjunctive. Tense Sequence. Present Indicative of vouloir	119
XXVII.	Imperative (<i>continued</i>). Position of Objects (<i>continued</i>)	124
XXVIII.	Conditional Mood. Conditional Sentences	128
XXIX.	Use of Article. Present Indicative of savoir	133
	Vocabulary Review No. 4	137
XXX.	Possessive Pronouns. Present Indicative of dire	139
XXXI.	Demonstrative Pronouns	144
XXXII.	Relative Pronouns. Present Indicative of connaître	148
XXXIII.	Interrogative Pronouns	153
XXXIV.	Indefinite Pronouns	158
	Vocabulary Review No. 5	164
XXXV.	Numerals: Cardinal, Ordinal. Fractions	166
XXXVI.	Dates, Titles. Seasons, Months	171
XXXVII.	Time of Day	176
XXXVIII.	Past Definite. Use of the Past Definite	180
XXXIX.	Imperfect Subjunctive. Tense Sequence. Meanings of devoir and vouloir	184
	Vocabulary Review No. 6	188

ANECDOTES

XL.	La Théière du Matelot	190
XLI.	L'Arabe et les Perles	191
XLII.	Le Paysan et les Épis de Blé	192
XLIII.	Le Trésor du Laboureur	194

LESSON	PAGE
XLIV. Louis XIV et Jean Bart	195
XLV. La Fourmi et le Brin d'Herbe	197
XLVI. Le Bon Samaritain	198
XLVII. M. Laffitte et l'Épingle	200
XLVIII. Le Sifflet de Benjamin Franklin	201
XLIX. Henri IV et le Paysan	203
L. Thomas et les Cerises	205
LI. Frédéric le Grand et son Page	207

PART II

The Verb	209
The Noun	300
The Article	313
The Adjective	327
The Pronoun	342
The Adverb	382
The Numeral	394
The Preposition	401
The Conjunction	411
The Interjection	414
Abbreviations	416
Exercises on Part II (<i>Detached Sentences</i>), Ia-La	417
Exercises on Part II (<i>Continuous Prose</i>), LIa-LXXVa	467

VOCABULARIES:

French-English	481
English-French	515

INDEX	551
-----------------	-----

APPENDIX: <i>Tolérances</i>	564
---------------------------------------	-----

A FRENCH GRAMMAR

PHONETIC INTRODUCTION

1. General Distinctions. The pronunciation will be explained, as far as possible, by comparison with English sounds, but it must never be forgotten that the sounds of two languages rarely correspond. Important general distinctions between English and French are the following:

1. English has strong stress (§ 7) and comparatively weak action of the organs in articulation.

2. French has weak stress, while the action of the organs in articulation is very energetic.

3. Hence, French sounds, both vowels and consonants, are almost all ‘narrow,’ *i.e.*, uttered with tenseness of the organs concerned in their articulation. (To understand ‘narrow’ and ‘wide,’ compare the narrow sound of *i* in ‘machine’ with its wide sound in ‘sit.’)

4. Tongue and lip positions for French vowels are more definite, and more promptly taken, than in English. Lip-rounding (as in ‘who,’ ‘no,’ ‘law’) and lip-retraction (as in ‘let,’ ‘hat’) are much more definite and energetic in forming French vowels.

5. The tongue, both for vowels and consonants, is, in general, either further advanced or further retracted than in forming English sounds requiring tongue action.

6. English long vowels (like *a* in ‘lady’) shade off into other vowels (especially in the South of England), while all French vowels are free from this *off-glide*, and are uniform throughout their utterance.

7. The nasal vowels of French are foreign to standard English. They are formed by allowing the soft palate to hang freely, as in ordinary breathing, thus causing the air to escape through both nose and mouth at once. If, for example, the *a* of ‘father’ be uttered with the

soft palate hanging freely, the resulting sound will be approximately that of the nasal [ã] in *tante* [tã:t]. The position of the soft palate in forming this sound may be readily observed with a mirror. It must be carefully noted that there is absolutely no sound of *n*, *m*, or *ng*, in French nasal vowels, and hence that great care must be taken neither to raise the tongue nor close the lips until the sound is complete.

2. Sounds. The French language has thirty-seven sounds, exclusive of minor distinctions. French spelling, like that of English, is irregular and inconsistent. Hence, to avoid confusion in indicating the pronunciation, we shall employ a phonetic alphabet (that of the *Association Phonétique Internationale*), in which each sound is represented by its own symbol, and each symbol has but one sound.

3. Table of Symbols. In the following table, the examples are in ordinary orthography, the heavy type indicates the sounds which correspond to the symbols, and the phonetic transcription is given within brackets:

SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES	SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES
i	ni, vive [ni, vi:v]	b	beau, robe [bo, rob̄]
y	pu, muse [py, my:z]	d	dame, fade [dam, fad̄]
e	été [ete]	f	fort, neuf [fɔ:r, nœf̄]
ø	creux, creuse [krø, krø:z]	g	gant, dogue [gã, döḡ]
ə	le [lə]	h	aha! [a(h)a]
ɛ	près, père [prɛ, pe:r̄]	k	car, roc [kar, rɔk̄]
ɛ̄	fin, prince [fɛ̄, prɛ:s̄]	l	long, seul [lɔ̄, scel̄]
œ	neuf, neuve [nœf̄, nœ:v̄]	m	mot, dame [mo, dam̄]
œ̄	un, humble [œ̄, œ̄:bl̄]	n	ni, âne [ni, a:n̄]
a	patte, part [pat, pa:r̄]	j	agneau, digne [apo, dip̄]
ɑ	pas, passe [pa, pa:s̄]	p	pas, tape [pa, tap̄]
ã	tant, tante [tã, tã:t̄]	r	drap, par [dra, par̄]
ɔ	note, tort [nɔ:t̄, tɔ:r̄]	s	si, pense [si, pã:s̄]
ɔ̄	rond, ronde [rɔ̄, rɔ̄:d̄]	ʃ	chou, lâche [ʃu, la:ʃ̄]
o	sot, chose [so, ſɔ:z̄]	t	tas, patte [ta, pat̄]
u	tout, tour [tu, tu:r̄]	v	vin, cave [vɛ̄, ka:v̄]
j	viande [vjã:d̄]	z	zone, rose [zo:n̄, ro:z̄]
ɥ	lui [lɥi]	ʒ	je, rouge [ʒə, ru:z̄]
w	oui [wi]	:	sign of length

4. The Alphabet. The letters of the alphabet, with their French names, are as follows:

a	a [a]	j	ji [ʒi]	s	esse [ɛs]
b	bé [be]	k	ka [ka]	t	té [te]
c	cé [se]	l	elle [ɛl]	u	u [y]
d	dé [de]	m	emme [ɛm]	v	vé [ve]
e	é [e]	n	enne [ɛn]	w	double vé [dubləve]
f	effe [ɛf]	o	o [ɔ]	x	iks [iks]
g	gé [ʒe]	p	pé [pe]	y	i grec [i grɛk]
h	ache [aʃ]	q	ku [ky]	z	zède [zed]
i	i [i]	r	erre [ɛr]		

NOTE. — These names are often all treated as masculines (*un a*, *un h*, etc.), but some treat *f*, *h*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, as feminines (*une h*, *une r*, etc.).

5. Other Orthographic Signs. In addition to the letters of the alphabet, the following signs are used:

1. The acute accent ' Fr. accent aigu [aksūtegy], *e.g.*, l'été, l'Écosse. NOTE. — The word 'accent' does not denote stress; see § 7.
2. The grave accent ` Fr. accent grave [aksūgra:v], *e.g.*, voilà, père, où.
3. The circumflex accent ^ Fr. accent circonflexe [aksāsirkɔfleks], *e.g.*, âne, tête, île, hôte, flûte.
4. The cedilla „ Fr. cédille [sedi:j], used under c to give it the sound of [s], before a, o, u (§ 17, 13), *e.g.*, façade, leçon, commençait.
5. The diæresis " Fr. tréma [trema], shows that the vowel bearing it is divided in pronunciation from the preceding vowel, *e.g.*, Noël, naïf.
6. The apostrophe ' Fr. apostrophe [apostrof], shows omission of final vowel before initial vowel sound, *e.g.*, l'amie (= la amie), l'ami (= le ami), l'homme (= le homme), s'il (= si il), § 19.
7. The hyphen - Fr. trait d'union [tredynjɔ], used as in English.

6. Syllabication.

1. A single consonant sound between vowel sounds, including the four nasalized vowels, always belongs to the following syllable.

Ex.: Ma-rie, in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té, bon-té, con-sci-en-cieu-s(e)-ment.

2. When the second of two consonant sounds is l or r, both usually belong to the following syllable, except lr, rl and a few more.

Ex.: ta-bleau, é-cri-vain, ap-pli-quer.

3. Other combinations of consonants representing two or more sounds are divided.

Ex.: *par-ler, per-dre, es-ca-lier, sep-tem-bre.*

N.B. — Great care should be taken to avoid the consonantal ending of syllables, so frequent in English. Compare French *ci-té, ta-bleau*, with English ‘*cit-y, tab-leau*.’

Parallel rules hold in script and print where division occurs.

7. Stress.

‘Stress’ is the force with which a syllable is uttered as compared with other syllables in the same group. In French, the syllables are uttered with almost equal force, a very slight stress falling on the last syllable of a word of two or more syllables, or, on the last but one, if the last vowel of the word is [ə].

Ex.: *Che-val, par-ler, par-lai, per-dre, cré-di-bi-li-té* (compare the strong stress of English ‘*cred-i-bil-it-y*’).

NOTE. — In connected discourse the rule above stated varies considerably, but a full treatment of the subject would exceed the limits of an elementary work. The safest practice for the beginner is to pronounce all syllables with almost equal force. All vowels except [ə], see § 19, whether stressed or unstressed, are carefully sounded and not slurred over as in English.

8. Vowel Quantity. The most important general rules are:

1. Final vowel sounds (including nasals) are usually short, *e.g.*, *fini* [fini], *vie* [vi], *loue* [lu], *parlé* [parlé], *rideau* [rido], *mais* [mɛ], *donner* [done], *enfant* [əfɑ̃], *parlerons* [parl(ə)rɔ̃].

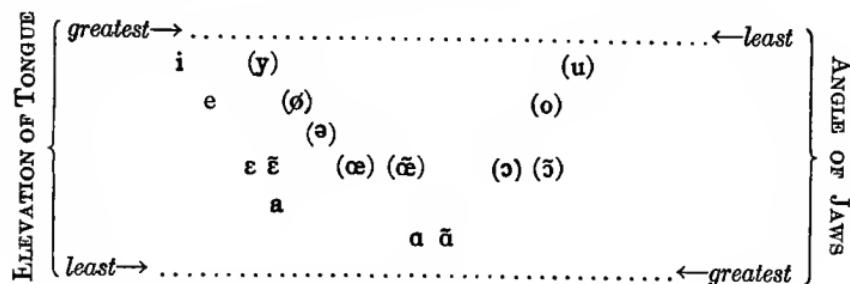
2. Stressed vowels are long before the sounds [v], [z], [ʒ], [j], [r final], *e.g.*, *rive* [ri:v], *ruse* [ry:z], *rouge* [ru:ʒ], *feuille* [fœ:j], *faire* [fɛ:r].

3. Of stressed vowels standing before other consonant sounds, nasals are long, *e.g.*, *prince* [prɛ:s]; [ø], [ø], long, *e.g.*, *faute* [fo:t], *meule* [mø:l]; [ɑ], long (almost always), *e.g.*, *passe* [pa:s]; [ɛ], long or short, *e.g.*, *reine* [ʁɛ:n], *renne* [ʁɛn]; other vowels regularly short, *e.g.*, *cap* [kap], *poche* [poʃ], *coupe* [kup], *pipe* [pip], *seul* [sœl], *lune* [lyn].

NOTE. — It is possible to distinguish also between ‘long’ and ‘half long’ vowels, but it has been thought best to omit, in an elementary work, the rules relating to this distinction, and to indicate only ‘long’ vowels in the transcriptions.

VOWELS

9. Tongue Position. The relative position of the tongue for the various vowels may be seen from the following diagram. Rounded vowels are enclosed in parentheses:



N.B. — In the following descriptions of sounds, the word 'like' means, of course, only 'resembling,' or 'approximately like' (§ 1). The examples given after the word 'also' show the less common orthographical equivalents.

10. i, y

1. i — Like i in 'machine'; the corners of the mouth are slightly drawn back (§ 1, 4); avoid the sound of i in 'sit'; avoid 'off-glide' (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: ni [ni], vive [vi:v]; also, île [i:l], lyre [li:r].

2. y — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [i] above; very tense lip-rounding (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3). The sound may be best acquired either by prolonging [i], and at the same time effecting the rounding, or by holding the lips rounded and taking the tongue position of [i].

Ex.: pu [py], muse [my:z]; also fût [fy], il eut [il y], nous étumes [nuzym], j'ai eu [ze y].

11. e, ø, ə

1. e — Like the first part of the sound of a in 'day,' but with the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: été [ete]; also, parler [parle], donnai [døne].

2. *ø* — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [e], with rounding of the lips for o (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, as explained for [y] above, the lip-rounding with the [e] position.

Ex.: creux [krø], creuse [krø:z]; also, bœufs [bø], yeux [jø].

3. *ə* — Like English e in ‘the man,’ or a in ‘Louisa,’ but slightly rounded; best acquired by relaxing the tension of the organs required for the production of the [ø] sound.

Ex.: le [lə], premier [prømje]; also, monsieur [møsjø], faisant [føzɑ̃].

12. ε, ē, œ, œ̄

1. *ε* — Like the sound of e in ‘let,’ with the mouth more definitely open and the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: près [prε], père [pε:r]; also, fête [fε:t], terre [tε:r], secret [søkrε], parlais [parle], paix [pε], reine [rε:n].

NOTE. — The e of a stressed syllable followed by a syllable containing e mute has almost always this sound (orthographically denoted by è, ê, or e + double consonant), *e.g.*, je mène [men], tête [tε:t], chère [ʃε:r], j'appelle [apεl], ancienne [āsjen]. This principle accounts for the apparent irregularities of certain verbs and adjectives.

2. *ē* — The [ε] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: fin [fē], prince [prē:s]; also, faim [fē], sainte [sē:t], Reims [rē:s], plein [plē], simple [sē:pl], symbole [sēbøl], syntaxe [sētaks], viendrai [vjēdre], soin [swē].

3. *œ* — Has no counterpart in English. It has practically the tongue position of [ε], combined with definite rounding of the lips for [ɔ]; narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, with the [ε] position, the rounding described.

Ex.: neuf [nœf], neuve [nœ:v]; also, cœur [kœ:r], œil [œ:j], œil [ɔrgœ:j].

4. *œ̄* — The [œ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: un [œ̄], humble [œ̄:bl]; also, à jeun [aʒœ̄], parfum [parfœ̄].

13. a, ɑ, ã

1. *a* — This sound is similar to but requires wider mouth opening than a of ‘pat,’ and lowering of the tongue, though with the point still

touching the lower teeth; narrow (§ 1, 3). It is generally short, resembling English 'madam.'

Ex.: patte [pat], part [pa:r]; also, là [la], femme [fam], moi [mwa], boîte [bwa:t]; and, by exception, parlâmes [parlam], parlâtes [parlat], parlât [parla].

2. a — Like a in 'father'; the mouth well open, the tongue lying flat, and so far retracted that it no longer touches the lower teeth; lips absolutely neutral, *i.e.*, neither rounded nor retracted; avoid especially rounding, as of a in 'fall.'

Ex.: pas [pa], passe [pa:s]; also, pâte [pa:t], roi [rwa], poêle [pwa:l].

3. ã — The [ã] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7). (Written an, am, en, em.)

Ex.: tant [tã], tante [tã:t]; also, lampe [lã:p], enfant [ã:fã], entre [ã:tr], membre [mã:br].

14.

ɔ, ɔ̃, o

1. ɔ — Like the vowel in 'law,' but with definite bell-like rounding (§ 1, 4), avoid 'off-glide' to u (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: note [nɔt], tort [tɔ:r]; also Paul [pol], album [albɔm].

2. ɔ̃ — The [ɔ̃] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more close.

Ex.: rond [rɔ̃], ronde [rɔ̃:d]; also tomber [tɔ̃be], comte [kɔ̃:t].

3. o — Like o in 'omen,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to u (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: sot [so], chose [ʃo:z], fosse [fo:s]; also, côté [kote], côte [ko:t], faute [fo:t], beauté [bo:te].

15.

u

1. u — Like oo in 'pool' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to w (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: tout [tu], tour [tu:r]; also, goût [gu], août [u].

CONSONANTS

16.

j, q, w

When the sounds [i], [y], [u], § 10 and § 15, come before a vowel of stronger stress, they are pronounced with the tongue slightly closer to the palate, and hence assume a consonantal value, indicated by [j], [q], [w], respectively. They are sometimes called semi-vowels.

1. j — Like very brief and narrow y in 'yes.'

Ex.: viande [vjɑ:d]; also, yeux [jø], aïeul [ajœl], fille [fi:j], travailler [travaje], travail [travaj], the last three being examples of *l mouillée*.

2. q — Has no counterpart in English, but is similar to a w pronounced with the tongue pressed close to the lower teeth: may also be acquired by at first substituting [y] for it, and afterward increasing the speed of the utterance and the elevation of the tongue until it can be pronounced in the same syllable with the vowel which always follows.

Ex.: lui [lqi], huit [qit]; also, nuage [nɥa:y], écuelle [ekɥɛl].

3. w — Like very brief and narrow w in 'we,' 'rest.' It is best, however, to proceed from the sound of [u] in the manner described for [q] above.

Ex.: oui [wi]; also, poids [pwa], tramway [tramwe].

17. The remaining consonantal sounds can be sufficiently described by noting the differences between their mode of formation and that of the nearest English sounds (see § 1).

1. b — Like b in 'barb.'

Ex.: beau [bo], robe [rob], abbé [abe].

2. d — Like d in 'did,' but with the tongue so far advanced that its point, or upper surface, forms a closure with the inner surface of the upper teeth and gums: or the point of the tongue may be thrust against the lower teeth, the upper surface forming a closure with the upper teeth and gums. It must be remembered that in forming English d (also l, n, r, s, t, z) the tongue touches at some little distance above the teeth (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: dame [dam], fade [fad], addition [adisjɔ].

3. f — Like f in 'fat.'

Ex.: fort [fɔ:r], neuf [noef], difficile [difisil].

4. **g** — Like **g** in ‘go.’

Ex.: gant [gā], dogue [dōg], guerre [ge:r]; also, second [səgɔ̃].

5. **h** — In orthography the letter **h** is known as ‘**h** mute’ (Fr. **h** muet or **h** muette), or ‘**h** aspirate’ (Fr. **h** aspiré or **h** aspirée), according as it does, or does not, cause elision (§ 19). The learner may regard it, in either case, as absolutely silent.

Ex.: **h** mute in l’homme [lɔm], l’histoire [listwa:r], l’héroïne [lərɔ̃in]; **h** aspirate in le héros [lə ero], le hêtre [lə ε:t̪r], la haine [la ε:n], la hâte [la a:t̪], je hais [ʒə ε].

In hiatus, however, a sound resembling, but much weaker than **h** in ‘hat,’ is permissible, and is actually used by many Frenchmen.

Ex.: aha! [aha], le héros [lə hero], fléau [fleho].

6. **k** — Like **k** in ‘take’; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: car [kar], roc [rɔk], accorder [akɔrde]; also, chrétien [kretjɛ], cinq [sɛ:k], bouquet [buķɛ], acquérir [akeri:r], kilo [kilo], maxime [maksim].

7. **l** — Like **l** in ‘law,’ but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: long [lɔ̃], seul [sœl], aller [ale], mille [mil], village [vila:z]. For soft **l** see § 16, 1.

8. **m** — Like **m** in ‘man,’ ‘dumb.’

Ex.: mot [mo], dame [dam], homme [ɔm].

9. **n** — Like **n** in ‘not,’ ‘man,’ but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: ni [ni], âne [a:n], donner [done].

10. **ɲ** — Somewhat like **ny** in ‘ban-yan,’ except that [ɲ] is a single, not a double, sound, and is formed by pressing the middle of the tongue against the hard palate, the tip being usually thrust against the lower teeth.

Ex.: agneau [apo], digne [diŋ].

11. **p** — Like **p** in ‘pan,’ ‘top’; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: pas [pa], tape [tap], appliquer [aplike].

12. *r* — Has no English counterpart. It is formed by trilling the tip of the tongue against the upper gums, or even against the upper teeth. This *r* is called in French *r linguale*. The tongue must, of course, be well advanced towards the teeth, and not retracted and turned upward, as in our *r* sound (§ 1, 5). The sound may be advantageously practised at first in combination with *d*, *e.g.*, 'dry,' 'drip,' 'drop,' 'drum' (as in Scotch or Irish dialect), and afterwards in combinations in which it is less easily pronounced.

Ex.: drap [dra], par [par], torrent [tɔrā], rond [rɔ̃].

NOTE. — Another *r* sound (called in French *r uvulaire*), used especially in Paris and in the large cities and towns, is formed by withdrawing and elevating the root of the tongue so as to cause a trilling of the uvula. This *r* is usually more difficult for English-speaking people to acquire.

13. *s* — Like *s* in 'sea,' 'cease,' but with the tongue advanced as for [*d*] above.

Ex.: si [si], pense [pā:s], casser [ka:se]; also *scène* [sɛ:n], place [plas], façade [fasad], leçon [lesɔ̃], reçu [rəsy], commençait [kɔmāsɛ], commençons [kɔmāsɔ̃], reçumes [rəsym], portion [pɔrsjɔ̃], soixante [swasā:t].

14. *ʃ* — Like *sh* in 'shoe,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: chou [ʃu], lâche [la:ʃ], also, schisme [ʃism].

15. *t* — Like *t* in 'tall,' but with the tongue advanced as for [*d*] above; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: tas [ta], patte [pat].

16. *v* — Like *v* in 'vine,' 'cave.'

Ex.: vin [vɛ], cave [ka:v]; also, wagon [vagɔ̃], neuf heures [nœvœ:r].

17. *z* — Like *z* in 'zone,' or *s* in 'rose,' but with the tongue advanced as for [*d*] above.

Ex.: zone [zo:n], rose [ro:z]; also, deux heures [døzœ:r], exact [ɛgɔ̃kt].

18. *ʒ* — Like *z* in 'azure' or *s* in 'pleasure,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: je [ʒø], rouge [ru:ʒ]; also mangeant [māʒā], Jean [ʒā].

19. A *doubled consonant* has usually the same sound as a single consonant, e.g., aller [ale], ville [vil], tranquille [träkil], donner [döne], terre [te:r]. Exceptions are, however:

(1) The liquid l, Fr. *l* mouillée [muje], i.e., double l after i [j] (§ 16, 1), e.g., fille [fi:j], billet [bijɛ], bataille [batɔ:j], veiller [veje], feuille [fœ:j].

N.B.—Note also that liquid l may be spelled -ail, etc., e.g., travail [trava:j], soleil [søle:j], etc.

(2) The verb forms acquerrai [akærre], courrai [kurre], mourrai [murre].

(3) The doubled consonant in such words as illégal, intellectuel, intelligence, littérature, connexe, immoral, etc., is pronounced double, i.e., given double its usual length, by many people. But foreigners beginning French may neglect this manner, regarded by many as an affectation.

18. Liaison. Final consonants are usually silent, but in oral speech, within a group of words closely connected logically, a final consonant (whether usually sounded or not) is regularly sounded, and forms a syllable with the initial vowel sound of the next word. This is called in French *liaison* [ljɛzɔ] = *linking, joining*.

Ex.: C'est un petit homme [sɛ-tɛ-pɛ-ti-tom].

1. A few of the consonants change their sound in *liaison*, thus, final s or x = z, d = t, g = k, f = v, e.g., nos amis [no-za-mi], quand on parle [kā-tɔ-parl]; the t of et is silent; for examples see *Exercise in Phonetic Transcription*.

2. The n of a nasal is carried on, and the nasal vowel loses its nasality in part, or even wholly, e.g., un bon ami [œ̃-bɔ̃-na-mi, or œ̃-bo-na-mi].

19. Elision. The letters a, e, i, are entirely silent in certain cases:

1. The a and e are silent and replaced by apostrophe in le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ne, que (and some of its compounds) before initial vowel or h mute (not, however, je, ce, le, la after a verb); so also i of si before il(s).

Ex.: L'arbre (= le arbre), l'encre (= la encre), j'ai (= je ai), qu'a-t-il (= que a-t-il), jusqu'à (= jusque à), s'il (= si il).

2. In prose the letter e is silent at the end of all words (except when e is itself the only vowel in the word), silent in the verbal endings -es, -ent, silent within words after a vowel sound, and in the combination ge or je [ʒ]. In verbs which have stem g [ʒ], g becomes ge [ʒ] before a or o of an ending, to preserve the [ʒ] sound.

Ex.: rue [ry], donnée [dønə], rare [ra:r], place [plas], ai-je [ɛ:ʒ], table [tabl], sabre [sa:br], prendre [prā:dr], tu parles [ty parl], ils parlent [il parl], gaieté [gete], mangeons [mãʒɔ̃], Jean [ʒã].

NOTE.—In ordinary discourse, this sound is usually slighted or wholly omitted in most cases in which consonantal combinations produced by its weakening or elision can be readily pronounced, but beginners will do well to sound it fully, except in the cases above specified. The treatment of the [ə] in verse is beyond the scope of this work.

20. Punctuation.

The same punctuation marks are used in French as in English, but not with identical values.

1. Their French names are:

· point	- trait d'union	[] crochets
, virgule	— tiret, or tiret de	{ accolade
; point et virgule	séparation	
: deux points	... points suspensifs	* astérisque
? point d'interrogation	“ ” guillemets	† croix de renvoi
! point d'exclamation	() parenthèse	

2. They are not used exactly as in English, especially the colon and the dash, the latter being very useful in showing a change of speaker in dialogue.

Ex.: « Qui est là? dis-je. — Personne. — Quoi! personne! — Personne, dit-il. »

21. Capitals.

Some of the differences between French and English in the use of capital letters (Fr. *lettres majuscules, capitales*) may be seen from the following examples:

Un livre canadien écrit en français par un Canadien. Toronto,
le lundi 3 janvier. Je lui ai dit ce que je pensais.

TABLE OF SPELLING AND EQUIVALENT PHONETIC SYMBOLS

SPELLING	SOUND	SPELLING	SOUND
a	a; a	i	i; j
â	ɑ	ɪ	i
à	a	iem; ien	jɛ
ai	ɛ; e	-il; -ill	j (usually); il
aim; ain	ɛ̄	im, in	ɛ̄
am; an	ã	k	k
ay	ɛj	l; ll	l
au	o; ɔ	m	m (or nasalized)
b	b	mm	m
c	k; s	n	n (or nasalized)
ç	s	nn	n
d	d	o	ɔ; o
e	ə; ε; e	ô	o
(desc-)	e	oê	wa
(dess-)	e	œu	œ, ø
(eff-)	e	oi; oy	wa; wø (after r)
(ess-)	e	oim; oin	wɛ̄
é	e	om, on	ɔ̄
è	ɛ	ou	u
ê	ɛ	p; pp	p
eau	o	qu	k
ei	ɛ	r; rr	r
eim; ein	ɛ̄	s	s; z
em; en	ã	ss	s
éen	ɛɛ̄	t; tt	t
eu	œ; ø	u	y; ɥ
ey	ɛj	um, un	œ̄
f; ff	f	v	v
g	g; ʒ	w	w
ge	ʒ	x	ks; gz; z; s
gn	n	y	j; i
gu	g; gy; gɥ	yen	jɛ̄
h	(silent)	z	z

USEFUL CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

[kɛskɛskɛsla?] What is that?

C'est un (une) ... [setē(yn)] It is a ...

Que veut dire (Que signifie) cela?

[kəvødir (kəsipifi) səla?] What does that mean?

Comment dit-on en français (en anglais)? [kɔmādīt̪ ãfrās̪e (ãnãgle?)? How do you say in French (in English)?

On dit — en français [ɔ̄di — ãfrās̪e] You (People) say — in French.

Commencez ... Prononcez ...

Écrivez ... [kɔmāse ... prɔnɔse ... ekrive ...] Begin ... Pronounce ... Write ...

Comment écrivez-vous? Comment écrit-on? [kɔmātekrivev̪? kɔmātekrit̪?] How do you (people) write (spell) ...?

Comment? Plaît-il? Vous dites? [kɔmā? pl̪et̪il? vudit̪?] What did you say?

Merci bien. Merci mille fois.

[mersibj̪e. mersi milfwa.] Thank you very much (a thousand times).

Il n'y a pas de quoi. [ilnjapadkwa]

De rien. [dərj̪e] You are welcome. Don't mention it.

Voulez-vous bien ...? [vulevubj̪e ...?] Will you ...?

Quelle leçon avons-nous aujourd'hui? [kelləs̪ ãvɔ̄nu ɔju:rðq̪i?] What lesson have we to-day?

À quelle page (leçon) en sommes-nous? [akelpa:z (ləs̪) ã somnu?] What page (lesson) are we on?

Au haut, au milieu, au bas de la page. [o o, omiljø, obudlapa:z] At the top, middle, bottom of the page.

Commencez. Continuez. Cela suffit. [kɔmāse. kɔ̄tinqe. səla syfi] Begin. Continue. That will do.

Le suivant. La suivante. [ləs̪qvā. la sqivā:t] Next (boy, girl).

Lisez la phrase suivante, s'il vous plaît. [lize lafru:zsqvā:t, silvupl̪e] Read the next sentence, please.

Prononcez distinctement toutes les syllabes. [prɔnɔse distekta:mā tutlesilab] Pronounce all the syllables distinctly.

Comprenez-vous? [kɔprənevu?] Do you understand?

Je comprends. Je ne comprends pas. [ʒekɔpr̪ā. ʒənkɔpr̪āpa] I understand, I do not understand.

Comprenez-vous ce que j'ai dit? ce que vous avez lu? [kɔpr̪ənevu skəzedi? skəvuzavely?] Do you understand what I said? what you read?

Traduisez le passage que vous avez lu. [traduize ləpəsa:ʒ kəvuzavəly] Translate the passage that you have read.

C'est très bien fait, Robert.
Félicitations! [sət̪rəbjēfə, rōb̪e:r. felisitosjɔ:] Well done, Robert. Congratulations!

Expliquez. Répondez en français, en anglais. [eksplike. repōde əfrāsə, ənāgle] Explain. Answer in French, in English.

Faites attention. Je vous prie de faire attention. [fet̪zat̪asjɔ. zəvupridəfə:rat̪asjɔ] Pay attention. I beg you to pay attention.

Allez au tableau. Écrivez la phrase au tableau. [alezotablo. ekrivelafra:zotablo] Go to the board. Write the sentence on the board.

Quelle est la faute? Quelles sont les fautes? [kel ə la fo:t̪? kelsɔle fo:t̪?] What is (are) the mistake(s)?

Quel changement faut-il faire? [kelʃā:ʒmā fɔtilfə:r?] What change must be made?

Maintenant c'est bien (c'est ça). Ce n'est pas bien de dire . . . ; il ne faut pas dire; on ne devrait pas dire; on ne dit pas . . . [mətnā səbjē, sə sa. sənepa-bjēdəri; il nə fo pa di:r; ɔndəvrə pa di:r; ɔndipə] It (that) is right now, (that's it). It (that) is not right to say . . .

Vous avez raison. Vous avez tort. [vuzaverezɔ. vuzavetɔ:r] You are right (wrong).

Commencez à la page —. Étudiez jusqu'à la page —. [kəmūse alapa:ʒ —. etydje ɔyskala pa:ʒ —] Begin on page —. Study as far as page —.

Est-ce clair? C'est clair, n'est-ce pas? [eskle:r? sekle:r nespɑ?] Is that clear? That is clear, isn't it?

Savez-vous? Je ne sais pas. [savevu? ʒənsepə] Do you know? I do not know.

N'oubliez pas. Avez-vous oublié? [nublijepə.avevuzublje?] Don't forget. Have you forgotten?

Dites-moi. Répétez. [ditmwə. repete] Tell me. Repeat.

Qu'avez-vous? Je n'ai rien. [kavevu? ʒənerjɛ] What is the matter with you? Nothing. **Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau?** [kjatilde-nuvø?] What is the news?

J'en suis bien content (fâché). [ʒās̪t̪ibjēk̪t̪o (faʃe)] I am very glad (sorry) about it.

Je pense (crois) que oui (non). [ʒə pā:s (krwa) kəwi(nɔ)] I think so (not).

C'est dommage. Tant mieux. Tant pis. [sədəma:ʒ. tāmjø. tāpi] It's a pity. So much the better. So much the worse.

Ce n'est pas la peine de . . . [sənepalapendə] It isn't worth while to . . .

Je ne suis pas d'accord avec vous [ʒəns̪t̪ipodakɔ:r avekvu] I do not agree with you.

Ni moi (lui, elle) non plus. [nimwa (lqi, el) nɔply] I (he, she) either.

Y a-t-il quelque chose à corriger? [jatilkelkəʃo:z akɔrize?] Is there anything to correct?

Il faut ajouter. [ilfotaʒute] You must add.

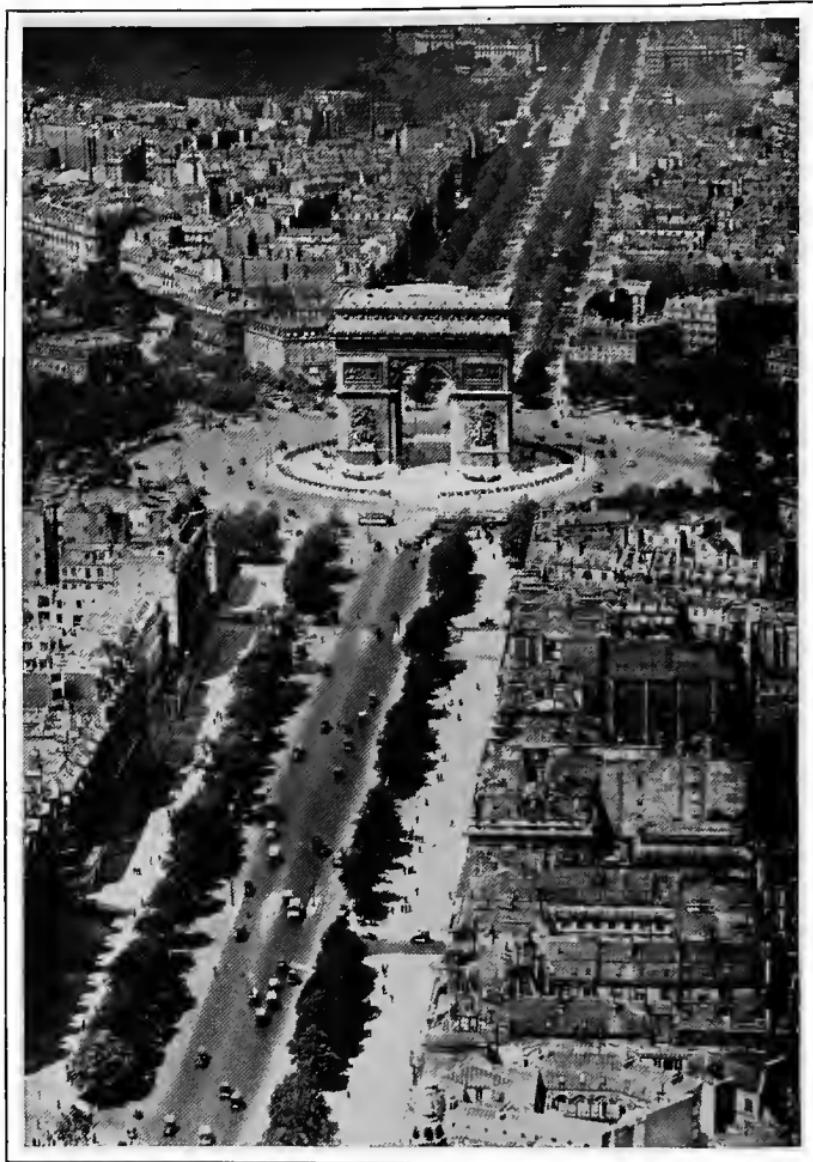
Asseyez-vous. [asejevu] Sit down.

Écoutez bien. Je vais vous indiquer la leçon pour demain. [ekutebjɛ. zəvevuzɛdike lalsɔ pu:rдемә] Listen attentively.

I am going to assign the lesson for to-morrow.

Préparez pour demain. [prepare pu:rдемә] Prepare for to-morrow.

Bonjour, mesdames (messieurs).
C'est fini. À demain. [bɔ:ʒu:r medam (mesjø). se fini. admә]
Good-by, Ladies, (Gentlemen).
Class is over. I shall see you to-morrow.



Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

L'ARC DE TRIOMPHE, PARIS
à Vol d'Oiseau

PART I

LESSON I

22. Definite Article. 1. The definite article has the following forms in the singular:

The = $\begin{cases} \text{le } [\text{lə}], \text{ before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{la } [\text{lɑ}], \text{ before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{l' } [\text{l']}, \text{ before any noun beginning with a vowel or h mute.} \end{cases}$

Le père, la mère. The father, the mother.
L'enfant (m. or f.), l'homme. The child, the man.

2. The definite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers:

L'oncle et la tante. The uncle and (the) aunt.

23. Gender. 1. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine:

Le papier (m.), la plume (f.). The paper, the pen.

2. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings feminine, as in English.

24. Case. French nouns have no case endings. The direct object (*accusative*) is expressed by verb + noun; the indirect object (*dative*) by the proposition *à* + noun; the possessive (*genitive*) by *de* + noun, and these prepositions must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

La mère aime l'enfant. The mother loves the child.
J'ai la plume de Robert. I have Robert's pen (the pen of Robert).
Je donne l'argent à Marie et à Jean. I give the money to Mary and (to) John.

25. Agreements. French has the following agreements, and they are usually expressed by change of form: (1) Verb and subject, in number and person; (2) adjective and noun, in gender and number; (3) pronoun and antecedent, in gender and number.

EXERCISE I¹

bonjour! [bɔ̃ʒu:r] good day!	j'ai [ʒe] I have
l'argent <i>m.</i> [lɑ̃ʒã] money	j'aime [ʒɛ:m] I love, like
l'enfant <i>m., f.</i> [lãfã] child; boy, girl	Marie aime [mariɛm] Mary likes, loves
l'homme [lõm] man	je donne [ʒədõn] I give
le livre [li:vʁ] book	Jean donne [ʒãdõn] John gives
la mère [me:r] mother	est [ɛ] is
l'oncle [lõ:kł] uncle	fermez! [fẽrmə] close!
le papier [papje] paper	montrez-moi! [mõtremwa] show me!
le père [pe:r] father	ouvrez! [uvre] open!
la plume [plym] pen	voici [vwasi] here is (are)
la porte [pɔ:t] door	voilà [vwala] there is (are)
la table [tabl] table	
la tante [tã:t] aunt;	
Jean [ʒã] John	où? [u] where?
Louise [lwi:z] Louise	à [a] to, at, in
Marie [mari] Mary	de [də] of, from
Robert [rõbe:r] Robert	sur [syr] on
et [e] and	

- A. 1. Bonjour! Bonjour, Robert! 2. Où est le livre?
 3. Le livre est sur la table. 4. Ouvrez le livre, Jean. 5. Fermez le livre, Marie. 6. Ouvrez la porte, Robert. 7. Fermez la porte, Jean. 8. Montrez-moi la porte, Marie. 9. Voilà la porte. 10. Montrez-moi le papier, Marie. 11. Voilà le papier sur la table. 12. Où est la plume de Robert (§ 24, *example 2*)? 13. Voilà la plume de Robert sur la table. 14. Et où est le papier de Marie? 15. Voici le papier de Marie sur la table. 16. L'enfant aime l'oncle Jean. 17. L'homme aime l'enfant. 18. L'oncle Jean aime l'enfant. 19. J'aime l'oncle Jean et tante² Marie. 20. Je donne la plume à l'oncle Robert.

¹ Linking will be indicated by _ in the reading passages of Lessons I-X.

² Note the idiomatic omission of the article before *tante* in 19 and 21.

21. Je donne le papier à tante Marie. 22. L'homme à la porte est le père de Marie. 23. La mère de Jean est la tante de Louise. 24. Le père de Jean donne le papier à Marie. 25. La mère de Marie donne le papier à Robert. 26. Où est l'argent de Louise? 27. J'ai l'argent de Louise. 28. Montrez-moi l'argent de Robert. 29. Voilà l'argent de Robert sur la table. 30. J'ai le livre de Louise. 31. Louise aime le livre. 32. Je donne le livre à Louise. 33. Où est le livre, Marie? 34. Voilà le livre, Louise.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Read aloud the series: [i], [e], [ɛ], [a], [ɑ], [ɔ], [o], [u] (see §§ 9-15). Write in phonetic characters all the words of the vocabulary in which any of these sounds occur.

(2) Read aloud: [ə], [y], [ɔ̃], [ã] (see § 11, 3; § 10, 2; § 14, 2; § 13, 3). Write in phonetic characters all the words of the vocabulary in which these sounds occur.

(3) List the ways in which the following sounds in the vocabulary are spelled in the standard orthography: [i], [e], [ɛ], [a], [ɔ], [u], [ə], [y], [ɔ̃], [ã].

(4) What kind of vowels are [ɔ̃] and [ã]? Does the tongue go to the position for the letter *n* in the pronunciation of the spellings *an*, *en*, *on* (see § 1, 7)? Is this true in the word *donne*?

(5) In *Robert*, *papier*, *Marie*, are the syllables divided as in English? What is the difference (see § 6, 1, 3)? Is this difference important?

(6) What happens to the article when we write *l'homme*, *l'enfant* (see § 19)? Is the article pronounced as a separate word or as a part of the following word? Write in phonetic characters: *l'oncle*, *l'argent*.

(7) In *le papier*, *l'enfant*, *ouvrez*, *fermez*, on what syllable does the stress seem to fall (see § 7 and note)? How does this differ from the English *paper*, *infant*, *open*? In which language is the syllable stress the stronger? Pronounce *difficile* [difi'sil], *président* [prezidā], *important* [ēpōrtā], *appartement* [apartēmā], *Clemenceau* [klemāso], and compare the syllable stress with the corresponding English words.

(8) What two pronunciations does the spelling *ai* have in this vocabulary? Mention the words.

(9) What ways are there of spelling the sound [ā]?

(10) What is the pronunciation of the spelling *oi*? of the spelling *ou*?

LESSON II

26. Indefinite Article. It has the following forms, which must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

A or *an* = { un [œ(n)], before any masculine noun.
 une [yn], before any feminine noun.

Un livre et *une* plume. A book and (a) pen.

Un homme [œnɔm], *une* école. A man, a school.

EXERCISE II

le crayon [krajɔ̃] pencil	il a [ila] he (it) has
la fenêtre [lafnɛ:t̪r] window	elle a [ɛla] she (it) has
madame [madam] Madam	vous avez [vuzave] you have
mademoiselle [madmwazel]	avez-vous? [avevu] have you?
Miss	il écrit [ilekri] he writes
monsieur [məsjø] sir, Mr.	elle écrit [elekri] she writes
le morceau [mɔrsø] piece	vous écrivez [vuzekriven] you write
le mot [mo] word	écrivez-vous [ekriven] are you writing? do you write?
le professeur [prəfesœ:r] teacher, professor (<i>used for both men and women</i>)	écrivez! [ekriven] write!
le tableau noir [tablonwa:r] black- board	non [nɔ̃] no oui [wi] yes;
un [œ(n)] a, an; one	avec [avɛk] with
deux [dø̃] two	derrière [derje:r] behind
trois [trwø̃] three	devant [dəvã] in front of, before
quatre [katr̪] four	
A. 1. Bonjour, mes_enfants [mezðfã] (<i>lit., my children</i>)!	
2. Bonjour, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle)!	3. Où est la porte?
4. Voilà la porte.	5. Voici une fenêtre [ynfəne:t̪r].
6. Voici une table.	7. Voilà un tableau noir.
8. La table est devant le professeur;	elle est devant le professeur.
9. Le tableau	

noir est derrière le professeur; il est derrière le professeur.

10. Le professeur écrit sur le tableau noir. 11. Il écrit un mot, deux mots, trois mots, quatre mots [katrəmo].¹ 12. Marie écrit sur un morceau de papier avec un crayon. 13. Robert écrit avec une plume. 14. Il écrit sur un morceau de papier. 15. Il écrit le mot « derrière ». 16. Marie écrit le mot « devant ». 17. Marie, écrivez le mot « bonjour ». — Oui, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle). 18. Écrivez-vous, Louise? — Non, monsieur. 19. Écrivez-vous sur le tableau noir, Jean? — Non, monsieur. 20. Écrivez-vous avec un crayon? — Oui, monsieur. 21. Sur un morceau de papier? — Oui, monsieur. 22. Avez-vous un crayon, Jean? 23. Oui, monsieur, j'ai un crayon et une plume. 24. Voilà un livre. Il est sur la table, devant le professeur. 25. Marie a un, deux, trois, quatre crayons [krejɔ̃]. 26. Voilà une enfant. 27. Elle a deux, trois, quatre plumes [plym]. 28. Avec la plume elle écrit un, deux, trois, quatre mots.

B. (1) *Write the proper forms of:* le, la, un, une, before tableau noir, professeur, mot, morceau, papier, fenêtre, crayon.

(2) *Make all reasonable combinations of:* avec, devant, derrière, sur, with la plume, le crayon, le tableau noir, l'enfant, l'oncle, la fenêtre, Louise, le professeur.

(3) *Supply proper forms of 'have':* 1. J — un crayon. 2. Vous — un morceau de papier. 3. Elle — deux plumes. 4. Robert — trois tantes.

Supply suitable forms of 'write': 5. — le mot, Marie. 6. — vous, Jean? 7. Robert, — le mot avec une plume. 8. Il — trois mots avec le crayon. 9. Elle — quatre mots avec la plume.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. I have the book. 2. Have you a book, John? 3. Yes, sir, here is the book on the table. 4. Open the book, John, and show me the word "pen." 5. There is Robert's pencil. 6. Louise writes on the blackboard. 7. The blackboard is behind the teacher. 8. He writes on a piece of paper. 9. Marie, are you writing a word? 10. Yes, sir, she writes one, two, three, four words.

¹ See § 19, note.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce: **un livre, une table, une porte, une fenêtre, un crayon, une plume, un père, une mère, un oncle, une tante, un enfant, un homme.**

(2) Substitute for **un, une**, before each noun above, the proper form of **le, la**. How many cases of elision (see § 19) are there?

(3) Why do we write phonetically and pronounce: œpe:r, but œnɔ:kl, œnəm; œli:vr, but œnāfā; ləli:vresy:rlatabl, but ʒã etœnāfā? What do we call this carrying over of a sound to the next word (see § 18)?

(4) Note in A the spelling **mots, crayons, plumes**, pronounced [mo], [krejɔ], [plym]. Does the addition of the **-s** in spelling change the pronunciation?

(5) Pronounce the last syllable of: **fermez, ouvrez, écrivez, avez.** What is the ending of the second person of French verbs in spelling? Make the phonetic symbol for this spelling.

(6) Pronounce [dø]. How must the lips and the tip of the tongue be placed to make [ø] (see § 11, 2)? It is very important to hold the tongue and lips in the right position for this sound. Pronounce **bleu** [blø], **feu** [fø], **peu** [pø]. How does position for this sound differ from that for words like **le** [lø], **de** [dø] (see § 11, 3), **professeur** [profesœ:r] (see § 12, 3)? If we add these vowels to those found in Lesson I (Exercise in Pronunciation), how many does it give us thus far?

(7) What new way of spelling the sound [o] in this vocabulary?

(8) Write and indicate by a hyphen the syllable division. **tableau** (see § 6, 2), **devant**, **professeur**, **morceau**, **madame**, **Marie**, **avec**, **fenêtre**.

(9) Write in phonetic characters and read aloud: **un livre, une table, un père, une mère, un homme, un enfant, une enfant, un oncle, une tante, une fenêtre.** How many cases of linking are there in these examples?

(10) Observe by the phonetic transcription of **monsieur** that the spelling indicates the pronunciation only in part. From the pronunciation how would you expect the word to be spelled?

LESSON III

27. Some Possessives. Observe the following, and remember that possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun to which they refer (for pronunciation, see § 32).

Mon (m.) livre et *ma* (f.) plume. My book and (my) pen.

Ton (m.) livre et *ta* (f.) plume. Thy(your) book and (thy, your) pen.

Son (m.) livre et *sa* (f.) plume. His or her book and pen.

Votre (m.) livre et *votre* (f.) plume. Your book and (your) pen.

28. Negation. With verbs, *not* or *no* = **ne . . . pas**, with the verb placed between them, **ne** becoming **n'** before a vowel (§ 19, 1):

Je n'ai pas, vous n'avez pas. I have not, you have not.

29. Interrogation. In questions, the personal pronoun subject comes after the verb, as in English, and is joined to it by a hyphen, or by **-t-** if the verb ends in a vowel:

Avez-vous? a-t-il? est-elle ici? Have you? has he? is she here?

EXERCISE III

le cahier [kaje] notebook, ex-	il (elle) écrit [il(ə)ekri] he (she)
ercise book	writes, is writing, does
la classe [kla:s] classroom, class	write
la craie [krε] chalk	je suis [ʒəsqi] I am
le frère [fre:r] brother	vous êtes [vuzet] you are
la leçon [lalsɔ] lesson	êtes-vous? [etvu] are you?
la maison [mezɔ] house; à la maison at home, at the house	vous faites [vufet] you do, are
merci [mersi] thanks, thank you	doing
la place [plas] seat, place	faites-vous? [fetvu] are
la sœur [sœ:r] sister	you doing?
que? [kə] what?	aussi [osi] also, too
allez! [ale] go!	bien [bjɛ] well, comforta-
j'écris [zekri] I write, am	ble
writing, do write	comment [komā] how
vous écrivez [vuzekrive] you write,	ici [isi] here
are writing, do write	maintenant [mētnā] now
	très [trɛ] very
	dans [dā] in, into
	ou [u] or

A. (1) 1. Bonjour, mes enfants! 2. Bonjour, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle)! 3. Comment allez-vous (*are you*)? 4. Bien, merci. Et vous? 5. Très bien, merci. 6. Allez à la porte, Jean. 7. Ouvrez la porte! 8. Fermez la porte! 9. Merci. Allez à votre place. 10. Allez à la fenêtre, Louise. 11. Merci. Allez à votre place.

(2) 1. Je ne suis pas à la maison. 2. Je suis dans la classe. 3. Mon professeur est dans la classe aussi. 4. J'écris la leçon dans mon cahier. 5. Mon frère écrit sa leçon dans son cahier. 6. Que faites-vous, Robert? 7. Écrivez-vous dans votre cahier? 8. Oui, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle), je suis à ma place et j'écris dans mon cahier. 9. Jean n'est pas à sa place maintenant. 10. Il n'écrit pas dans son cahier. Où est il? 11. Il a un morceau de craie. 12. Il écrit sur le tableau noir. 13. Que faites-vous, Louise? 14. Je suis à ma place. 15. J'ai une plume, mais je n'écris pas. 16. Avez-vous votre cahier? 17. Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas mon cahier dans la classe. 18. Il n'est pas ici. Il est à la maison.

B. (1) *Use four possessive adjectives with each of the following nouns: crayon, plume, enfant, frère, sœur, oncle.*

(2) *In what two ways may each of the following possessives be translated: sa mère, son enfant, sa tante, son frère?*

(3) *What is, therefore, the difference between the agreement of the possessive adjective in French and in English as indicated by combinations like: 1. Marie a son crayon. 2. Robert a sa plume. 3. Louise a son papier. 4. Jean est-il devant sa table?*

(4) *Change to negative (taking as model for the negative questions: n'a-t-elle pas son crayon? 'hasn't she her pencil?'): 1. Henri [āri] écrit. 2. Louise a trois frères. 3. Vous avez quatre crayons. 4. Avez-vous deux frères? 5. Louise est la sœur de Robert. 6. Est-elle la tante de l'enfant? 7. Est-il votre professeur? 8. A-t-il le morceau de papier? 9. Écrit-il à sa mère? 10. Allez à la fenêtre. 11. Écrivez-vous sur un morceau de papier? 12. Aime-t-elle son frère? 13. Il aime sa sœur.*

(5) Prepare complete sentences, some affirmative and some negative, in answer to the following questions: 1. Où êtes-vous? 2. Que faites-vous? 3. Jean est-il dans la classe maintenant? 4. A-t-il sa plume? 5. Où est-il maintenant? 6. A-t-il deux plumes? 7. Écrit-il dans son cahier ou sur le tableau noir? 8. Écrit-il avec son crayon ou avec un morceau de craie?

C. Translate into French: 1. How are you, (my) boys? 2. Are you in your seat, Robert? 3. What are you doing? 4. Mary, are you writing your lesson? 5. Is John writing with a piece of chalk? 6. Am I at home or in the classroom? 7. Where is my brother now? 8. Is his sister here?

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce *suis* [su:i], being careful to project the lips tensely and hold the tongue tip well forward as for [y] and [i] (see § 16, 2). It is well to pronounce in succession [y-i], [y-i], and then try to combine them in one sound. This sound is not like that of *oui* [wi] (see § 16, 3), in which the lips and tongue are less tensely advanced. Practise with *nuit* [nɥi], *huit* [ɥit], *lui* [lɥi]. Contrast the sound of *Louis* [lwi] with that of *lui* [lɥi].

(2) Pronounce: *sœur* [sœ:r] (see § 12, 3), *classe* [klas:] (see § 13, 2), *maintenant* [mɛtnã] (see § 12, 2). Note the difference in the sound value of the letter a in *la*, *voilà*, *papier*, *mademoiselle*, *argent*, *allez*, *place*, and in *classe*, *pas*.

(3) What new way of spelling the sound [ɔ] is there in this vocabulary? What sound has the spelling -ain in *maintenant*? -ien in *bien*? -ier final in *papier*, *cahier*? What new way of spelling the sound [e] have we in this vocabulary? We have had now three ways of spelling this sound: find an example of each.

(4) All cases of linking are indicated in the sentences in part A of the Exercise given above. Which consonant sounds seem to be oftenest linked thus far?

(5) Divide and pronounce by syllables: *écris* (see § 6, 2), *écrivez*, *maison*, *maintenant*, *aussi*, *ouvrez*, *fermez*, *cahier*, *papier*, *morceau*, *mademoiselle*.

LESSON IV

30. Some Pronoun Objects. *Him or it = le (m.), and her or it = la (f.) both becoming l' before a vowel or h mute (§ 19, 1).* They come next before the verb, or before *voici* and *voilà*:

Où est la plume? Je l'ai.

Where is the pen? I have it.

Où est le livre? Le voici.

Where is the book? Here it is.

Où est Marie? La voilà.

Where is Mary? There she is.

NOTE. — *Voici* and *Voilà* are derived from *vois* = *see + ici* = *here* and *vois* = *see + là* = *there* (literally, *see here, see there*), and, owing to their verbal force, govern words directly like transitive verbs.

EXERCISE IV

un(une) après-midi [ənəprɛmid̪i]	il fait [fɛ] he does, is doing
afternoon	j'ouvre [u:vr] I am opening, do open
une école [ynekɔl] school	je reste [rest] I stay, am staying
une leçon [ləsɔ̃] de français, a French lesson	il reste [rest] he stays, is staying
la lettre [lɛtr] letter	reste-t-il? [restatil] does he stay? is he staying?
un livre de français, a French book, a book for learning French	je retourne [zərturn] I go back, return
la main [mɛ̃] hand	il retourne [rəturn] he goes back, returns
le matin [matɛ̃] morning	je vais [ve] I go, am going
le monsieur [mɛsjø] gentleman	à la main, in my (his, her, your, our, their) hand
le soir [swa:r] evening	le matin (le soir, l'après-midi), in the morning (evening, afternoon)
anglais [ãgle] English	pardon! [pardɔ̃] I beg your pardon! Excuse me!
français [frãsɛ̃] French	
j'étudie [etydi] I am studying, do study	
il étudie [etydi] he is studying, studies	
je ferme [fɛrm] I am closing	

- A. 1. Le matin je vais à l'école. 2. L'après-midi je retourne à la maison. 3. Le soir je reste à la maison et j'étudie ma leçon de français. 4. — Que faites-vous le matin, Louise? 5. — Je vais à l'école. 6. — Et Henri, que fait-il l'après-

midi? 7. — Il retourne à la maison. 8. — Reste-t-il à la maison le soir? 9. — Oui, il reste à la maison le soir et il étudie sa leçon d'anglais. 10. — Montrez-moi votre leçon de français, Jeanne [ʒan]. 11. — La voici; j'ai la leçon quatre. 12. — Et vous, Robert, vous n'avez pas votre livre de français. 13. — Pardon, mademoiselle, je l'ai à la main; le voici. 14. Mais je n'ai pas mon livre d'anglais; il est à la maison. 15. — Vous êtes à votre place, Louise. 16. — Pardon, mademoiselle, je ne suis pas à ma place; Marie est à ma place. 17. Je suis à la place de Jeanne et j'écris dans son cahier. 18. — Et Henri? 19. — Le voilà à sa place derrière Louise. 20. Il écrit sa leçon dans mon cahier avec sa plume.

B. *Substitute for each direct object the proper pronoun:* 1. Je ne ferme pas la porte. 2. J'ouvre la porte. 3. Je ferme la porte. 4. J'écris la lettre maintenant. 5. Je ne donne pas le morceau de craie à Louise. 6. J'ai la plume à la main. 7. Voilà la maison. 8. Voici le cahier. 9. Voici ma place. 10. Voilà mademoiselle Louise. 11. Voici madame Dupont [dypɔ̃]. 12. Voilà monsieur Dupont. 13. Voilà un monsieur à la porte. 14. Vous écrivez la leçon de français.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. I have your pen; I have it, I haven't it. 2. You have my notebook; you have it, you haven't it. 3. The teacher has a piece of chalk; he has it, he hasn't it. 4. I am studying my French lesson; I study it, I don't study it. 5. He is giving John the book; he gives it to John. 6. I beg your pardon, sir; he doesn't give it to John. 7. I open his door; I open it. 8. He is in his house. 9. He has his pen in his (la) hand. 10. He is not studying his French lesson. 11. He is studying it.

D. *Translate into French:* 1. Do you go (*Allez-vous*) to (the) school in the afternoon? 2. No, I go to school in the morning. I return home in the afternoon. 3. What do you do in the evening? 4. I stay at home and study my French lesson. I am studying (the) Lesson IV now. 5. You haven't your notebook. 6. I beg your pardon, sir; there it is behind my French book.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce slowly by syllables, with attention to syllable stress: matin, après-midi, étudie, français, anglais, montrez, pardon, monsieur, retourne.

(2) What is the difference in pronunciation between et and est? Is there any difference between them in regard to linking (see § 18, 1)?

(3) In what words so far has the spelling combination ai been pronounced [e]? What sound value does this combination seem to stand for oftenest?

LESSON V

31. Plural Forms. 1. The plural of a noun or an adjective is regularly formed by adding -s to the singular:

Le grand roi, la grande reine. The great king, the great queen.

Les grands rois, les grandes reines. The great kings, the great queens.

2. The plural of the definite article le, la, l' is les:

Les [le] livres, les [lez] enfants. The books, the children.

3. The plural of the personal pronoun le, la, l' is also les:

Je les _ai. I have them (books, pens, etc.).

32. The Possessive Adjective. 1. The following are its forms in full (for agreement and repetition, see § 27):

MASCULINE	FEMININE	PLURAL
mon [mɔ̃]	ma [ma]	mes [me], my
ton [tɔ̃]	ta [ta]	tes [te], thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	sa [sa]	ses [se], his, her, its
notre [nɔ̃tr]	notre [nɔ̃tr]	nos [no], our
votre [vɔ̃tr]	votre [vɔ̃tr]	vos [vo], your
leur [lœ:r]	leur [lœ:r]	leurs [lœ:r], their

2. The forms mon, ton, son, are used instead of ma, ta, sa before feminines beginning with a vowel or h mute:

Mon [mɔ̃n] amie (f.). My friend.

Son [sɔ̃n] histoire (f.). His story.

Son [sɔ̃n] autre plume (f.). His other pen.

3. Since **son** (*sa, ses*) means *his, her, or its*, it can be known only from the context which is meant.

EXERCISE V

un ami [œnami] friend	j'ouvre [u:vr] I am opening
une amie [ynami] friend	elle ouvre [u:vr] she opens
le doigt [dwa] finger	nous ouvrons [nuzuvrɔ̃] we open
cinq [sɛk] five	vous ouvrez [vuzuvre] you open
six [sis] six	ouvrez! [uvre] open! (<i>imperative</i>)
sept [sɛt] seven	je reste [rest] I stay, am staying
huit [ɥit] eight	il reste [rest] he stays
neuf [noef] nine	nous restons [restɔ̃] we are staying
dix [dis] ten	vous restez [reste] you stay
j'écris [zékri] I am writing	reste! [reste] stay! (<i>imperative</i>)
il écrit [ekri] he is writing	je retourne [zərturñ] I go back
nous écrivons [nuzékrivɔ̃] we are writing	elle retourne [rəturn] she goes back
vous écrivez [vuzékrive] you are writing	nous retournons [nurturnɔ̃] we return
écrivez! [ekriven] write! (<i>imperative</i>)	vous retournez [vurturne] you return
j'étudie [etydi] I am studying	retournez! [rəturne] go back!
il étudie [etydi] he is studying	return! (<i>imperative</i>)
nous étudions [nuzydyjɔ̃] we are studying	je suis [su] I am
vous étudiez [vuzetydje] you are studying	il est [ile] he (it) is
étudiez! [etydje] study! (<i>imperative</i>)	elle est [elɛ], she (it) is
je ferme [fɛrm] I am closing, do close	nous sommes [sɔm] we are
elle ferme [fɛrm] she is closing	vous êtes [vuzet] you are
nous fermons [fɛrmɔ̃] we close	je vais [ve] I am going
vous fermez [ferme] you close	il va [va] he is going
fermez! [ferme] close! shut! (<i>imperative</i>)	aujourd'hui [ɔzurdɥi] to-day
combien de? [kɔbjɛdə] how many? how much? (followed by a noun naming the object of inquiry)	

A. (1) 1. Ouvrez vos livres, mes_amis. 2. Que faites-vous? 3. — Nous_ouvrons nos livres. 4. — Fermez vos livres. 5. — Nous les fermons. 6. — Nous_avons_aujourd'hui la leçon cinq [sēk]. 7. Ouvrez vos livres à la leçon cinq. 8. — Nous les_ouvrons. 9. — Écrivez dans vos cahiers: je ferme, il ferme, nous fermions, vous fermez. 10. J'ouvre, il ouvre, nous_ouvrons, vous_ouvrez. 11. Je reste, il reste, nous restons, vous restez. 12. Je retourne, il retourne, nous retournons, vous retournez. 13. J'étudie, il étudie, nous_étudions, vous_étudiez. 14. J'ai, il a, nous_avons, vous avez. 15. Je suis, il est, le mot est sur le tableau, il est sur le tableau; où est votre plume? Elle est_à la maison, nous sommes, vous êtes. 16. J'écris, il écrit, nous_écrivons, vous_écrivez. 17. Je vais, il va, nous_allons, vous_allez.

(2) 1. — Maintenant fermez vos cahiers. 2. — Nous les fermions. 3. — Merci, mes_amis. 4. Allez_à la porte, Louise et Marie. 5. Que faites-vous? 6. — Nous_allons_à la porte. 7. — Retournez_à votre place. 8. — Je vais_à ma place. 9. — Où êtes-vous maintenant, mes_amies? 10. — Nous sommes_à nos places. 11. — Combien de mains avez-vous, mes_enfants? 12. — Nous_avons deux mains. 13. — Montrez-moi vos mains. 14. — Les voici. 15. Et nous_avons dix [di] doigts.

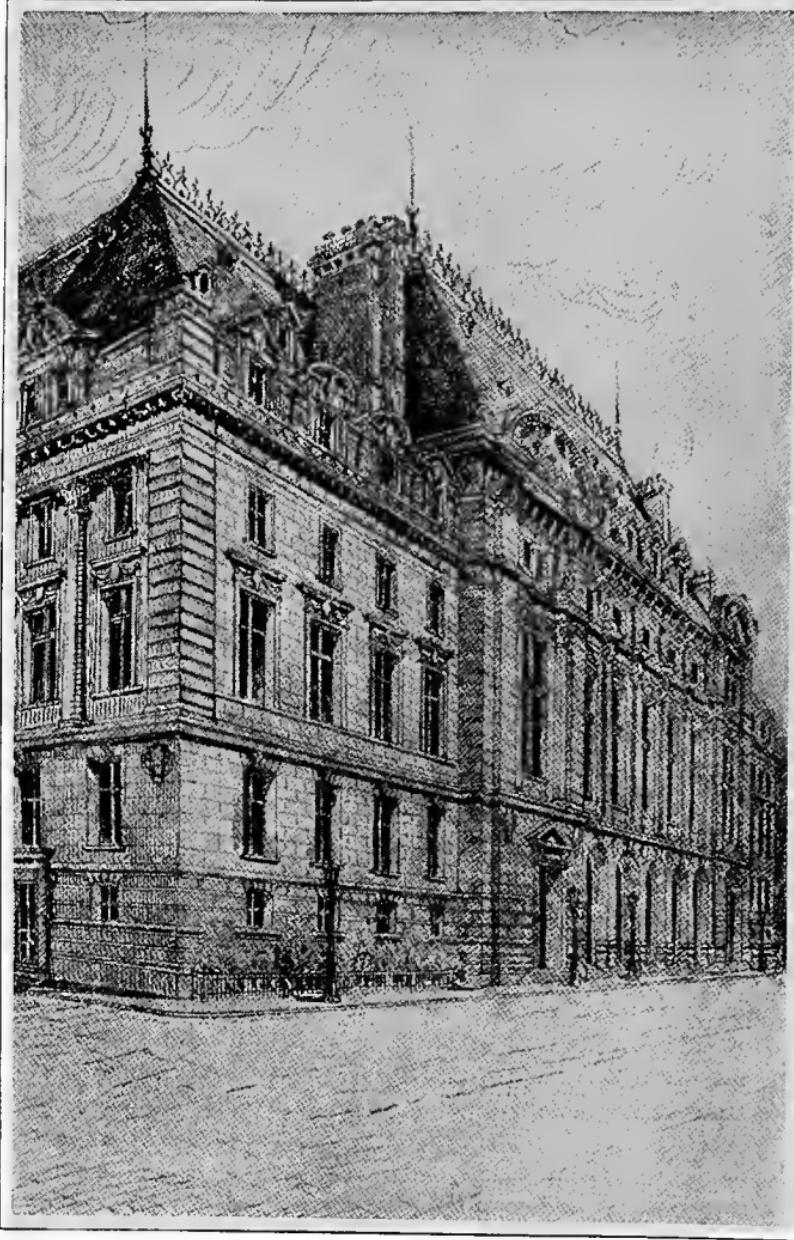
B. (1) *What seems to be the ending of the verb that corresponds to nous? Find one exception in A. What ending seems to correspond to vous? Find two exceptions in A.*

(2) *Substitute the possessive adjective for the article-and-de phrase:* 1. La plume de Jean; les plumes de Jean. 2. Le père de Jeanne; les frères de Jeanne. 3. La mère de Marie et de Pierre; les frères de Marie et de Pierre. 4. La maison de Robert; les maisons de Robert. 5. L'école de Louise; l'école de Louise et de Marie. 6. La leçon de l'enfant; les leçons de l'enfant. 7. La leçon de deux enfants; les leçons de trois enfants. 8. Devant la maison de Marie. Derrière la maison de Pierre.

(3) *Make the nouns plural:* notre ami, votre doigt, sa main, leur cahier, votre enfant, son professeur, sa place, notre sœur.

CHEZ LES BOUQUINISTES, PARIS





LA SORBONNE, PARIS

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Our friend, our friends; your finger, your fingers; his (her) hand, his (her) hands; their hands; her (his) letters, their letters. 2. What are you doing, Robert? 3. I am writing a letter to my mother. John is writing a letter to his sister. 4. Louise is writing to her father. She is writing her letter; he is writing his letter. 5. Write your letters, (my) children! 6. Do you open their letters? No, sir, we do not open their letters. 7. Henry's father does not open his letters; he does not open them. 8. Do you open your children's letters? No, sir, we do not open them. 9. I am at my place in the classroom. I have my books, my notebook, and my pen. 10. My friend John is at his seat, too. He has his pen in his hand. He is writing his French lesson in his notebook. 11. There he is in front of the window. He goes to school in the morning, but he does not stay at school. He returns home in the afternoon. 12. Show me your French book, John. Here it is on my table. — Excuse me, sir; I haven't it at (the) school. It is not here; it is at home.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce after the teacher: œpeɪr, œfreɪr, œnəm, œnɔ:kl, sɔ:pɛɪr, sɔ:freɪr, sɔ:nɔ:kl; samezɔ, sɔ:nekɔl; lœpɛɪr, lameɪr, lezafā; latā:t, ləfreɪr, lezɔ:kl; ləmatē, ləswair, lezapremidi; zetydi melsɔ, zælezetydi; zekri, zælezekri; ʒədənvɔli:v arəbeɪr, zæledən arəbeɪr.

Observe the elision of the [ə] in the pronunciation of *mes leçons* [melsɔ]. The sound [ə], which is called often "mute e," disappears when the preceding syllable ends in a vowel sound followed by a single consonant sound, as in: *les leçons* [lelsɔ], *ses leçons* [selsɔ].

(2) In how many different ways are *un*, *son*, *les* pronounced? What decides this? What name do we give to the joining of words as in *mezafā*, *zælezekri*, *sɔ:nɔ:kl*? Do we say œnekɔl or ynekɔl?

(3) Write phonetically and pronounce: *le doigt*, *les doigts*; *l'ami*, *les amis*; *mon amie*, *mes amies*. Do these nouns change in sound in the plural, or only in spelling?

(4) Pronounce: œdwa, œnœm; dœmē, dœzāfā; trwaplas, trwazekol; katrœkrejō, katrami; sœlsō, sœkami; sifreir, si:zāfā; semezō, setōm; ūkaje, ūtarepmidi; nœmœrso, nœvami; diswa:r, di:zāfā.

In how many ways is each numeral pronounced? On what does the change depend?

(5) Write phonetically and read aloud: un doigt, deux doigts, etc., up to 10; un enfant, deux enfants, etc., to 10.

(6) Write phonetically the answers to: 1. Combien de doigts avez-vous? 2. Combien de tantes avez-vous? 3. Combien de professeurs de français avez-vous? 4. Combien de crayons avez-vous à l'école? 5. Combien de crayons avez-vous à la maison? 6. Combien d'oncles avez-vous (*ou* Combien avez-vous d'oncles)?

(7) What have you to say about linking between: (a) Pronoun subject and verb? (b) Article and noun? (c) Possessive adjective and noun? (d) Forms of verb 'to be' and their complements?

Look for cases of each in A above.

LESSON VI

33. Present Indicative of *avoir*, to have

1. Affirmative

I have, etc.

j' ai	[ʒe]
tu as	[tya]
il a	[ila]
nous avons	[nuzavɔ̃]
vous avez	[vuzave]
ils ont	[ilzɔ̃]

2. Negative

I have not, etc.

je n'ai pas	[ʒənepa]
tu n'as pas	[tynapa]
il n'a pas	[ilnapa]
nous n'avons pas	[nunavɔ̃pa]
vous n'avez pas	[vunavepa]
ils n'ont pas	[ilnɔ̃pa]

34. Pronouns in Address. *You* is regularly *vous*; the form *tu* = *thou* or *you* is used in familiar address:

Avez-vous ma plume, monsieur? Have you my pen, sir?

As-tu ta plume, mon enfant? Have you your pen, my child?

N.B. — Translate *you* by *vous* in the exercises, unless the use of *tu* is required by the context.

35. Contractions. **D**e + le and de + les are always contracted into du and des; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, de la, de l' in full:

La plume <i>du</i> [dy] frère.	The brother's pen.
Les plumes <i>des</i> [de] sœurs.	The sisters' pens.
But: La plume <i>de</i> l'élève.	The pupil's pen.

36. The Partitive Noun and Pronoun. 1. *Some* or *any*, whether expressed or implied before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by de + the definite article:

Avez-vous <i>de la</i> craie?	Have you (some) chalk (lit., 'of the chalk')?
A-t-elle <i>du</i> pain?	Has she (any) bread?
J'ai <i>de l'encre</i> .	I have (some) ink.
A-t-il <i>des</i> frères?	Has he (any) brothers?

2. In a general negation the partitive is expressed by de alone:

Il n'a pas <i>de</i> pain.	He has no bread.
Il n'a pas <i>d'amis</i> .	He has no friends.

3. *Some* or *any* as a pronoun = en, which must be expressed in French, even when omitted in English (cf. § 80):

A-t-il <i>de l'encre</i> ? — Il <i>en</i> a.	Has he (any) ink? — He has (some).
A-t-il une plume? — Il <i>en</i> a une.	Has he a pen? — He has one.

N.B. — En, like the other partitive expressions, is often equal to English *of it, of them*, especially when the object of the verb is a numeral not followed by its noun.

A-t-il une plume? — Il <i>en</i> a une.	Has he a pen? — He has one.
Combien de lettres écrivez-vous? — J'en écris quatre aujourd'hui.	How many letters do you write? — I am writing four (of them) to-day.

4. The position of the pronoun en in the sentence is different from the usage of English: en always comes directly before the verb, except in one instance (cf. § 113):

Avez-vous des crayons?	Have you (any) pencils?
Oui, monsieur, j'en ai.	Yes, sir, I have some.

EXERCISE VI

un élève [œnəlœ:v] pupil	il marche [marʃ] he walks, is walking, does walk
une élève [yne:lœ:v] pupil	parler [parle] speak (<i>infinitive</i>)
le mur [my:r] wall	
le plafond [plafõ] ceiling	
le plancher [pläʃe] floor	
le pupitre [pyptir] desk (<i>pupil's</i>)	je sors [so:r] I go out, am going out
aller [ale] to go	il sort [so:r] he goes out
je vais [ve] I am going, go, do go	nous sortons [sɔrtõ] we go out
il va [va] he is going, goes	vous sortez [sɔrte] you go out
nous allons [nuzalõ] we go, are going	nous voulons [vulõ] we wish, want, are willing
vous allez [vuzale] you are going, go	vous voulez [vule] you wish, want, are willing
il commence [komã:s] he is beginning	en [ã] of it, of them (<i>pronoun</i>)
écoutez! [ekute] listen! (<i>imperative</i>)	en [ã] in (<i>preposition; to be used by pupils only in expressions found in text</i>)
nous entrons (dans) [nuzãtrõ ðã] we enter, go in	après [apre] after
	par [par] by
j'en suis [zãsqi] I belong to it, am of it, of them.	
n'est-ce pas? [nespã] don't you? don't we? isn't it true?	

A. 1. Écoutez, mes amis. Nous sommes en classe de français. En êtes-vous, Robert? 2. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), j'en suis, et mon amie Marie en est aussi. 3. Nous sommes dix élèves et le professeur. 4. Nous avons des livres, des crayons et du papier. 5. Le professeur en a aussi. Il a aussi de la craie. 6. Nous étudions le français. 7. — Vous voulez parler français, n'est-ce pas? 8. — Oui, monsieur, nous voulons parler français. 9. — Eh bien (*Well then*), écoutez: La classe a quatre murs. 10. Voilà les murs de la classe. 11. Voilà le plafond, et vous marchez sur le plancher. 12. Combien de portes la classe a-t-elle (*has the classroom*)? — Elle en a une. 13. — Combien de fenêtres? — Elle en a trois. 14. — Les élèves ont des pupitres et le professeur a une table. 15. Elle est devant le professeur, et le professeur

est devant les élèves. 16. Nous entrons dans la classe par la porte, nous allons à nos places, nous ouvrons les livres et la leçon commence. 17. Après la classe, nous fermons les livres et nous sortons par la porte. 18. Nous sortons par la fenêtre. Pierre [pjɛ:r]. 19. — Pardon, mademoiselle, nous ne sortons pas par la fenêtre.

B. (1) *Using in turn as subjects je, il, elle, vous in place of nous, rewrite affirmatively and negatively, the sentences 16–19 of A:* Nous entrons dans la classe, etc., to the end.

(2) *Substitute the partitive expression for the article and read aloud:* les doigts, les mains, le papier, les amis, les amies, les après-midi, la craie, les mots.

(3) *Supply the partitive expression and read aloud:* 1. Ils ont — frères et — sœurs. 2. Nous ouvrons — portes et — fenêtres. 3. Ils ont — doigts et — mains. 4. Donnez-moi — papier et — plumes. 5. Mademoiselle a — craie. 6. Elle écrit — mots dans son cahier. 7. Nous écrivons — mots dans nos cahiers. 8. Vous donnez — papier à Robert. 9. Il a — craie à la main.

(4) a. *Write affirmative and negative answers, using the partitive pronoun:* 1. Avez-vous des frères? 2. A-t-il du papier? 3. Avons-nous des doigts? 4. Êtes-vous de notre classe? 5. Étudions-nous des leçons? 6. Ont-ils des sœurs? 7. Avez-vous de la craie à la main?

b. *Write negative answers to the questions under a, first keeping the noun objects, and then substituting the partitive pronoun for the noun objects.*

(5) *Conjugate:* 1. Je n'ai pas d'amis. 2. Je n'en ai pas.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. You are in the classroom, (my) children. 2. You have paper, pens, pencils, and notebooks. 3. The classroom has doors, windows, and walls. 4. Listen, Louise, you are not writing your lesson. 5. I have no paper, sir. 6. You haven't any? Excuse me, you have some. There it is in front of Robert. 7. I have no chalk. Pierre has some chalk in his hand, and Jeanne has some too. 8. How many fingers have you? I have ten. 9. There are ten of us (we are ten) pupils in the classroom with our teacher. 10. Do you

belong to (Are you of) the French class, Marie? 11. Yes, sir, I belong to it, and Henri belongs to it too. 12. What do you want? We want to speak French.

D. (1) After several readings aloud, first by the teacher, then by the class in concert, the pupils should be asked to retell orally and in writing the facts about the classroom in A.

(2) Dictation: Lesson V, A.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

Write phonetically and pronounce: un oncle, des oncles; un élève, des élèves; un mot, des mots; une tante, des tantes; un pupitre, des pupitres; un plancher, des planchers; un mur, des murs. What is the plural of un, une?

LESSON VII

37. Present Indicative of *avoir* (*continued*)

1. Interrogative

Have I? etc.

ai-je?	[ɛ:ʒ]
as-tu?	[at�]
a-t-il?	[atil]
avons-nous?	[avɔ̃nu]
avez-vous?	[avevu]
ont-ils?	[ɔ̃til]

2. Negative Interrogative

Have I not? etc.

n'ai-je pas?	[nɛ:ʒpa]
n'as-tu pas?	[natypa]
n'a-t-il pas?	[natilpa]
n'avons-nous pas?	[navɔ̃nupa]
n'avez-vous pas?	[navevupa]
n'ont-ils pas?	[nɔ̃tilpa]

38. Interrogation. 1. When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, the word order is noun-verb-pronoun:

L'homme est-il là? Is the man there?

2. This form of question may be combined with an interrogative word:

Mais Jean où est-il? But where is John?

Combien de plumes Jean a-t-il? How many pens has John?

3. What? (as direct object or predicate of a verb) = *que?*
See also § 19, 1:

Qu'avez-vous là? What have you there?

EXERCISE VII

le beurre [bœ:r] butter	j'entends [ātā] I hear, do hear
la bouche [bu:ʃ] mouth	il entend [ātā] he hears
la dent [dā] tooth	nous entendons [nuzātād5] we do hear
la langue [lā:g] tongue, language	vous entendez [vuzātāde] you are hearing
une oreille [ɔrε:i] ear	
le pain [pā] bread, loaf of bread	je mange [mā:ʒ] I am eating
la tête [tε:t] head	elle mange [mā:ʒ] she is eating
les yeux m. [lezjø] eyes	nous mangeons [mā:ʒ5] we do eat
onze [ʒ:z] eleven	vous mangez [mā:ʒe] you eat
douze [du:z] twelve	
treize [trε:z] thirteen	
quatorze [katorz] fourteen	
quinze [kε:z] fifteen	
il donne [døn] he is giving, gives	je parle [parl] I am speaking
nous donnons [døn5] we are giving, we give	elle parle [parl] she talks, speaks
vous donnez [done] you are giving	nous parlons [parl5] we talk
nous écoutons [nuzekut5] we listen	vous parlez [parle] you speak
ten	
vous écoutez [vuzekute] you are listening	je vois [vwa] I see, do see
	elle voit [vwa] she sees, is seeing
	nous voyons [vwaj5] we do see
	vous voyez [vwaje] you are seeing
	mais [me] but, why (<i>not in a question</i>); mais non! Why no!

A. (1) 1. Écoutez, Jean! Écoutez, mes amis! Que faites-vous?
 2. — Nous écoutons. 3. — Écrivez dans votre cahier, Marie!
 4. Marie où écrit-elle? 5. — Elle écrit dans son cahier.
 6. — Donnez votre plume à Robert. 7. — Que donnez-vous à Robert, Henri? 8. Je donne ma plume à Robert.
 9. — Qu'avez-vous à la main, Louise? 10. — J'ai à la main mon livre de français. 11. — N'avez-vous pas aussi votre crayon à la main? 12. — Oui, mademoiselle; et j'ai aussi des livres et du papier, mais Pierre n'en a pas.

(2) 1. — Combien de têtes avez-vous, Maurice [moris]?
 2. — J'en ai une, et Henri en a une et le professeur en a une aussi. 3. — N'avez-vous pas deux mains, Pierre? 4. — Oui, mademoiselle, j'en ai deux. 5. — Et combien de doigts Louise

a-t-elle? 6. — Elle en a dix [dis] et Marie a dix doigts [didwa] aussi. 7. — Combien de mains Robert a-t-il? Il en a deux. 8. Nous avons des oreilles, des yeux et une bouche. 9. Dans la bouche nous avons une langue et des dents. 10. — Le professeur a-t-il des oreilles aussi? — Oui, il en a deux. 11. — Que faites-vous avec vos oreilles, mes amis (mon ami)? 12. — Nous entendons (j'entends) avec les oreilles, nous voyons (je vois) avec les yeux, nous parlons (je parle) avec la langue et la bouche, et nous mangeons (je mange) avec les dents. 13. — Que mangez-vous? — Nous mangeons du pain avec du beurre. 14. — Qu'avez-vous dans la bouche? — J'ai un morceau de pain dans la bouche.

B. (1) *Say in French:* I (we, you) open; I (we, you) close; I (we, you) go in; I (we, you) go out; I (we, you) stay; I (we, you) study; I (we, you) write; I (we, you) listen; I (we, you) hear; I (we, you) see; I (we, you) talk; I (we, you) eat; listen, eat, speak, stay, go out, come in, write; I (we, you) go; I am, we (you) are.

(2) *Complete:* 1. Vous voyez avec _____. 2. J'entends avec _____. 3. Nous mangeons avec _____. 4. Vous parlez avec _____. 5. ____ mangez-vous? 6. Je ____ pain avec ____ beurre. 7. Combien ____ doigts avez-vous? 8. J'____ ai dix (See A, (2), 6). 9. Et combien ____ yeux [jø] (preceding [e] elided) le professeur a-t-il? 10. Il ____ a deux.

(3) *Study the examples of the use of en in A, (2) and try to make a rule for the use of en with numerals.*

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Do you want some butter with your bread? 2. I have no bread. 3. But you have some butter. 4. I beg your pardon, I have none (haven't any). 5. Has the man ears and eyes and teeth? 6. He has ears and eyes, but he has no teeth. 7. How many ears has he? 8. He has two. 9. I hear with my (the) ears and see with my (the) eyes. 10. Have you no teeth? 11. I have teeth and I am eating some bread, but I have no butter. 12. Do you want some? Why (Mais) yes, sir (miss). 13. I have ten fingers; he has ten. 14. There are fifteen of us pupils (We are fifteen pupils) in the classroom. 15. I see fifteen in the classroom.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Read: sili:vr, si:zami, elānasis; nœdā, nœvami, vuzānavençef; didwa, navānupadi:zami? lœprofesce:rūnadis.

In how many ways are the words for 6, 9 and 10 pronounced? Explain.

In how many ways are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8 pronounced (see Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, 4)? Explain.

Count: ɔ:z, du:z, tre:z, katorz, kē:z.

Count 1–15, putting after each numeral a noun beginning with a consonant, and then one beginning with a vowel. For example: 5 crayons, 5 élèves. Write out the combinations in phonetic characters.

(2) What two ways do you know of spelling the sound [ɛ]? What three ways of spelling the sound [ɔ]? What sound does the letter o (not in combination or nasal) usually represent? One exception so far: what is it? What sound does the letter a (not in combination or nasal) usually represent? Name the two exceptions up to this point. What sound does the combination ai (not nasal) usually represent? Name the two exceptions. What is the position of your lips in pronouncing [ɔ] as in *porte*, *oreille*, so as to get the French quality (see § 14, 1)? Note how the -eille of *oreille* gives [ɛ:j]. Pronounce *le soleil* [sole:j], *sun*. What is the name of this sound? (See § 16, 1).

LESSON VIII

39. Present Indicative of *être*, *to be*

1. Affirmative

I am, etc.

je suis	[ʒəsɥi]
tu es	[tyε]
il est	[ile]
nous sommes	[nusɔm]
vous êtes	[vuzεt]
ils sont	[ilso]

2. Negative

I am not, etc.

je ne suis pas	[ʒənsɥipa]
tu n'es pas	[tynepa]
il n'est pas	[ilnεpa]
nous ne sommes pas	[nunsɔmpa]
vous n'êtes pas	[vunεtpa]
ils ne sont pas	[ilnεsɔpa]

3. Interrogative

Am I? etc.

suis-je?	[suīz]
es-tu?	[ety]
est-il?	[ētil]
sommes-nous?	[sōmnū]
êtes-vous	[ētvū]
sont-ils?	[sōntil]

4. Negative Interrogative

Am I not? etc.

ne suis-je pas?	[nəsūjī:zpa]
n'es-tu pas?	[netypā]
n'est-il pas?	[netilpā]
ne sommes-nous pas?	[nəsōmnupa]
n'êtes-vous pas?	[netvupa]
ne sont-ils pas?	[nəsōntilpā]

40. Observe that *il* and *elle* mean not only *he* and *she*, but also *it*, since there are but two genders of nouns in French:
Où est la plume? *Elle* est ici. Where is the pen? It is here.
Où sont les plumes? *Elles* sont ici. Where are the pens? They are here.

EXERCISE VIII

la carte [kart]	map, card
le contraire [kōtrā:r]	opposite
la France [frā:s]	France
le jour [ʒu:r]	day
la nuit [nɥi]	night
autre [otr]	other
bon [bō]	good
fermé [fermē]	closed
ouvert [uvrē]	open
petit [pēti]	small, little
tout [tu]	all; (<i>as a pronoun</i>) everything
quinze [kē:z]	fifteen
seize [sē:z]	sixteen
dix-sept [disset]	seventeen
dix-huit [dizquit]	eighteen
dix-neuf [diznœf]	nineteen
vingt [vē]	twenty
comprendre [kōprā:dr]	understand (<i>infin.</i>)
Je comprends [kōprā]	I understand, do understand
voulez-vous bien?	[vulevubjē] will you (please)? are you willing to?

il comprend [kōprā]	he does understand
nous comprenons [kōprənō]	we understand
vous comprenez [kōprəne]	you understand
compter [kōte]	count (<i>infin.</i>)
comptez! [kōte]	count! (<i>imperative</i>)
dormir [dōrmī:r]	sleep (<i>infin.</i>), be asleep
entendre [ētā:dr]	hear (<i>infin.</i>)
manger [mā:zē]	eat (<i>infin.</i>)
ils restent, elles restent [rest]	they stay, remain
nous tâchons (de) [ta:ʃō]	we are trying (to), etc.
vous tâchez (de) [ta:ʃē]	you are trying (to), etc.
bien [bjē]	well, very well
pour [pur]	for, in order to
c'est [sē]	it is, that is

A. (1) 1. — Où êtes-vous, mes amis? 2. — Nous sommes à l'école, dans la classe. 3. — Que voyez-vous, Louise? 4. — Je vois une porte, des fenêtres, des murs, un plafond, un plancher, un tableau noir, et notre professeur. 5. — C'est tout, Pierre? 6. — Non, monsieur (mademoiselle); je vois aussi des livres, des plumes, des cahiers, vingt élèves, des crayons, des pupitres. 7. Sur le mur je vois une carte de France. 8. — C'est bon, Pierre. Vous voyez tout. 9. Voulez-vous bien compter les élèves? 10. Jeanne: — un élève, deux élèves vingt élèves. 11. — Bien! combien d'élèves êtes-vous? 12. — Nous sommes vingt élèves. 13. — Et la porte, est-elle ouverte [uvvert]? 14. Non, mademoiselle, elle est fermée [ferme]. 15. — Et les fenêtres, sont-elles ouvertes? 16. — Une des fenêtres est ouverte et les deux autres sont fermées.

(2) 1. — Que faites-vous en classe? 2. — Nous étudions le français. 3. Le professeur parle français, nous écoutons et nous tâchons de comprendre. 4. — Comprenez-vous les mots « ouverte » et « fermée »? 5. — Oui, mademoiselle. Nous ouvrons la porte, elle est ouverte. 6. Nous entrons dans la classe et nous fermons la porte. Elle est fermée maintenant. 7. — Bon! Votre bouche est-elle ouverte? 8. — Oui, mademoiselle. Je l'ouvre pour parler et pour manger. 9. — Et vos oreilles? — Elles sont ouvertes. Elles restent [rest] ouvertes pour entendre. 10. — Et vos yeux, restent-ils [restəti] ouverts [uve:r]? 11. — Non, mademoiselle, je les ouvre le matin; le jour ils restent ouverts. La nuit je les ferme pour dormir. 12. — Bien! « Porte ouverte » est le contraire de « porte fermée. » 13. Écoutez bien: mes yeux sont ouverts [uve:r], les deux portes sont ouvertes [uvvert]. 14. Henri est-il petit [pəti]? Louise est-elle petite [pətit]?

B. (1) Where reasonably possible, make every verb in A negative.

(2) Substitute the proper personal pronoun for the noun object in: 1. Je vois une porte. 2. Nous écoutons le professeur. 3. Il compte les élèves. 4. Ouvrez-vous la fenêtre? 5. Com-

prenez-vous le mot? 6. Vous ne voyez pas mes dents. 7. Ne voyez-vous pas mes dents? 8. Ne fermez-vous pas les yeux pour dormir? 9. Je vois une carte de France. 10. Je ne comprends pas le mot. 11. Avez-vous des amis? 12. Nous avons des dents. 13. Nous entendons des mots. 14. Nous voyons nos amies. 15. J'entends le mot.

(3) *Make sentences of the groups of words, supplying lacking words and using as many partitives as possible:* 1. J'ai, ne — pas, en. 2. Il, dents, a. 3. Sœurs, avez-vous? 4. J'ai, quatre. 5. Vous tâchez, la nuit, de dormir. 6. Il voit, portes, et fenêtres. 7. Nous, en, voyons, ne — pas. 8. Entendez-vous? ne — pas. 9. Porte ouverte, porte fermée, le contraire. 10. Portes, ouvertes, mais, fenêtres, fermées. 11. Pierre, petit et Louise, petite.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Are your books open? Are the windows open? 2. Has the classroom windows and doors? 3. It has windows, doors, walls, desks, a ceiling, and a floor. 4. Have the pupils books? Yes. There are the pupils' books. 5. They have notebooks too, and pens, and paper, and pencils, but they have no chalk. 6. The teacher has some in his hand. 7. What are you doing? We are listening to the teacher. 8. She is speaking French and we are trying to understand her. 9. Do you understand her, Marie? Yes, I understand her. 10. That's good.

D. *The differences of spelling and pronunciation of ouvert, ouverte; petit, petite are due to a difference in what? To judge by fermé, fermée, do these same differences appear in every case? Would the addition of an s for the plural make any difference in the pronunciation of any of these words?*

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

Écrivez en caractères phonétiques et prononcez: 1. Je vois vingt élèves. 2. Où êtes-vous, mes amis? 3. Vous voyez les livres. 4. Nous entrons dans la classe. 5. Vos yeux restent ouverts. 6. Nous étudions le français. 7. Vous ouvrez la porte. 8. Il compte les élèves.

LESSON IX

41. The Regular Conjugations. French verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings *-er*, *-ir*, *-re*, into three conjugations:

I

II

III

Donner [dõnər] *to give* *Finir* [fini:r] *to finish* *Vendre* [vã:dr] *to sell*

Like these are conjugated all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

42. Present Indicative of *donner*, *to give*

1. Affirmative

<i>I give, am giving, etc.</i>	
<i>je donn e</i>	[ʒədn̪ø]
<i>tu donn es</i>	[tydõn]
<i>il donn e</i>	[ildõn]
<i>nous donn ons</i>	[nudõnɔ̃]
<i>vous donn ez</i>	[vudõne]
<i>ils donn ent</i>	[ildõn]

2. Negative

<i>I do not give, am not giving, etc.</i>	
<i>je ne donn e pas</i>	[ʒəndõn̪ønpa]
<i>tu ne donn es pas</i>	[tyndõn̪ønpa]
<i>il ne donn e pas</i>	[iln̪edõn̪ønpa]
<i>nous ne donn ons pas</i>	[nundõn̪ɔ̃npa]
<i>vous ne donn ez pas</i>	[vundõn̪epa]
<i>ils ne donn ent pas</i>	[iln̪edõn̪ønpa]

3. Interrogative

<i>Am I giving? do I give? etc.</i>	
<i>donné-je?</i>	[dõn̪e:ʒ]
<i>donnes-tu?</i>	[dõnty]
<i>donne-t-il?</i>	[dõntil]
<i>donnons-nous?</i>	[dõn̪õnu]
<i>donnez-vous?</i>	[dõnevú]
<i>donnent-ils?</i>	[dõntil]

4. Negative Interrogative

<i>Am I not giving? do I not give? etc.</i>	
<i>ne donné-je pas?</i>	[nədõn̪e:ʒpa]
<i>ne donnes-tu pas?</i>	[nədõntypa]
<i>ne donne-t-il pas?</i>	[nədõntilp̩]
<i>ne donnons-nous pas?</i>	[nədõn̪õnu:p̩]
<i>ne donnez-vous pas?</i>	[nədõnevú:p̩]
<i>ne donnent-ils pas?</i>	[nədõntilp̩]

43. Interrogation. By prefixing the words *est-ce que?* literally, *is it that?* any statement may be turned into a question:

Vous avez mon canif.

You have my penknife.

Est-ce que vous avez mon canif? Have you my penknife?

*Est-ce que vous n'aimez pas la
marche?* Don't you like walking?

NOTE. — The first singular interrogative form (*e.g.*, *donné-je?* *suis-je?* etc.) is avoided in most verbs, and *must* be avoided in some, by using *est-ce que?* In the exercises, use *est-ce que?* everywhere with the 1st singular

44. The Demonstrative Adjective. 1. The following are its forms, and they must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

This, that = $\begin{cases} \text{ce } [\text{sə}], \text{ before a masculine beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{cet } [\text{set}], \text{ before a m. beginning with a vowel or h mute.} \\ \text{cette } [\text{set}], \text{ before any feminine.} \end{cases}$

These, those = *ces* [sə], before any plural.

2. To distinguish *this* from *that*, or for emphasis, add -ci (= *ici*) and -là respectively to the noun:

Ce livre, cet homme, cette amie. This (or that) book, man, friend.
Ce crayon-ci et ces plumes-là. This pencil and those pens.

a. In the combinations *c'est* and *ce sont* the demonstrative pronoun *ce* is often equal to English *it* (standing for and pointing to the real subject that follows), *he, she, they*.

<i>C'est mon ami Pierre.</i>	<i>It (he) is my friend Pierre.</i>
<i>Ce sont les enfants de ma tante.</i>	<i>They are my aunt's children.</i>
<i>Est-ce [es] vous? C'est vous.</i>	<i>Is it (that) you? It is you.</i>

EXERCISE IX

un âge [ənɑ:g] age	
un an [ənã] year	
le cousin [kuzɛ̃] cousin	
la cousine [kuzin] cousin	
la fille [fi:j] daughter, girl	
le fils [fis] son	
le garçon [garsõ] boy	
la marche [marʃ] walking	
le sport [spo:r] sport	

fort [fɔ:r] strong	
grand [grã] large, tall	
quel? <i>m.</i> [kɛl] what?	

aimer [ɛme] like, love	
j'aime [ɛm] I (do) like, love	
je m'appelle [mapel] I am named, my name is	
il s'appelle [sapel] he is named	

nous nous appelons [nunuzaplɔ]	
we are named, etc.	
vous vousappelez [vuvuzaple]	
you are named	
* regarder [rəgɑ:dɛ] look (at)	
je regarde [ʒərgard] I look at	
il regarde [rəgard] he is looking	
nous regardons [nurgardõ]	
vous regardez [vurgarde]	

dites [dit] say, tell (*imperative of dire*)

attentivement [atātivmã]	
attentively	
comment? [kõmã] how?	
lentement [lãt(e)mã]	slowly
plus [ply]	more
vite [vit]	rapidly, quickly
parce que [parske]	because

EXERCISE IX (Continued)

quel âge avez-vous [kɛla:ʒavevu] how old are you?

j'ai trois ans [ʒetrwazɑ] I am three; il a quinze ans, he is fifteen.
s'il vous plaît [silvuple] please.

* Endings like **donner**, but observe the pronunciation of the pres. indicative. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (1).

A. (1) 1. Comment vousappelez-vous [vuzaplevu¹], mon ami? 2. — Je m'appelle Maurice, monsieur (mademoiselle). 3. — Quel âge avez-vous? 4. — J'ai quinze ans. 5. — Vousêtes grand [grū]! Est-ce que votre père est grand aussi? 6. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), il est grand, mais ma mère est petite; elle n'est pas grande [grā:d]. 7. — Est-ce que vousavez des frères et des sœurs? 8. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), j'ai un frère et trois sœurs. 9. Mon frère s'appelle Édouard [edwa:r], et mes sœurs s'appellent Germaine [ʒermen], Jeanne et Adèle [adel]. 10. Édouard a treize ans; il est petit; mais très fort (fɔ:r). 11. Germaine a huit ans, Jeanne a dix-sept ans, et Adèle en a dix-neuf. 12. Elles sont grandes [grā:d] et fortes [fɔ:t]. 13. Moi, je suis très fort aussi et j'aime les sports. 14. J'aime le tennis [tenis], le baseball [besbal] et la marche. 15. Mes sœurs aiment le tennis; mais elles n'aiment pas la marche.

(2) 1. — Est-ce que cette petite fille-ci est une de vos sœurs? 2. — Non, mademoiselle, c'est (*she is*) la sœur de ce petit garçon-là. 3. — Et ces trois petites filles-là? 4. — Non, mes sœurs ne sont pas à l'école; elles sont à la maison. 5. Ces grandes filles-là sont les enfants de mon oncle. 6. Ce sont (*They are*) mes cousines, et cet élève-ci est son fils. 7. C'est (*He is*) mon cousin. 8. — Est-ce que cet élève-là écoute le professeur? 9. — Oui, il l'écoute attentivement, mais il ne comprend pas très bien, parce que le professeur parle très vite. 10. Parlez plus lentement, monsieur, s'il vous plaît. 11. Nous écoutons très attentivement mais nous ne vous comprenons pas.

¹ Observe the disappearance of the [ə] in the pronunciation of **appelez** [aple]. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (1).

B. Write, supplying the proper form: ce, cet, cette, or ces; — enfant (*f.*), — élève (*m. and f.*), — fille, — garçon, — après-midi, — carte, — cartes, — yeux, — jour, — nuit.

C. (1) Translate into French: 1. I count the pupils. 2. He studies his lesson. 3. She enters (in) the classroom. 4. We eat bread and butter. 5. You look at the map. 6. They begin the lesson. 7. Don't I speak French? (see § 43, note) 8. Doesn't he listen to the teacher? (*two ways*) 9. Don't we look at the map? (*two ways*) 10. Don't they study? 11. I do not close the door. 12. She does not eat butter. 13. We do not eat any. 14. You do not return home in the morning; you return home in the afternoon. 15. They do not come in.

(2) 1. I count the pupils; he counts them; they count the windows; we count them. 2. We do not stay at home in the morning; they stay at home in the evening. 3. He opens the door; they open it; it is open. 4. Look at the map! What do you see? 5. They look at it; they study it. 6. Come in! They enter (in) the classroom by the door. 7. They eat bread; they eat some. 8. Do you want (*Voulez-vous*) some bread? 9. Do you want some? Don't you want any? We eat none.

(3) Dites en français: 1. My name is Robert. 2. Her name is Adèle. 3. His name is Joffre [ʒɔfr]. 4. What is your name? 5. Their (*f.*) name is Hugo [ygo].

D. Dictation: Lesson VII, A, (2).

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Écrivez en caractères phonétiques et prononcez: 1. Ce garçon est petit. 2. Cette fille est petite. 3. Cette maison est grande. 4. Cet homme est grand. 5. Cet enfant est fort. 6. Mademoiselle est forte. 7. Le cahier est ouvert 8. La porte est ouverte.

(2) Pronounce the feminine of *grand*, *ouvert*, *petit*.

LESSON X

45. Plural Forms. Note the following exceptions to the rule (§ 31) that the plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding -s to the singular:

1. Nouns in -s, -x, -z, and adjectives in -s, -x, remain unchanged in the plural, *e.g.*, *bras, bras, arm(s); voix, voix, voice(s); nez, nez, nose(s); bas, bas, low; vieux, vieux, old.*
2. Nouns and adjectives in -au, nouns in -eu, and a few nouns in -ou, add -x instead of -s, *e.g., couteau, couteaux, knife, knives; beau, beaux, fine; jeu, jeux, game(s); bijou, bijoux, jewel(s); caillou, cailloux, pebble(s)*, and a few rarer nouns in -ou.
3. Nouns, and the commoner adjectives, in -al change -al to -au and add -x (as above), *e.g., général, généraux, general(s); rival, rivaux, rival(s)*, except *bal, bals, ball(s)*, and a few rarer nouns.
4. *Oeil, yeux, eye(s); ciel, cieux, sky, skies, heaven(s).*

46. Contractions. The forms à + le and à + les are always contracted into au and aux respectively; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, à la, à l' in full:

Je parle *au* [o] frère. I speak to the brother.
Aux [o] sœurs, *aux* [oz] hommes. To the sisters, to the men
 But: Je parle à la sœur, à l'homme.

47. Use of *il y a* [ilja]. 1. *There is* and *there are* are not only translated by *voilà*, but also by *il y a*:

<i>Voilà des plumes sur la table.</i>	There are some pens on the table.
<i>Il y a des plumes sur la table.</i>	There are some pens on the table.

2. Observe, however, that *voilà* answers the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while *il y a* does not answer the question 'where is?' 'where are?' but makes a general statement. *Voilà* is stressed, *il y a* is unstressed, just as in English *there is* (*are*) is usually stressed or unstressed according as it points out or merely makes a general statement.

3. Il y a governs nouns just as other transitive verbs do:

Je donne *des plumes* à Marie. I give (some) pens to Mary.

Il y a *des plumes* sur la table. There are (some) pens on the table.

EXERCISE X

le bas [ba]	stocking	vingt-quatre [vētkatr]	24
le bijou [biju]	jewel	vingt-cinq [vētsēk]	25
le bout [bu]	tip, end	vingt-six [vētsis]	26
le bras [bra]	arm	vingt-sept [vētset]	27
le cheval [ləʃval]	horse	vingt-huit [vētqit]	28
le corps [kɔ:r]	body	vingt-neuf [vētnœf]	29
le couteau [kuto]	(table-)knife	trente [trā:t]	30
la différence [diferā:s]	difference	quelle? f. [kɛl]	what?
le général [zeneral]	general	qui? [ki]	who? whom?
la jambe [ʒā:b]	leg	désirer [dezi:re]	wish, want
le nez [ne]	nose	lire [li:r]	read
un œil [ənœ:j]	eye	porter [pōrte]	wear, carry
le pied [pje]	foot	prononcer [prōnō:se]	pronounce
le pluriel [plyrjel]	plural		
la voix [vwa]	voice		
beau [bo]	fine, handsome, beautiful	distinctement [distēkt(ə)mā]	
vieux [vjø]	old	distinctly	
vingt et un [vēteeœ]	21	en français [frāsœ]	in French
vingt-deux [vētdø]	22	entre [ā:tr]	between
vingt-trois [vēttrwa]	23	pourquoi? [purkwa]	why?
		quand? [kā]	when?

A. (1) 1. Il y a vingt et un ou vingt-deux élèves dans cette classe de français. 2. Ils étudient le français parce qu'ils désirent le lire, le comprendre et le parler. 3. Pourquoi étudiez-vous le français? 4. Désirez (voulez)-vous lire des livres français, mes amis? 5. — Oui, monsieur, nous voulons (désirons) lire les livres de Victor Hugo, de Maupassant [mopasā], de Balzac [balzak], d'Anatole France [anatolfrā:s], de Dumas [dyma], de Voltaire [vōltēir], de Beaumarchais [bomarʃe], de Lesage [ləsa:iʒ], de Molière [mɔljεir], et nous désirons (voulons) comprendre le français et le parler aussi. 6. — Eh bien, mes amis, écoutez-moi très attentivement parce que je vais vous parler en français.



MOLIÈRE



VICTOR HUGO JEUNE

(2) 1. Entendez-vous ma voix? — Oui, monsieur. 2. — Comprenez-vous les mots quand je parle lentement? 3. — Oui, monsieur, mais nous ne comprenons pas quand vous parlez vite. 4. — Eh, bien, écoutez. Je vais parler lentement et prononcer distinctement. 5. J'ai un corps. Voici mon corps. 6. Voici mes deux bras. Au bout de mes deux bras, j'ai deux mains. 7. Il y a cinq doigts à cette main et cinq doigts à cette main; combien de doigts est-ce que j'ai? 8. Voici mon nez. Est-ce que j'ai un nez ou deux nez? 9. Et Louise, combien de nez a-t-elle? 10. A-t-elle trois yeux? Et un cheval combien d'yeux [djø] a-t-il? 11. Et combien d'yeux [djø] ont douze chevaux? 12. Et vous avez deux jambes [ʒã:b] et deux pieds [døpjø], Henri, n'est-ce pas? 13. Et les chevaux combien de jambes ont-ils? — Ils en ont quatre. 14. — Combien de jambes ont sept chevaux? 15. — Qu'avez-vous aux pieds? — J'ai des bas aux pieds. 16. — Où portez-vous les bas, aux mains? 17. — Non, monsieur, je les porte aux pieds et aux jambes. 18. — Qu'avez-vous au bout des jambes? 19. — J'ai mes deux pieds au bout de mes jambes.

B. 1. Allez au tableau (noir), Jean. 2. Écrivez au pluriel: le bras, la voix, un général, un couteau. 3. Maintenant écrivez au singulier: les yeux, les chevaux. 4. Dit-on (*Do we, people, say*): « Il y a vingt-trois élèves dans cette classe, » ou « Voilà vingt-trois élèves dans cette classe? » 5. Dit-on: « Il y a mes deux bras », ou « Voilà mes deux bras »? 6. Dit-on: « Il y a notre professeur de français », ou « Voilà notre professeur de français »? 7. Quelle est la différence entre: « Voilà deux élèves qui n'écoutent pas! » et « Il y a deux élèves qui n'écoutent pas »?

C. *Translate into French:* 1. There are twenty-nine pupils in this French class. 2. The teacher speaks to the pupils in French. 3. He speaks slowly and the pupils try (*tâchent de*) to understand him. 4. He says (*dit*): “What is your name? How old are you? Why do you study French?” 5. “My name is Edward. I am sixteen. 6. I am studying because I wish to read, understand, speak, and write (*the*) French. 7. Will you (*Voulez-vous bien*) speak slowly?”

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Write phonetically and pronounce: *mon bras, mes bras; sa voix, leurs voix; un bas, vos bas; son père est vieux; ses amis sont vieux; voici leurs couteaux; ces enfants sont beaux; les bijoux de cette dame sont très beaux.*

(2) Compare the pronunciation of the singular and plural of the new words. Do they differ as to pronunciation from words that make their plural according to § 31? What will usually indicate to the ear the plural of such words?

(3) Write phonetically and read aloud: *un général, des généraux; un cheval, des chevaux; à l'œil, aux yeux; au ciel, aux cieux.*

(4) Is this a mere spelling change as in *livres, bijoux?*

(5) Count aloud 1–30, putting after each numeral, first a noun beginning with a consonant and then one beginning with a vowel: *e.g., vingt-cinq couteaux, vingt-cinq amis.* Note that the final letter of *vingt* is heard as t in 21–29.

(6) Note the pronunciation of *bras, tu as* (§ 33), as compared with *bas, pas*. What is the usual pronunciation of the letter *a* (alone and not nasal)? Is this true of *âge*? of *nous tâchons*?

(7) Contrast the pronunciation of *le soir, pourquoi, je vois, la voix, voici, voilà* with that of *trois*. What seems to be the usual sound value of the spelling *oi*?

REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

No. 1

(1) *Nommez* (Name) *les parties* (parts) *du corps* (12) *dont* (of which) *vous savez* (know) *le nom* (name).

(2) *Quels sont les membres* (members) *d'une famille* (family)?

(3) *Nommez tous* (pluriel de tout) *les objets* (objects) *dans la classe* *dont vous savez le nom.*

(4) *Donnez les contraires de:* *nous ouvrons; le jour; petit; vite; nous sortons; ilsouvrent.*

(5) *What words or expressions do you think of in connection with the following?* *le garçon; le corps; l'oncle; le crayon; le plafond; l'après-midi; en anglais; devant; voilà; le cahier;*

désirez-vous? pourquoi; j'écoute; la nuit; la fille; la famille; le matin; de.

(6) *Fill in blanks with appropriate words:* 1. Où sont vos mains? Les voilà au —— de mes ——. 2. J'—— votre voix, mais je ne vous —— pas. Pourquoi? Parce que vous parlez très ——. 3. J'étudie le français —— je désire —— les livres de Balzac. 4. Les hommes ont deux ——; les —— en ont quatre. 5. Il —— vingt-trois —— dans cette classe. 6. Nous —— avec les dents; nous —— avec les oreilles; nous —— avec les yeux. 7. Nous —— de la salle de classe par la porte. 8. Donnez-moi un —— de pain avec du ——. 9. Sur le mur il y a une —— de France. 10. Nous tâchons de vous ——, mais vous —— très vite; —— vous parler plus ——? 11. Je ferme les yeux pour ——. 12. Quel âge a-t-il? Il —— vingt ——. 13. J'—— avec ma plume dans mon ——. 14. Comment vous —— vous? Je m'—— Henri; ma sœur s'—— Louise. 15. Montrez —— votre professeur de français, s'il ——. Le ——, monsieur.

(7) *What verbs do you know (seven or eight) that indicate the activities (a) of the brain, the eyes, or the ears, or (b) of the limbs? Use each in a sentence.*

PRONUNCIATION

(1) To judge from words like *papier*, *pied*, what sound value does the spelling *ie* usually have? Indicate in phonetic characters.

(2) What is the sound value of the combination *ien*, as in *bien*, *combien*? Of the combinations *in*, *ain*? Of the combination *un* as in *un*, *Verdun*?

(3) What two sounds has the letter *c*? Compare *morceau*, *ciel*, *c'est*, *garçon*, *français* with *carte*, *crayon*, *compter*, and make a rule (*see § 5, 4*).

(4) What two sounds has the letter *s*? Compare *soir*, *sœur*, *professeur* with *maison*, *vous avez*, and make a rule (*see, in part, § 18, 1*).

(5) Pronounce: *avec*, *voir*, *par*, *sœur*, *anglais*, *est*, *doigt*, *nuit*, *huit*, *fermez*, *les yeux*, *cousin*, *aimer* (Lesson I), *cheval*

[ʃéval], **général**, **grand**, **fils**. Are final consonants usually sounded in French? How does **fils** compare in sound with other words ending in **s** as far as we have gone?

(6) What are the usual sound values for the spellings **-on**, **-en**, **-an**, **-in**, **-ain**, **-un**, **-ien**? For the spelling **-eu**? Contrast **beurre** with **vieux**, **yeux**. For the spelling **-ai**? Contrast **j'ai**, **maison**, with **français**, **s'il vous plaît**, **vous faites**.

(7) Compare the French sound 1 with English 1 (§ 17, 7). Where is the tip of the tongue for French 1?

(8) Compare French **r** with English **r** (§ 17, 12). Is the tongue brought farther forward in French? In French avoid using the English **r**. The French lingual **r** is sharper.

(9) Pronounce slowly and distinctly with attention to syllable division: **général**, **désirer**, **regarder**, **attentivement**, **vous comprenez**, **après-midi**, **nous écrivons**, **porter**, **vous vous appeler**, **bonjour**, **merci**, **monsieur**, **mademoiselle**.

LESSON XI

48. An Indefinite Pronoun. 1. *One, some one, we, you. they, people*, used indefinitely, are represented in French by **on**, with the verb always in the singular:

On [ɔ̃] parle de Jean. We (you, they, etc.) speak of John.

2. When following a verb with a final vowel, **on** is joined to it by **-t-** (cf. § 29):

Par où commence-t-on? Where do we (etc.) begin?

3. An **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not mentioned:

Ensuite on apporte le potage. Next the soup is brought.

49. Interrogation. Observe the frequently used interrogative phrase **qu'est-ce que?** = *what?* which is made up of **que?** (§ 38, 3) + **est-ce que?** (§ 43):

Qu'a-t-il? or Qu'est-ce qu'il a? What has he?

50. Present Indicative of *faire*, to do, make (irreg.).

I do, am doing, etc.

je fais [zəfɛ]

tu fais [tyfɛ]

il fait [ilfɛ]

We do, are doing, etc.

nous faisons [nufəzɔ̃]

vous faites [vufɛt̪]

ils font [ilfɔ̃]

EXERCISE XI

l'algèbre <i>f.</i> [alʒe:br] algebra	apporter [apɔ̃te] carry (to), bring
l'arithmétique <i>f.</i> [aritmetik] arithmetic	commencer (à) [kɔməse] begin
une assiette [asjet] plate	dîner [dine] dine
la bonne [bon] maid, nurse	jouer [ʒwe] play
la cuiller [kɥijɛ:r] spoon	nous lisons [lizɔ̃] we are reading
le dessert [desε:r] dessert	il prend [prã] he takes, is taking
le dîner [dine] dinner	préparer [prepar] prepare
la fourchette [furʃɛt̪] fork	répondez! [repõde] reply!
le fruit [frø̃] fruit	(imperative)
une histoire [istwa:r] history, story	je me sers de [zəmse:rðə] I use, make use of
le journal [ʒurnal] newspaper	il se sert de [se:r] he makes use of
le latin [latɛ̃] Latin	nous nous servons de [sərvɔ̃] we use
le légume [legym] vegetable	sonner [sɔ̃ne] ring
les mathématiques <i>f.</i> [mate-matik] mathematics	traduisez [tradɥize] translate (imperative)
le potage [pɔta:ʒ] soup	travailler [travaje] work
la question [kestjɔ̃] question	comme [kɔ̃m] as, like
la salle [sal] large room, hall	que [kə] than
la salle à manger [salamã:ʒe]	d'abord [dabɔ̃:r] in the first place, first
dining room	puis [pũ] then, in the next place
les sciences naturelles <i>f.</i> [sjã:s-natyrel] natural science	
la tasse [ta:s] cup	
la viande [vjã:d] meat	
âgé [a:ʒe] old, aged	
s'amuser [samye] enjoy oneself, have a good time	

- A. (1) 1. Que fait-on (Qu'est-ce qu'on fait) à l'école?
 2. On étudie ses leçons à l'école; on fait du français, de

l'anglais, du latin. 3. On étudie aussi l'histoire, les mathématiques et les sciences naturelles. 4. Je fais de l'arithmétique et du français; mon frère, qui est plus âgé, étudie aussi l'algèbre et le latin. 5. On travaille mais on joue aussi; on s'amuse bien. 6. On joue au tennis et au football [futbal].

(2) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait à l'école? 2. Est-ce qu'on va à l'école pour s'amuser? 3. Pourquoi va-t-on à l'école? 4-6. Faites-vous du latin à l'école? de l'histoire? de l'anglais? 7. Aimez-vous les sports? 8-9. Fait-on du tennis à votre école? du baseball? 10. Jouez-vous au football? 11. Avez-vous un frère? 12. Est-il plus âgé que vous? 13. Est-il plus grand? 14. Aimez-vous les langues ou les sciences naturelles? 15. Faites-vous de l'arithmétique ou de l'algèbre? 16. Aimez-vous l'histoire?

(3) 1. L'après-midi nous retournons de l'école et nous allons à la maison. 2. La porte est fermée. Nous sonnons et on ouvre. 3. Nous entrons dans la maison, et nous commençons à lire le journal avant le dîner. 4. On sonne et nous entrons dans la salle à manger. 5. On commence à dîner. D'abord nous avons du potage. 6. Nous le mangeons avec une cuiller. 7. Puis la bonne apporte la viande et les légumes. 8. Pour les manger nous nous servons d'un couteau et d'une fourchette. 9. Mon petit frère se sert d'une cuiller pour manger tout son dîner. 10. Moi, je suis grand; je me sers d'une fourchette et d'un couteau comme mon père et ma mère. 11. On mange dans une assiette. 12. Puis au dessert, on mange du fruit et on prend du café dans une tasse. 13. Mon petit frère ne prend pas de café parce qu'il est petit. 14. Après le dîner nous lisons les journaux du soir. 15. Puis nous tâchons de préparer nos leçons.

B. (1) Rewrite A (3) above, substituting for the first plural, when possible (a) the first person singular, (b) the third person singular.

(2) a. What do you notice in A (3) about the verb **entrer** when followed by a noun? About **commencer** when followed by an infinitive?

b What have you already noted about tâcher, désirer, vous voulez, when followed by an infinitive? Translate: 1. We try to understand and to speak French. 2. I learn French because I want (*désirer*) to read the works of Balzac. 3. Will you, please, speak slowly?

(3) *Insert the proper subject pronoun:* 1. — me sers. 2. — (m. and f.) se sert. 3. — nous servons. 4. — vous servez. 5. — se servent. *Insert the object pronouns:* 6. Je — appelle. 7. Il — appelle. 8. Nous — appelons. 9. Vous —appelez. 10. Ils — appellent. (*Note the shifts in pronunciation and spelling in the present tense of s'appeler [sable]. These will be discussed in Lesson XIX.*)

(4) *Supply the missing preposition:* 1. Je me sers — ma plume pour écrire. 2. Ils se servent — leur cuiller pour manger le potage. 3. On prend le café — une tasse. 4. Il a une assiette — la main. 5. À l'école on joue — tennis. 6. Nous étudions — le dîner. 7. Nous entrons — la salle à manger. 8. On prend le café — le dîner. 9. Mon petit frère se sert — une cuiller — manger son dîner.

C. *Traduisez en français:* 1. What have you (*two ways*) in your plate? 2. I have meat, vegetables, and bread and butter. I have no fork to (*pour*) eat my dinner [*with*]. 3. What is the maid doing? She is bringing spoons, knives, and forks. 4. We have no fruit for (*the*) dessert. Look! The maid is bringing some into the dining-room now. 5. You are fond of (*aimer*) (*the*) fruit (*plural*), aren't you? Yes, I am fond of (*the*) soup to (*pour*) begin [*with*] and I like (*the*) fruit for dessert. 6. What do you do before (*the*) dinner? We read the evening paper. In the morning we read the morning paper. 7. What do people (*on*) do after (*the*) dinner? They (*On*) work or they (*on*) have a good time. 8. First I prepare my lessons, then I enjoy myself. 9. Does your small sister work (*arrange the question in two ways*)? 10. No, she has a good time. She looks at her books, but she doesn't work.

D. Dictation. Lesson IX, Exercise A, 15 sentences.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce slowly and distinctly with especial attention to syllable division and stress: *mathématiques*, *naturelles*, *arithmétique*, *cuiller*, *couteau*, *nous étudions*, *nous nous appelons*, *vous vous servez*. Try to stress all syllables alike.

(2) a. What do you notice about the spelling of *nous commençons* in A, (3), 3? See § 5, 4. Would this spelling occur in any other form of the present tense of *commencer*? Compare § 78, 1.

b. Is there anything of the same sort in the spelling of *nous mangeons* [nu māʒɔ̃]? See § 17, 18 and compare § 78, 2.

(3) Note the pronunciation of the first plural of *faire*. What sound value does the spelling *ai* oftenest have? What next? Compare *faire*, *je fais*, *j'aime*, *anglais*, *la craie*, *la maison*, *j'ai*.

(4) Write in phonetic characters and read aloud in singular and plural, putting in the definite article: *cuiller*, *couteau*, *fourchette*, *viande*, *fruit*, *légume*, *tasse*, *dessert*.

LESSON XII

51. Feminine of Adjectives. It is regularly formed by adding *-e* to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in *-e* remain unchanged.

Grand, *m.*, *grande*, *f.*, tall; *facile*, *m.* or *f.*, easy.

52. Irregularities. Change of stem takes place in certain adjectives on adding *-e*. The following list shows the commoner types:

M.	F.	M.	F.
<i>actif</i> ,	<i>active</i> , active	<i>cruel</i> ,	<i>cruelle</i> , cruel
<i>heureux</i> ,	<i>heureuse</i> , happy	<i>gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> , nice
<i>flatteur</i> ,	<i>flatteuse</i> , flatter-	<i>ancien</i> ,	<i>ancienne</i> , ancient
	ing	<i>gros</i> ,	<i>grosse</i> , big
<i>blanc</i> ,	<i>blanche</i> , white	<i>muet</i> ,	<i>muette</i> , dumb
<i>long</i> ,	<i>longue</i> , long	<i>cher</i> ,	<i>chère</i> , dear
<i>faux</i> ,	<i>fausse</i> , false	<i>sec</i> ,	<i>sèche</i> , dry

Observe also: *m. beau or bel, f. belle, fine; m. nouveau or nouvel, f. nouvelle, new; m. vieux or vieil, f. vieille, old*, with two forms for the masculine, one of which gives the feminine. The masculine forms in -l are used before a vowel or h mute:

Le *bel* arbre, le *bel* homme. The fine tree, the handsome man.
But: L'arbre est *beau*; le *beau* livre; les *beaux* arbres; les arbres
sont *beaux*.

53. Position. 1. An attributive adjective more usually follows its noun:

Un homme *riche*, une pomme *mûre*. A rich man, a ripe apple.

2. Adjectives from proper nouns, adjectives of physical quality, participles as adjectives, almost always follow:

La langue *anglaise*. The English language.

Du café *chaud*, une lampe *cassée*. Hot coffee, a broken lamp.

3. The following of very common occurrence nearly always precede:

Bon, *good*, mauvais, *bad*; beau, *fine, handsome, joli, pretty, vilain, ugly*; jeune, *young*, vieux, *old*; grand, *tall, great, gros, big, petit, small*; long, *long, court, short*.

4. A number of common adjectives have different meanings according as they precede or follow the noun. Two examples are:

Mon ancien élève. My old (former) pupil. L'histoire ancienne. Ancient history.

Mon cher ami. My dear friend. Un dîner cher. An expensive dinner.

54. Interrogative Adjective. Which? what? what (a)! = *m. quel?* *f. quelle?* *m. pl. quels?* *f. pl. quelles?*

Quel [kel] livre? Which (what) book?

Quelle [kel] plume? Which (what) pen?

A quelle heure? At what time?

Quelle belle vue! *Quels* héros! What a fine view! What heroes!
[kəlero] (see § 17, 5)

55. *There, in that place = y.* It stands for a place already referred to, is put before the verb like a pronoun object, and is less emphatic than *là = there*:

Est-il à l'école? Il *y* [i] est. Is he at school? He is (there).

EXERCISE XII

la dictée [dikte] dictation exercise	joli [ʒɔli] pretty
l'eau <i>f.</i> [lo] water	long [lɔ̃] long
ancien [asjɛ̃] former, old, ancient	mauvais [mœvɛ̃] bad, poor (in quality)
beau, bel [bo] [bel] fine, handsome	muet [myɛ̃] dumb, silent
blanc [blã] white	mûr [my:r] ripe
chaud [ʃo] warm, hot	nouveau [nuvo] new
cher [ʃe:r] dear, expensive	riche [riʃ] rich
court [ku:r] short	vilain [vilɛ̃] ugly, naughty
cruel [kryɛ̃l] cruel	asseyez-vous! [asejɛvu] sit down! (<i>imperative</i>)
facile [fasil] easy	je m'en vais [ʒəmãv̑] I go away
faux [fo] false, deceitful	il s'en va [ilsãv̑] he goes away
gentil [ʒãti] nice, pretty, well-behaved	beaucoup [boku] much, many, a great deal, a great many
grand [grã] large, tall	peu [po] little (<i>quantity</i>), few
gros [gro] big	y [i] there, to it, to them; at, in it, them
heureux [cerø] glad, happy	
jeune [ʒœn] young	

A. (1) Write with each of the following nouns two or more of the adjectives in §§ 51, 52, 53, that may be reasonably used with them, being careful about the position and form: un homme, une sœur, ces journaux, une salle à manger, des bijoux, quelle voix! une jambe, cette bouche, les yeux, une tête, cet oncle, mon ami, quel jour! notre professeur, le monsieur, un mur, une maison, un garçon, un cheval, des fruits, ces livres.

(2) Supply the proper form of a suitable adjective in each case:

- Le potage est très —.
- Mon café n'est pas —.
- Asseyez-vous, mon — ami.
- Le professeur nous donne de* — leçons.
- La dame a de* — bijoux.
- Elle a de* — yeux.
- J'aime les enfants quand ils sont —.

* This use of *de* will be treated in § 59, 2.

8. Louise parle beaucoup; elle n'est pas —. 9. Le fruit est bon quand il est —. 10. Voilà des enfants —.

(3) *Donnez le contraire de:* longue, vieille, jolie, bonne, petite, âgée, noire.

B. *Traduisez en français:* 1. This hot soup. That dumb woman. A nice woman. Their pretty little boy. Her white stockings. 2. Some false stories. Two big (*gros*) spoons. Her long knife. Happy men (*note two cases of linking in this phrase*). 3. What a nice boy! What a short lesson! What a big foot! 4. An English newspaper. An old Frenchman (*see § 21*). A tall (*grand*) Englishman. 5. Their new teacher. A poor (*bad*) teacher. Our old (= former) teacher. Ancient history. 6. Do you want any hot water? There is no hot water. 7. Are we in the classroom? We are (*there*). 8. What do you do in the dining-room? We eat (*in it*). What do you eat (*there*)? We eat bread, meat, vegetables and fruit (*there*). 9. Do you have a good time at school? Yes, we have a very good time (*nous nous amusons beaucoup [boku]*) there. 10. Do you work or (*do you*) play at school? We work a great deal (*there*) and play a little (*there*). 11. I am going [*away*] this evening. What is your sister doing? She is going away this evening.

C. Dictée, Lesson X, B.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Prononcez et écrivez en caractères phonétiques: mon ancienne (*old = former*) place, notre chère amie, un bel homme, une grosse cuiller, une histoire fausse, ma nouvelle maison, une vieille maison, les beaux enfants, un vilain enfant, une courte leçon, une gentille petite fille, des enfants heureux.

(2) As regards pronunciation, is the effect of adding the -e for the feminine the same with all adjectives? Compare, for example, **jolie** and **grande**. On this basis group the adjectives in §§ 51, 52, 53.

(3) Pronounce slowly, with special attention to syllable division and stress: **salle à manger**, **je m'en vais**, **nous commençons**, **les sciences naturelles**.

LESSON XIII

56. Present Indicative of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*

<i>I give, am giving, etc.</i>	<i>I finish, am finishing, etc.</i>	<i>I sell, am selling, etc.</i>
<i>donn e</i> [dən]	<i>fini s</i> [fini]	<i>vend s</i> [vā]
<i>donn es</i> [dən]	<i>fini s</i> [fini]	<i>vend s</i> [vā]
<i>donn e</i> [dən]	<i>fini t</i> [fini]	<i>vend *</i> [vā]
<i>donn ons</i> [dənɔ̃]	<i>finiss ons</i> [finisɔ̃]	<i>vend ons</i> [vādɔ̃]
<i>donn ez</i> [dəne]	<i>finiss ez</i> [finise]	<i>vend ez</i> [vāde]
<i>donn ent</i> [dən]	<i>finiss ent</i> [finis]	<i>vend ent</i> [vā:d]

* Vendre is irregular in this one form. The regular verb rompre has *rompt*, but vendre is here given as being more useful for practice.

NOTE. — The pronouns *je*, *tu*, *il*, etc., have been omitted in this paradigm and in some others to economize space in printing. They should be supplied in learning or reciting the paradigms.

57. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense takes the definite article in French, though not commonly in English:

<i>L'homme est mortel.</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>Les hommes sont mortels.</i>	Men are mortal.
<i>Le miel est très doux.</i>	Honey is very sweet.
<i>Le cheval est un animal utile.</i>	The horse is a useful animal.

58. Tout. All, the whole, every = tout, with the following forms, which precede the article, when it is present:

M.	F.	M.	F.
S. <i>tout</i> [tu] <i>toute</i> [tut]		Pl. <i>tous</i> [tu] <i>toutes</i> [tut]	
<i>Toute</i> ma vie.		All my life.	
<i>Tout</i> le monde.		Everybody (=the whole world).	
<i>Tous</i> les mois.		Every month.	
<i>Toute</i> la semaine.		The whole week.	
<i>Tout</i> homme, <i>toute</i> femme.		Every man, every woman.	
<i>Tous</i> les hommes.		All the men.	
<i>Toute</i> la journée.		The whole day.	

EXERCISE XIII

la balle [bal] ball	content (de) [kōtā] glad (to)
le bois [bwa] wood, woods	fatigué [fatige] tired
la campagne [kāpān] country <i>(in contrast with town); à la campagne to or in the country</i>	tranquille [trākil] quiet, alone <i>(in the expression: leave alone)</i>
le champ [ʃā] field	utile [ytil] useful
un été [ete] summer; en été, l'été in summer	arriver [arive] arrive, come attendre [atā:dr] wait for, expect
la famille [famij] family	chercher [šerše] hunt for; aller chercher, go and get
la femme [fam] woman, wife	se coucher [səkuše] go to bed, lie down; nous nous couchons we go to bed, lie down
la fleur [fleo:r] flower	il fait chaud [ilfɛʃo] it is warm, hot
la gare [ga:r] station	habiter [abite] live in, inhabit
le grand-père [grāpe:r] grandfather	inviter (à) [ɛvite] invite
la grand'mère [grāme:r] grandmother	marcher [marše] walk, go (<i>of train, watch, etc.</i>)
une heure [œ:r] hour; deux heures [døzœ:r] two o'clock	monter [mõte] get (in), climb; monter à cheval ride horse-back
un hiver [œnivɛ:r] winter; en hiver [änivɛ:r], l'hiver [livo:r] in winter	passer [pase] spend (<i>of time</i>), pass
le lit [li] bed	prendre [prā:dr] take, get
le parent [parā] kinsman, parent	se préparer [səprepare] get ready
la poupée [pupe] doll	voir [vwa:r] see
le train [trē] train	comme! [kõm] how! comme [kõm] as, like
les vacances f. [vakā:s] vacation	à pied [apje] on foot
la ville [vil] city, town; en ville in town	si [si] so
la voiture [vwaty:r] carriage, vehicle; en voiture in a carriage (<i>as distinguished from other ways of traveling</i>)	

A. (1) 1. Nous habitons la ville de X—— (*iks*), mais nous aimons la campagne. 2. J'y vais avec ma famille tous les étés. 3. Nous y passons les vacances. 4. J'ai des parents à la campagne, mon grand-père, ma grand'mère, deux oncles et une tante. 5. Ils nous invitent à passer l'été dans leur maison.

6. Quand l'hiver est fini, il fait très chaud en ville et nous nous préparons à aller à la campagne. 7. Je prends ma poupée, mon petit frère prend sa balle. 8. À une heure de l'après-midi nous allons à la gare. 9. Le train arrive à deux heures et nous montons dans une voiture. 10. Le train marche vite et au bout de trois heures nous arrivons à la petite gare. 11. Notre grand'mère et tous nos cousins nous attendent à la gare avec leur voiture. 12. Nous montons dans la voiture. 13. Les deux chevaux marchent lentement et nous avons le temps de voir les jolis champs et les beaux bois. 14. Tout est en fleurs. 15. Il y a des hommes et des chevaux qui travaillent dans les champs. 16. Notre grand-père nous attend à la maison. 17. Il est content de nous voir et nous sommes très contents de le voir aussi. 18. Nous nous couchons (Je me couche) à neuf heures du soir parce que nous sommes fatigués, et nous dormons bien. 19. Les lits sont si bons et tout est tranquille. 20. Comme j'aime la campagne! Les enfants s'amusent beaucoup à la campagne en été. 21. Les garçons montent à cheval, les petites filles jouent avec leurs poupées et cherchent des fleurs dans les champs et dans les bois.

(2) *Imagine that the passage above [A (1)] refers to you. Answer the questions in complete sentences:* 1. Habitez-vous la ville ou la campagne? 2. Aimez-vous la ville en hiver ou en été? 3. Où passez-vous les vacances? 4. Quels parents avez-vous à la campagne? 5. Est-ce que vous prenez [prenez] (pres. of prendre) le train pour aller à la campagne? 6. À quelle heure montez-vous dans le train? 7. Combien d'heures restez-vous dans la voiture? 8. Le train marche-t-il vite ou lentement? 9. Qui vous attend à la petite gare de campagne? 10. Est-ce que votre grand-père y est aussi? 11. Allez-vous à la maison de vos parents à pied ou en voiture? 12. Est-ce que votre grand'mère est contente de vous voir? 13. Êtes-vous fatigué? 14. À quelle heure vous couchez-vous? 15. Dormez-vous bien? 16. Mangez-vous bien? 17. Est-ce que les enfants aiment la campagne? 18. Que font les garçons? 19. Que font les petites filles? 20. Est-ce que les grandes filles montent à cheval aussi? 21. Est-ce que la

campagne est tranquille? 22. Plus tranquille que la ville? 23. Fait-il chaud en ville en été (*or l'été?*) 24. Fait-il plus chaud qu'à la campagne? 25. Fait-il chaud à Saint-Louis [sēlwi] en été? 26. Fait-il plus chaud en été à Chicago ou à Paris [pari]?

B. (1) *Add the proper present endings and read aloud:* J'attend-, nous attend-, ils attend-; nous entend-; ils entend-; je travaille-; je comprend-; vous finissez-; ils s'amusent-; vous jouez-; nous commençons-; nous nous appellez-[apl]-; il finit-; ils finissent-; nous comprenons[kōprən]- (*observe the absence of the d*); comprenez-vous? Je pren[prā]-, il pren[prā]-, nous pren[prən]-, vous prenez[prən]-, ils prenn[prən]-. (*Note the absence of the d in the plural. Note also that the letter e stands for three different sounds in these five forms.*)

(2) a. *Write in parallel columns the present of:* finir, ouvrir, dormir (*sing. je dors, tu dors, il dort; nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment*), sortir, se servir (*sing. je me sers, tu te sers, il se sert*).

b. *Some verbs in -ir are not conjugated in the present like finir. Make a list of those you know that are not, and point out the differences.*

C. *Dites en français:* 1. We open; he is opening; I am sleeping (asleep); are you asleep? Go out! Go to sleep! He is asleep. 2. We go out; we finish; we (make) use (of) these pens; he is finishing his lesson; they are finishing their lesson. 3. They are leaving (going out of) the classroom; they are sleeping; men (on) use (make use of) horses; we sell fruit (*plural*). 4. The whole house; all night (the whole night); all women, all horses. 5. Animals are useful to men; I am very fond of (*aimer beaucoup*) animals. 6. Do you like flowers? Very-much-indeed (*beaucoup*). 7. Little girls like dolls and little boys like horses, but my uncle's son, my little cousin Pierre, likes horses and dolls too.

D. Dictée: Lesson XI, A (3).

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Note the pronunciation of *ville*, *tranquille*. Compare *fille*, *travaille*, *gentille*, *oreille*. Write all six in phonetic characters.

(2) Write B (1), in phonetic characters, after adding the proper endings, and read aloud.

LESSON XIV

59. Partitives. In partitive constructions (§ 36), *de* alone is used:

1. In a general negation (§ 36, 2):

Il n'a pas *de* plumes. He has no pens.

2. When an adjective precedes the noun:

Marie a *de jolies* fleurs. Mary has (some) pretty flowers.

J'ai *de votre* argent. I have some of your money.

But: J'ai *des pommes mûres*. I have (some) ripe apples.

3. Similarly when a noun after an adjective is understood:
De bons rois et de mauvais. Good kings and bad (kings).

4. After words of quantity in such expressions as these:

Beaucoup *de thé*. A great deal of tea (much tea).

Une livre *de viande*. A pound of meat.

Assez *de viande*. Enough (of) meat.

Trop *de pain*. Too much bread.

Il n'a plus *d'argent*. He has no more money.

60. The preposition de + a noun forms adjectival phrases.

Une robe *de soie*. A silk dress.

La feuille *d'érythe*. The maple leaf.

61. Observe the following expressions of frequent use, formed from avoir + an undetermined noun:

avoir <i>besoin</i> [bəzvɛ] <i>de</i> , be in need of, need.	avoir <i>soif</i> [swaf], be thirsty.
avoir <i>chaud</i> [ʃo], be warm.	avoir <i>sommeil</i> [sɔmɛ:j], be sleepy.
avoir <i>froid</i> [frwa], be cold.	avoir <i>raison</i> [rezɔ], be (in the) right.
avoir <i>faim</i> [fɛ], be hungry.	avoir <i>tort</i> [tɔ:r], be (in the) wrong

« LES GLANEUSES »
d'après J.-F. Millet





« LE MARCHÉ AUX CHEVAUX DE PARIS »
d'après Rosa Bonheur

EXERCISE XIV

le chemin [ləʃmē] road (<i>in general</i>); le chemin de fer [ləʃmēdfē:r] railroad	aimer mieux [əmemjø] like better, prefer
la journée [ʒurne] day (<i>when duration is emphasized</i>)	avoir envie de [avwa:rāvi] wish, want
la narration [narasjō] composition, theme	boire [bwa:r] drink
la pomme [pɔm] apple	je bois [bwa] I drink
la robe [rob] dress	vous buvez [byve] you drink
la soie [swa] silk	porter [pɔrte] wear, have on, carry
le sommeil [sɔmɛ:j] sleep	répondre [repɔ:dr] answer, reply to
le verre [vɛ:r] glass (<i>tumbler</i>)	trouver [truve] find, consider, think
le voyage [vwaja:ʒ] voyage, trip	assez [ase] enough, rather bien [bjɛ] well, very juste [žyst] exactly, just trop [trɔ] too much, too many
malheureux [malœʁø] unfortunate, unhappy	quelque chose [kəlkəʒø:z] something
suivant [sɥivã] following	de bonne heure [dəbɔnœ:r] early
	tout de suite [tutsuit] at once

A. 1. Il fait chaud dans les champs en été. 2. Quand on a chaud, on a soif et on a envie de boire de l'eau froide. 3. Voici un verre d'eau que je vais boire. 4. Quand on travaille dans les champs, on a aussi très faim avant l'heure du dîner. 5. On a besoin de manger quelque chose. 6. Le soir on a bien sommeil. 7. On a envie de se coucher de bonne heure. 8. On est content de voir arriver la nuit. 9. On a besoin de six heures de sommeil. 10. — Pardon, monsieur, vous avez tort. Moi, j'ai besoin de huit heures de sommeil toutes les nuits. 11. — Vous dormez beaucoup. Avez-vous sommeil, maintenant? 12. — Oui, madame, j'ai sommeil. J'ai grand besoin de dormir. J'ai froid aussi, et faim. 13. — Vous avez sommeil et froid et faim! Vous êtes très malheureux. Allez vous coucher tout de suite. 14. — Vous avez raison. Je vais me coucher, mais d'abord j'ai grand besoin de manger quelque chose parce que j'ai très faim. 15. Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, une tasse

de thé, beaucoup de viande, et des légumes. 16. Nous avons assez de pain, mais il n'y a pas trop de beurre dans cette assiette. 17. J'ai besoin aussi de plus de café; je n'en ai pas assez. 18. — Buvez-vous du café? — Oui, j'en bois beaucoup. 19. — Eh bien, mon ami, vous avez tort. Ne buvez pas trop de café. 20. — Merci. Je n'en bois pas trop; j'en bois juste assez.

B. Supply the proper form of expression for some, any, no, as demanded by the sentences: 1. J'attends aujourd'hui — parents de la campagne. 2. Édouard n'a pas — parents à la campagne. 3. Il n'y a pas — fruit cet été. 4. Mon grand-père me donne — bonnes pommes. 5. Nous cherchons — pommes pour le dessert. 6. Ma sœur a — jolies poupées; elle a beaucoup — poupées. 7. Les petits garçons n'ont pas — poupées; ils ont — bonnes balles. 8. Je vois — fleurs; il ne voit pas — fleurs; nous voyons — jolies fleurs et — vilaines; voyez-vous assez — fleurs à la campagne? Ils voient [vwa] (*third plural*) — fleurs blanches dans les champs.

C. (1) Traduisez: 1. When a man (*use on*) works in the fields in summer, he (*on*) gets (*avoir*) hungry and thirsty and he (*on*) wants some cold water. But do not drink too much cold water. 2. What do you want for your dinner? Some hot soup, some vegetables, meat and fruit. I am very hungry and I need a good dinner. 3. There is no water in her glass. There is no tea in his cup. They need cold water and hot tea. 4. Are there any pupils in the classroom? Yes, there are some small boys and some pretty little girls. They are playing and are having a very good time. 5. These little girls have-on (*porter*) pretty silk dresses. Boys do not wear silk dresses. 6. These children play all day [*long*] (the whole day: "day" = *journée*). They are hungry and sleepy at dinner time (*à l'heure du dîner*). They need a great deal of sleep. 7. I need more sleep. You sleep too much. I invite you to go to bed (*vous coucher*) at once.

(2) Fermez le livre et écrivez comme narration un voyage à la campagne.

D. Répondez en français aux questions suivantes: 1. Habitez-vous la campagne? 2. Restez-vous en ville en hiver? 3. Où passez-vous l'été? 4. Y avez-vous des parents? 5. Quels parents avez-vous à la campagne? 6. Est-ce qu'ils vous invitent à aller les voir? 7. Quels parents avez-vous dans la ville? 8. Comment allez-vous à la campagne, à pied, à cheval ou en chemin de fer? 9. Où va-t-on (*do you go, does one go*) pour prendre le train? 10. Est-ce qu'on prend le train à la maison? 11. Est-ce que le train marche vite? 12. Est-ce qu'on vous attend à la petite gare de campagne? 13. Qui est-ce qui vous attend à la gare? 14. Allez-vous à pied de la gare à la maison de vos parents? 15. Qui trouvez-vous à la maison? 16. Sont-ils contents de vous voir? 17. Et vous, êtes-vous content de les voir? 18. À quelle heure vous couchez-vous? 19. Les enfants aiment-ils la campagne? 20. Que font les garçons? 21. Et les petites filles, montent-elles à cheval aussi? 22. Que voyez-vous à la campagne? 23. Aimez-vous mieux la campagne en hiver ou en été?

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Pronounce: **quand on, grand homme, neuf heures, dix heures, les eaux.** See § 18, 1.

(2) Pronounce **sommeil.** With what does it rhyme?

(3) Pronounce: **faim, pain, bien, ancien, besoin, latin, main.**

(4) Pronounce: **eau, chaud, trop, quelque chose.** Be careful about lip position.

(5) a. Pronounce; **sœur, leur, heure, beurre, œil, fleur, jeune.** Write each in phonetic characters. Pronounce: **deux, bleu, yeux, veut, monsieur, vieux, peu.** Write each in phonetic characters.

b. In the first group, is the vowel (spelled **eu, œu, œ**) followed by a consonant sound? What is true of the vowel of the second group? Try to make a rule as to when these spellings give [œ], and when they give [ø].

c. For which of these sounds is the mouth more open? For which are the lips more tense? In trying to make these sounds many English-speaking people fail to project the lips enough

Too often also they allow the tongue to move, giving a disagreeable *r* sound. Avoid this fault by all means.

In view of the above (*b*), how do you explain the pronunciation of the second and third vowels of **malheureux** [malœrø]?

LESSON XV

62. Past Participles

<i>donner</i>	<i>finir</i>	<i>vendre</i>	<i>avoir</i>	<i>être</i>
<i>given</i>	<i>finished</i>	<i>sold</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>been</i>
donné [dõne]	fini [fini]	vendu [vãdy]	eu [y]	été [ete]

63. Compound Tenses. They are formed from the past participle along with an auxiliary (usually *avoir*, sometimes *être*, see § 155), as in the following section.

64. The Past Indefinite

<i>I have given, or I gave, etc.</i>	<i>I have finished, or I finished, etc.</i>	<i>I have sold, or I sold, etc.</i>
j'ai donné [zedõne] tu as donné [tyadõne] etc.	j'ai fini [zefini] tu as fini [tyafini] etc.	j'ai vendu [zevãdy] tu as vendu [tyavãdy] etc.
<i>I have had, or I had, etc.</i>		<i>I have been, or I was, etc.</i>
j'ai eu [sey] tu as eu [tyazy] il a eu [ilay] etc.		j'ai été [zeete] tu as été [tyazete] il a été [ilacte] etc.

65. Word Order. The auxiliary is the verb in a compound tense, and all rules of word order apply to it:

Nous ne l'avons pas fini.	We have not finished it.
N'a-t-elle pas été ici?	Has she not been here?

66. Use of Past Indefinite. It denotes not only what has happened or has been happening, as in English, but also what happened (= English past tense):

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
Elle a chanté toute la matinée.	She has been singing all morning.
Il a été longtemps ici.	He was here for a long time.
J'ai quitté Paris l'hiver passé.	I left Paris last winter.

N.B.—The past indefinite is the ordinary past tense of French. For the past tense of narrative in the literary style, see § 148.

67. Idiomatic Present Indicative. Besides its use in general, as in English, the present indicative is used idiomatically, in certain phrases, to denote what has been and still continues to be:

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?	How long have you been here?
Je suis ici depuis trois jours.	I have been here for three days (or for three days past, or for the last three days).

EXERCISE XV

une année [ane] year (<i>when duration is emphasized</i>)	passé [pase] past, last
un arbre [enarbr] tree	sec [sek] dry (§ 52)
le blé [ble] wheat	vert [ve:r] green
le déjeuner [dezhene] lunch	chanter [shate] sing
la feuille [fœ:j] leaf, sheet (<i>of paper</i>)	couper [kupe] cut
la forêt [fɔrɔ] forest	mûrir [myri:r] get ripe, ripen
la matinée [matine] morning	vu [vy] seen (<i>past participle</i>)
le mois [mwa] month	visiter [vizite] go to see (<i>in detail</i>), inspect
un oiseau [wazo] bird	aujourd'hui [ɔzurdɥi] to-day
le pays [pei] country, land	hier [jɛ:r] yesterday
le pommier [pomje] apple tree	huit jours [ɥiʒu:r] a week
le raisin [rezɛ] grapes	longtemps [lɔtɑ] long (time)
la vigne [viŋ] grape vine	quinze jours [kɛ:zʒu:r] two weeks
le vin [vɛ̃] wine	
agricole [agrikɔl] agricultural	depuis [dəpɥi] since
célèbre [selɛbr] famous	pendant [pãdã] during
excellent [eksəlã] excellent	depuis quand [dəpɥikã] since when, how long (<i>conj.</i>)
industriel [ɛdystriel] manu-	si [si] if
facturing	

A. 1. Depuis quand êtes-vous ici à la campagne? 2. — Nous sommes ici depuis deux mois. 3. — Que faites-vous? — Oh, nous nous amusons bien. 4. Hier j'ai passé toute la matinée à cheval et j'ai eu très faim avant l'heure du déjeuner. 5. J'ai été content de voir arriver le déjeuner. 6. Après le déjeuner j'ai visité les bois et les champs avec mon oncle. 7. Nous avons regardé le blé, qui est beau cette année. 8. Il a mûri pendant l'été; on va le couper. 9. Nous avons besoin de blé pour faire le pain. 10. Le pain français est excellent. J'ai mangé du pain aujourd'hui à mon déjeuner. 11. Puis nous avons visité les pommiers et les vignes. 12. Les pommes ne sont pas belles cette année, mais le raisin est excellent. 13. On va en faire de bon vin. On n'a pas fait de très bon vin l'année passée. 14. Il a fait trop froid en été et le raisin n'a pas bien mûri. 15. Les vins français sont célèbres. On en voit très peu en Amérique maintenant. 16. La France est un pays agricole. La Belgique [belʒik] est un pays industriel. 17. Dans les bois nous avons regardé les beaux arbres. 18. Leurs feuilles sont vertes et dans les arbres on entend chanter des oiseaux. 19. Il y a de jolis bois en France. 20. Si vous allez en France, allez voir les forêts de Chantilly [ʃɑ̃tiji] et de Fontainebleau [fɔ̃tɛnblo]. 21. On ne coupe pas beaucoup d'arbres dans ces forêts-là et il y en a qui sont très vieux.

B. (1) *With what French words is the Idiomatic Present generally found? What verb form in English conveys the same meaning as the Idiomatic Present?*

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. We have been here for a week. 2. The piece of bread is too dry; it has been on the table for a fortnight (*quinze jours*). 3. How long have you been studying French? 4. We have been studying French for three months. 5. How long have you been hungry? 6. I have been hungry since five o'clock. 7. Aren't you mistaken (*wrong*)? No, I am right. 8. Wheat ripens in summer. I saw a great deal in the fields in France. 9. We need wheat to make bread. 10. They (*On*) make a great deal of wine in France. 11. Very little is made (*use on*) in America. 12. You (*On*) hear many birds sing in (*the*) French forests (*de la France*).

(3) *What word do we find after content before an infinitive? After inviter? Does the pure infinitive follow entendre or is it preceded by a preposition? Notice in A, 18 the word order in French after entendre. In what two ways may the infinitive after entendre be translated into English? Translate: Pourquoi n'entend-on pas chanter les oiseaux en hiver?*

C. *Traduisez:* 1. We invited him (*see § 65 for word order*). They did not wait for him. She hunted for Pierre and Louise. 2. The pupils finished their lessons. 3. We did not sell the bread. 4. We were (*use past indef.*) in the country last summer. Our cousins were not at the station yesterday. 5. I was hungry for a long time (*see § 66, example 3*). They were cold all the morning (*la matinée*). 6. It was (*Il a fait*) cold last winter. Were you not thirsty yesterday? 7. We worked all summer. Did you wait for the train? Did you need the carriage yesterday?

D. *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Où passez-vous les vacances? 2. Depuis quand êtes-vous à la campagne? 3. Aimez-vous à monter à cheval? 4. Avez-vous visité les champs? 5. Qu'avez-vous vu dans les champs? 6. Le blé est-il beau cette année? 7. A-t-il mûri pendant l'hiver ou pendant l'été? 8. Est-ce qu'on va couper le blé? 9. Que fait-on avec le blé? 10. Avez-vous vu des arbres? 11. Quel fruit les pommiers donnent-ils (*bear*)? 12. Et les vignes quel fruit donnent-elles? 13. Est-ce que les pommes sont bonnes cette année? 14. Ont-elles mûri? 15. Que fait-on avec le raisin? 16. Fait-on beaucoup de vin en France? 17. Fait-on beaucoup de vin en Amérique? 18. Est-ce que la France est un pays industriel? 19. Où est-ce qu'on trouve de grands arbres? 20. Avez-vous visité une forêt? 21. Est-elle grande ou petite? 22. Donnez les noms de deux forêts célèbres en France. 23. Qu'est-ce qu'on voit dans une forêt en été? 24. Qu'est-ce qu'on y entend? 25. Voit-on des feuilles vertes en hiver? 26. Est-ce qu'on entend chanter les oiseaux en hiver?

E. *Dictée: Lesson XIII, A (1).*

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) Write phonetically and read aloud: *nous avons eu, il a eu, vous avez été, depuis, depuis quand, ils ont vendu.*

(2) Is the word *eu* pronounced as you would expect? Note that this spelling combination is pronounced thus only in forms of *avoir*. What two other sounds does it stand for? Is there any way of knowing which sound value it should have in a given word? Compare Lesson XIV, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (5), b.

LESSON XVI

68. Comparatives. Place **plus** = *more*, **moins** = *less*, or **aussi** = *as*, before the adjective, and **que** = *than* or *as* after it, to form the comparative:

Il est <i>plus</i> grand <i>que</i> Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est <i>moins</i> grand <i>que</i> Jean.	He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.
Il est <i>aussi</i> grand <i>que</i> Jean.	He is as tall as John.

69. Superlatives. 1. Place the definite article or a possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins** to form the superlative:

Marie est la p'us jeune de toutes. Mary is the youngest of all.

Obs.: La plus jeune des deux. The younger of the two.

NOTE. — *In*, after a superlative, is translated by *de*: *le meilleur élève de la classe*, *the best student in the class*.

2. Do not omit the definite article when the superlative follows the noun:

<i>La leçon la plus difficile.</i>	The most difficult lesson.
<i>Mes livres les plus utiles.</i>	My most useful books.

70. Irregular Comparison. Observe the irregular forms: *bon* [bɔ̃], good *meilleur* [mɛjœ:r], better *le meilleur* [lə mɛjœ:r] the best

71. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. They are compared by **plus** and **moins** like adjectives, but **le** in the superlative is invariable.

2. Observe the irregular forms:

bien [bjɛ̃], well	mieux [mjø], better	le mieux [lø mjø], (the) best
peu [pø], little	moins [mwɛ̃], less	le moins [lø mwɛ̃], (the) least

72. Present Indicative of *aller*, to go (irreg.)

I go, am going, etc.

je *vais* [zøve]

tu *vas* [tyva]

il *va* [ilva]

We go, are going, etc.

nous *allons* [nuzalø]

vous *allez* [vuzale]

ils *vont* [ilvø]

73. Imperative of *aller*, to go

va [va], go

allons [alø], let us go

allez [ale], go

EXERCISE XVI

l' air <i>m.</i> [ɛ:r] air	la rose [ro:z] rose
la cerise [lasri:z] cherry	la route [rut] highway, main road, route
le cerisier [løsrizje] cherry tree	la rue [ry] street
le chou [ʃu] cabbage	la tulipe [tylip] tulip
les haricots verts [le arikɔ vɛ:r] string beans (<i>see</i> § 17, 5)	difficile [difi:sil] hard, difficult
l' herbe <i>f.</i> [erb] grass	fruitier [fruitje] fruit bearing
le jardin [ʒardɛ̃] yard, lawn, park, garden	meilleur [mɛjœ:r] better
le lapin [lapɛ̃] rabbit	quelque [kɛlkɛ] some; <i>in pl</i> (<i>usually</i>) few
la partie [parti] part, game, party	utile [ytil] useful
la pêche [pɛ:ʃ] peach	
les petits pois [leptipwa] green peas	mieux [mjø] better
la poire [pwa:r] pear	moins [mwɛ̃] less, fewer
le poirier [pwarje] pear tree	toujours [tužu:r] always, still
le pommier [pomje] apple tree	
la pomme de terre [pømdøtɛ:r] (Irish) potato	aussi . . . que [osi kə] as . . . as, (<i>see</i> § 68)

A. (1) 1. Nous sommes toujours à la campagne. 2. Il fait moins chaud à la campagne et l'air y est meilleur que dans la ville. 3. Les grandes routes et les chemins sont plus jolis que les rues, et j'aime mieux les fleurs des champs et les feuilles vertes des grands arbres que les petits jardins des maisons de ville. 4. Dans la ville les jardins sont très petits et beaucoup de maisons n'en ont pas. 5. Dans ces petits jardins on voit un peu d'herbe et quelques arbres. 6. À la campagne les jardins sont plus grands. 7. On y trouve des fleurs, des arbres fruitiers, des légumes, de l'herbe. 8. Nous aimons mieux les jardins de campagne que les jardins de ville.

(2) 1. Allons voir le jardin de mon grand-père. Voilà les légumes. 2. Dans cette partie du jardin il y a des pommes de terre, des choux, des petits pois et des haricots verts. 3. Aimez-vous les choux? J'aime mieux les pommes de terre, les petits pois et les haricots verts que les choux. 4. Le chou est le légume le plus utile pour les lapins. Ils aiment beaucoup les choux. 5. Dans cette autre partie du jardin il y a des fleurs et des arbres fruitiers. 6. Voici des roses et des tulipes. Voilà des cerisiers, des pommiers et des poiriers. 7. La cerise et la poire sont excellentes, mais la pomme et la pêche sont meilleures. 8. La pêche est le meilleur de tous les fruits, mais elle est moins utile que la pomme. 9. Nous avons besoin de légumes et de fruits pour la table. 10. Il y a peu d'arbres fruitiers dans la ville, mais il y en a beaucoup dans le jardin de mon grand-père à la campagne.

B. (1) *Supply the missing words:* 1. — quand êtes-vous dans la classe? 2. Nous y — depuis neuf heures. 3. Depuis — étudiez-vous le français? 4. Je l'— depuis deux mois. 5. Le pain est sur la table — hier. 6. C'est l'hiver, il — froid depuis un mois. 7. J'— froid depuis huit jours.

(2) *Supply the proper form of the verb given in the infinitive:*
 1. (attendre) Il — son père depuis une heure. 2. (mûrir) Ce blé — depuis huit jours. 3. (chanter) Les oiseaux — depuis cinq heures. 4. (avoir) Pierre — faim depuis onze heures. 5. (être) Nous — à la campagne depuis quinze

jours. 6. (voir) Nous avons — hier une belle forêt.
 7. (finir) Nous — nos leçons. 8. (mûrir) Les pommes — vite. 9. (aller) Ces enfants — à l'école tous les jours. 10. (aller) Nos amis — à la campagne tous les étés. 11. (être) Il a — longtemps en France. 12. (être) Il — depuis longtemps en France.

(3) a. *What is the difference between meilleur and mieux? Is this clear from the English equivalent?*

b. *Note carefully the difference between: Il y a un peu de beurre sur la table, and il y a peu de (not much; negative force) beurre sur la table. We cannot say Il y a un peu de pommes sur mes arbres; we must say il y a quelques pommes sur mes arbres. Un peu can be used only before nouns in what number? What is the case in regard to quelques? What is the force of Il y a eu peu de pommes de terre l'année passée? Of Nous allons avoir quelques choux cette année pour nos lapins? Of Nous allons avoir peu de choux cette année pour nos lapins? What is the difference between the last two sentences?*

(4) a. *Écrivez au tableau noir au comparatif et au superlatif: bon, bien; petit, peu; difficile, excellente, ancienne, sèche, vilain, gentille.*

b. *Which of these adjectives usually precede or follow the noun?*

c. *On the basis of A (1), 3, make a rule for the gender of an adjective qualifying two nouns of different genders.*

C. (1) *Écrivez en français:* 1. The most useful vegetable. The hardest lesson. The hardest part of the lesson. 2. My largest rabbit. My best peach. His best pear. His most beautiful rose. 3. Our most difficult lesson. Little money. A little money. 4. Fewer green peas. A few (some) green peas. 5. We work better. We dine better. Our dinner is better. 6. Fruit (*pl.*) is better than cabbage (*pl.*). She hears better. They see better. 7. We write better. A better book. Fewer string beans. 8. A little tired. Not very tired. A little boy. 9. A few little boys. Fewer little girls. Not many (= few) little girls.

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. I prefer the country to the city (like better . . . than . . .) in summer. 2. It is less warm and

the air is better. 3. We went (*use être*) to the country last summer. 4. Our relatives have a large yard (*jardin*), but they have little fruit this year. 5. It (*Ce*) is not a good year for fruit (*plural*). Last year was better. 6. The leaves and grass were greener last summer. 7. I like the flowers too. Roses are the most beautiful of all flowers.

D. *Compose questions to which the following sentences may be considered replies:* 1. Je suis à la campagne. 2. Je passe l'hiver en ville. 3. J'aime mieux la campagne en été. 4. Les chemins sont plus jolis que les rues. 5. Oui, madame, les routes sont plus grandes que les chemins. 6. Il y a plus d'herbe à la campagne. 7. J'aime mieux les pommes de terre que les choux. 8. Les lapins mangent les choux. 9. Voici la partie la plus difficile de cette leçon. 10. Voilà le plus grand des arbres. 11. J'ai un petit jardin devant ma maison de ville. 12. Le jardin de ma maison de campagne est plus joli. 13. Je travaille depuis huit heures. 14. Nous n'avons pas besoin de ces livres. 15. Non, la Belgique est un pays industriel. 16. Nous allons passer huit jours à New-York.

E. Dictée: Lesson XV, A.

LESSON XVII

74. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In a compound tense with *avoir* the past participle agrees in gender and number with a direct object which precedes it:

J'ai fini mes leçons.

I have finished my lessons.

Je les ai finies.

I have finished them.

Quels livres a-t-il achetés?

What books has he bought?

N.B.—Remember that the participle does not agree with *en*, e.g., *Avez-vous des plumes? Oui, j'en ai acheté hier.* *Have you any pens? Yes, I bought some yesterday.*

2. When used as an adjective, the past participle agrees like an adjective:

La plume achetée hier.

The pen bought yesterday.

75. Some Relatives. 1. The relative pronouns of most common use are **qui** as subject, and **que** as direct object of a verb:

La dame *qui* chante.

The lady who sings.

Les livres *qui* sont ici.

The books which are here.

Les pommes *que* j'ai achetées.

The apples that I have bought.

2. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le pain *que* j'ai acheté hier.

The bread I bought yesterday

EXERCISE XVII

le cigare [sigair] cigar

acheter [aʃte] buy

la cigarette [sigaret] cigarette

écrit [ekri] written (*past part.*)

la cuisine [kjuzin] kitchen, cooking

être à [e:tr a] belong to

la cuisinière [kjuzinje:r] cook

faire visite à go to see, pay a visit

le facteur [faktœ:r] postman, porter

fumer [fymer] smoke

le franc [frā] franc

ouvrir [uvri:r] open

le kilo(gramme) [kilo(gram)] kilogram (*about 2 lbs., 3 oz.*)

ouvert [uve:r] open (*past participle of ouvrir*)

la laitue [læty] lettuce

payer [peje] pay for, pay

le marché [marʃe] market

prendre [prā:dr] take, get

les messieurs [mesjø] gentlemen

pris [pri] got, taken (*past participle of prendre*)

le poulet [pule] chicken

alors [alɔ:r] then, therefore

les provisions f. [provizjõ] food, provisions

comme [kõm] as

la salade [salad] salad

encore [ākɔ:r] again, still, yet

cher [ʃe:r] dear, costly

ensuite [āsqit] then, in the next place

quelqu'un [kelkœ̃] some one

peut-être [pøtɛ:tr] perhaps

A. 1. Nous avons été (*went*) au marché ce matin. 2. Nous avons pris nos provisions pour ce soir, parce que nous allons avoir des amis à dîner. 3. Nous avons pris des légumes, des fruits, des fleurs et deux poulets. 4. Tout est cher maintenant. Nous avons payé les deux poulets douze francs. 5. Comme fruit nous avons pris du raisin blanc que nous

avons payé quatre francs le kilo(-gramme). 6. Les roses et les tulipes que nous avons prises pour la table sont chères aussi. Nous les avons payées dix francs. 7. Voici les légumes que nous avons achetés: des pommes de terre, de la laitue et des petits pois. 8. D'abord nous allons manger le potage. 9. Puis on va apporter des pommes de terre avec des petits pois. 10. Ensuite on va apporter (servir) le poulet et la salade de laitue et puis, après, nous allons avoir du raisin blanc. 11. Ensuite nous allons prendre du café et les messieurs vont fumer des cigares ou des cigarettes. 12. La cuisinière qui est dans la cuisine prépare maintenant un excellent dîner. 13. J'ai très faim depuis longtemps. 14. Je vais être content de manger quelque chose.

B. (1) *The past participle of ouvrir is ouvert; of écrire, écrit; of prendre, pris; of comprendre, — (?)*. Pronounce the feminine form of these participles. Is the change one of spelling simply, or of spelling and sound both? What is true of the change in participles like fini, eu, vu, acheté, fumé? Compare with these the following adjectives, giving in each case the feminine form: un, grand, petit, mauvais, heureux, facile, faux, gentil, ancien, gros, vieux, joli, court, vilain, quel, bleu. See Lesson XII, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (2).

(2) *Substitute pronouns for the object nouns, making the necessary changes:* 1. Il a mangé les pommes de terre. 2. Nous avons écrit deux lettres à nos parents. 3. La bonne a apporté les cuillers. 4. Nous avons passé nos vacances chez nos parents. 5. Il a ouvert la porte. 6. J'ai écrit cette lettre. 7. Quelqu'un a pris nos cerises. 8. Qui a mangé leurs poires?

(3) *Supply the correct form of the participle:* 1. (écrire) Voici les lettres que mon frère a —. 2. (prendre) La plume que vous avez — sur la table est au professeur. 3. (acheter) Je n'aime pas la viande que la bonne a —. 4. (ouvrir) À qui est la lettre qu'il a — ? 5. (ouvrir) La lettre qu'il a — hier est à Jean. 6. (visiter) J'aime la belle forêt que nous avons — aujourd'hui. 7. (écrire) Comment trouvez-vous (*What do you think of*) la lettre que j'ai — à notre tante? 8. (ouvrir) Allez fermer la porte que cet enfant a —, s'il

vous plaît. 9. (ouvrir) Cette porte n'est pas _____. 10. (écrire) Ma lettre n'est pas encore _____. 11. (prendre) Je n'aime pas la voiture que vous avez _____ pour moi.

(4) *Reply to the questions, using in each case a pronoun object:*

1. Qui a écrit cette lettre? 2. Est-ce que votre oncle l'a ouverte? 3. L'avez-vous prise sur ma table de travail?
4. Avez-vous vu les lettres que nous avons écrites? 5. Est-ce que quelqu'un a pris nos pêches? 6. Pierre a-t-il écrit ces deux lettres? 7. A-t-il donné les lettres au facteur? 8. Le facteur a-t-il pris les lettres que vous avez écrites ce matin?

(5) *Use correctly in sentences: mieux, aussi... que, depuis, depuis quand, peu de, un peu de, quelques, meilleur, on, de bonne heure, tous les soirs.*

(6) *How does the French use of the tense compounded with the present of the auxiliary (perfect, or past indefinite) differ from its use in English? Did you ever hear a Frenchman speaking English use sentences like these: "I have seen him yesterday?" "I have arrived in America two months ago?" How do you explain his mistake?*

(7) *Thus far what three uses of the present form of verbs have we had? Compare: je travaille, il arrive demain, je travaille depuis l'heure du déjeuner. What two uses of the perfect form (past indefinite) have we had?*

C. (1) *Vary A (orally or in writing) using subject pronouns of other persons and numbers.*

(2) a. *Note that the French idiom often differs from the English. The French say: écoutez le professeur; regardez le poulet; ils ont payé leur dîner; nous attendons le train. What is the general difference here between French and English?*

b. *Nous entrons dans la salle, la cuisinière entre dans la cuisine. How does this verb contrast with the four given above?*

c. *In A, (2) and (3), what special meaning does the verb prendre have?*

(3) *Write French sentences in which you use correctly in the present and in the past indefinite: écouter, payer, regarder, aimer mieux, avoir besoin de, avoir raison, faire chaud, avoir chaud, prendre.*

D. *Traduisez:* 1. Have you been to market? Yes, I was there early this morning, to get our provisions for this evening. I got some meat and vegetables. 2. The fruit (*plural*) that I see is dear and is not very good, but the flowers that we bought are very pretty. There they are. 3. We expect some friends this evening who are very fond of (*aimer beaucoup*) flowers. The gentlemen like to (*à*) smoke. Here are some cigars and cigarettes I bought. 4. We are going to have an excellent dinner: soup, potatoes, peas, chicken, a lettuce salad, and then, as dessert, grapes, and, afterwards, coffee. 5. How long have your friends been here? They have been here for a week. 6. They are visiting (*être en visite chez*) their relatives. They are going to stay a few days longer (still a few days), perhaps a fortnight (fifteen days).

LESSON XVIII

76. Tenses with *être*. 1. The verb *être* + the past participle form the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 82) and of some intransitive verbs, of which the following are the most important:

aller [ale] go, be (<i>of health</i>)	naître [ne:tr] be born
arriver [arive] arrive, get (to)	rentrer [rätre] come back again
descendre [desä:dr] go down, stop (at a hotel)	partir [parti:r] go away, leave
devenir [dëvni:r] become	rester [reste] stay, remain
entrer (dans) [ätre] enter, go in	sortir (de) [sörti:r] go out
monter [môte] go up, get (in), climb	tomber [tôbe] fall
	venir [vəni:r] come

NOTE.—It will be observed that all of these intransitive verbs, except *rester*, denote a change of place or state.

2. The past participle of a verb (not reflexive) conjugated with *être* agrees with the subject, thus:

I have arrived, etc.

je suis arrivé(e) [arive]	nous sommes arrivé(e)s [arive]
tu es arrivé(e) [arive]	vous êtes arrivé(e)s [arive]
il (elle) est arrivé(e) [arive]	ils (elles) sont arrivé(e)s [arive]



Copyright, Underwood & Underwood

LE MARCHÉ AUX FLEURS, PARIS



À LA GARE DU NORD, PARIS

EXERCISE XVIII

la comédie [kōmedi] comedy	aller [ale] go, be (<i>of health</i>)
le concert [kōsse:r] concert	s'en aller [sənale] go away
la fois [fwa] time	arriver [arive] arrive, get (to)
une fois one time, once	descendre [desā:dr] go down, stop
le lundi [lēdi] Monday	partir (de) [parti:r] go away, leave
le magasin [magazē] shop, store	tomber [tōbe] fall
le musée [myze] museum	venir [vəni:r] come; venu [vəny]
la musique [myzik] music	come (<i>past part.</i>)
le palais [pale] palace	causer [koze] talk, chat
le parc [park] park	mener [məne] take, lead
la pièce [pjēz] play, room	quitter [kite] leave, quit
le restaurant [restorā] restaur- rant	rire [ri:r] laugh: ri [ri] laughed (<i>past part.</i>)
le salon [salō] drawing room, parlor	directement [direkt(ə)mā] di- rectly, straight
le taxi [taksi] taxi	midi [midi] noon
le temps [tā] time (<i>period</i>), weather	minuit [minɥi] midnight
le théâtre [tea:tr] theater, stage	partout [partu] everywhere
le tramway [tramwe] street car, tramway	chez [ʃe] at the house (office) of, with

A. (1) 1. Nos parents de la campagne sont chez nous depuis huit jours. 2. Nous sommes très contents de les voir. 3. Ils sont arrivés lundi par le train de midi. 4. Nous ne sommes pas allés les chercher à la gare. 5. Ils ont pris un taxi à la gare et ils sont venus directement à la maison. 6. Ils ne sont pas descendus à un hôtel. 7. Nous les menons partout pour les amuser. 8. Nous avons pris le tramway et nous avons visité les différentes parties de la ville. 9. Nous les avons menés aux grands magasins de la ville, aux musées, et au concert pour entendre de la musique. 10. Nous les avons menés deux fois au théâtre pour voir jouer * des pièces. 11. Nous avons été hier soir au théâtre. 12. Nous sommes entrés dans la salle à huit heures et nous avons trouvé nos places. 13. On

* Observe the word order here. Compare for position and translation with the infinitive after voir (*see XIV. A, 8*) and entendre (*XV. B, 3*).

a joué le *Bourgeois gentilhomme* [burʒwaʒãtijõm] de Molière qui nous a beaucoup amusés. 14. C'est une excellente comédie et nous en avons beaucoup ri. 15. Nous sommes sortis du théâtre après minuit. 16. La nuit était (*was*) très noire et un de nos cousins est tombé.

(2) 1. Nous sommes restés quelque [kelkə] temps au salon pour causer avant d'aller nous coucher. 2. Aujourd'hui nous sommes tous [tus] très fatigués, mais notre tante et deux de nos cousines sont parties de bonne heure. 3. Elles vont visiter le palais et le parc de Versailles [versa:j]. 4. Demain toute la famille va voir le grand marché de Paris, les Halles [le al] (see § 17, 5), et ce soir nous allons les mener dîner dans un des grands restaurants. 5. Ils vont rester encore quelques jours chez nous. 6. Ils vont partir dans huit jours.

B. (1) Supply the auxiliary of the past indefinite tense and use the proper form of the participle: 1. (entrer) Nous — — ; (partir) elle — — ; (aller) elles — — au marché; (monter) nous — — dans la voiture. 2. (descendre) Madame Durand [dyrã] — — à l'hôtel Crillon [krijõ]. 3. (arriver) La petite fille — — hier chez son grand-père. 4. (sortir) Monsieur n'est pas à la maison; il — — tout de suite après le déjeuner. 5. (aller) Les enfants — — se coucher de bonne heure. 6. (entrer) Les élèves — — dans la classe. 7. (venir) Elles ne — pas — à l'école aujourd'hui. 8. (partir) Nos amis — — hier pour la France; (quitter) ils — — Chicago lundi. 9. (quitter) Nous — — notre amie dans la rue et elle* — — tout de suite. 10. (quitter) Nous la — — après le déjeuner.

(2) a. Observe the difference in meaning and use between **aller**, **s'en aller**, **partir**, **sortir**, **quitter**. We say in French: je vais chez moi après la classe, but we do not say: la classe est finie, je vais; instead, we say, je pars, je m'en vais. That is, with **aller** alone some expression of place is usually added. Examples: nous allons dans le jardin; nous y allons; il va en France; il y va. **Aller** alone does not mean "leave, go away."

* Use the proper form of **s'en aller**.

For that we use partir or s'en aller. Study the different meanings: je vais à New-York demain; à quelle heure partez-vous? Je pars de Chicago (je quitte Chicago) demain à 9 heures; il est allé à la campagne hier; il est parti (s'en est allé) hier matin; il a quitté le train à la petite gare. *Is quitter transitive?* What auxiliary does it take? Observe too that the English "come" is often expressed in French by arriver: je suis arrivé par le train de huit heures.

b. Write a group of sentences about a trip to the country in which you use correctly aller, partir, quitter.

C. (1) Sortir means "to go out": je sors de la salle à manger après le dîner; il sort de sa chambre; nous sommes sortis de la cuisine. Où est la cuisinière? Elle est sortie. Est-ce que Monsieur Hugo est chez lui (*at home*)? Non, mademoiselle, monsieur est sorti.

(2) Observe that the present tense of servir, partir, sortir, dormir is not inflected like that of finir, mûrir. Compare Lesson XIII, B, (2). Write and read aloud the present tense of these six verbs. Note that servir alone means "to serve," and that used with the personal object pronoun (reflexive) and the preposition de (se servir de) it means "to use" "make use of." Observe also that the past participle of venir is different from that of other verbs in -ir. Mon frère est venu nous voir hier; elles sont venues de bonne heure.

D. (1) Rewrite A, substituting une de mes cousines for nos parents and je for nous, where the sense allows it. Pay especial attention to the use of auxiliaries and to participle agreement.

(2) What seems to be the difference of meaning between temps and fois in A (1) 10 and (2), 1?

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

(1) What ways do you know of spelling the sound [ɛ]? Pronounce: vous êtes, mon frère, muette, la craie.

(2) Note the pronunciation of tous in nous sommes tous [tus] très fatigués. In this case tous is a pronoun. Contrast the pronunciation of Tous mes amis sont partis, and Ils sont

tous partis; of *Tous les restaurants sont fermés*, and *Tous sont fermés*. How may you tell when *tous* is an adjective and when it is a pronoun?

VOCABULARY REVIEW, No. 2

(1) *What words — opposites or synonyms — are suggested by the following (in case of nouns, always supply the proper definite or indefinite article): plus, peu, facile, blanc, long, vieux, joli, heureux, monter, s'en aller, été, froid, raison, mûr, agricole, campagne, chemin, entrer, arriver, midi.*

(2) *Supply words that make sense:* 1. Le petit garçon joue à la ____; la petite fille j____ avec sa _____. 2. Pour manger de la viande nous avons besoin d'un ____ et d'une _____. 3. On mange les légumes dans une ____ et on boit le café dans une _____. 4. Nous travaillons beaucoup à l'école; nous faisons du ____ et de l'____ et des ____ et de l'_____. 5. Je lis le ____ *le Temps* (journal célèbre de Paris) tous les _____. 6. Nous allons nous ____ parce que nous sommes fatigués. 7. Il ____ chaud en ville en _____. 8. Nous allons ____ les vacances à la _____. 9. Je ____ un taxi pour aller à la _____. 10. À la gare j'attends le _____. 11. Le train ____ et je ____ dans une _____. 12. Mes parents sont contents de me _____. 13. Nous allons voir les ____ et les _____. 14. Dans les champs nous voyons des ____ et du ____ mûr. 15. Dans les bois nous voyons des ____ avec leurs ____ vertes et nous ____ chanter les _____. 16. J'écris une ____ à ma mère. 17. La bonne a acheté un ____ (*adverb of quantity*) de beurre.

(3) *In your answer, enumerate all the objects that may properly be included:* Qu'est-ce qu'on voit à la campagne (les animaux, les légumes, les fruits, etc.)?

(4) Qu'est-ce qu'on achète (*3d sing. present*) au marché?

(5) 1. Quand on achète quelque chose, que faut-il (*must one*) faire? 2. Que fait-on avec une poupée? 3. Que fait-on pendant le dîner? 4. Que fait-on au concert? 5-7. Que fait-on avec un couteau? avec une plume? avec la laitue?

8. Pourquoi est-ce qu'on mange? 9. Pourquoi est-ce qu'on boit? 10. Que fait-on quand on a sommeil?

(6) Pourquoi va-t-on au théâtre? au concert? au marché? au magasin? au restaurant? à la campagne? dans les champs? dans les bois?

(7) Quels légumes aimez-vous? Quels fruits? Que boit-on (*3d sing. pres. of boire*) chez vous?

(8) Quels parents avez-vous?

(9) *Distinguish (by examples of correct usage or by explanation) between the use of fois and temps (see Lesson XVIII, A); of aller and partir (s'en aller); of partir and quitter; of partir and sortir; of depuis and depuis quand; of avant and devant; of meilleur and mieux; of peu and un peu; of un peu and quelque(s); of joli and beau; of vieux and ancien; of gentil and joli; of je prends and je mène (1st sing. pres.); of écouter and entendre; of comédie and pièce; of servir and se servir de; of cher in chère cousine and le poulet est cher; of voir and regarder; of il fait chaud and il a chaud.*

(10) *Écrivez au pluriel:* monsieur, animal, œil, ciel. *Au féminin:* blanc, vert, tout, sec, court, muet, long, gros, vieux, nouveau, gentil.

(11) *Conjuguez au présent:* regarder, chercher, faire, aller, voir, mûrir, ouvrir, partir, dormir, servir, entendre, comprendre, prendre, écrire.

(12) *Écrivez à la première personne (first person) du pluriel du passé indéfini:* chercher, quitter, faire, être, aller, voir, sortir, attendre, prendre, ouvrir, écrire, descendre, monter, s'en aller, se coucher, s'appeler.

(13) *Écrivez en français:* 1. Belgium is an industrial country. 2. France is an agricultural country. 3. There are many fields in France. 4. There are also many forests and there are some that are very old. 5. Their trees are tall and beautiful. 6. One hears many birds sing in the green leaves. 7. The French fields are beautiful this year. 8. The wheat has ripened during the summer and they are going to cut it.

LESSON XIX

77. Pronoun Objects. 1. The personal pronoun has, for the indirect object of the third person, the following forms:

lui [lɥi], (to, for) him, (to, for) her. *leur* [lœ:r], (to, for) them.

2. **Lui** and **leur** precede the verb (§ 30), but follow **le**, **la**, **les**:

Nous <i>lui</i> parlons.	We speak to him (to her).
Je <i>la</i> <i>lui</i> donne.	I give her it (it to her).
Je <i>les</i> <i>leur</i> donne.	I give them (to) them.

78. Observe the following peculiarities of pronunciation and spelling:

1. **commencer**, *to begin*, — **nous commençons**. The c [s] of the stem is written *ç* [s] before *o* of the ending (cf. § 5, 4).

2. **manger**, *to eat*, — **nous mangeons**. The g [z] of the stem is written *ge* [z] before *o* of the ending (§ 19, 2).

3. **mener** [mene], *to lead, take* (someone somewhere), **je mène** [men], **tu mènes** [men], **il mène** [men], **nous menons** [numnɔ̃], **vous menez** [vumne], **ils mènent** [men].

In this case the change affects both the spelling and the pronunciation. The vowel [ə], called mute e or feminine e, becomes [ɛ] when the syllable stress falls on it, as in four forms of the present of **mener**. This sound [ɛ] is here spelled è. The shift of stress occurs in those forms in which the [ə] of the stem would be followed by a single consonant + e mute (cf. § 12, 1, n.).

EXERCISE XIX

le bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃]	(piece of) candy	le mouchoir [muʃwa:r]	handkerchief
la bottine [bɔ̃tin]	shoe, high shoe	la paire [pe:r]	pair
le chapeau [ʃapo]	hat	le prix [pri]	price
la chaussure [ʃosy:r]	footwear	le soulier [sulje]	shoe, low shoe
la chemise [laʃmi:z]	shirt	bleu [blø]	blue
la cravate [kravat]	cravat, necktie	même [me:m]	same
le (faux-)col [(fo)kol]	collar	pauvre [po:vʁ]	poor, unfortunate
le marchand [marʃã]	shopkeeper, merchant	plusieurs [plyzjœ:r]	several

EXERCISE XIX (Continued)

accompagner [akōpajē] go	rentrer [rāt̪rē] return (home), come in again
with, accompany	
appeler [aplé] call	
courir [kuri:r] run, run about;	bon marché [bōmar̪ʃe] cheap (invariable)
couru [kury] (<i>past participle</i> of courir)	enfin [āfē] finally, at length
demandeur [dəmādē] ask, ask for	souvent [suvā] often

A. 1. Que nous sommes fatigués! 2. Nous avons beaucoup couru aujourd'hui. 3. Mes cousins sont allés à plusieurs magasins et je les ai accompagnés. 4. Nous sommes entrés d'abord chez un marchand de chapeaux. 5. Un de mes cousins a demandé un chapeau. 6. Le marchand lui montre un joli chapeau. 7. Mon cousin lui dit: Combien, monsieur? 8. Trois dollars [dəlär], répond le marchand, et mon cousin l'achète. 9. J'en ai pris un aussi au même prix. 10. Ensuite nous sommes allés chez un marchand de chaussures où l'on * nous a montré des bottines et des souliers. 11. Nous avons acheté une paire de bottines pour notre cousine et deux paires de souliers. 12. Les chaussures ne sont pas très bon marché maintenant. 13. Nous les avons payées bien cher. 14. Puis nous sommes entrés dans un grand magasin. 15. Un de mes cousins a demandé des chemises, des mouchoirs, des faux-cols et des cravates. 16. Le marchand lui en a montré de très jolis. 17. Il en a acheté. Il a acheté aussi des mouchoirs pour son père. 18. J'ai acheté une très jolie cravate en soie. 19. Je l'ai payée treize francs. 20. Enfin nous avons acheté des bonbons pour ma tante et mes cousines et nous sommes rentrés chez nous.

B. (1) *Run rapidly through A, changing the number or the person (or both) of each subject.*

(2) *Beginning with Nous sommes entrés (A, 4) change all the verbs to the present form. Such a passage would be quite normal in French. Would it be so in English?*

* The *l'* of *l'on* has no significance. It merely makes the sound more agreeable when coming between *où* and *on*.

(3) Give two translations for *courir*. What is the past participle? What auxiliary does it take? Contrast with *aller*, *partir*, *sortir*, *s'en aller*, etc. Say: he ran, he did not run, you have run about a lot to-day, haven't you?

(4) Substitute a personal pronoun for the indirect object:

1. Nous parlons au marchand.
2. Nous avons payé cette cravate au marchand.
3. Je l'ai payée au marchand douze francs.
4. Il a parlé de la pièce à sa tante.
5. Les petites filles ont donné leurs poupées à ces pauvres enfants.
6. La bonne a apporté du café à nos amis.
7. Elle a écrit une courte lettre à sa sœur.
8. Louise ne répond pas à son père.
9. Je vais porter des fleurs à mon amie.
10. Robert demande un faux-col et une cravate au marchand.

(5) Substitute personal pronouns for the direct and indirect objects:

1. Le général a donné le cheval à son fils.
2. Les généraux ont donné les chevaux à leurs fils.
3. Elle a écrit cette longue lettre à son oncle.
4. Vous écrivez la lettre au professeur en français, n'est-ce pas?
5. Voulez-vous donner une balle au petit garçon?
6. Le marchand a montré les chapeaux à mon oncle.
7. Il a vendu les bottes à mon cousin.
8. Le petit garçon a demandé la balle à son père.

(6) Make these revised sentences negative.

(7) Supply a suitable personal pronoun of the third person, direct or indirect object, according to the verb:

1. Nous — (le? lui? les? leur?) écoutons.
2. Nous — parlons.
3. Les hommes — regardent.
4. Je — attends.
5. Il — paie trois francs.
6. Pierre — demande une chemise et un mouchoir.

(8) What is to be noted about the objects of *écouter*, *regarder*, *attendre*, *payer*, *demande*, as compared with the English equivalents? Note that *payer* may have three objects: the thing paid for (direct object), the amount paid (adverbial object), and the person paid (indirect object).

C. (1) Écrivez en français: 1. I waited for him; we waited for her. 2. John is listening to them; we are talking to them. 3. I paid ten francs for them. 4. We begin dinner (to dine); first we take soup. 5. He takes his friends to the

theater. Let's take (*like first plural present indicative but no subject pronoun*) our cousins to the park. 6. I took my place. We take our friends to the station where they are going to take the train. 7. Our relatives often take us to the concert. 8. I ask my father for money. I ask my father for some. 9. Let's ask the merchant for a blue cravat and six collars. 10. We paid for the dinner. We paid five francs for it. 11. We paid the merchant ten francs for the shirt. We paid him ten francs for it.

(2) *Re-read the reading passages (A) in Lessons XII, XIV, XV, XVI, and write in French an account of a visit to the country.*

D. Dictée: Lesson XVII, A.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

Note the pronunciation and spelling of the various forms of the present of **acheter**, *to buy* and **appeler**, *to call*:

acheter [aʃte]

1. achète [aʃet]
2. achètes [aʃet]
3. achète [aʃet]
4. achetons [aʃtɔ̃]
5. achetez [aʃte]
6. achètent [aʃet]

appeler [apl̪e]

1. appelle [apɛl̪]
2. appelles [apɛl̪]
3. appelle [apɛl̪]
4. appelons [apl̪ɔ̃]
5. appelez [apl̪e]
6. appellent [apɛl̪]

Where does the syllable stress fall in forms 1, 2, 3, 6? Where in 4 and 5? What difference does this make in the sound of the [ə] of the stem of the infinitive? Note that this [ə] disappears entirely in the pronunciation of the infinitive of **acheter**, **appeler**, **devenir**, and in the forms **nous menons**, **vous menez**, **appelons**, **appelez**, **achetons**, **achetez**, but that it is sounded in the infinitive of a word of only two syllables like **mener** [mene], **venir** [vəni:r]. Compare Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (1). Observe that we say similarly [ʃəval], but [ləʃval, œʃval]. Are these changes of spelling in **mener**, **appeler**, etc., due to any phonetic principle? Contrast them with the changes in words like **manger**, **commencer**.

LESSON XX

79. Personal Pronoun Objects. The remaining forms serve both as direct and indirect object of verbs (for elision, see § 19):

me [mə], me, to (for) me.	nous [nu], us, to (for) us.
te [tə], thee, to (for) thee, you	vous [vu], you, to (for) you.
se [sə], himself, herself, itself, one-self, to (for) himself, etc.	se [sə], themselves, to (for) themselves.

80. Pronominal Adverbs. They are used with verbs, and are equivalent to a preposition + a pronoun, standing usually for things:

y = à (dans, sur, etc.) + a pronoun, means *to* (*at, on, in, into, etc.*) *it or them; there.*

en = de + a pronoun, means *of* (*from, etc.*) *it or them, some of it, some of them, some, any, thence; from there.*

Je vais à la campagne.	I am going to the country.
J'y vais demain.	I shall go there to-morrow.
Venez-vous <i>de</i> Paris?	Do you come from Paris?
Oui, j'en arrive.	Yes, I am coming from there.

81. Position. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, coming before the verb, are arranged thus:

me	before	{ le	before	{ lui	before y} before en.
te		{ la		{ leur	
se		{ les			
nous					
vous					

Il <i>me</i> donne les plumes.	He gives me the pens.
Il <i>me les</i> donne.	He gives them to me.
Il <i>les leur</i> donne.	He gives them to them.
Il <i>nous en</i> donne.	He gives us some of it.
Il <i>y en</i> a.	There is (are) some.

82. Reflexive Verb. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs, *e.g.*, *se flatter*, *to flatter oneself*, are formed with *être*:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>I flatter myself, etc.</i>	
<i>je me flatte</i> [ʒəmflat]	
<i>tu te flattes</i> [tytflat]	
<i>il (elle) se flatte</i> [ilsəflat]	
<i>nous nous flattons</i> [nunuflatɔ̃]	
<i>vous vous flattez</i> [vuvuflatɛ]	
<i>ils (elles) se flattent</i> [ilsəflat]	

PAST INDEFINITE

<i>I (have) flattered myself, etc.</i>	
<i>je me suis</i>	
<i>tu t' es</i>	
<i>il (elle) s' est</i>	
<i>nous nous sommes</i>	
<i>vous vous êtes</i>	
<i>ils (elles) se sont</i>	

83. Agreement. The past participle agrees with the preceding direct object, as in the case of verbs compounded with *avoir*:

Elles se sont flattées.

They have flattered themselves.

But: *Ils se sont lavé les mains.*

They have washed their hands.

84. Observe the possessive force of the article, or of the article with an indirect object, when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor, especially when referring to parts of the body, clothing, etc.

Je vous donne la main.

I give you my hand.

La bonne leur lave les mains.

The maid is washing their hands.

EXERCISE XX

<i>la brosse</i> [brɔ̃s] brush	<i>se coucher</i> [səkuʃe] go to bed, lie down
<i>la chambre</i> [ʃã:bʁ] bedroom (<i>usually</i>)	<i>se laver</i> [selave] wash oneself, wash
<i>les cheveux</i> <i>m.</i> [leʃvø] hair	<i>se lever</i> [səlve] get up
<i>la figure</i> [figy:r] face, figure (<i>statue, etc.</i>)	<i>penser</i> (à) [pãse] think (of, have in mind)
<i>les nouvelles</i> <i>f.</i> [nuvel] news	<i>perdre</i> [perdr] lose, waste
<i>le peigne</i> [peɲ] comb	<i>se promener</i> [prõmne] take a walk, ride
<i>le savon</i> [savɔ̃] soap	<i>se servir de</i> [səsərvι:rðə] make use of, use
<i>la serviette</i> [servjet] towel, napkin	<i>avant de</i> [avãdə] before (<i>with infinitive</i>)
<i>la tête</i> [tε:t] head	<i>déjà</i> [deza] already
<i>intéressant</i> [ɛtɛrɛsɑ̃] interesting	
<i>brosser</i> [brɔ̃sə] brush	

A. (1) Supply the object pronoun of the person indicated, both singular and plural: 1. Le marchand — (1st pers.) répond. 2. Je ne — (3d) ai pas répondu. 3. Vous — (3d) demandez des cigarettes? 4. Ils — (1st) écoutent. 5. Nous — (3d) écoutons. 6. Ils — (1st) (3d) donnent. 7. Je — (3d) ai payé un dîner.

(2) Rewrite, using where possible direct and indirect object pronouns instead of the object nouns: 1. Mon cousin a demandé des chapeaux (see § 36, 3) au marchand. 2. Le marchand a montré des souliers à mon oncle. 3. La bonne a apporté les lettres à mon père. 4. Elle m'a apporté les lettres. 5. Elle m'a apporté des lettres. 6. Elle nous a servi du potage. 7. Elle nous a servi le potage. 8. Il vend des pommes à ma sœur.

(3) Substitute en or y for the prepositional phrases with de and à according to the sense: 1. Nous parlons du lapin. 2. Il a parlé de ses vacances. 3. Elle est sortie de la salle à manger. 4. Nous sommes sorties du salon. 5. Lui avez-vous parlé de ses leçons de latin? 6. Il se sert d'une fourchette. 7. Nous avons besoin de serviettes. 8. Mes cousins se sont servis de mes cravates. 9. Je vais avoir besoin d'un mouchoir. 10. Nous pensons à notre voyage. 11. Elle pense à son nouveau chapeau. 12. Avez-vous pensé à chercher des bonbons? 13. Ce lapin pense à manger vos choux, n'est-ce pas? 14. Nous allons à la campagne. 15. Voyez-vous les élèves dans le parc? 16. Avez-vous quelque chose à la main? 17. Il a couru à l'école. 18. Il sort de sa chambre de bonne heure. 19. Nous sommes descendus du train à midi. 20. Nous sommes descendus à cet hôtel et nous y sommes restés pendant l'hiver. 21. Ils sont restés quinze jours à Paris. 22. Nos amis les ont accompagnés à la gare. 23. Ces messieurs sont arrivés à Chicago hier. 24. Ils sont de vos amis, n'est-ce pas?

B. (1) Answer, using, instead of the nouns, personal pronouns and en or y when suitable: 1. Sortez-vous du théâtre? 2. Avez-vous été au théâtre? 3. Allez-vous encore au théâtre? 4. Avez-vous ri de la comédie? 5. Dînez-vous avant d'aller au théâtre? 6. Vos cousins sont-ils allés au concert hier?

7. Avez-vous pensé à votre voyage? 8. Avez-vous pensé à m'accompagner chez Wanamaker? 9. Vous a-t-on servi du vin, monsieur? 10. La bonne a-t-elle apporté du café au salon? 11. En a-t-elle donné à Madame Perrin [perɛ]? 12. Qui a accompagné vos cousins au théâtre? 13. Avez-vous demandé le journal à cette vieille femme? 14. Avez-vous donné à la vieille femme le prix du journal? 15. Lisez-vous les journaux tous les jours avant de quitter la maison? 16. Avez-vous trouvé des nouvelles intéressantes dans le journal? 17. L'élève a-t-il répondu aux questions? 18. Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre? 19. A-t-il répondu à ces dames? *

(2) Write out the present and past indefinite indicative of: se promener (see § 78, 3); se coucher; se servir d'une fourchette; s'en aller.

C. Traduisez en français: 1. He gets up early; he takes a drive (*use se promener en voiture, en automobile* [otəməbil]); he goes to bed. 2. The cook uses lettuce to make salad. 3. She washes her (§ 84) hands before preparing dinner. 4. I wash my hands and face every evening (§ 58) before going to bed. 5. I have already washed my hands once. 6. These children washed their hands with (avec) (some) soap. Now they need a towel. 7. They ride horseback (*use se promener à cheval*) every day. 8. When they are tired, they go to bed early. 9. It is time to (*Il est temps de*) get up now; we get up; we got up early this morning; the girls (*bonnes*) got up; they are getting up now. 10. I have eyes in my (§ 84) head. He has pencils in (à) his hands, a hat on (sur) his head, shoes on (à) his feet. 11. We used soap and a towel to (pour) wash our hands. 12. They need a brush and a comb to brush their hair. 13. He lost his hair. If you do not wash your hair, you are going to lose it (*number?*). 14. We are washing our hair. She washed her hair yesterday. 15. Do you wash your hair often? 16. How many times (*Combien de fois*) a day (*par jour*) do you wash your hands? Your face? 17. How

* Note that *y* may not be substituted in the reply to the last question. Can you suggest a reason?

many times a day do you get up? 18. How often (= How many times) do you eat daily? 19. The whole family has gone away (*two ways*) and it is time to study my history lesson now.

D. a. Count from 1-30, putting in each case a different noun after each numeral, as: un franc, deux serviettes, trois brosses, etc.

b. Pronounce and learn the following numerals: trente et un élèves [trā̃:tēənele:v̄], trente-deux enfants [trā̃:tdøzāfā], trente-trois marchands. Continue through 39, putting a noun after each numeral.

c. 40 = quarante [karā:t̄], 41 = quarante et un [karā:teē], 42 = quarante-deux [karā:tdø]. Count through 49, putting a different noun after each numeral.

d. 50 = cinquante [sēkū:t̄], 51 = cinquante et un [sēkā:teē], 52 = cinquante-deux [sēkā:tdø]. Count through 59, using in each case a noun beginning with a vowel.

LESSON XXI

85. Imperfect Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*

<i>I was giving, etc.</i>	<i>I was finishing, etc.</i>	<i>I was selling, etc.</i>
donn <i>ais</i> [dōnɛ]	finiss <i>ais</i> [finiɛ]	vend <i>ais</i> [vādɛ]
donn <i>ais</i> [dōnɛ]	finiss <i>ais</i> [finiɛ]	vend <i>ais</i> [vādɛ]
donn <i>ait</i> [dōnɛ]	finiss <i>ait</i> [finiɛ]	vend <i>ait</i> [vādɛ]
donn <i>ions</i> [dōnjɔ̄]	finiss <i>ions</i> [finisjɔ̄]	vend <i>ions</i> [vādjɔ̄]
donn <i>iez</i> [dōnje]	finiss <i>iez</i> [finisje]	vend <i>iez</i> [vādje]
donn <i>aient</i> [dōnɛ]	finiss <i>aient</i> [finiɛ]	vend <i>aient</i> [vādɛ]

86. Imperfect Indicative of *avoir, être*

<i>I had, used to have, etc.</i>	<i>I was, used to be, etc.</i>
av <i>ais</i> [avɛ]	ét <i>ais</i> [etɛ]
av <i>ais</i> [avɛ]	ét <i>ions</i> [etjɔ̄]
av <i>ais</i> [avɛ]	ét <i>ais</i> [etɛ]
av <i>iez</i> [avje]	ét <i>iez</i> [etje]
av <i>aient</i> [avɛ]	ét <i>aient</i> [etɛ]

To form the Pluperfect tense, add a past participle; see § 63.

87. Use of the Imperfect. The name ‘Past Descriptive’ is often given to this tense-form. In general, it serves to indicate the situation, the setting, the state of affairs at a time in the past, without regard to the beginning or the end of the action, or to the length of its duration. In past narrative, the past indefinite is used to record the successive events one after the other; the imperfect form is used to give the background and the descriptive elements of the situation.

Since the English language has no such special tense form, except the progressive past (*was walking*, etc.), it is highly important to understand clearly the meaning of the sentence before deciding whether to translate a given English past into the French imperfect or into the past indefinite. Often both translations are possible, but with different meanings.

Study the following passage:

<i>Vous étiez (avez été) absent hier,</i>	<i>You were absent yesterday, Pierre.</i>
<i>Pierre.</i>	
<i>Oui, monsieur, j'étais (ai été)</i>	<i>Yes, sir, I was ill.</i>
<i>malade.</i>	
<i>Je suis resté au lit toute la journée.</i>	<i>I stayed in bed all day.</i>
<i>J'avais (ai eu) la fièvre.</i>	<i>I had fever.</i>
<i>Ma gorge m'a fait (me faisait) très mal.</i>	<i>My throat hurt me very badly.</i>
<i>Le médecin est venu deux fois à la maison, et m'a si bien soigné que mon rhume a disparu.</i>	<i>The doctor came to the house twice and took such good care of me that my cold disappeared.</i>
<i>J'ai été (étais) malade comme cela l'hiver passé aussi.</i>	<i>I was ill like that last winter too.</i>
<i>Notre médecin était en France avec nos soldats, et j'ai été toute une semaine au lit.</i>	<i>Our physician was in France with our soldiers, and I was in bed for a whole week.</i>

In only one case above (*Notre médecin était en France . . .*) would the past indefinite be quite out of place, but wherever it is used it stresses the narrative element of the story, the

fact that the incident was completed at a time in the past, whereas the imperfect form directs attention to the incident as it occurred, or to the state of affairs as it existed.

In certain cases, where the descriptive element is all important, the imperfect form is regularly used and corresponds to an English progressive past, or to a past modified by 'used to.'

1. It denotes what used to or continued to take place in the past.

Nous *parlions* souvent de vous. We often spoke (used to speak) of you.

Tous les ans j'*allais* à la campagne en été. I used to go to the country in summer every year.

2. It is used for an action that was happening when something else happened or was happening.

Quand le médecin *est arrivé*, j'*étais* au lit. When the doctor came I was in bed.

Pendant que je *parlais*, mon ami fumait un gros cigare. While I was talking, my friend was smoking (smoked) a large cigar.

NOTE. — In the first example under 1 above we could just as correctly say: Nous *avons* souvent *parlé* de vous. The meaning, however, would be somewhat different. The notion of an habitual action would have disappeared.

88. Imperfect of *faire* (irreg.)

I was doing, etc.

je fais *ais* [zəfəzɛ]

nous fais *ions* [nufəzjɔ̃]

tu fais *ais* [tyfəzɛ]

vous fais *iez* [vufəzjɛ]

il fais *ait* [ilfəzɛ]

ils fais *aient* [ilfəzɛ]

89. For imperfect of commencer, manger, cf. §§ 78, 156:

je commençais [ʒəkɔmã:se]

je mangeais [mã:ʒe]

tu commençais [tykɔmã:se]

tu mangeais [mã:ʒe]

il commençait [ilkɔmã:se], etc.

il mangeait [mã:ʒe], etc.

EXERCISE XXI

un appétit [apeti] appetite	crier [krie] shout, cry out
le bain [bē] bath	dit [di] said (<i>past part.</i>)
la branche [brā:ʃ] branch (<i>of tree</i>)	faire jour [fe:rʒu:r] get light, be light; faire noir [fe:nwā:r] be dark
une époque [epōk] time, period	se faire mal [mal] hurt oneself
le mal [mal] evil, harm	frapper [frape] strike, im- press
la minute [minyt] minute	s'habiller [sabije] dress
le petit déjeuner [ləptideʒøne]	réveiller [revejɛ] wake; se réveiller wake up
breakfast	rêver [reve] dream
la peur [pœ:r] fear	fort [fɔ:r] loudly
le rêve [re:v] dream	heureusement [œrø:zmā]
la terre [te:r] earth, ground	luckily
la toilette [twalet] toilet (<i>dress-</i>	tard [ta:r] late
<i>ing</i>)	par terre [parte:r] on the ground
malade [malad] ill	si [si] so
souffrant [sufrā] not well	à travers [atravɛ:r] across, through
avoir peur [avwa:r pœ:r] be afraid, get frightened	
cesser (de) [sese] stop	

A. (1) 1. Je me suis couché hier soir de bonne heure, mais je n'ai pas bien dormi parce que j'étais un peu souffrant. 2. Mon bras me faisait mal. J'ai eu aussi de mauvais rêves. 3. J'ai rêvé que mon cheval courrait à travers les champs et dans les bois. 4. Les branches des arbres me frappaient partout et j'avais peur de tomber et de me faire très mal. 5. J'ai eu si peur dans mon sommeil que j'ai crié très fort et je me suis réveillé. 6. Mais il faisait toujours très noir quand je me suis réveillé et je ne me suis pas levé tout de suite. 7. J'ai dormi encore un peu avant de me lever. 8. À six heures il a fait jour et je me suis levé. 9. J'ai fait ma toilette. 10. J'ai pris mon bain dans de l'eau froide et je me suis habillé. 11. La bonne commençait à préparer le petit déjeuner. 12. J'avais si faim que j'étais content quand elle a dit « C'est servi! » 13. Je suis descendu. Ma sœur était déjà à table. 14. Elle m'a dit « Bonjour! bon appétit! » 15. Ma mère n'était pas encore descendue. 16. J'ai mangé de (*with*) bon appétit, et puis nous sommes partis pour l'école.

(2) Try to explain in each case the use of the tenses: (a) 1. Nous avons fait visite hier à un de nos amis. 2. Il commençait à dîner quand nous sommes arrivés. 3. Il mangeait le potage. Nous sommes restés deux heures. 4. Il nous a invités à dîner et après nous avons fumé plusieurs bons cigares. 5. Mon ami n'a pas fumé. 6. Il fumait quand il était jeune, mais il a cessé de fumer l'année passée parce qu'il était malade. 7. J'ai été souvent malade mais je n'ai pas cessé de fumer. 8. Je ne fumais pas quand j'étais petit. 9. J'ai commencé quand j'avais vingt ans.

(b) 1. Nous avons été souvent à la campagne. 2. Nous y allions tous les étés. 3. Il faisait moins chaud qu'en ville. 4. Nos parents nous accompagnaient. 5. À cette époque-là mon grand-père habitait la vieille maison de famille. 6. Il était très âgé mais il était encore assez fort. 7. Il se promenait à cheval tous les jours. 8. Souvent je l'accompagnais sur un petit cheval qu'il m'avait donné. 9. Après ces promenades j'étais fatigué et j'avais un excellent appétit. 10. Une fois le cheval a eu peur. 11. Il a couru à travers les champs et je suis tombé par terre. 12. J'avais très peur, et je me suis fait mal au bras. 13. Heureusement il y avait de l'herbe et je suis tombé sur l'herbe, mais le bras m'a fait mal pendant deux ou trois jours.

B. (1) *In nous sommes restés deux heures and nous avons été souvent à la campagne* (A, 2), *is the emphasis on the continuousness, the repetition of the action, the situation, or on the event itself? Contrast the verb forms used in le cheval a eu peur (got frightened) and in j'avais très peur (was very much frightened). What seems to be the difference in the effect of the two?*

Note that verbs like rester, adverbs like souvent, longtemps, and expressions of time like deux heures, deux ans, do not necessarily call for an imperfect tense, which, although it denotes 'what continued to happen,' is used only when the writer wishes to stress that element. Compare § 66, examples 2 and 3.

(2) Use the proper form of the verbs in parenthesis. Choose the past indefinite or the imperfect according to the sense of the

sentence: 1. (être) Quand je — petit je —¹ de bonne heure. 2. (dormir) Je — bien. 3. (se lever) Je — de bonne heure aussi et je —² avec mes parents. 4. (avoir) Je — toujours bon appétit. 5. (rêver) Une nuit je — que mon cheval —³ avec moi à travers la forêt. 6. (frapper) Une branche me — dans la figure et je —⁴ très peur. 7. (crier) Je — si fort que je —.⁵ 8. (dormir) Mais je — encore deux heures avant de —.⁶ 9. (rêver) Je — beaucoup. 10. (rêver) Je — plusieurs fois que je —⁷ de mon cheval.

(3) *Vary the person and number of the subject in A.*

(4) *The imperfect of dormir is je dormais, etc. Conjugate it throughout. Contrast it with je finissais. Conjugate in the imperfect on this model: sortir, partir, servir.*

C. *Traduisez:* 1. I used to go to bed early and I slept well. 2. But once when I was ill I slept very badly and I dreamed a great deal. 3. I got very much frightened and shouted so loudly that my father came into my room and wakened me. 4. He said that I was shouting so loudly that I was waking the whole family. 5. When he saw that I was very much frightened, he stayed in my room [for] some minutes. 6. I slept some hours still before waking. 7. When I got up, the maid was preparing breakfast. 8. I was hungry and was glad to eat something. 9. When the maid said "Breakfast is ready," I went down stairs. 10. The family was at table already. We ate with a good appetite. 11. My sister left for school, but I looked at (*j'ai parcouru*) the morning paper before leaving. 12. It was Monday and I got (*arriver*) to school late that morning.

NOTE. — In 6 put **encore** (*still*) before 'some hours.' Be careful about the position of **déjà** in 10 (see A, (1), 13). Note the absence of any article in **à table** and **de bon appétit**. Note the different French forms in 1 and 2 for 'I slept'; why? In 12 put **tard** before **à l'école**.

D. Dictée: Lesson XIX, A.

¹ (se coucher).

² (déjeuner).

³ (courir).

⁴ (avoir).

⁵ (se réveiller).

⁶ (se lever).

⁷ (tumber).

LESSON XXII

90. Future Indicative of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*

<i>I shall give, etc.</i>	<i>I shall finish, etc.</i>	<i>I shall sell, etc.</i>
donner <i>ai</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)re]	finir <i>ai</i> [finire]	vendr <i>ai</i> [vād̥re]
donner <i>as</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)ra]	finir <i>as</i> [finira]	vendr <i>as</i> [vādra]
donner <i>a</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)ra]	finir <i>a</i> [finira]	vendr <i>a</i> [vādra]
donner <i>ons</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɔ̄]	finir <i>ons</i> [finirɔ̄]	vendr <i>ons</i> [vādrɔ̄]
donner <i>ez</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)re]	finir <i>ez</i> [finire]	vendr <i>ez</i> [vād̥re]
donner <i>ont</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɔ̄]	finir <i>ont</i> [finirɔ̄]	vendr <i>ont</i> [vādrɔ̄]

NOTE. — In the future of verbs of the *donner* type, we print the symbol *e* in parenthesis to indicate that it is pronounced very lightly. In fact it usually disappears in rapid speech.

This symbol is printed in the same way in the future of *être* and *faire* in §§ 91, 92 to indicate that it is pronounced very lightly, and that it disappears if the preceding syllable ends in a vowel sound. Compare with this *la fenêtre* [lafne:t̥r], *ses leçons* [selsɔ̄], *deux chevaux* [døʃvo], *je me lève* [ʒəml̥ev], *je serai* [ʒəsr̥e], *nous ferons* [nufr̥ɔ̄]. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (1); XIX, *Exercise in Pronunciation*.

91. Future Indicative of *avoir*, *être*

<i>I shall have, etc.</i>	<i>I shall be, etc.</i>
aur <i>ai</i> [ɔ̄re] aur <i>ons</i> [ɔ̄rɔ̄]	ser <i>ai</i> [s(ə)re] ser <i>ons</i> [s(ə)rɔ̄]
aur <i>as</i> [ɔ̄ra] aur <i>ez</i> [ɔ̄re]	ser <i>as</i> [s(ə)ra] ser <i>ez</i> [s(ə)re]
aur <i>a</i> [ɔ̄ra] aur <i>ont</i> [ɔ̄rɔ̄]	ser <i>a</i> [s(ə)ra] ser <i>ont</i> [s(ə)rɔ̄]

92. Future Indicative of *aller* (irreg.), and *faire* (irreg.)

<i>I shall go, etc.</i>	<i>I shall do, etc.</i>
ir <i>ai</i> [ire] ir <i>ons</i> [irɔ̄]	fer <i>ai</i> [f(ə)re] fer <i>ons</i> [f(ə)rɔ̄]
ir <i>as</i> [ira] ir <i>ez</i> [ire]	fer <i>as</i> [f(ə)ra] fer <i>ez</i> [f(ə)re]
ir <i>a</i> [ira] ir <i>ont</i> [irɔ̄]	fer <i>a</i> [f(ə)ra] fer <i>ont</i> [f(ə)rɔ̄]

93. For the future of *lever* and *acheter*, cf. § 78, 3:

je lèverai [lēvre], etc. j'achèterai [aʃt̥tre], etc.

94. Use of Future. It is used in general as in English but observe its use in a subordinate sentence, when futurity is implied (but for 'if' clause see § 116, 3):

Je lui parlerai quand il arrivera. I shall speak to him when he comes

EXERCISE XXII

un autobus [otobys] motor bus	sale [sal] dirty
la couturière [kutyrje:r] dress- maker	blanchir [blāʒi:r] launder
le devoir [lədvwa:r] exercise	essayer [esɛje] try on
le gant [gā] glove	faire beau [bo] be good weather; faire mauvais [mɔvɛ] be bad weather;
la modiste [mødist] milliner	faire nuit [nɥi] get dark, be dark
le projet [prɔʒε] plan	mettre [mɛtr] put, put on
la promenade [prɔmnad] walk, ride, excursion	demain [dəmɛ̃] to-morrow
la semaine [lasmen] week	en retard [ärta:r] behind time, late
le travail [trava:j] work	rapidement [rapidmə̃] rapidly, fast
dernier [dərnje] last	
fatigant [fatigā] tiring	
prêt [prɛ] ready	
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] next	

A. 1. Il est déjà tard. Nous allons nous coucher tout de suite. 2. Demain nous nous lèverons de bonne heure parce que nous avons des projets de promenade. 3. Le petit déjeuner sera prêt quand nous descendrons. 4. Nous sortirons tout de suite parce que nous ne voulons pas être en retard. 5. S'il fait beau (temps) nous irons à pied; s'il fait mauvais (si le temps est mauvais), nous prendrons un autobus ou le tramway. 6. Nous passerons chez la modiste. Si nos chapeaux ne sont pas prêts, nous attendrons un peu. 7. Avant onze heures nous serons chez la couturière pour essayer nos robes. 8. Nous les payerons [pejɔ̃] quand elles seront prêtes. 9. Quand nous serons fatiguées, nous irons déjeuner au restaurant du Café Voltaire. 10. Notre père nous y attendra à midi. 11. Après le déjeuner nous entrerons dans un magasin pour acheter des mouchoirs et des gants et puis nous rentrerons chez nous. 12. Nous attendons à dîner des amis qui nous mèneront au théâtre ce soir. 13. Si nos nouvelles robes sont prêtes, nous les mettrons. 14. On sort très tard du théâtre à Paris. 15. Il est fatigant de courir nuit et jour et nous serons bien contentes quand nous serons au lit.

B. (1) *Make a list from A of the instances of the special use of the future (§ 94).*

(2) *Complete the future forms, and reply to the questions:* 1. Je me fer- mal. 2. Ils se fer- mal. 3. Nous ir- chez nous. 4. Ils ir- au musée. 5. Il répondr- à vos questions. 6. On vous entendr-. 7. Vous vous réveil-. 8. Il fer- jour à six heures. 9. Si j'ai peur, je cri-. 10. Aur--vous peur si je crie? 11. Crie--vous si vous avez peur? 12. À quelle heure descendr--vous? 13. Vous servir--vous de cette brosse? 14. Vous amus--vous au théâtre ce soir? 15. Cette pièce de Molière vous amus- beaucoup.

(3) *Use in the future the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (se lever) À quelle heure vous —? 2. (se lever) Je — à sept heures. 3. (se lever) Vous — tard, mon ami. 4. (répondre) Mon frère — aux questions du professeur. 5. (entrer) Nous — dans le théâtre avant huit heures. 6. (sortir) Nous — du théâtre après minuit. 7. (être) — vous à l'école la semaine prochaine? 8. (mener) Je vous — au marché demain matin. 9. (acheter) Nous — des haricots verts, des petits pois, et un chou pour mon lapin. 10. (être) Nous — chez nous avant midi. 11. (avoir) La cuisinière — besoin des légumes avant onze heures. 12. (perdre) Si vous arrivez si tard vous — votre temps.

(4) *Supply the correct form of the verb in parenthesis and translate:* 1. (avoir) Je vous apporterai la chemise quand vous en — besoin. 2. (avoir) Vous la mettrez quand vous la —. 3. (être) Vous la ferez blanchir quand elle — sale. 4. (être) Vous vous laverez les mains quand elles — sales. 5. (être) Nous dînerons quand le dîner — prêt. 6. (être) Nous descendrons quand vous — habillé. 7. (avoir) Nous déjeunerons quand nous — faim. 8. (faire) Nous sortirons tous les jours cet hiver quand il — beau temps. 9. (faire) Nous nous lèverons quand il — jour. 10. (faire) Nous resterons dans la maison quand il — mauvais temps. 11. (entendre) J'ouvrirai la porte quand je vous — venir. 12. (entendre) Je fermerai la fenêtre quand je — chanter

vos amies. 13. (aller) Je prendrai un taxi quand je — à la gare. 14. (finir) J'irai me coucher quand je — mon devoir. 15. (se réveiller) Serez-vous prêt quand je —?

(5) *What do you observe to be the written stem of the future of donner, finir, vendre? What familiar part of the verb does it seem to be? What do the future endings remind you of? Observe that for être, avoir, faire, aller these same endings are added to a new stem: ser-, aur-, fer-, ir-. Note the pronunciation of the future of donner.*

C. (1) Beginning with A, 2, substitute hier for demain and shift the rest of the passage to the past. Look out for the imperfect and past indefinite forms. The si clauses must be converted into affirmative statements, as (A, 5): Il a fait (or il faisait) beau temps et nous sommes allés à pied; il a fait mauvais et nous avons pris . . . The slight confusion of sense here may be ignored. The two present forms in A, 14 and 15, contain general statements, and therefore remain unchanged.

(2) Traduisez en français: 1. We used to finish our work early. 2. Did you finish it? 3. The grapes (*use singular*) were ripening when I was in the country last (*translate two ways*) week. 4. Did they get ripe rapidly? 5. Were you (*past indef.*) at the concert yesterday? 6. Were they (*on*) singing when you got (*arriver*) there? 7. Had they (*on*) begun? 8. Did you like the music? 9. How long did you stay? 10. Did the merchant sell (*two ways, with different senses*) shoes? 11. Did you dream when you were little? 12. Did you dream last (*cette*) night? 13. Did you get scared? 14. Did you hurt yourself when your horse fell? 15. Did you get frightened when your horse ran through the woods? 16. You didn't come yesterday; were you ill? 17. Did you see her often in France? 18. Did you stay long in France? 19. I worked two hours yesterday evening. 20. I worked a great deal (**beaucoup**) when I was younger. 21. It got light very late yesterday morning. 22. I was late for (*the*) school. 23. It was dark when I left.

D. Dictée: Lesson XXI, A.

LESSON XXIII

95. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns already given are used as subject or object with the verb, and are hence called ‘conjunctive.’ The following forms, not being immediately connected with a verb, are called ‘disjunctive’:

moi [mwa], I, me	nous [nu], we, us
toi [twa], thou, thee, you	vous [vu], you
lui [lu], he, him	eux [ø], they (m.), them (m.)
elle [el], she, her	elles [el], they (f.), them (f.)

96. The following are some of their uses:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là? — Moi (eux, elles). Who is there? — I (they).

2. After a preposition:

Pour elles; avec moi; sans eux. For them; with me; without them.

3. As logical subject after *ce* + *être*:

C'est <i>moi</i> , c'est <i>toi</i> .	It is I, it is thou (you).
C'est <i>lui</i> , c'est <i>elle</i> .	It is he, it is she.
C'est <i>nous</i> , c'est <i>vous</i> .	It is we, it is you.
Ce sont <i>eux</i> , ce sont <i>elles</i> .	It is they (m.), it is they (f.).

97. When the real subject follows the verb *être*, *ce* is used to represent or point to this logical subject, whereas the English would often seem to demand a personal pronoun (see § 44, 2, *a*), as in the 3rd and 4th examples below:

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
C'est nous, ce sont eux.	It is we, it is they.
C'est un homme célèbre.	He is a celebrated man.
Ce sont mes meilleures amies.	They are my best friends.
C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	It is Monday to-day (To-day is).
C'est à nous qu'il parle.	It is to us that he is speaking.

NOTE. — When the logical subject is a noun, *ce* is used in case the noun is modified by an article or a possessive adjective; *il* (*elle*) is used when the noun has no modifier, as when it denotes nationality or profession:

C'est <i>un soldat</i>	But	<i>Il est soldat</i>
C'est <i>un Américain</i>		<i>Il est Américain</i>

EXERCISE XXIII

un autobus [otəbys] motor bus	s'arrêter [sarete] halt, come to a stop
le coin [kwē] corner	demeurer [dəmøere] live, dwell, reside
le conducteur [kōdyktœ:r] conductor	saluer [salve] speak to, greet
le côté [kote] side, direction	bientôt [bjēto] soon, in a little while
la dame [dam] lady	là-bas [labə] over there, down there
la destination [destinasjɔ] destination	à côté de beside, next to
le militaire [milite:r] soldier (of any rank)	sans [sā] without, but for
le numéro [nymero] number	ne . . . rien [nə . . . rjɛ] nothing
un ordre [ordr] order	cela ne fait rien [selanferjɛ] that doesn't matter
le voisin [vwazɛ] neighbor	de ce côté [dəskote] on this side, in this direction
le voyageur [vwajaʒœ:r] traveler, passenger	
autre [otr] other	
sage [sa:ʒ] good, well-behaved	

A. 1. Nous sortirons ce matin, n'est-ce pas? 2. — Oui, voulez-vous aller à pied ou prendrons-nous l'autobus au coin de la rue? 3. — Allons à pied. Il fait très beau. 4. J'aime à marcher quand il fait froid. 5. Qui est ce monsieur là-bas de l'autre côté de la rue? 6. — C'est un de nos anciens voisins, qui demeure maintenant dans une autre rue. 7. — Est-ce votre professeur de français? 8. — Non, ce n'est pas lui. Le voilà de ce côté de la rue qui monte dans (*getting into*) le tramway. 9. Avez-vous vu ces trois messieurs qui nous ont salués? 10. — Oui, je les ai vus. — Ce sont des amis de mon père. 11. Voyez-vous cette dame qui monte en voiture? C'est une amie de votre mère, n'est-ce pas? 12. — Non, elle est trop petite. Ma mère n'a pas d'amie aussi petite qu'elle. 13. — Mais elle nous a salués. 14. — Cela ne fait rien. Ce n'est pas une amie de ma mère. 15. Elle a salué peut-être ces messieurs qui sont derrière nous. Les voyez-vous? 16. — Oui, vous avez raison. Ce sont eux qu'elle a salués. 17. Ce sont deux jeunes militaires, n'est-ce pas? 18. — C'est à ce coin-là que nous attendrons l'autobus. 19. Il s'arrête

de l'autre côté de la rue. Prenons des numéros. 20. Quand l'autobus arrivera, le conducteur criera les numéros et les voyageurs monteront dans l'ordre de leurs numéros. 21. — Oh, je comprends! On ne fait pas comme cela chez nous. 22. — Non, mais cela ne fait rien; on fait comme cela en France. 23. — Eh bien, nous voilà montés! Nous avons de bonnes places, n'est-ce pas? 24. L'autobus marche vite et nous serons bientôt à notre destination.

B. (1) a. *Identify each case of ce and il (elle, etc.) in A.*

b. *Fill in the blank with ce or il (elle, ils, elles):* 1. — fait chaud. 2. — est quatre heures. 3. — est aujourd'hui qu'il part. 4. — est le conducteur qui a crié les numéros. 5. — fera jour bientôt. 6. — est facteur; — est cuisinière. 7. — sera bientôt midi. 8. — est ici que l'autobus s'arrête. 9. — s'arrête ici. 10. — sont mes frères que vous avez vus. 11. — sont arrivés hier. 12. — sont ici depuis huit jours. 13. — demeurent à Saint-Louis. 14. — est à Saint-Louis qu'ils demeurent. 15. À qui est —? 16. — est à eux.

(2) *Translate:* with me, at my house, at his house, with her, before them (*masc.*), behind them (*fem.*), for him, of them (*masc.*), without her, without them (*masc.*), by (beside) him, by me, after you, after her.

(3) *Give eight possible answers to each question, using disjunctive pronouns:* 1. Qui est là? 2. Qui a crié pendant la nuit? 3. Qui a perdu ce mouchoir?

C. (1) *Re-read exercise A of Lesson XXII. Close the book and reproduce it in the future with the following as key words:* se coucher ce soir — des projets pour demain — se lever — déjeuner — sortir — prendre tramway, autobus — passer chez modiste — aller chez couturière — essayer robes — déjeuner avec papa au restaurant — au magasin — des gants — rentrer — théâtre ce soir — content d'être au lit.

(2) *Translate and explain the cases of ce or il (elle, etc.):* 1. She is here; she is my teacher. 2. They went (*partir*, see Lesson XVIII, B, 2) this morning; they are the ones (= it is

they) who went this morning. 3. I am the one (= It is I) who spoke (*1st person*) to you. 4. He is famous; he is a famous man. 5. She is very pretty; she is a very pretty lady. 6. He is good (*sage*); he is a good boy. 7. It (*street car*) stops here; it is here that it stops. 8. They are gone (*partir*); they are my friends. 9. She stops; she is a good child. 10. He is [a] postman; he is the postman who brought the letters.

(3) Fill in each blank with the present, imperfect, past indefinite and future (four forms) of the verb in parenthesis: 1. (sortir) Notre voisin —— de sa maison. 2. (monter) Les voyageurs —— dans la voiture. 3. (faire) Cela ne —— rien (*rien as object has the same position as pas*). 4. (crier) Le conducteur —— les numéros. 5. (s'arrêter) Les tramways —— de l'autre côté de la rue. 6. (se promener) Mon oncle —— à cheval. 7. (courir: *1st future, courrai*) Ces jeunes filles —— nuit et jour. 8. (avoir besoin) Ces enfants —— d'un bon dîner. 9. (avoir) Il y —— une fois une belle dame. 10. (être) Il —— temps de partir. 11. (cesser) Mon père —— de fumer. 12. (s'appeler) Le petit garçon —— Charles [ʃarl]. 13. (commencer) Le professeur —— la leçon.

LESSON XXIV

98. Impersonal Verbs. They are conjugated in the third person singular only, with the subject *il* = *it*, used indefinitely and absolutely. Among such are

(a) verbs describing natural phenomena, as in English:

Quel temps fait-il?

What kind of weather is it?

Il fait beau temps.

It is fine (weather).

Il pleut, il pleuvait.

It is raining, it was raining.

Il a plu, il pleuvra.

It has rained, it will rain.

Il neige, il a neigé.

It is snowing, it has snowed.

Il fait chaud, il fait du vent

It is hot, it is windy.

(b) Il faut:

Il faut saluer ses amis.

It is necessary to (we must, you must, one must) speak to our (your, one's) friends.

(c) The idiomatic expression **il y a** + an object noun.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.

Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.

There are pens on the table.

It is ten miles from here to the city.

(d) **Il est** with expressions of time:

Il est trois heures, midi.

It is three o'clock, twelve o'clock (noon).

Il est une heure (du matin).

It is one o'clock (1 A.M.).

EXERCISE XXIV

une auto(mobile) [oto(məbil)] automobile (*often masc.*)

le bateau [bato] boat

le bout [bu] end

le camarade [kamarad] schoolmate, chum

le ciel [sjɛl] sky

le congé [kɔ̃ʒe] leave; jour de congé holiday

le coucher du soleil [kuʃedysɔ̃lɛ:j] sunset

un endroit [ẽnãdrwa] spot, place

une excursion [ekskyrjsjõ] trip

le lac [lak] lake

le lever du soleil [ləlvedysole:j] sunrise

le monde [mõ:d] world

le nuage [nɥa:ʒ] cloud

les provisions *f.* [provizjõ] food, things to eat

le repas [rəpa] meal

le vent [vã] wind

couvert [kuve:r] overcast, covered

propre [prɔpr] clean

le lundi [lœdi] Monday

le mardi [mardi] Tuesday

le mercredi [merkrœdi] Wednesday

day

le jeudi [ʒødi] Thursday

le vendredi [vã:drœdi] Friday

le samedi [samdi] Saturday

le dimanche [dimã:ʒ] Sunday

appeler [aple] call

s'apprêter [saprète] get ready

chasser [ʃase] drive away

neiger [neʒe] snow

il neige [ne:ʒ] it is snowing

pleuvoir [plœvwa:r] rain

il pleut [plø] it is raining

se reposer [sərpøze] rest

après-demain [apredmɛ] day

after to-morrow

avant-hier [avã(t)je:r] day

before yesterday

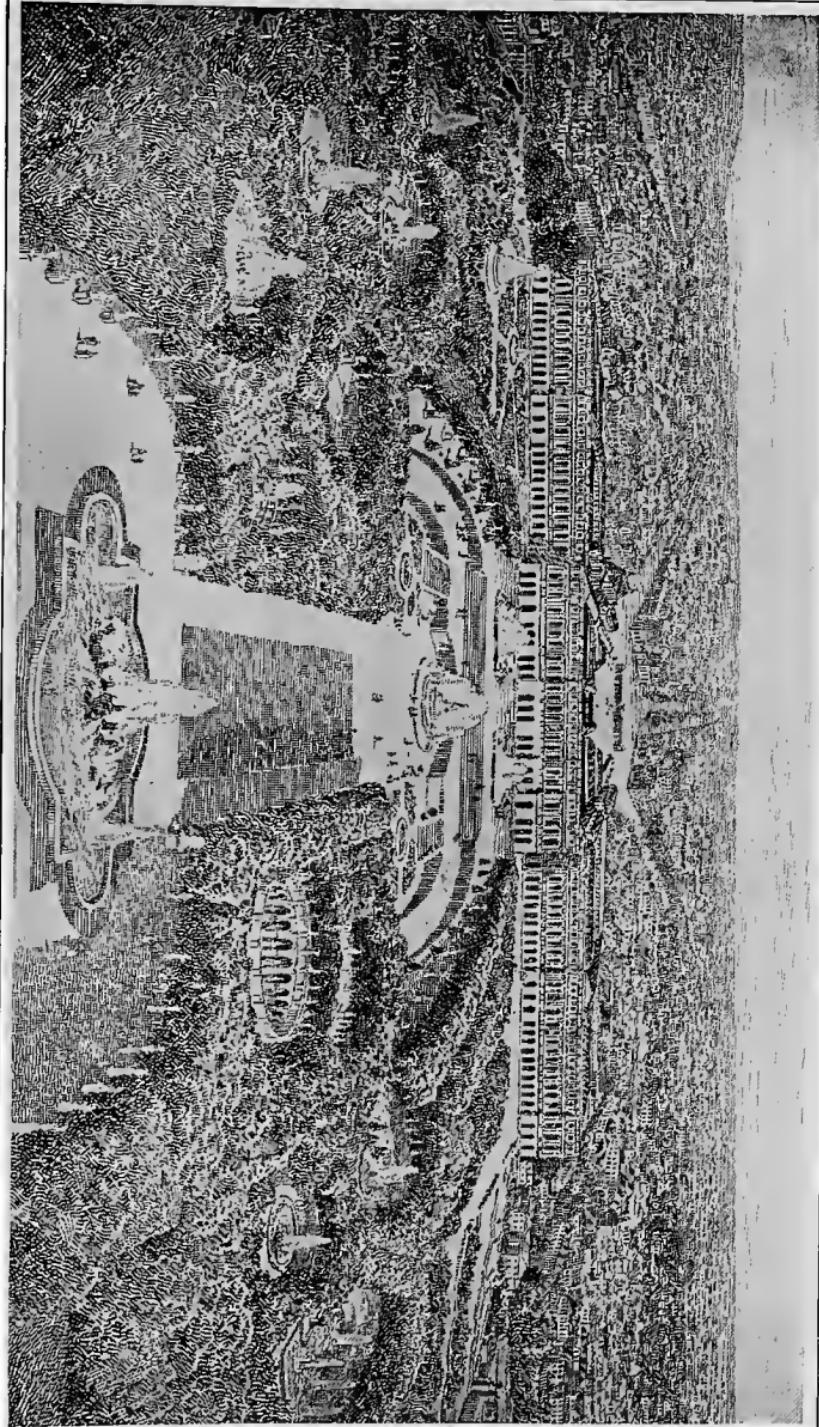
dehors [dəɔ:r] outdoors

près de [prɛdə] near

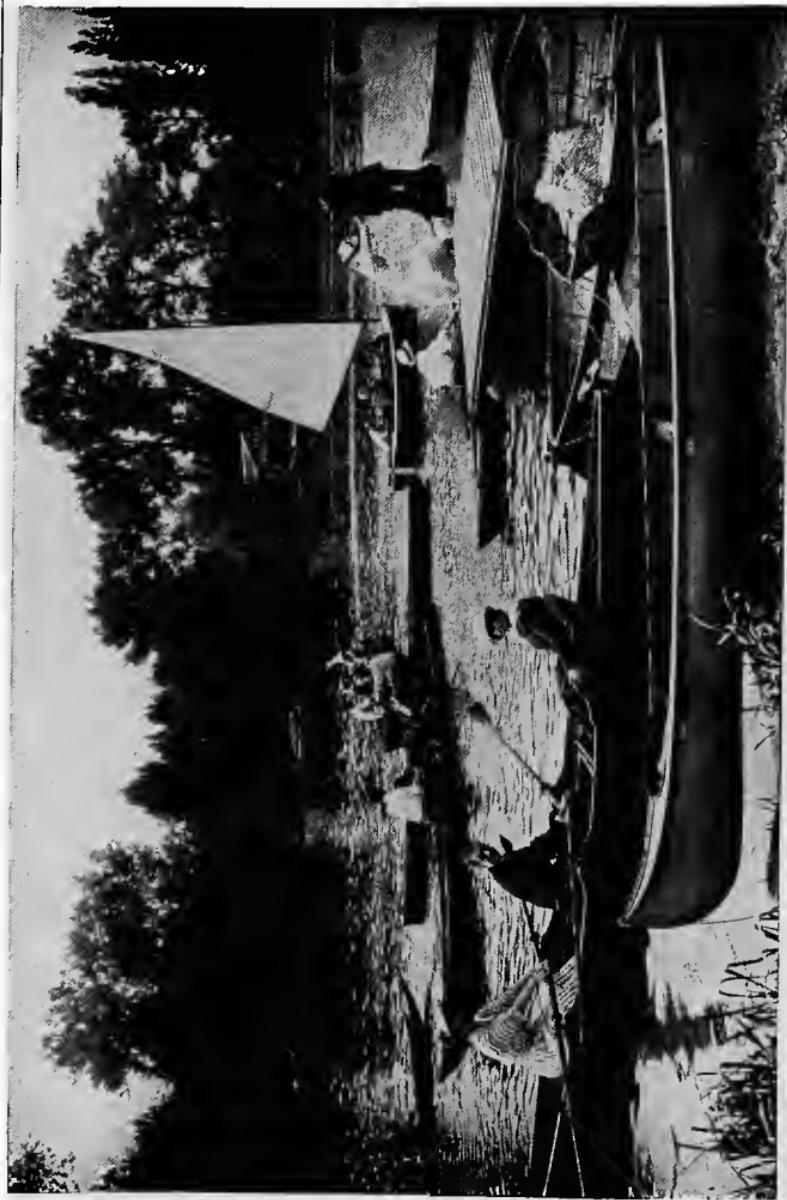
sous [su] under, beneath

pendant que [pãdãke] while

VERSAILLES



UNE PROMENADE EN BATEAU



A. (1) 1. C'est aujourd'hui vendredi. 2. Mardi dernier nous avons fait une jolie excursion. 3. Nous nous sommes levés avant le lever du soleil et nous avons regardé dehors pour voir quel temps il faisait. 4. Le ciel était couvert de nuages et il commençait à pleuvoir. 5. Il a plu pendant une heure, mais après le petit déjeuner il a cessé de pleuvoir. 6. Le vent a chassé les nuages et bientôt il a fait très beau. 7. À dix heures nous sommes partis en automobile pour passer la journée dans le parc de Versailles, un des plus beaux parcs du monde. 8. Nous avons pris des choses à manger parce que nous voulions (*wished*) dîner sous les arbres. 9. Nous étions huit dans notre automobile mais nous étions bien malgré cela. 10. Il y avait plusieurs autres automobiles pour nos camarades. 11. En route nous avons chanté et crié, et nous avons beaucoup ri. 12. J'aime les excursions en auto, si on ne marche pas trop vite. 13. La grande route était très belle, avec de beaux arbres des deux côtés. 14. Les petits chemins dans la forêt étaient moins bons mais cela ne faisait rien. 15. Nous ne voulions pas aller trop vite.

(2) 16. Au bout d'une heure nous nous sommes arrêtés dans un joli endroit près d'un petit lac. 17. Il y avait de l'herbe et de beaux arbres. 18. Nos parents sont restés sous les arbres pour préparer le repas, pendant que les enfants s'amusaient. 19. Quelques-uns des garçons ont joué à la balle. 20. D'autres ont fait une promenade en bateau sur le petit lac. 21. Il y avait plusieurs bateaux et quelques-unes des jeunes filles les ont accompagnés. 22. Avant le repas ma mère m'a dit: « Tes mains ne sont pas propres; va les laver tout de suite. » 23. Après le dîner on s'est reposé sur l'herbe parce qu'on était fatigué. 24. À cinq heures nous sommes partis et nous sommes arrivés chez nous avant le coucher du soleil. 25. Quelle belle journée! En hiver on ne fait pas de si jolies excursions. 26. Il fait froid, il neige et très souvent il pleut toute la journée et on s'amuse mieux à la maison. 27. Les jours sont aussi très courts. Le soleil se lève tard et se couche de bonne heure. J'aime mieux l'été.

B. *Memorize* *: Eh, bonjour Lundi!
 Comment va Mardi?
 Très bien, Mercredi;
 Je viens de la part de Jeudi,
 Dire à Vendredi,
 Qu'il s'apprête Samedi,
 Pour aller à l'église Dimanche.

C. (1) *Transfer the story in A to the future, substituting demain for aujourd'hui, prochain for dernier, futures for past indefinites, etc., and tell it first in the first person as above, and then of mes cousins, making the proper changes of verbs, pronouns, etc. The first person, future, of voulions is voudrons (or use allons vouloir).*

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. It was raining when we got up this morning, but it did not rain long. 2. When it stopped raining we went out. Our friends were waiting for us. 3. They invited us to go with them to Versailles, where they were going to spend the day in the beautiful park. 4. There were eight of us in their motor car, but in spite of that we were very comfortable. 5. On the way we laughed and sang. When we got to our destination we all got out (*descendre*). 6. While our parents prepared dinner on the grass, the boys played ball. 7. Some of the girls went for a boat ride on the small lake. 8. We asked them (*indirect object*) to (*de*) wait for us, but they would (*imperf. of vouloir; 1st person, voulais*) not. 9. Two of the girls fell into the water, but they did not hurt themselves. 10. At six o'clock my mother called us and we set out (= departed). 11. The car went rapidly and we got home before sunset.

D. *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce aujourd'hui? 2. Quel jour est-ce que ce sera demain? 3. Et

* Translation: (Good morning, good day), How do you do Monday! How is Tuesday? — Very well, Wednesday; — I come from (= in behalf of) Thursday — To tell Friday — That he is to get ready Saturday, — To go to church Sunday.

Observe the use of capital letters here, contrary, apparently, to § 21. In this jingle the days are personified.

quel jour était-ce hier? 4. Et après-demain? 5. Et avant-hier? 6. Quels jours de la semaine avez-vous vos classes? 7. Allez-vous à l'école tous les jours? 8. Jeudi est jour de congé pour les petits Français; avez-vous congé le jeudi? 9. Est-ce que vous vous amusez le samedi? 10. Aimez-vous mieux les samedis ou les lundis? 11. Quand est-ce que « Vendredi » s'apprête? 12. Pourquoi s'apprête-t-il? 13. Vous apprêtez-vous le samedi pour aller à l'église le dimanche? 14. Comment allez-vous aujourd'hui? 15. Comment va votre père? 16. Quels sont les jours de la semaine?

E. Dictée: Lesson XXII, A.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 3

(1) *Give opposite or synonym:* bon marché, une bottine, une semaine, deux semaines, tard, faire beau, faire chaud, avoir raison, essayer, se lever, de bonne heure, le lever du soleil, jour, matin, pauvre, ensuite, quelque chose, sale, premier.

(2) *Supply the proper words:* 1. La terre est — de neige. 2. Le vent — les nuages. 3. Il — à vos questions. 4. La couturière fait des —; la modiste fait des —. 5. J'étais fatigué et j'ai dormi — ce matin. 6. Je suis arrivé en — à l'école. 7. Je me coucherais de bonne heure parce que j'ai —. 8. Je vais au concert parce que j'aime la —. 9. Je vais voir une — de Molière au — ce soir. 10. Allez vite laver vos mains, elles sont —; elles ne sont pas —. 11. Je me suis — les cheveux; je me suis — la figure. 12. J'ai mes — aux pieds. 13. Pour me laver les mains j'ai besoin de — et d'une —. 14. Je n'aime pas cet enfant, il n'est pas —. 15. Prenons l'autobus qui — à ce coin de la rue. 16. Les — montent dans le tramway; le conducteur crie les — et nous montons dans — de nos numéros. 17. Je n'aime pas les autos, j'aime mieux me promener à —. 18. Quand il — froid, je mettrai mes gants. 19. Nous avons acheté deux — de souliers. 20. Je marche avec les — et les —, je pense avec la —.

(3) Supply past indefinite and future of cesser or s'arrêter according to the sense: 1. Il — de pleuvoir. 2. Le train —. 3. Il ne neige pas maintenant, la neige a — de tomber. 4. Cet enfant a — d'écouter. 5. Il — à la porte. 6. Ne vous — pas dans la rue; vous serez en retard pour la classe. Supply the infinitive of one of these verbs: 7. Voulez-vous —? 8. Voulez-vous — de causer avec eux?

(4) Supply fois or temps or heure: 1. Il fait beau —; deux à la —; il est — de partir; quelle — est-il? c'est — du dîner. 2. Combien de — resterez-vous chez la couturière? 3. Combien de — les avez-vous vus? 4. Le — c'est de l'argent. 5. Je n'ai pas le — d'y aller. 6. Il a neigé plusieurs — vendredi dernier. 7. Depuis combien de — demeurez-vous à New-York? 8. Notre auto [oto] s'est arrêtée trois —. 9. Il y avait une — une petite fille très sage.

(5) a. Supply de bonne heure or bientôt: 1. Ils se lèveront — demain. 2. Il est un peu en retard mais il arrivera —. 3. J'ai fait une promenade — ce matin. 4. Je rentrerai — pour le déjeuner. 5. Attendez un peu, l'autobus arrivera —. 6. Si le tramway n'arrive pas —, j'irai à ma destination à pied. 7. Aujourd'hui ils se sont réveillés —.

b. Supply tard or en retard: 1. J'aime à me lever — en hiver. 2. Le soleil se couche — en été. 3. Je suis parti très — de chez moi. 4. Cet élève est toujours —. 5. Vous êtes — pour prendre le train. 6. Le train est arrivé — à la gare.

(6) Use in two sentences each the verbs conjugated with être (see Lesson XVIII).

(7) Supply suitable words: 1. Nous avons été au « Bon Marché » (magasin célèbre de Paris). 2. Nous avons acheté une paire de —, trois paires de —, et deux — pour ma grande sœur. 3. Et nous avons acheté une jolie — verte pour mon oncle, des —, des —, et des — pour mon père et des — pour ma petite sœur. 4. Tous les enfants aiment les —.

(8) Énumérez (enumerate) les objets dont vous vous servez pour votre toilette (voyez aux Leçons XX, XXI).

(9) Complétez: 1. Vous — trop de cigarettes. 2. Quand les enfants — peur, ils —. 3. Les enfants — ne crient pas beaucoup. 4. Quand le ciel est couvert de — en hiver, on dit qu'il va —. 5. Si c'est en été, on dit qu'il va —. 6. On se promène sur l'eau dans un —. 7. On se promène à travers la forêt à —. 8. On se promène sur les grandes routes en — ou à — ou à —.

(10) Quels sont les jours de la semaine?

(11) Dites en français: already, again, late, early, at length, through, beside, near, yell loudly, the same day, out-doors.

LESSON XXV

99. The Infinitive. Some of the commoner uses of the infinitive are:

1. Without any preposition, (a) after such verbs as *devoir*, *must*, *ought to*, *falloir*, *must*, *be necessary to*, *pouvoir*, *can*, *be able to*, *savoir*, *can*, *know how to*, *vouloir*, *will*, *wish*; (b) after verbs of motion such as *aller*, *go*, *venir*, *come*; (c) after verbs of perceiving such as *écouter*, *listen (to)*, *entendre*, *hear*, *voir*, *see*, *regarder*, *look at*; and after *faire*, *make*, *cause to*, *laisser*, *let*.

Désire-t-il aller en ville?

Does he wish to go downtown?

Il faut travailler.

He (we, you, they, etc.) must work.

Je vais chercher des plumes.

I am going to get some pens.

Je vois venir des soldats.

I see some soldiers coming.

Je fais sonner la cloche.

I make the bell ring.

2. Preceded by *de*, (a) after impersonal *être* followed by an adjective; (b) after many verbs, such as *cesser*, *stop*, *demander*, *ask*, *dire*, *tell*, *essayer*, *try*, *prier*, *beg*, *regretter*, *regret*, *be sorry*, *tâcher*, *try*; (c) after nouns to form adjective phrases; and after most adjectives.

Il est facile <i>de</i> parler.	It is easy to talk.
Il a cessé <i>de</i> chanter.	He has ceased singing.
Le crime <i>de</i> voler.	The crime of stealing.
Vous êtes libre <i>de</i> partir.	You are free to go.
Je vous prie <i>de</i> rester quelques minutes.	I beg of you to stay a few minutes.

3. Preceded by *à*, (a) after such verbs as *aimer*, *like*, *s'amuser*, *have a good time*, *apprendre*, *learn*, *avoir*, *have to*, *chercher*, *seek*, *commencer*, *begin*, *continuer*, *continue*, *enseigner*, *teach*, *inviter*, *invite*, *se mettre*, *begin*, *réussir*, *succeed*; and (b) after some adjectives denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.

J'aime à patiner.	I like to skate (like skating).
Je m'amuse à patiner.	I amuse myself (by) skating.
Commencez à lire.	Begin to read.
Nous avons à copier nos phrases.	We have to copy our sentences.
Il se met à travailler.	He begins to work.
Ceci est bon à manger.	This is good to eat.
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do.

N.B. — *Aimer* may also (colloquially) be followed by the pure infinitive; e.g., *j'aime (à) marcher lentement*, *I like to walk slowly*.

4. Observe that the same adjective may take *à* or *de*, according to the construction in which it is used. When the infinitive depends upon the adjective and is not the logical subject of the sentence, the adjective and the infinitive are connected by means of *à*; when the infinitive is the real subject of the sentence, it is preceded by *de*.

Il est facile à contenter.	He is easy to satisfy.
Il est facile <i>de</i> le contenter.	It is easy to satisfy him.
La chose est facile à faire.	The thing is easy to do.
Il est difficile <i>de</i> patiner.	Skating is difficult.

5. A verb governed by a preposition must be in the infinitive, except after *en* (cf. § 101); the infinitive is usually translated into English by means of a present participle:

Je l'ai fait sans penser.	I did it without thinking.
Il est parti sans rien dire.	He left without saying anything

100. Present Participle of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*, etc.

<i>Giving</i>	<i>Finishing</i>	<i>Selling</i>
donn ant [dənā]	finiss ant [finisā]	vend ant [vādā]
<i>Having</i>	<i>Being</i>	
ay ant [ɛjā]	ét ant [etā]	

101. **Agreement.** Used as an adjective, the present participle agrees like an adjective; otherwise it is invariable:

Une scène charmante.	A charming scene.
Les enfants sont obéissants.	The children are obedient.
Elle tombait souvent en marchant.	She often fell while walking.
Ce professeur aime à s'amuser en lisant les pièces de Molière.	This teacher likes to entertain himself by reading Molière's plays.
En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua.	Still weeping, she went on.

N.B. — The present participle, when preceded by *en*, strengthened sometimes by *tout*, is often called the *gerund*. The preposition *en* is expressed in English by *on*, *in*, *while*, *by* or is left untranslated.

102. Present Indicative of *pouvoir*, *be able*, *can*, *may* (irreg.)

I can, am able, etc.

je peux or puis [ʒəpø,pu]i	nous pouvons [nupuvɔ̃]
tu peux [typø]	vous pouvez [vupuve]
il peut [ilpø]	ils peuvent [ilpœ:v]

103. The impersonal *il faut* (imperfect *il fallait*, past indef. *il a fallu*, future *il faudra*) is often used with the pure infinitive to indicate a general obligation on the part of the speaker or the person spoken to or about:

Il faut faire son devoir.	One must do one's duty.
Il faut partir.	I (we, you, he, they) must leave.
Il ne fallait pas s'arrêter.	You (we, he, they, she) ought not to have stopped.
Il a fallu beaucoup travailler	We (they, you, etc.) had to work hard.
Il ne faudra pas voler.	We (one, people, etc.) must not steal.

Observe the position of the negative words in the French examples.

EXERCISE XXV

la carte [kart] card, map
 la cloche [klɔʃ] bell
 la connaissance [kɔnəsɑ:s] acquaintance
 un effort [efɔ:r] effort
 la glace [glas] ice, mirror
 le roman [rɔmā] novel
 la soirée [sware] evening (*when duration is stressed*)
 charmant [ʃarmā] delightful
 enchanté [ãʃate] delighted
 libre [libr] free
 falloir [falwa:r] be necessary;
 il faut [fo] it is necessary,
 one must; il faudra [fodra]
 it will be necessary, one will
 have to or must
 pouvoir [puvwa:r] be able, can

venir [veni:r] come; il vient
 [vjɛ] he comes, is coming
 vouloir [vulwa:r] wish
 apprendre (à) [aprā:dr] learn,
 teach
 enseigner (à) [ãsejne] teach
 réussir (à) [reysi:r] succeed
 essayer (de) [eseje] try, attempt
 prier (de) [prije] ask, beg, request
 regretter (de) [rəgrēte] regret,
 be sorry
 patiner [patine] skate
 se porter be (*of health*)
 remercier [rəmersje] thank
 sonner [sõne] ring
 facilement [fasilmā] easily

A. 1. Bonjour, monsieur; je suis enchanté de faire votre connaissance. 2. Comment allez-vous aujourd'hui? 3. — Très bien, merci. Et vous? 4. — Qui? Moi? Toujours bien, je vous remercie. 5. Aimez-vous ce temps? — Oh, beaucoup. 6. Il a fait froid cette nuit (*last night*) mais maintenant on voit le soleil et il fait presque chaud. 7. J'ai fait une promenade charmante dans le parc ce matin. 8. Il n'y a pas de fleurs, mais il y a des* petits oiseaux qui ne sont pas partis, et qui n'ont pas encore cessé de chanter. 9. En passant j'ai regardé le petit lac et j'ai vu qu'il y avait de la glace. 10. Nous pouvons bientôt patiner. 11. On peut s'amuser facilement en hiver, n'est-ce pas? 12. — Oui, il est très facile de s'amuser dehors quand on se porte bien. 13. Et si on ne désire pas sortir, on peut rester à la maison à lire et à faire de la musique. 14. J'ai

* Observe **des petits oiseaux**, like **des petits pois**. The adjective and noun are felt as a compound noun. Similarly we say regularly **des jeunes filles**, **des petits pains** (*rolls*) and, often, **des petits garçons**

commencé hier un roman de Dumas [dyma]. 15. Et souvent nous invitons nos amis à passer la soirée chez nous. 16. On chante, on danse, on joue aux cartes. 17. Oui. Il est facile de bien s'amuser quand on a des amis.

B. (1) *Use the indicated infinitive, directly or preceded by a preposition, according to § 99:* 1. Vous ne pouvez pas (parler). 2. Il faut (se coucher) tout de suite. 3. Nous allons (nous lever) maintenant. 4. Il a déjà cessé (pleuvoir). 5. Je regrette (quitter) mes amis. 6. Je vous prie (répondre) à ma question. 7. J'ai beaucoup à faire; nous avons trop (faire). 8. Ma sœur a entendu (chanter) Caruso. 9. Vous entendrez (chanter) les oiseaux dans le parc. 10. Nous voulons (voir) le petit lac. 11. Je vois (tomber) la neige. 12. À quelle heure voulez-vous (dîner)? 13. Le vent a réussi (chasser) les nuages. 14. Vous pouvez (réussir) (parler) français, si vous tâchez (bien prononcer). 15. Nous essayons (parler) français. 16. Je vais (me promener) près de la forêt. 17. Il m'a enseigné (monter) à cheval. 18. Vous êtes libre (jouer) dans mon jardin. 19. Regrettez-vous (cesser) (fumer)? 20. Je vous prie (vous servir) de mon savon. 21. Il fait jour; il faut (se lever) tout de suite; il faudra (rentrer) avant minuit. 22. J'aimais (passer) les vacances à la campagne. 23. Elle avait réussi (trouver) son livre. 24. Il n'est pas facile (bien prononcer) le français. 25. Désirez-vous (vous arrêter) ici? 26. Ils voient (venir) leurs amis. 27. Il écoutait (sonner) les cloches. 28. Il m'a prié (le mener) au concert. 29. Il s'amuse (lire). 30. Il m'apprendra (patiner). 31. Les élèves demanderont au professeur (leur enseigner) (lire) le français.

(2) *What do you observe about the position of the infinitive after entendre, voir, écouter? Contrast it with the order in English.*

(3) a. *Observe carefully:* 1. La classe a appris à bien prononcer. 2. Après avoir fait ma toilette, je suis descendu. 3. Je regrette de vous voir partir. 4. Mon père a fini par me chasser de la maison. 5. On se couche pour dormir. 6. On ne peut rien apprendre sans faire un effort.

b. These six prepositions take the infinitive. What form of the infinitive is found after *après*? *Par* with the infinitive is usually found only after **commencer** and **finir**. Observe that **en** does not take the infinitive. For **by + verb form** in other cases, compare § 101, example 5. May we use **avant** alone before an infinitive?

c. Translate: 1. After finishing my work; after eating too much. 2. We shall begin by reading aloud (*à haute voix*). 3. One learns to skate by skating. 4. Before leaving, I wish to thank you again (*encore une fois*).

d. Note the usual position of **bien** with infinitives (before), and in compound tenses (before the past participle). Write: 1. We had a very good time. 2. She sang well yesterday.

C. (1) Translate the participial phrases (*be careful about the auxiliaries*): 1. Having finished his lesson. 2. Having arrived before noon. 3. Having stopped eating. 4. Having gone to see her. 5. Having succeeded in teaching you to skate. 6. Having been to the theater yesterday evening (not *soirée*). 7. Having gone out early. 8. Having come in (*rentrer*) late. 9. Having waked (*1st person: m'étant réveillé. Third person?*) before daylight (*le jour*). 10. Having got up (*1st plural fem.: nous étant levées. Third plural fem.?*) at six o'clock. 11. Having begged (*prier*) my father to give me more money. 12. Having asked (*demander*) my chum to come to see me.

(2) Traduisez: 1. He enters without knocking. 2. She left without looking at me; you cannot pronounce French without making an effort. 3. In winter we amuse ourselves by (*à*) skating. 4. He will not succeed in finding the right (*bon*) road. 5. Do you want to spend your time in (*à*) running-about (*courir*) the streets? 6. He speaks of going to France (the) next summer. 7. He cannot speak of going away without regretting to leave his friends. 8. While skating (*see § 101, example 3*) yesterday, I fell and hurt myself. 9. When I was small I used to fall and hurt myself while skating. 10. Appetite comes (*vient*) while one eats (= eating). 11. We (On) learn to speak French by speaking (*see § 101, example 5*). 12. We (On) succeed in stopping smoking by stopping smoking.

LESSON XXVI

104. Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre*

<i>I (may) give, etc.</i>	<i>I (may) finish, etc.</i>	<i>I (may) sell, etc.</i>
donn <i>e</i> [dɔ̃n]	finiss <i>e</i> [finis]	vend <i>e</i> [vā:d]
donn <i>es</i> [dɔ̃n]	finiss <i>es</i> [finis]	vend <i>es</i> [vā:d]
donn <i>e</i> [dɔ̃n]	finiss <i>e</i> [finis]	vend <i>e</i> [vā:d]
donn <i>ions</i> [dɔ̃njɔ̃]	finiss <i>ions</i> [finisjɔ̃]	vend <i>ions</i> [vādjɔ̃]
donn <i>iez</i> [dɔ̃nje]	finiss <i>iez</i> [finisje]	vend <i>iez</i> [vādje]
donn <i>ent</i> [dɔ̃n]	finiss <i>ent</i> [finis]	vend <i>ent</i> [vā:d]

N.B. — The paradigm meanings *I may give, etc.*, are only approximate, as will be seen from the examples below.

105. Present Subjunctive of *avoir, être*

<i>I (may) have, etc.</i>	<i>I (may) be, etc.</i>
aie [ɛ] ayons [ɛjɔ̃]	sois [swa] soyons [swajɔ̃]
aies [ɛ] ayez [ɛjɛ]	sois [swa] soyez [swaje]
ait [ɛ] aient [ɛ]	soit [swa] soient [swa]

106. Use of the Subjunctive. Some of the commoner uses of the subjunctive are:

1. In a subordinate noun clause introduced by *que, that*, after expressions of *willing* or *desiring*:

Je désire que vous restiez. I desire you to remain (= that you may or should remain).

2. Similarly, after expressions of *joy* or *sorrow*:

Je suis content qu'il soit ici. I am glad he is here.

3. So also after expressions of *necessity*, like *il faut*:

Il faut que vous restiez. You must remain.

Il est nécessaire que vous restiez. It is necessary for you to remain.

N.B. — We learned in §§ 99, 103 that *falloir* is often followed by the pure infinitive. In B and C of the Exercise below the pupil will find examples that should help him to decide between the cases when the infinitive or subjunctive may be used indifferently, or when the subjunctive is required. It should be observed that the subjunctive construction is preferable in such cases as example 1, when we have a definite person in mind.

4. It is used in adverbial clauses after certain conjunctions, *e.g.*, **afin que**, *in order that*, **pour que**, *in order that*, **avant que**, *before*, **bien que**, *although*, **quoique**, *although*, etc. **Bien qu'il soit pauvre il est heureux.** Although he is poor, he is happy.

5. **Que** is never omitted, as *that* often is in English:
Je suis content qu'il soit ici. I am glad (that) he is here.

107. Tense Sequence. Present or Future in the principal clause is regularly followed by Present Subjunctive:

PRES. Il faut	que vous parliez.	{ You must speak.
FUT. Il faudra		You will have to speak.

108. Present Indicative of *vouloir*, *will*, *wish*, etc. (irreg.)

I will, wish, etc.

je veux [ʒøvø]	nous voulons [nuvulɔ̃]
tu veux [tyvø]	vous voulez [vuvule]
il veut [ilvø]	ils veulent [ilvœl]

109. Present Subjunctive of *faire* (irreg.)

I (may) do, etc.

fasse [fas]	fassions [fasjɔ̃]
fasses [fas]	fassiez [fasje]
fasse [fas]	fassent [fas]

EXERCISE XXVI

le billet [bijɛ] ticket	avoir l'intention de intend
le doute [dut] doubt	dire [di:r] say, tell
un esprit [espri] wit, intelligence, spirit	envoyer [āvwaje] send
la fin [fɛ] end	féliciter [felisite] congratulate
la guerre [ge:r] war	laisser [lɛse] leave, allow
une intention [ētāsjɔ̃] intention	permettre (de) [permestr] allow, permit
le moyen [mwajɛ] means, way	voyager [vwajaze] travel
la vie [vi] life	
aimable [əmabl] kind	ne . . . que only
charmé [ʃarme] delighted	sans doute [sādut] doubtless,
mille [mil] a thousand	certainly
possible [pɔsibl] possible	seulement [scelmā] only

EXERCISE XXVI (Continued)

afin que [afēkə] in order that,	au revoir! [orvwa:r] good-bye, so that see you again!
avant que [avākə] before	c'est cela [sēsla] that's right,
bien que [bjēkə] although	that's it
quoique [kwakə] although	peut-être [pøtē:tr] perhaps

A. Use the infinitive in parenthesis with or without a preposition according to usage:

1. On ne peut pas (bien marcher) sur la glace; il faut (apprendre) (patiner).
2. Je regrette (ne pas pouvoir) (patiner).
3. Il a cessé (neiger) maintenant; nous pouvons (sortir).
4. Désirez-vous (faire) la connaissance de Monsieur Daudet [dode]?
5. — Beaucoup. Je vous prie (me présenter) à Monsieur Daudet.
6. — Alors, permettez-moi (vous présenter) mon ami, Monsieur Dupin.
7. — Je suis charmé (faire) votre connaissance, monsieur.
8. Êtes-vous depuis longtemps en Amérique?
9. — Non, monsieur. Je ne suis en Amérique que depuis trois mois. Je l'aime beaucoup, et je regretterai (partir) la semaine prochaine.
10. — Vous avez réussi (très bien apprendre) l'anglais. Permettez-moi (vous féliciter).
11. — Je vous remercie, monsieur. Vous êtes mille fois aimable, mais je commence seulement (l'apprendre).
12. Mais où avez-vous appris (parler) français?
13. Comment avez-vous réussi (parler) et (comprendre) si bien? Vous avez été sans doute en France!
14. — Non, monsieur, je regrette (n'avoir) pas encore vu la France.
15. J'avais l'intention (y aller) l'année dernière, mais la guerre ne permettait pas (voyager).
16. — Eh bien, il faut (venir) bientôt; et venez (me voir) à Paris, n'est-ce pas?
17. — Merci, monsieur. Je veux (le faire) et je le ferai l'été prochain, si je peux. — Au revoir, monsieur! — Au revoir! À (till) l'année prochaine! — C'est cela. À l'année prochaine, à Paris!

B. Contrast the following sentences:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Il désire réussir. | Il désire que nous réussissions. |
| 2. Je veux le faire. | Il veut que je le fasse. |
| 3. Nous sommes contents de vous voir si bien réussir. | Nous sommes contents que vous ayez si bien réussi. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Vous regrettiez de l'avoir fait, n'est-ce pas? | Je ne regrette pas que vous l'ayez fait. |
| 5. Il faut vous féliciter de votre prononciation. | Il faut que le professeur vous félicite de votre prononciation. |
| 6. Il est nécessaire de permettre cela aux enfants. | Il est nécessaire que vous me permettiez de vous le dire. |

What is the essential difference in regard to the subject of the dependent verb that makes the subjunctive necessary in the sentences of the second column?

Hence, what general statement can you formulate in the case of verbs that come under both § 99 and § 106; that is, when is the infinitive used and when the subjunctive?

C. (1) *Make two groups of sentences with désirer, vouloir, regretter, être content, il faudra, in which you illustrate both constructions possible after these verbs. Observe that in cases like § 99, 1, example 2, § 103, and § 106, 3, example 1, the infinitive and subjunctive constructions after il faut (faudra) are exactly equivalent. This is often the case when the subject in English is a personal pronoun; but il faut que cet élève fasse son travail.*

(2) *Supply the proper form of the verb in parenthesis, inserting any missing preposition:* 1. (être) Bien qu'il — riche, il est heureux. 2. (avoir) Quoiqu'elle — beaucoup d'argent, elle a de l'esprit. 3. (faire) Bien qu'il — beau aujourd'hui, ces enfants ne peuvent pas sortir. 4. (partir) Quoique nous — de très bonne heure, nous n'arriverons qu'à minuit. 5. (faire) Mon père désire que je — un voyage en France pour mieux (apprendre) (parler) français. 6. (entendre) Nous mènerons mon cousin au concert ce soir afin qu'il — de la¹ bonne musique. 7. (finir) Je le laisserai tranquille tout(e) l'après-midi pour qu'il — son travail avant le dîner. 8. (finir) Nous ne partirons pas avant qu'il — ses leçons pour demain. 9. (faire) Il fermera la porte afin qu'il — assez chaud dans sa chambre. 10. (arriver) Nous n'avons pas nos places et il ne faut pas que nous — trop tard. 11. (être) Quoique nos places ne —

¹ Compare XXV, A, footnote.

pas trop bonnes, j'entendrai bien. 12. (avoir) Mon cousin entendra bien aussi quoiqu'il ne — pas de trop bonnes oreilles. 13. (quitter) Il faudra que nous — la salle avant la fin du concert. 14. (avoir) Il est nécessaire que nous — nos billets avant d'entrer dans la salle. 15. (être) Il faut que nous — à nos places avant qu'on — ¹ (chanter).

(3) *Traduisez:* 1. We are delighted that you are having a good time in America. 2. Although you have been here only a few months, you speak English very well. 3. I must congratulate you on your pronunciation. 4. I wish to send my son to France, in order that he may learn (§ 202) to speak French. 5. He likes it very much, but he is just beginning (is beginning only) to learn to speak it. 6. When your son is in Paris, he must make the acquaintance of my old friend Mr. Dumas, who has several sons and three daughters. 7. One learns a language very quickly by talking with other young people (*gens*). 8. They are the best teachers. Your son must often spend the evening at his house. 9. He will have to (must) learn the language, in order to play cards and chat with the young ladies. 10. I shall be glad to have him do that (that he do . . .). 11. We wish him to become acquainted with (*faire connaissance avec*) the life of a French family. 12. It is the best way of becoming acquainted with France.

D. *Form questions to which the sentences in C, (2) could be considered as answers.*

E. (1) a. *Observe the similarities between the stem of the present participles of verbs like donner, finir, vendre (§ 100) and that of the present and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive:*

PRES. PART.	regardant	mûrissant	attendant
PRES. INDIC.	regarde	mûris	attends
IMP. INDIC.	regardais	mûrissais	attendais
PRES. SUBJ.	regarde	mûrisse	attende

b. *Complete orally or at the board the conjugation of these forms*

¹ (*commencer*).

(2) This similarity exists in all the so-called regular verbs, and is important for all others. For example:

PRES. PART.	ayant	étant	faisant	[fəzã]	dormant
PRES. INDIC.	ai	suis	fais	[fe]	dors
IMPERF. INDIC.	avais	étais	faisais	[fəze]	dormais
PRES. SUBJ.	aie	sois	fasse	[fas]	dorme

Complete orally or at the board the conjugation of these forms. Observe that the forms of the verb *être* are derived from more than one stem. Compare am, was, been.

LESSON XXVII

110. Imperative of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*

<i>Give, etc.</i>	<i>Finish, etc.</i>	<i>Sell, etc.</i>
donn <i>e</i> [dõn]	finis [fini]	vend <i>s</i> [vã]
qu'il donn <i>e</i> [dõn]	qu'il finiss <i>e</i> [finis]	qu'il vend <i>e</i> [vã:d̥]
donn <i>ons</i> [dõnõ]	finiss <i>ons</i> [finisõ]	vend <i>ons</i> [vãdõ]
donn <i>ez</i> [dõne]	finiss <i>ez</i> [finise]	vend <i>ez</i> [vãde]
qu'ils donn <i>ent</i> [dõn]	qu'ils finiss <i>ent</i> [finis]	qu'ils vend <i>ent</i> [vã:d̥]

Obs.: The 3rd sing. and 3rd pl. are subjunctive forms used as imperatives

111. Imperative of *avoir*, *être*

<i>Have, etc.</i>	<i>Be, etc.</i>
aie [ɛ]	sois [swa]
qu'il ait [kile]	qu'il soit [swa]
ay <i>ons</i> [ejõ]	soy <i>ons</i> [swajõ]
ay <i>ez</i> [eje]	soy <i>ez</i> [swaje]
qu'ils aient [kilze]	qu'ils soient [kilswa]

112. Imperative Negative

ne donne pas *qu'il ne donne pas* *ne donnons pas*, etc.

113. Position of Objects. 1. Personal pronoun objects follow the positive imperative (but not the subjunctive as imperative), and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens:

Donnez-lui la plume.

Give him the pen.

Donnez-la-lui.

Give it to him.

Donnons-leur-en.

Let us give them some.

But: **Qu'il me la donne.**

Let him give it to me.

2. If the imperative is negative, the general rule of position (§ 81) holds good:

Ne la lui donnez pas.

Do not give it to him.

3. **Moi** and **toi** are used after an imperative instead of **me** and **te** (unless before **y** and **en**, in which case apostrophe replaces hyphen):

Donnez-moi des pommes.

Give me some apples.

Donnez-m'en.

Give me some (of them).

4. When a verb has two objects, they are usually arranged thus after it:

le (la, les) before **moi** (**toi**, **lui**, **nous**, **vous**, **leur**).

me (**te**, **lui**, **nous**, **vous**, **leur**) before **y** (**en**).

y before **en**.

EXERCISE XXVII

un accord [œnakɔ:r] agreement

déranger [derɑ:ʒe] disturb

une encre [ã:kʁ] ink

faire son possible [fe:rɔ:bɔ:pɔbl] do one's (his, etc.) best

un exercice [egzərsis] exercise

prendre [prã:dr] take; prenez! [prane] take!

la feuille [fœ:j] leaf, sheet (*of paper*)

remplir [rãpli:r] fill

un instant [ɛstɑ] instant, moment

d'accord in agreement

la règle [ʁe:g] rule

ferme [ferm] hard

le stylo(graphe) [stilo]

ne... plus [nø ply] no more, no longer

fountain pen

ne... que only

droit [drwa] right

ça [sa] contraction (*familiar*) of cela

malade [malad] ill

moi-même [mwamɛ:m] myself

allons! [alɔ] come! (*int̪erjection*)

mon cher [mɔʃe:r] old man, my dear fellow

se dépêcher (de) [sədəpeʃe] hurry

sapristi! [sapristi] good gracious!

A. 1. On nous a dit de préparer nos leçons et nous faisons notre possible pour les bien préparer. 2. Le professeur nous a laissés ici afin qu'on ne nous dérange pas. 3. Nous avons prié nos camarades de nous laisser tranquilles. Nous avons peu de temps et il faut travailler ferme. 4. Quel est le livre que vous avez à la main droite? Est-ce votre livre de français? 5. — Oui, c'est ma grammaire française. — Donnez-la-moi un instant, s'il vous plaît. 6. Il faut que je tâche de trouver la règle de l'accord des participes. La voici. 7. — Moi aussi. Laissez-moi la regarder un instant, je vous prie. Elle n'est pas facile. 8. — Maintenant c'est de l'encre que je cherche. Il n'y en a plus dans mon stylo [stilo]. En avez-vous? 9. — Oui, j'en ai. — Alors donnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît: assez pour remplir mon stylo. 10. — Voilà. — Je vous remercie beaucoup. 11. Allons, dépêchons-nous. Travaillons un peu plus vite. Ne causons plus. 12. Vous me faites perdre trop de temps. — Soyez tranquille, nous finirons avant que le professeur soit prêt. 13. — Sapristi! J'ai perdu mon cahier. — Ça (Cela) ne fait rien! Prenez de ce papier-ci. 14. Prenez-en assez, je vous prie, mais n'en prenez pas trop, parce que j'ai besoin de quelques feuilles moi-même. 15. — Merci bien. Voulez-vous que j'en donne aussi à mon camarade Henri? 16. — Oui, donnez-lui-en, mais ne lui en donnez pas trop. 17. — N'ayez pas peur, mon cher. Je prendrai seulement ces quelques feuilles (*ou* je ne prendrai que ces quelques feuilles).

B. (1) *Substitute personal pronouns for the direct and indirect object nouns:* 1. Prenez du papier, je vous prie. 2. Ne prenez pas trop d'encre. 3. Chassez ces enfants du jardin. 4. Priez votre oncle de venir nous voir. 5. Écrivez-lui la lettre tout de suite. 6. N'écrivez pas la lettre à votre camarade cette semaine. 7. Ne mettez pas la cuiller dans votre tasse. 8. Mettez les cuillers à nos places, s'il vous plaît. 9. Présentez-moi votre ami. 10. Présentez mon ami à votre père, je vous prie. 11. Donnez le roman à votre tante. 12. Ne donnez pas les romans aux enfants. 13. Finissons le devoir vendredi soir. 14. Ne finissons pas ces devoirs samedi matin. 15. Ne dérangeons pas nos camarades pendant qu'ils travaillent. 16. Ne

dérangez pas le professeur. 17-18. Demandez la règle des participes à votre voisin; — à votre voisine.

(2) Give orally or write on the board the 1st and 2d plural imperative, affirmative and negative, of commencer, se lever, se coucher, voir, aller, se dépêcher, prendre, remplir, partir (observe that partir differs from finir in the imperative exactly as in the present indicative), sortir, attendre.

(3) Complete the following by adding a noun object, and then repeating the phrase with the proper pronoun: 1. Cherchez —— (Model: Cherchez le livre; cherchez-le). 2. Ne cherchez pas ——. 3. Finissez ——. 4. Ne finissez pas ——. 5. Vendez ——. 6. Ne vendez pas ——. 7. Qu'il écoute ——. 8. Chante ——. 9. Ne chante pas ——. 10. Choisissez ——. 11. Ne choisissez pas ——. 12. Donnons ——.

C. Écrivez en français: 1. I regret to tell (à) his mother that he is ill. 2. I regret that he is ill. 3. He will be delighted (enchanté) to see you. 4. He will be delighted that you brought him some money. 5. We want to learn to skate and to ride horseback. 6. My father wants me to learn (pres. subj. 1st pers., apprenne) music. 7. Allow me to tell you my name (use s'appeler: see Lesson IX, A). 8. Must (Faut-il que) we begin to speak French immediately? 9. They will have to (Il faudra qu'ils) let her alone (= leave her quiet). 10. She wants them to let her alone, but they don't want to let her alone. 11. Introduce me, please (s'il vous plaît or je vous prie) to your friend. 12. I beg you to introduce me to him (à lui). 13. Introduce him to me, please. 14. Although he has a lot of money, he does not travel. 15. Although I thanked him, he did not answer me. 16. Leave me alone so that (pour que) I may finish my work before dinner. 17. We must (Il faut que) go to bed early and I must get up to-morrow before sunrise. 18. Although he does his best, he hasn't succeeded in learning to pronounce French * very well (after verb).

D. Dictée: Leçon XXIV, A, (1).

* We say parler français, but prononcer le français, comprendre le français, apprendre le français.

LESSON XXVIII

114. Conditional of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*

<i>I should give, etc.</i>	<i>I should finish, etc.</i>	<i>I should sell, etc.</i>
<i>donner ais</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ais</i> [finiʁɛ]	<i>vendr ais</i> [vãdʁɛ]
<i>donner ais</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ais</i> [finiʁɛ]	<i>vendr ais</i> [vãdʁɛ]
<i>donner ait</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ait</i> [finiʁɛ]	<i>vendr ait</i> [vãdʁɛ]
<i>donner ions</i> [dɔ̃nɛʁjɔ̃]	<i>finir ions</i> [finiʁjɔ̃]	<i>vendr ions</i> [vãdriɔ̃]
<i>donner iez</i> [dɔ̃nɛʁje]	<i>finir iez</i> [finiʁje]	<i>vendr iez</i> [vãdrie]
<i>donner aient</i> [dɔ̃n(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir aient</i> [finiʁɛ]	<i>vendr aient</i> [vãdʁɛ]

NOTE.—For the pronunciation of the conditional of *donner* and of the future and conditional of *être* (§ 115) and of *faire* (§ 117), see the note to § 90; but observe that the *e* is generally sounded in the first and second plural of the conditional tense.

115. Conditional of *avoir*, *être*

<i>I should have, etc.</i>	<i>I should be, etc.</i>
<i>aur ais</i> [ɔʁe] <i>aur ions</i> [ɔʁjɔ̃]	<i>ser ais</i> [s(ə)rɛ] <i>ser ions</i> [səʁjɔ̃]
<i>aur ais</i> [ɔʁe] <i>aur iez</i> [ɔʁje]	<i>ser ais</i> [s(ə)rɛ] <i>ser iez</i> [səʁje]
<i>aur ait</i> [ɔʁe] <i>aur aient</i> [ɔʁe]	<i>ser ait</i> [s(ə)rɛ] <i>ser aient</i> [s(ə)rɛ]

116. Conditional Sentences. 1. The conditional is used to express what would happen (*result*) in case something else were to happen (*condition*):

S'il avait le temps (*condition*), il If he had time (Had he time, etc.), finirait sa leçon (*result*). he would finish his lesson.

2. A ‘result’ clause in the conditional (English *should* or *would*) regularly has the ‘if’ clause in the imperfect indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

Si j'étudiais bien (*condition*), le If I studied (or if I were to s., or maître serait content (*result*). were I to s., or should I s.) well, the teacher would be glad.

3. A ‘result’ clause in the future requires the ‘if’ clause in the present indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

S'il est ici demain (*condition*), If he is (*or be, or will be, or should be*) here to-morrow, I shall give
je lui donnerai l'argent (*result*). him the money.

N.B. — Neither the future nor the conditional may be used after *si* in the clause that expresses the supposition.

117. Future and Conditional of *faire* (irreg.) and *aller* (irreg.)

fer ai [f(ə)re] *fer ais* [f(ə)reɪ] *ir ai* [ire] *ir ais* [ire]
fer as [f(ə)ra], etc. *fer ais* [f(ə)re], etc. *ir as* [ira], etc. *ir ais* [ire], etc.

EXERCISE XXVIII

l' Angleterre *f.* [læglətə:r] England
 la bicyclette [bɪsiklət] bicycle
 la cathédrale [kædərəl] cathedral
 le château [ʃato] chateau, country mansion
 l' Espagne *f.* [espaj] Spain
 le fleuve [flœv] river (*that flows into the sea*)
 le garçon [garsɔ̃] waiter
 la langue [lā:g] language, tongue
 le monument [mɔ̃nɔ̃mɑ̃] building, etc., of interest
 le paysage [peiza:ʒ] landscape
 la rivière [rivjɛ:r] river (*that flows into another stream*)
 la vallée [vale] valley

le vignoble [viɲøbl] vineyard
 ignorant [inɔ:rã] ignorant
 sûr [sy:r] certain
 coûter [kute] cost
 expliquer [eksplike] explain
 se mettre [sə metr] place oneself
 je pense bien! I should think so!
 revoir [rəvwa:r] see again
 traverser [traverse] cross
 se trouver [sə truve] be, be situated
 un jour some day
 à temps [a tā] in time
 tout le monde [tulmõ:d] everybody
 sans [sā] but for, without

A. 1. Si vous alliez faire un grand voyage, où iriez-vous?
 2. — J'irais en France d'abord. Puis, si j'avais le temps et l'argent, j'irais voir l'Italie, l'Espagne et l'Angleterre. 3. Ce sont les pays les plus intéressants de l'Europe. 4. Sans la guerre, je serais déjà allé en Europe, mais à présent, même (*even*) si j'avais le temps, je n'aurais pas assez d'argent. 5. Les voyages coûtent beaucoup plus cher qu'avant la guerre. 6. Si

les billets coûtaient moins cher, j'irais passer les prochaines vacances en France. 7. — Si vous étiez en France, que feriez-vous? 8. — J'irais voir les plus jolies villes, comme Rouen, Chartres, Blois, Tours. 9. À Rouen et à Chartres, je visiterais les belles cathédrales. 10. À Blois et à Tours j'irais voir les beaux châteaux et je me promènerais à bicyclette dans la jolie campagne. 11. Toute cette vallée de la Loire est charmante. 12. Si vous aviez vu une fois les jolis paysages et les belles routes, vous regretteriez beaucoup de ne pas y passer vos vacances tous les ans. 13. — Y a-t-il d'autres villes intéressantes à voir? 14. — Je pense bien. Si nous avions le temps je vous parlerais aussi de Marseille, la ville de Monte-Cristo, de Bordeaux, la ville du vin de Bordeaux, de Lyon, la grande ville industrielle, de Nîmes et d'Arles et d'Avignon [avipnɔ̃], qui sont si riches en beaux monuments du passé. 15. Et nous regarderions aussi les beaux champs de blé, les vignobles, les arbres fruitiers, et les jolies rivières qu'on traverse souvent en voyageant par le train ou en auto. 16. Enfin, j'aimerais beaucoup revoir les jolis paysages de la France. 17. Si je suis assez riche, j'irai en France l'été prochain. Soyez-en sûr. 18. — Bon, je vous accompagnerai.

B. (1) a. *Point out in A each illustration of § 116, 2.*

b. *Change these conditions to the present when possible, and the other tenses correspondingly; for example:* Si vous faites un grand voyage, où irez-vous . . . , etc.

(2) *Supply the proper form (two when possible, see § 116, 2, 3) of each verb in parenthesis:* 1. (dormir) Si vous — pendant la classe le professeur ne —¹ pas trop content. 2. (aller) Si je — en France, je —² la cathédrale de Notre-Dame à Paris. 3. (pleuvoir) S'il — aujourd'hui nous ne —³ pas notre excursion. 4. (marcher) Si notre automobile — bien, nous —⁴ à Blois avant midi. 5. (être) Si le château ne — pas fermé, on nous —⁵ d'y entrer. 6. (être) Si ce château — en Amérique, tout le monde —⁶ le voir. 7. (faire) Que — vous s'il —⁷ trop froid pour sortir?

¹ (être).

² (visiter).

³ (faire).

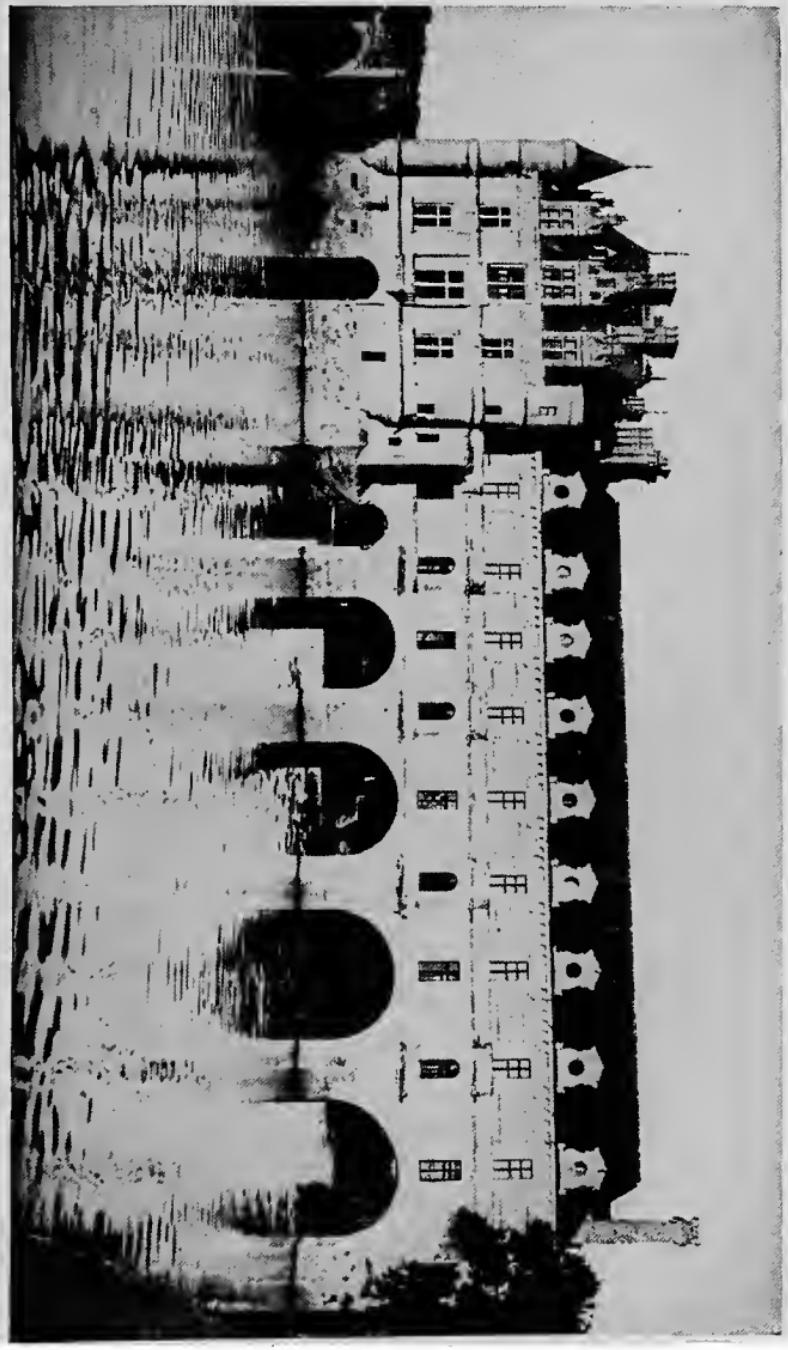
⁴ (arriver)

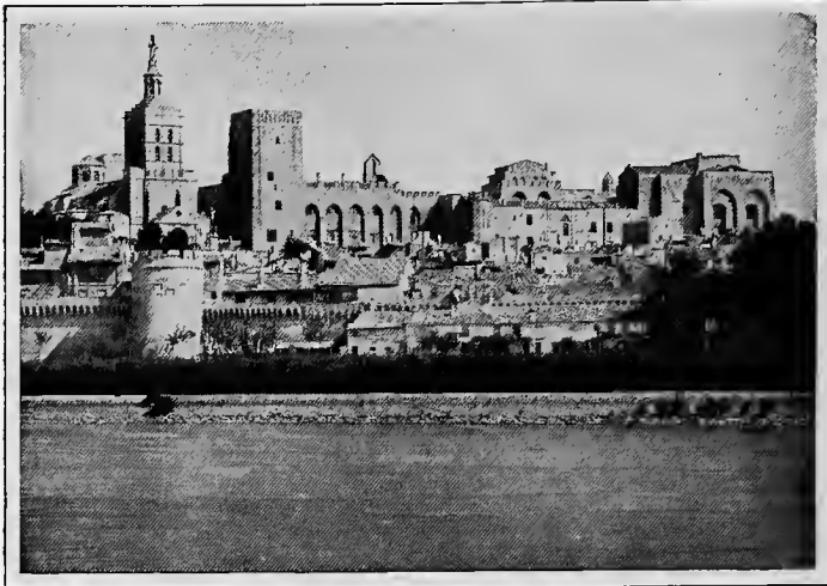
⁵ (permettre).

⁶ (aller).

⁷ (faire).

LE CHÂTEAU DE CHENONCEAUX





CHÂTEAU DES PAPES, AVIGNON



LA MAISON CARRÉE, NÎMES

(3) Complete the following by an infinitive (with or without a preposition) or the subjunctive of the verb in parenthesis, as the case demands:

1. (vous voir) Je suis charmé —.
2. (faire) Je suis content qu'il — enfin son travail.
3. (se dépêcher) Dites-lui qu'il faut —.
4. (se dépêcher) Il faut que nous — si nous voulons —¹ le train de deux heures.
5. (remplir) Voulez-vous — mon verre d'eau?
6. (remplir) Vous ne voulez pas que le garçon — votre verre?
7. (tâcher) (le faire) Ils peuvent — — avant midi.
8. (tâcher) (le faire) Faudra-t-il que nous — — tout de suite?
9. (se dépêcher) Bien que nous —, nous n'arriverons pas à temps.
10. (remplir) J'appellerai le garçon pour qu'il — votre verre.
11. (remplir) Donnez votre encre à Pierre afin qu'il — son stylo.
12. (commencer) (écrire) Il faudra que le professeur nous explique la leçon avant que nous — — le devoir.
13. (perdre) Écoutez bien, mes amis; il ne faut pas que vous — votre temps à causer.
14. (entendre) Dites-lui de venir se mettre ici pour qu'il — mieux.
15. (déranger) Nos camarades ont fermé la porte afin que nous ne les — pas.
16. (se lever) Il faudra que nous — avant qu'il —² jour.
17. (être) Je vais me coucher tout de suite bien que mon devoir ne — pas fini.

C. *Écrivez en français:*

1. If I went to (en) Europe, I should go to England, France, Spain and Italy.
2. I should spend more time in France than in England, because I wish to learn to understand and speak French.
3. If I had (the) time I should learn French before leaving America (l'Amérique).
4. You (On) enjoy yourself much more if you speak the language of the country.
5. When I get (arriver) to France, I shall have lessons every day if it is possible.
6. If I had a French lesson every day, (and if I heard French spoken (*use present infinitive*) all the time), I should quickly learn to speak (it, le) and understand it, shouldn't I?
7. If you are going to travel, you must (il faut) also read the history of the countries you will visit.
8. The ignorant traveler doesn't have a very good time.
9. He sees only (ne . . . que) towns and hotels and restaurants and taxicabs.

¹ (prendre).

² (faire).

D. (1) *Conjugate in the present indicative:* faire, aller, pouvoir, vouloir, partir.

(2) *Conjugate in the past indefinite indicative:* avoir, être, voir, sortir, s'amuser, ouvrir.

(3) *Conjugate in the imperfect:* mûrir, dormir (see Lessons XIII, B, 2 and XXVI, E, 2) faire, réussir.

(4) *Conjugate in the future and conditional:* être, avoir, faire, aller, entendre.

(5) *Conjugate in the present subjunctive:* être, avoir, remplir, faire, entendre, partir.

NOTE.—Sortir, partir, servir, dormir, differ from finir in the present subjunctive as in the present and imperfect indicative and imperative, i.e., by leaving out the -iss of the (participle) stem. See Lesson XXVI, E.

E. *Répondez aux questions suivantes:* 1. Est-ce que vous avez voyagé en Europe? 2. En Amérique? 3. Comment? (Par le train? en auto? à bicyclette? etc.) 4. Quelles villes américaines avez-vous vues? 5. Quelle ville aimez-vous le mieux? 6. A-t-elle des musées? 7. Y avez-vous entendu de la bonne musique? 8. Y êtes-vous allé au théâtre? 9. Est-ce que cette ville a de jolis parcs? 10. Quels pays de l'Europe voulez-vous visiter? 11. Est-ce que tout le monde peut voyager maintenant? 12. Pourquoi pas? 13. Avez-vous l'intention de voyager un jour? 14. Où irez-vous? 15. Que ferez-vous en France? 16. Comment sont les routes en France? 17. Ferez-vous des excursions à bicyclette? 18. Dites-moi quels sont les noms des grandes villes de France. 19. Cherchez sur la carte comment s'appellent les grands fleuves. 20. Quelles villes se trouvent dans la vallée de la Loire? 21. Est-elle agréable, cette vallée? 22. Sur quel fleuve la ville de Paris se trouve-t-elle? 23. Est-ce que la France est un pays agricole? 24. Que voit-on dans les champs? 25. A-t-on raison d'appeler ce pays « la belle France »? 26. Où trouve-t-on les belles cathédrales? 27. Où iriez-vous voir les beaux châteaux? 28. Où voit-on les beaux monuments du passé?

LESSON XXIX

118. Use of Article. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, and large European islands, regularly take the definite article:

<i>La France est un beau pays.</i>	France is a beautiful country.
<i>Nous partons pour le Canada.</i>	We are leaving for Canada.
<i>Il demeure aux États-Unis.</i>	He lives in the United States.
<i>La Sardaigne est une île italienne.</i>	Sardinia is an Italian island.

But non-European islands do not regularly take the article:

<i>Terre-Neuve est une grande île.</i>	Newfoundland is a large island.
<i>Cuba est la plus grande des Antilles.</i>	Cuba is the largest of the Antilles.

2. The article is omitted after the preposition *en* = *in*, *to*; it is also omitted after *de* in certain constructions, notably when *de* means *from* (after verbs of motion) or denotes *of* in an adjectival phrase:

<i>Mon père est en Angleterre.</i>	My father is in England.
<i>Nous allons en France.</i>	We are going to France.
<i>Il vient d'Italie.</i>	He comes from Italy.
<i>Les vins d'Espagne.</i>	Spanish wines.

119. 1. Place 'where,' 'where to,' is usually denoted by *en* before names of continents, European countries singular and feminine countries singular outside of Europe; other countries usually take the preposition *à* + the definite article:

<i>Il est en (va en) Europe.</i>	He is in (goes to) Europe.
<i>Il est au (va au) Canada.</i>	He is in (goes to) Canada.

2. Cities, towns, etc., usually take *à*, without any article.

<i>Il est à (va à) Paris.</i>	He is in or at (goes to) Paris.
<i>But: À la Nouvelle-Orléans.</i>	At New Orleans.

120. Present Indicative of *savoir*, to know (irreg.)*I know, etc.*

je sais [se]

nous savons [savõ]

tu sais [se]

vous savez [save]

il sait [se]

ils savent [sa:v]

EXERCISE XXIX

l'Allemagne <i>f.</i> [lalmaŋ] Ger-	many
une auberge [oberʒ] inn, country	hotel
l'Autriche <i>f.</i> [lotriʃ] Austria	
la chèvre [ʃe:vr] goat	
la chose [ʃo:z] thing	
la Corse [kɔrs] Corsica	
la cuisine [kjuzin] cooking	
l'est <i>m.</i> [lest] east	
la montagne [mɔtãŋ] mountain	
le mouton [mutõ] sheep	
le nord [nɔ:r] north	
l'ouest [lwest] west	
la prairie [preri] meadow	
la ruine [ʁuin] ruin	
la Suisse [swis] Switzerland	
le sol [sol] soil	
le sud [syd] south	
la vache [vaʃ] cow	
chaque [ʃak] each	
doux [du], douce [dus] sweet,	gentle, soft

étranger [etrãʒe] étrangère	[etrãʒe:r] foreign
haut [o] high, tall	
japonais [ʒapone] Japanese	
large [larʒ] broad, wide	
vrai [vre] true	
savoir [savwa:r] know, know	how, be able
autrefois [otrəfwa] formerly	
quelquefois [kelkəfwa] some-	times
mal [mal] badly	
malheureusement [malœ-	rø:zmã] unfortunately, un-
	luckily
moins de [mwẽdə] less than	
partout [partu] everywhere	
pas du tout [padytu] not at all	
surtout [syrtu] especially	
tôt [to] early, soon	
tandis que [tadi(s)ke] while,	whereas

- A. (1) Supply the article or leave it out as the case may be, and put in the proper preposition when one is needed: 1. Savez-vous qu'en parlant de — France, on l'appelle souvent « — belle France »? 2. On l'appelle aussi — « douce France ». 3. On dit aussi: « Chaque homme a deux pays, le sien (*his own*) et — France ». 4. Au sud de — France, se trouve — Espagne; à l'est, — Allemagne et — Suisse; au nord — Belgique (*f.*). et au nord-ouest — Angleterre. 5. Pour

aller —— Italie il faut traverser les Alpes, qui sont de hautes montagnes. 6. En partant —— Paris le matin en chemin de fer, en moins de deux jours on est —— Rome. 7. Nous partons demain pour —— Italie; aux Alpes nous quitterons le sol de —— France et nous passerons —— Italie. 8. De —— Italie nous irons —— Sicile et de là nous passerons —— Corse pour visiter la maison de Napoléon. 9. Voici un de nos amis qui vient de —— Corse et d(e) —— Espagne. 10. Malheureusement nous ne pouvons pas aller —— Europe tous les ans. 11. Quelquefois nous passons les vacances —— États-Unis ou à faire des voyages —— Canada. 12. Un jour nous irons peut-être —— Mexique (*m.*), et je veux voir aussi —— Asie, —— Japon et —— Chine. 13. Je voudrais (*conditional of vouloir*) passer le printemps —— Japon. 14. — Savez-vous le japonais? — Non, je ne le sais pas du tout. 15. Je sais un peu de français, d'allemand, et d'italien parce que j'ai été plusieurs fois dans ces pays-là. 16. Mes parents savent assez bien l'espagnol. 17. Ils ont passé quelques années —— Mexique, mais —— Amérique nous savons assez mal les langues étrangères. 18. On apprend mieux —— français —— France, —— allemand —— Allemagne et —— italien —— Italie. 19. On peut les apprendre aussi à l'école —— Amérique si l'on * a de bons professeurs. 20. En France tout le monde sait parler français, même les petits enfants.

(2) *Review of partitives (§§ 36, 59). Supply what is lacking:*

1. Faites-vous quelquefois —— excursions à bicyclette? 2. — Oh, oui. Et je vois —— jolies choses, surtout —— France.
3. On trouve partout —— bonnes routes et —— bons chemins et on s'arrête pour déjeuner ou pour dîner à —— petites auberges où l'on trouve une bonne cuisine.
4. De la route on voit —— beaux bois, —— champs verts et —— jolies prairies.
5. Dans les prairies il y a souvent —— vaches, —— chevaux, —— moutons et —— chèvres.
6. Souvent on passe devant —— jolies maisons de campagne et —— châteaux, et de (*from*) temps en (*to*) temps on voit —— ruines intéressantes.
7. Nous n'avons pas —— ruines intéressantes en Amérique, n'est-ce

* NOTE. — The *l* of l'on has the effect of making the sound more agreeable after si. It has no other significance here.

pas! 8. — Non, c'est vrai, mais nous avons — hautes et belles montagnes, — beaux fleuves et — larges plaines. 9. Dans le Far-West il y a aussi — ruines très intéressantes. 10. — Oui, mais on ne peut pas aller voir tout cela à bicyclette. 11. Notre pays est trop grand. Il faut plus de quatre jours de chemin de fer pour le traverser. 12. Et on voit peu de bicyclettes — États-Unis, tandis qu'on — voit beaucoup, beaucoup — France. 13. — avez-vous une? — Non, je ne — ai pas maintenant. 14. Autrefois je faisais souvent — excursions à bicyclette et je — avais toujours une. 15. Mais maintenant j'ai plus — travail et moins — temps.

B. (1) Supply the preposition meaning 'to,' 'into': Europe [œrəp], France, Amérique [amerik], Angleterre [ãglətər], Italie [itali], Allemagne [almajn], Autriche [otris], (le) Japon [ʒapɔ], (la) Chine [ʃin], Russie [rysi], (le) Danemark [danmark], les États-Unis [etazyni], (le) Canada, (la) Pologne [polɔŋ], Espagne [espan] (*fem.*), Afrique [afrik] (*fem.*), (la) Syrie [siri], (les) Indes [ẽ:d], (la) Normandie [nɔrmãdi], (la) Provence [prɔvãs], (la) Touraine [turen], (la) Corse [kɔrs].

(2) Learn: À Paris, à Paris

Sur un p'tit cheval gris,
À Rouen, à Rouen,
Sur un p'tit cheval blanc
Au trot, au trot, au trot,
Au galop, au galop, au galop! *

C. Traduisez rapidement: 1. If I had any. 2. If he were here. 3. If the postman should not take his letter. 4. If she were to put on her prettiest blue dress. 5. If the postman were to bring it to me. 6. If you should get up too late, what would you do? 7. Would you regret it (le) if you were to sleep too late? 8. If she were to put on her prettiest dress, she would be the prettiest girl (*jeune fille*) in (de) the world. 9. If you should run too fast you would arrive too soon (*tôt*).

* To Paris, to Paris — On a little gray horse; — To Rouen, to Rouen — On a little white horse — Trot (at the trot), trot, trot, — Gallop, gallop, gallop!

10. You would like to (aimer) look at the interesting ruins if you took (faire) a bicycle trip in France. 11. If you will (= are willing to, vouloir bien) go with me to Spain next summer, I shall pay for your ticket. 12. If you will pay for my ticket, I shall be delighted to go with you.

a. *What two simple tense forms are possible in the 'if' clause of a French sentence? Are we as rigidly limited in English?*

b. *Does the English word 'will' always call for a future form in French? (see last two sentences of C). Explain and give three examples in French.*

D. (1) The texts of A, (1) and (2) should be read aloud and understood and then worked over thoroughly by questions and answers.

(2) Dictée: Lesson XXVII, A.

E. (1) *Conjugate in the future and conditional forms: avoir, être, faire (note the pronunciation of the conditional singular: [ʒasrə], [ʒəfrə]), prendre (regular), dire (regular), mettre (regular), remplir, courir [see Lesson XXIII, C, (3), 7], remercier, appeler, se dépêcher, se lever.*

(2) *How does the sound value of the spelling ai differ in the endings of the future and conditional? Of what does the ending of the conditional form remind you? On the basis of XXII, B, (5), how would you say this form is made?*

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 4

(1) *Donnez les contraires de: facile, prochain, commencer, trouver, mal, malheureusement, sud, est, la montagne, tôt, le commencement.*

(2) *Donnez les synonymes de: charmé, tâcher de, soirée, vouloir, causer, demander.*

(3) *Supply articles so as to show gender, and use in a sentence or a phrase: glace, roman, soirée, règle, feuille, vallée, château, bicyclette, vache, mouton, chèvre, montagne, prairie, terre, sol, guerre, fin, billet, fleuve, nord, carte, exercice, camarade, chemin de fer.*

(4) Supply the missing words: 1. Pour bien parler il faut savoir les — de la grammaire. 2. Nous avons l'intention — faire une — à bicyclette dans la — de la Loire. 3. Nous voyons des bêtes (*farm animals*) dans les champs; des — et des — et des — et des —. 4. Mon stylo n'écrit pas; il faut que je le —. 5. Je fais mon — pour apprendre à bien prononcer. 6. Vous prononcez très bien; je vous en —. 7. Permettez-moi de — mon ami, M. Dupont. 8. — de faire votre —, monsieur. 9. Il y a de la glace sur le —; nous pouvons —. 10. Avez-vous besoin d'encre? 11. Merci (= *No, thank you*), j'ai un —. 12. Avant de monter dans le train il faut prendre un —. 13. Avant de prendre le train il faut payer son — avec de l'—. 14. Le dessert vient à la — d'un dîner.

(5) Fit the definitions to words: 1. Faire quelque chose très vite. 2. La personne qui fait la cuisine. 3. La personne qui vient d'un autre pays. 4. Un petit hôtel de campagne. 5. Aller à travers de. 6. La grande église. 7. Les champs pour les vignes. 8. Faire tout ce qu'on peut. 9. Il ne se porte pas bien (se porter = *to be [of health]*). 10. Prier quelqu'un de venir chez vous. 11. Dire merci à quelqu'un.

(6) Supply the proper preposition:

essayer —	faire quelque chose	permettre —	quelqu'un —
réussir —	faire quelque chose	faire une chose	
regretter —	avoir fait quelque chose	prier quelqu'un —	faire quelque chose
tâcher —	faire quelque chose	apprendre —	faire quelque chose
se dépêcher —	faire une chose		
dire —	quelqu'un — faire une chose	s'amuser —	faire une chose
demander —	quelqu'un — faire une chose	commencer —	faire une chose
		penser —	faire une chose

(7) Give the French equivalent: wit (*intelligence*), the landscape, the doubt, the mountain, the ruin, the river (*large*); next, free, certain, each, ready; to ring the bell, to be named; especially, everywhere, formerly, whereas, only; everybody.

LESSON XXX

121.

The Possessive Pronouns

SINGULAR

le mien	[mjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>
la mienne	[mjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>
le tien	[tjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>
la tienne	[tjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>
le sien	[sjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>
la sienne	[sjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>
le nôtre	[no:tṛ], <i>m.</i>
la nôtre	[no:tṛ], <i>f.</i>
le vôtre	[vo:tṛ], <i>m.</i>
la vôtre	[vo:tṛ], <i>f.</i>
le leur	[lœ:r], <i>m.</i>
la leur	[lœ:r], <i>f.</i>

PLURAL

les miens	[mjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>	mine
les miennes	[mjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>	
les tiens	[tjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>	thine, yours
les tiennes	[tjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>	
les siens	[sjɛ̃], <i>m.</i>	his, hers,
les siennes	[sjɛ̃n], <i>f.</i>	
les nôtres	[no:tṛ], <i>ours</i>	its, one's own
les vôtres	[vo:tṛ], <i>yours</i>	
les leurs	[lœ:r], <i>theirs</i>	

122. Agreement. Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

J'ai mes livres; elle a *les siens*. I have my books; she has hers.

123. Use of Possessive Pronouns. 1. After *être*, mere ownership is regularly expressed by *à* + a disjunctive personal pronoun, while the use of a possessive pronoun implies distinction of ownership, as when a notion of comparison is expressed or suggested.

Cette montre est *à moi*. This watch is mine.

Cette montre est *la mienne*. This watch is *mine* (not yours).

2. *De* and *à* + *le mien*, etc., contract as usual (cf. §§ 35, 46):

Je parle de son ami et *du mien*. I speak of his friend and of mine.

3. Since *le sien*, *la sienne*, etc., mean *his, hers, its, one's* the context determines which sense is intended:

Il a ses livres; elle a *les siens*. He has his books; she has hers.

4. Observe the idioms:

Un de mes amis.

A friend of mine.

Un Parisien de mes amis.

A Parisian, a friend of mine.

124. Present Indicative of *dire*, *to say, tell* (irreg.), and of *voir*, *to see* (irreg.):*I say, etc.**I see, etc.*

je dis [di]	nous disons [dizɔ̃]	je vois [vwa]	nous voyons [vwajɔ̃]
tu dis [di]	vous dites [dit]	tu vois [vwa]	vous voyez [vwaje]
il dit [di]	ils disent [di:z]	il voit [vwa]	ils voient [vwa]

EXERCISE XXX

le compagnon [kɔ̃pajɔ̃]	com- panion	le voleur [vɔlœ:r]	thief, robber
la comparaison [kɔ̃parezɔ̃]	com- parison	canadien [kanadjɛ]	Canadian
le compartiment [kɔ̃partimã]	compartiment	commode [kɔ̃mod]	convenient
le couloir [kulwa:r]	corridor, pas- sageway	dangereux [dãʒrø]	dangerous
la coutume [kutym]	custom	désagréable [dezagreabl]	un- pleasant
un exemple [egzäpl]	example	rare [ra:r]	infrequent, rare
un individu [édividy]	fellow, per- son, individual (<i>often con- temptuous</i>)	approcher (de) [aproʃe]	ap- proach
le milieu [miljø]	middle	fallait [fale]	was necessary (<i>imperf. of falloir</i>)
la montre [mõ:tʁ]	watch	pouvait [puvɛ]	was able, could (<i>imperf. of pouvoir</i>)
l'or <i>m.</i> [lo:r]	gold	savait [savɛ]	knew (<i>imperf. of savoir</i>), sachiez [saʃje] (<i>pres. subj.</i>)
la personne [persɔ̃n]	person (<i>man or woman</i>)	sauter [sote]	jump
la poche [poʃ]	pocket	tirer [tire]	pull out
le revolver [revolve:r]	revolver	actuellement [aktɥelmã]	at present
la voiture [vwatyr]	carriage		

A. (1) 1. Un Canadien * de mes amis qui voyage actuellement en Europe, m'a écrit une lettre intéressante. 2. Dans cette lettre il fait les comparaisons les plus intéressantes entre les coutumes des Européens [œrøpeɛ̃] et les nôtres. 3. Par

* For the use of capital letter here, see § 21.

exemple, les chemins de fer en Europe sont différents des nôtres. 4. Les voitures américaines et canadiennes sont plus grandes et plus longues que les leurs, et les leurs ont plusieurs compartiments. 5. Dans ces compartiments il y a de la place pour six à huit personnes, et on peut passer d'un compartiment dans l'autre. 6. Les voitures américaines ont un couloir au milieu. En Europe le couloir est sur un côté de la voiture. 7. Dans les vieilles voitures il n'y avait pas de couloir. Une fois dans un compartiment, il fallait y rester. 8. Ces compartiments étaient assez commodes, mais j'aime mieux les voitures modernes. 9. On pouvait s'y trouver avec un compagnon de voyage désagréable ou même dangereux.

(2) 1. Un jour mon ami s'est trouvé seul dans un compartiment avec un homme qui ne savait pas trop bien la différence entre le mien et le tien. 2. Mon ami avait une jolie montre en or. Son compagnon la voit. 3. Le train approche d'une petite ville et marche moins vite. 4. L'individu tire de sa poche un revolver et dit à mon ami: Votre montre est plus jolie que la mienne. Donnez-la-moi. Je vous donnerai la mienne afin que vous sachiez l'heure. 5. — Que dites-vous? demande mon ami. Voulez-vous me (*from me*) prendre ma montre? 6. — Oui, dit le voleur en approchant son revolver de la tête de mon ami. 7. Alors mon ami a peur. Il lui donne sa montre. 8. Le voleur lui donne la sienne et saute du train.

B. (1) *Complete by a suitable possessive pronoun:* 1. La montre de mon ami était en or, — était en argent. 2. Leurs voitures sont moins grandes que —. 3. Il fait une comparaison entre nos chemins de fer et —. 4. Leurs voitures à (*with*) compartiments sont plus commodes que —. 5. Votre compagnon de voyage est moins dangereux que —. 6. La montre du voleur est moins jolie que —. 7. Vous écriviez à votre mère et j'écrivais à —. 8. Je saute de mon cheval et elle saute de —. 9. Tout homme a deux pays, — et la France. 10. Maintenant le voleur a ma montre et —.

(2) *Supply in each case the usual expression of ownership* (§ 123, 1): 1. À qui est cette montre? Elle est —. 2. À

qui sont ces chèvres? Elles sont —. 3. À qui était cette vache? Elle était —. 4. À qui sont ces moutons là-bas dans la prairie? Ils sont —.

(3) Supply all the possible tense forms in each case in the 'if' clause or in the result clause: 1. (prendre) S'ils voient votre montre ils vous la —. 2. (avoir) Si je trouve un voleur dans mon compartiment je — peur. 3. (avoir) Si je voyais un voleur, je — peur. 4. (sauter) Si le train approchait d'une gare, le voleur en —. 5. (voyager) Vous aimeriez les paysages de France si vous y —. 6. (faire) Que — vous, si un voleur vous —¹ votre montre en tirant un revolver de sa poche? 7. (vouloir) Si l'on — passer d'une voiture dans une autre, on —² dans le couloir. 8. (vouloir) J'entrerai dans le couloir si je — passer dans un autre compartiment. 9. (s'arrêter) Si je faisais une excursion à la campagne, je — à une auberge pour le déjeuner. 10. (s'arrêter) Si vous — à une auberge, qu'est-ce que vous —³? 11. (prendre) Je — un potage, du poulet, des haricots verts et un dessert. 12. (traverser) Si vous — les Alpes, vous —⁴ en Italie.

(4) Supply below the proper tense forms (present, imperfect, future, past indefinite) and other missing words. The basic time of a is the present.

a. 1. (être) Je — dans le compartiment avec ce voleur-là depuis plus de trois heures. 2. (approcher) Quand nous —⁵ d'une gare, il me —⁶ ma montre. 3. (tirer) Quand il — son revolver de sa poche, j'aurai peur. 4. (s'arrêter) Quand le train —, il sautera de la voiture. 5. Nous —⁶ — France depuis plus de quatre mois et nous faisons tous les jours des comparaisons entre — coutumes et les —.

b. 1. Dans nos voyages dans le midi de — France nous —⁷ plus de chèvres que chez nous. 2. (traverser) Nous — la Normandie la semaine passée; il y —⁸ beaucoup de vaches et de gros chevaux. 3. Les chevaux —⁹ plus grands que les —. 4. (causer) Je — avec mes com-

¹ (demander). ² (entrer). ³ (prendre). ⁴ (se trouver).

⁵ (demander). ⁶ (voyager). ⁷ (voir). ⁸ (avoir). ⁹ (être).

pagnons de voyage. 5. (aimer) Il y avait quelques individus qui ne — pas les Américains, mais ce —¹ rare 6. (dire) On me — souvent que la France et l'Amérique —¹ de bonnes amies depuis plus de cent ans. 7. (répondre) Je — que ce —¹ vrai, et que les Français et les Américains ne —² pas — être de bons amis.

C. (1) Shift A, (1), 7–9, into the present. Note that the verbs that move the story along fall naturally into this form, as do the descriptive imperfect forms.

(2) Put A, (2), 3–6, into the past. The direct discourse must be made indirect preceded by *que*. Then the presents that tell the story take what form (the past participle of *dire* is *dit*)? What becomes of presents like *approche*, *marche*? What happens to *est*?

(3) Change A, (2), 7–8, to the past. Does a *peur* take a different form from the other three verbs? See Lesson XXI, § 87.

(4) a. Note in the vocabulary the imperfects of *pouvoir*, *falloir*, *savoir*: *pouvait*, *fallait*, *savait*. Conjugate *pouvait* and *savait* in the singular and plural. We cannot do this for *fallait* as this verb is used only in the *3d* singular of all tense forms. It is called an impersonal verb. What is the present form? the future? the conditional?

b. The present participle of *savoir* is *sachant*. Conjugate *savoir* in the present subjunctive. Is the imperfect indicative formed as you would expect? Compare Lesson XXVI, E.

D. Traduisez: 1. This fellow did not know the difference between mine and thine. 2. My friend could not jump from the train. 3. He was afraid of hurting himself. 4. He had to give his watch to the thief who gave him his, saying (*en lui disant*): "I am giving you mine so that (= in order that) you may know when you are hungry. 5. I-wish-you-a-good-appetite (*Bon appétit*).” 6. Although my friend knows that this fellow was a thief, he still thinks that he was rather (*assez*) interesting.

¹ (*être*).

² (*cesser*).

LESSON XXXI

125. The Demonstrative Pronouns

ce [sø], this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they

ceci [səsi], this

cela [səla], that

celui [səlqi], *m.* } this, that (one), **ceux** [sø], *m.* } these, those,
 } the (one),

celle [sel], *f.* } he, she **ceux** [sø], *f.* } the ones,
 } the (one),

celui-ci [səlqisi], *m.* } this (one), **ceux-ci** [søsi], *m.* } these,
 } the latter **celles-ci** [selsi], *f.* } the latter

celle-ci [selsi], *f.* } the latter **celles-ci** [selsi], *f.* } the latter

celui-là [səlqlila], *m.* } that (one), the **ceux-là** [søla], *m.* } those,
 } former **celles-là** [sellala], *f.* } the former

126. For the use of **ce** as distinguished from the personal pronoun **il** (**elle**, etc.), see § 97.

127. **Ceci** = *this*, and **cela** = *that*, are used to denote something pointed out or indicated, but not named. **Cela** is often contracted into **ça** in familiar language:

Cela est joli; je préfère **ceci**. That is pretty; I prefer this.

Pouvez-vous faire **cela**? Can you do that?

J'aime **ça**. I like that.

128. **Celui**, *that (one)*, **the (one)**, **he**, is used of persons or things, and is regularly followed by a relative clause or a **de** clause:

Celui que j'attendais est arrivé. He whom I expected has arrived.

Ceux qui cherchent trouvent. Those who seek find.

Mes fleurs et **celles de** Marie. My flowers and Mary's.

Celles que vous aimez. The ones (flowers) you like.

129. 1. **Celui-ci**, *this one*, **he**, and **celui-là**, *that one*, are used of persons or things already mentioned, to contrast the nearer and the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez **celle-ci** et donnez-moi **celle-là**. Here are the two chains; keep this (one) and give me that (one).

2. *The latter is celui-ci, and the former is celui-là, the order of ideas being inverted as compared with English:*

Cicéron et Virgile étaient tous deux célèbres; *celui-ci* était poète et *celui-là* orateur. Cicero and Virgil were both celebrated; the former was an orator and the latter a poet.

EXERCISE XXXI

un âne [ənə:n] ass, donkey
 le bâton [batō] stick
 la caresse [kares] caress
 le chien [sjē] dog
 le coup [ku] blow
 le domestique [dōmestik] servant
 un étranger [əntrāz] foreigner
 le maître [mē:tr̥] master
 la patte [pat] foot (*of animal*)
 la pièce [pjēs] room
 la vaisselle [vesel] dishes

mécontent (de) [mekōtā] dissatisfied (with)
 misérable [mizerabl] wretched
 avoir beau [avwa:r bo] in vain
(followed by infinitive)
 caresser [karese] caress

courant [kurā] present participle of courir
 se demander [sədmāde] wonder
 lu [ly] read (*past part. of lire*)
 rapporter [rapōrte] bring (back)
 renverser [rāvērse] upset
 voulu [vuly] past participle of vouloir
 autant (de) [otā] as many, as much
 loin [lwē] far
 par-ci par-là [parsiparla] here and there
 près [prē] near (*adv.*)
 qu'est-ce? [kēs] what is it?
 près de [prēdə] near (*prep.*)

A. 1. Il y avait une fois un homme qui avait un âne et un petit chien. 2. Il caressait celui-ci et à celui-là il donnait beaucoup de travail à faire. 3. Le chien s'amusait toute la journée. Il courait par-ci par-là. 4. À table il mangeait avec son maître. 5. Il donnait la patte à tout le monde et tout le monde le caressait. 6. Le pauvre âne voyait tout cela, et il en était très mécontent. 7. Un jour il se demande: — « Pourquoi ne me donne-t-on pas autant de bonnes choses qu'à ce misérable petit chien? 8. Pourquoi donne-t-on toutes les caresses à celui qui ne travaille pas et tous les coups de bâton à celui qui travaille toujours? 9. Je cesserai de travailler. J'entrerai dans la salle à manger de mon maître quand il sera à table avec ses amis. 10. Je donnerai la patte à tous ceux qui

y seront et ils me donneront des caresses ». 11. Le pauvre âne tâche de faire cela; il entre dans la salle à manger. 12. Il salue ceux qui y sont; il chante de sa belle voix. 13. Il veut donner la patte à son maître et à ses amis. 14. Mais en levant la patte, il renverse la table, il fait tomber la vaisselle. 15. Les dames ont peur, elles crient. Le maître se lève de table et appelle ses domestiques. 16. Il leur dit de donner au pauvre âne, non pas des caresses, mais beaucoup de coups de bâton. 17. On lui donne des coups de bâton et des coups de pied aussi et le pauvre âne sort de la pièce en courant. 18. Un âne a beau vouloir cesser d'être âne; il a beau tâcher d'être chien; il reste toujours âne. (*Adapted from La Fontaine, Fables, IV, 5.*)

B. (1) Supply the demonstrative pronouns, suffixing *-ci* and *-là* when needed. 1. Cette chèvre-ci est blanche, — est noire. 2. J'ai diné hier dans une meilleure auberge que —. 3. J'ai deux poches; dans — j'ai mon argent et dans — ma montre. 4. Cet individu-ci s'appelle Dupin, — s'appelle Durand. 5. Regardez ces deux enfants; — se dépêche de finir son travail, — ne fait rien. 6. Donnez-moi une autre feuille de papier; — n'est pas propre. 7. — que vous me donnez actuellement est sale aussi. 8. Voilà mes deux compagnons de voyage; — s'amuse à regarder le paysage, — tâche de me faire parler français. 9. — qui est dans le couloir est un étranger qui arrive d'Espagne. 10. Dites-moi qui sont ces individus-là. —-ci? Non, —-là. 11. Voulez-vous m'expliquer —? 12. Oui, mais d'abord parlons un peu de —. 13. Mon camarade a perdu son stylo. — ne fait rien; nous sommes prêts à lui donner —-ci. 14. Pendant que cet individu-ci me prend ma montre, — me prend mon argent. 15. Ils ont pris ma montre et — du monsieur qui m'accompagnait. 16. À qui est cette montre maintenant? 17. Quelle montre? — que l'individu a prise. 18. Je ne sais pas, mais — que j'ai à la main est à moi.

(2) Replace the dash by *ce*, or *il* (*elle, ils, elles*): 1. Qu'est-ce? — est un âne. 2. Et cela? — est un chien. 3. — sont les chiens de mon père. 4. — est l'âne qui a renversé la table. 5. Qui a chassé l'âne? — étaient les domestiques.

6. Que fait cet âne? — fait tomber la vaisselle. 7. Où est le chien? — est dans une autre pièce. 8. Qui appelle les domestiques? — est le maître qui les appelle. 9. — se lève de table pour les appeler. 10. Quel est ce monsieur? — est le maître de l'âne et du chien. 11. Quels sont ces individus? — sont nos amis. 12. Quel est cet animal? — est notre cher âne. 13. — est midi. 14. — est huit heures. 15. — fait beau. 16. — pleut. 17. — est temps de partir. 18. Quand on est âne, — est nécessaire de rester âne. 19. — est vrai.

(3) *When is 'it' expressed by il (elle)? When is ce equivalent to 'he,' 'she,' 'they'?*

C. (1) *Shift A, 2–6, to the present. Does this harmonize with the forms used in the rest of the anecdote? If you were to translate the whole passage into English in the present, would the effect be satisfactory? What do you conclude about the use of the present form in French in narration as compared with English? This is often called the 'historical' present, and is far more frequently used in French than in English.*

(2) *Would it be satisfactory to shift to the past indefinite the imperfects of A: donnait, s'amusait, courait, mangeait, donnait, était? See Lesson XXI, § 87. Is this answer equally true of voyait (6)? Explain.*

(3) *Beginning with A, 6, tell the story in the past (§ 66, N.B.) to the end of the paragraph. Does the direct discourse (7–10) change?*

(4) *Translate, with especial attention to demonstrative pronouns and participle agreement:* 1. Explain this to him; explain that to her; explain this to them, please. 2. Don't think that. You must not (§ 106, 3) think that. 3. These novels are more interesting than those. 4. Which novels? The ones we bought in Canada. 5. Have you read (lu) them? Not (non pas) the ones that are in the drawing room, but I have read several times the one we brought from France. 6. When my father was younger he was very fond of (aimer beaucoup) those of Victor Hugo, but now he reads (lit) oftener Daudet's and Bal-

zac's. 7. Whose motor car is that? 8. That one across (de l'autre côté de) the street? It is hers. 9. Mine is on the other side of the street too, a little farther [away]. 10. And those that are nearer belong to (XVII, Vocab.) our schoolmates.

D. *Conjugate courir* (present participle in Vocab.) in the present and imperfect indicative, and the present subjunctive (see Lesson XXVI, E, dormir); and in the past indefinite, future, and conditional (see Lessons XIX, B, (3), XXIX, E). Is the auxiliary avoir or être? How about marcher?

LESSON XXXII

130. The Relative Pronouns

qui [ki], who, which, that, whom (*after a preposition*)

que [kə], whom, which, that

dont [dɔ̃], whose, of whom, of which

où [u], in which, into which at which, to which, etc.

lequel [ləkel], *m. s.*, *lesquels* [lekɛl], *m. pl.*

laquelle [lakel], *f. s.*, *lesquelles* [lekɛl], *f. pl.*

} who, whom, which, that

quoi [kwa], what, which

131. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent:

Moi *qui étais* (vous *qui étiez*) là. I who was (you who were) there.

Les lettres *que* j'ai apportées. The letters which I have brought.

132. Use of the Relative. 1. The relative of most common use is *qui*, as subject, and *que*, as direct object, of a verb (cf. § 75).

2. *Qui* = *whom* (of persons only) is also used after a preposition:

L'oncle *chez qui* je demeurais. The uncle with whom I lived.

3. The force of *de* + a relative is generally expressed by *dont*:

Les amis *dont* nous parlions.

The friends of whom we spoke.

L'église *dont* je vois la tour.

The church whose tower I see.

4. **Où** = **dans** (or some other preposition of position) + a relative:

La ville où (*or dans laquelle*) **je demeure.** The city in which I live.

5. **Lequel** is often used instead of **qui** (**que**, etc.), to avoid ambiguity, and must be used of things after a preposition:

Les sœurs de nos amis, lesquelles sont chez nous à présent. The sisters of our friends, who (*i. e.*, the sisters) are with us now.

6. **Quoi** stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de quoi je parlais. That is what I was speaking of.

7. The absolute *what, which, that which* as subject is **ce qui**, and, as object or predicate, **ce que**; *of what, that of which, is ce dont*:

Je vois ce qui vous amuse.	I see what amuses you.
Je sais ce que je sais.	I know what I know.
Vous savez ce que je suis.	You know what I am.
Je n'ai pas ce dont j'ai besoin.	I haven't what (that which) I need.

8. *He who, the one who, etc. = celui qui, etc.*

J'aime ceux qui m'aiment.	I love those who love me.
Ma montre est plus jolie que celle que vous avez.	My watch is prettier than the one you have.

9. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau que j'ai vu hier. The picture I saw yesterday.

133. Present Indicative of *connaitre*, to know, be acquainted with, etc. (irreg.).

I know, etc.

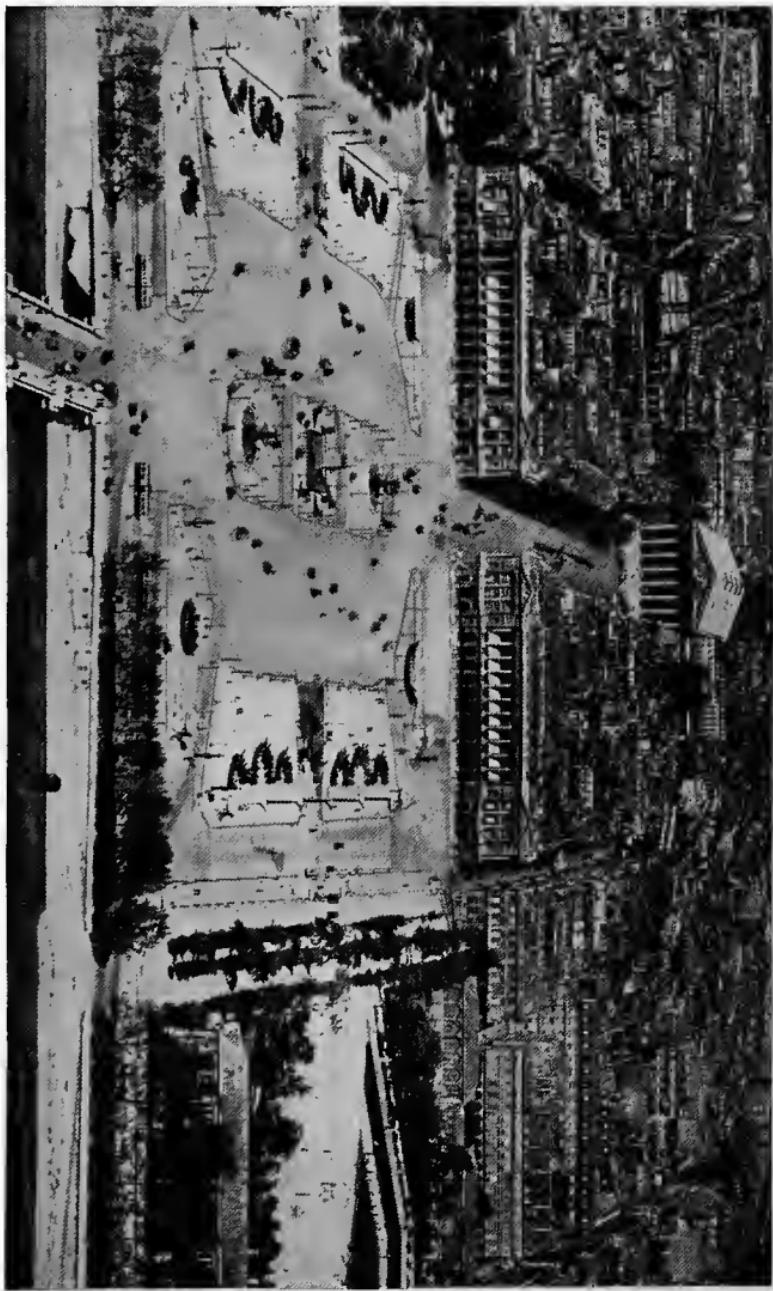
je connais [ʒəkɔ̃nɛ]	nous connaissons [nukɔ̃nesɔ̃]
tu connais [tykɔ̃nɛ]	vous connaissez [vukɔ̃neze]
il connaît [ilkɔ̃nɛ]	ils connaissent [ilkɔ̃ne:s]

EXERCISE XXXII

un agent (de police) [ənəzɑ̃d-pɔ̃lis] policeman	la statue [stati] statue
un Allemand [ənalmã] German	agréable [agreabl] pleasant
un anniversaire [ənənivɛʁsɛʁ] anniversary, birthday	important [ɛpɔ̃rtu] important
un arc [ənark] arch, bow	magnifique [majifik] magnificent
une avenue [avny] avenue	parisien [parizjɛ] Parisian
la banque [bã:k] bank	bâtir [boti:r] build
le bassin [basɛ̃] basin	connaître [kɔ̃nɛ:tʁ] be acquainted with, know
le bout [bu] end	garder [garde] keep, guard
le député [dep'yte] congressman	menacer [mənase] threaten
un édifice [ənédifis] building	représenter [rəprezãtɛ] represent, stand for
une église [egli:z] church	donc [dõ:(k)] then, therefore
la façade [fasad] front, façade	longtemps [lɔ̃tã] long
la figure [figy:r] figure, face	même [me:m] even
la loi [lwa] law	que! how!
un obélisque [ənɔbelisk] obelisk	volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] gladly, with pleasure
la peinture [pɛty:r] painting	autour de [otu:r də] around
la pierre [pjɛ:r] stone	
la portière [pɔrtje:r] door, window (of car)	
le roi [rwa] king	

A. (1) Supply the proper relative word and the demonstrative, too, if one is lacking. Substitute suitable forms of the past participle for the infinitives in footnotes: 1. Il y a ici un voleur. Voilà le voleur — nous parlons. 2. Voici la montre — il m'a —¹. 3. Voilà la fenêtre par — il a —². 4. On lui a pris le revolver avec — il m'a —³. 5. Il a quitté la voiture dans — (or —) nous voyagions. 6. Nous sommes —⁴ à la gare à — (or —) j'allais descendre. 7. Je vous dirai — il a fait après. 8. Il a —⁵ dans sa poche le revolver — il s'était —⁶ pour me menacer. 9. Il m'a dit:— Gardez ces quelques francs — vous aurez besoin pour payer votre déjeuner. 10. Il ne faut pas montrer votre argent et votre montre à — qui voyagent dans le même compartiment. 11. Alors il a —⁵ dans une poche ma montre,

¹ (prendre).² (sauter).³ (menacer).⁴ (arriver).⁵ (mettre).⁶ (servir).



LA PLACE DE LA CONCORDE, PARIS
à Vol d'Oiseau

Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service



VICTOIRE DE SAMOTHRACE
au Louvre, Paris

— mon père m'a —¹ à mon anniversaire. 12. Dans l'autre il a mis mes billets de banque — on m'avait — à la banque et — j'avais besoin pour mon voyage. 13. Comme il veut sortir par la portière, — était —², un agent de police — le connaît entre d'une autre voiture — il voyageait. 14. Mon voleur, — a peur, s'arrête un instant. 15. Voilà ce — l'a —³!

(2) *Fill in blanks with suitable words (demonstratives, relatives, verbs, etc.):*

1. Je me promène aujourd'hui à Paris avec un de mes amis. Nous voilà sur la Place de la Concorde [kɔkɔʁd]. Connaissez-vous cette église — on voit la façade au bout de la rue Royale [rwujal]? 2. — C'est l'église de la Madeleine — je vous ai parlé. 3. Je vous y mènerai un jour quand nous — plus de temps. 4. Quel est cet autre édifice de l'autre côté de la Seine? — C'est la Chambre des députés. 5. — Savez-vous — on y fait? — Oui, on y fait les lois du pays. 6. — Connaissez-vous des députés? — Oui, je — connais un — m'a donné deux cartes — je vais me servir demain. 7. Voulez-vous m'y accompagner? — Volontiers. Et savez-vous ce qu'est (ce que c'est que) ce grand monument en pierre — se trouve au milieu de la Place? 8. — ——-là, sur — on voit ces figures amusantes? 9. — Oui, ——-là. — C'est un obélisque — vient d'Égypte [eʒipt]. 10. — Voilà de grandes et belles statues autour de la Place. Savez-vous — elles représentent? 11. Il y — a huit. — Elles représentent les villes les plus importantes de la France. 12. Voyez-vous —-là sur — il y a tant de fleurs? 13. — Oui, je me demandais ce — c'était. — C'est la statue de la belle ville de Strasbourg [strazbu:r] en Alsace [alzas]. 14. Vous savez que la France l'a perdue après la guerre de soixante-dix. Les Parisiens sont si heureux que Strasbourg soit maintenant une ville française! 15. Mais en voilà une autre sur — il y a beaucoup de fleurs. 16. — C'est la statue de Lille [lil] — a été longtemps aux mains des Allemands pendant la grande guerre. 17. Dites-moi maintenant quel est ce joli parc à

¹ (donner).

² (ouvrir).

³ (perdre).

l'ouest de la Place, au bout de —— on voit cet arc magnifique? 18. —— sont les Champs-Élysées [ʃãzeliz] dans —— il y a de très jolies promenades, et l'arc —— vous parlez est l'Arc de Triomphe [arkdətriɔf], —— a été bâti par Napoléon [napoleɔ̃]. 19. Regardez donc (*Just look!*)! Qu'elle est large et belle, l'avenue par —— on en approche! 20. — Oui, en effet c'est magnifique. Et voilà à l'est l'entrée d'un autre parc. Qu'est-ce? 21. —— sont les jardins des Tuilleries [tɥilri] dans —— il y avait autrefois un beau palais des rois de France. 22. On y trouve —— arbres, —— fleurs, —— jolies statues et —— agréables promenades. 23. Il y a presque toujours —— enfants —— jouent avec leurs petits bateaux autour du bassin des Tuilleries. 24. Si nous ——¹ les Tuilleries, nous nous trouverions devant le Louvre [lu:vr], dans —— (*or* ——) il y a un musée célèbre. 25. C'était autrefois un palais des rois de France. — Que tout cela est intéressant! 26. Nous visirons un jour y voir les peintures, n'est-ce pas? — Oh, oui. Quelle ville intéressante que² Paris!

B. Répondez aux questions suivantes: 1. Qu'est-ce qu'un âne? 2. Est-ce qu'on le caresse? 3. Que lui donne-t-on? 4. Que veut-il avoir? 5. À qui donne-t-on les caresses? 6. Où sont le maître et ses amis? 7. Que fait l'âne? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il tâche de faire? 9. Est-ce qu'il réussit à amuser son maître? 10. Que fait celui-ci? 11. Et que font les domestiques?

C. (1) Racontez d'abord oralement, puis écrivez « L'Histoire de l'âne qui veut qu'on le caresse ».

(2) Traduisez: 1. With whom are you going to go around (se promener) in (dans) Paris? 2. With my old friend; the one with whom I traveled in Italy last year (année). 3. We visited the Place de la Concorde yesterday (*after past part.*), around which are (se trouver) eight fine statues. 4. The ones that represent Strasbourg and Lille are covered (XXIV, *Vocab.*) with (de) flowers. 5. What I liked best was (*c'était*) Napo-

¹ (traverser).

² This que is untranslatable. It is often found before nouns in apposition.

leon's Arc de Triomphe which one sees at the end of that magnificent avenue. 6. We want to go to see the Madeleine, the façade of which we could see at the end of (la) rue Royale. 7. We want to visit also the Louvre of which I have often heard (entendre parler), and the Tuileries gardens in which the children like to play with their little boats. 8. What an interesting city Paris [is]!

D. 1. *Count from 50 to 59, putting a different noun after each numeral:* Cinquante et un monuments, cinquante-deux avenues [sēkū:tdøzavny], etc.

2. *Count from 60 to 69:* soixante [swasā:t] députés, soixante et un billets de banque, etc.

3. *Count from 70 to 79:* soixante-dix agents [swasā:t di:z aʒā], soixante-onze figures, etc.

E. Dictée: Lesson XXVIII, A.

LESSON XXXIII

134. The Interrogative Pronouns

qui? [ki], who? whom?

que? [kə], what?

quoi? [kwa], what?

lequel? [lakel], *m. s.*, *lesquels?* [lekł], *m. pl.* } which? which one(s)?
laquelle? [lakel], *f. s.*, *lesquelles?* [lekł], *f. pl.* } what one(s)?

135. Use of Interrogatives. 1. *Qui?* = *who?* *whom?* is used of persons:

Qui sonne? *Qui sont-elles?*

Who is ringing? Who are they?

Dites-moi qui sonne.

Tell me who is ringing.

Qui a-t-il frappé?

Whom has he struck?

De qui parlez-vous?

Of whom are you speaking?

2. *Whose?* denoting ownership simply = à *qui?* otherwise generally *de qui?* but never *dont*:

À *qui* est ce livre?

Whose book is this?

De qui êtes-vous (le) fils?

Whose son are you?

3. **Que?** = *what?* stands always as the object or the predicate of a verb:

Que vous a-t-il dit? *Qu'est-ce?* What did he tell you? What is it?

4. *What?* as subject is usually *qu'est-ce qui?* and *what* in indirect question is usually *ce qui* (*ce que*, etc.):

Qu'est-ce qui vous a intéressé? What has interested you?

Je ne sais pas *ce qui* m'a frappé. I do not know what struck me.

Dites-moi *ce que* vous désirez. Tell me what you desire.

5. **Quoi?** = *what?* stands regularly after a preposition, or absolutely, the verb being understood:

À *quoi* pensez-vous? What are you thinking of?

Je cherche quelque chose. — **Quoi?** I am looking for something. — What?

6. **Lequel?** [*laquelle?* etc.] = *which?* *which* or *what one?* agrees in gender with the noun referred to. Both parts of *lequel* (*le* and *quel*) are inflected, and the usual contractions with *de* and *à* (cf. §§ 35, 46) take place:

Laquelle des dames est là? Which of the ladies is there?

Aquel des hommes parle-t-il? To which of the men does he speak?

EXERCISE XXXIII

une architecture [arʒitɛkty:r] ar-
chitecture

le banquier [bākje] banker

la cité [site] oldest part of cer-
tain cities

un hôpital [ɔpital] hospital

une île [il] island

un intérieur [ɛtɛrjœ:r] interior

le mari [mari] husband

le personnage [persɔnɑ:g] char-
acter (*in book*), personage

la photographie [fotografi] pho-
tograph

le Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃nef] Pont-Neuf
(‘New Bridge’)

la question [kɛstjɔ] question

la scène [sɛn] scene

le sommet [sɔmɛ] top

la tour [tu:r] tower

la traduction [tradyksjɔ] trans-
lation

la vue [vy] view

bête [be:t] stupid, foolish

cent [sã] hundred

droit [drwa] right

gauche [go:s] left

gothique [gɔtik] gothic

impossible [ɛpɔsibl] impossi-
ble

EXERCISE XXXIII (Continued)

terrible [t̥eribl] terrible	tourner [turne] turn
s'approcher de [saproʃedə] approach	venir de [vəni:r də] to have just... (<i>followed by an infinitive</i>)
épouser [epuze] marry	
jeter [ʒete] throw	
poser [po:ze] put, ask (<i>of questions</i>)	en effet [ənefɛ] in fact
ramasser [ramase] pick up	en face [əfas] opposite
se rappeler [səraple] remember, recall	ensemble [əsā:bl] together
rencontrer [rākɔ̃tre] meet	plus de [ply də] more than
répéter [repete] repeat	tant (de) [tā] so many, so much
ressembler (à) [rəsâble] resemble, be like	car [kar] for
	il y a [ilja] ago

A. 1. Pendant notre promenade je pose à mon ami beaucoup de questions sur ce que nous voyons à Paris. 2. Je lui demande, par exemple: — Qu'est-ce que (*or qu'est-ce que c'est que*) l'île de la Cité dont vous me parlez si souvent? 3. — L'île de la Cité est une île de la Seine [sen] où se trouve la partie la plus ancienne de Paris. 4. Voilà le Pont-Neuf par lequel on entre dans la Cité. Traversons-le et tournons à gauche et puis à droite. 5. — Quel est ce grand édifice dont nous nous approchons? — C'est le Palais de Justice. 6. — Mais il y en a une partie qui ressemble à une église. Qu'est-ce que c'est? 7. — C'est en effet une église qui s'appelle la Sainte-Chapelle et qui a été bâtie par Saint Louis il y a plus de six cents ans. 8. C'est un des bijoux de l'architecture gothique. Son intérieur est très, très joli. 9. Prenons maintenant la rue de Lutèce, et tournons à droite. Voyez-vous ce grand édifice à notre gauche? 10. C'est l'Hôtel-Dieu, un hôpital qui a été bâti il y a très, très longtemps. 11. — Et en face de nous quelle est cette grande église? 12. — C'est la cathédrale de Notre-Dame dont vous avez tant entendu parler. 13. — Oh oui, je me rappelle. Que je suis bête! J'en ai vu souvent des photographies. 14. Voilà en effet les deux grandes tours. C'est là que se trouvent les cloches, n'est-ce pas? 15. — Oui. Avez-vous lu *Notre-*

Dame de Paris, ce grand roman de Victor Hugo? 16. — Oui. Je l'ai lu dans une traduction anglaise. 17. Je me rappelle qu'un des personnages de ce roman a été jeté du sommet d'une de ces tours-là, ce qui m'a beaucoup frappé. 18. C'est une scène terrible. — Oui, terrible. Victor Hugo aimait les scènes terribles. 19. Allons maintenant visiter l'intérieur de l'église qui est très beau. 20. La cathédrale est une des plus anciennes et des plus belles de la France. 21. Elle a été bâtie il y a plus de huit cents ans. 22. Du sommet des tours il y a une vue magnifique sur Paris.

B. Supply the missing relative or interrogative words. Be on the look out especially for examples of § 132, 7. 1. Dites-moi — vous avez à la main. 2. Demandez-lui — il désire faire aujourd'hui. 3. Ne vous rappelez-vous pas — votre camarade vous a dit? 4. Nous ne pouvons pas entendre — vous dites, monsieur. 5. — me frappe dans ce roman c'est la scène de la tour. 6. — vous me demandez est impossible. 7. Comprenez-vous — me fait rire? 8. Savez-vous — est cet objet-ci? C'est à moi. 9. Je vais vous dire — je pense. 10. Voici — me fait penser que vous aviez tort. 11. Tout — vous dites est vrai. 12. Il ne faut pas répéter tout — vous entendez dire. 13. Tout — est sur la table est à Marie, n'est-ce pas? 14. Non, — est à ce bout-ci est à moi, et — est à l'autre bout est à elle. 15. Je crois — vous me dites. 16. Il vient de me demander — j'avais l'intention de faire demain. 17. Mais j'ai beau lui expliquer; il ne peut pas comprendre — je lui dis. 18. Il faut que j'apprenne (*pres. subj.*) à parler français, — sera très difficile pour moi.

C. (1) Some of the following sentences have "ragged" ends. Straighten them out, supply missing words (prepositions, relatives, and the correct forms of verbs). 1. Où est l'autobus que nous —¹ — coin — rue? 2. S'arrête-t-il au coin de la rue dans — nous —²? 3. Les dames à — l'âne voulait donner la patte —³ peur. 4. Voilà l'âne à — (qui? lequel?) les domestiques ont —⁴ — coups. 5. Les domestiques ont

¹ (prendre).

² (demeurer).

³ (avoir).

⁴ (donner).



L'ÎLE DE LA CITÉ ET NOTRE-DAME DE PARIS

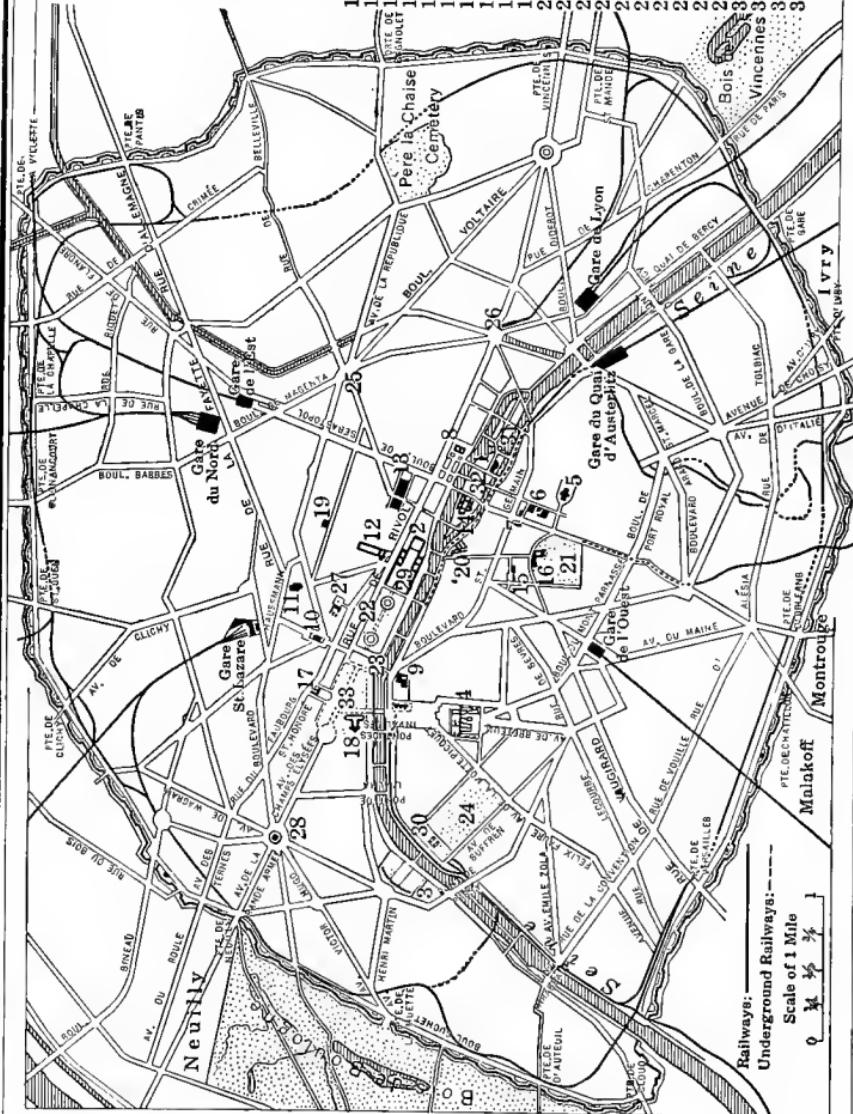
Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

PLAN OF PARIS

REFERENCES

1. Notre Dame
2. Louvre
3. Trocadéro
4. Hôtel des Invalides
5. Panthéon
6. Sorbonne
7. Musée de Cluny
8. Hôtel de Ville
9. Chambre des Députés
10. Ste. Madeleine
11. Opéra
12. Palais Royal
13. Halles Centrales
14. Palais de Justice
15. St. Sulpice
16. Palais du Luxembourg
17. Palais de l'Élysée
18. Grand Palais
19. Bourse
20. Palais de l'Institut
21. Jardin du Luxembourg
22. Jardin des Tuilleries
23. Place de la Concorde
24. Champ de Mars
25. Place de la République
26. Place de la Bastille
27. Place Vendôme
28. Place de l'Étoile
29. Place du Carrousel
30. Tour Eiffel
31. Gare de St. Louis
32. Gare de la Cité
33. Champs Elysées

THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.



Railways: — — —

Underground Railways: — — —

Scale of 1 Mile
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

ramassé la vaisselle que l'âne —¹ fait² tomber en —³
 — patte — amis — son maître. 6. Connaissez-vous les
 messieurs qui causent ensemble là-bas? — Oui, ce sont les mes-
 sieurs — (*two ways*) votre femme vient de me présenter.
 7. Ce sont des personnes — mon père m'—¹ souvent
 —.⁴ 8. Je ne connais pas ces deux autres là-bas — vous
 voyez les têtes. Ils viennent d'entrer. 9. Quelle est cette
 église — vous voyez la façade au bout de cette grande rue?
 10. C'est l'église — je viens de rencontrer le mari de ma
 sœur. 11. Ah oui! Celui qu'elle vient d'épouser est un jeune
 militaire de mes amis. Je le — (*connaître*) bien depuis
 dix ans.

(2) *A good many idioms or expressions peculiar to the French language in the arrangement and choice of words have already occurred. Express in English:* 1. Vous avez beau me répéter ce que vous avez entendu dire, je ne vous comprends pas. 2. Nous venons de rencontrer le mari de ma sœur. 3. Ma sœur l'a épousé il y a plus de trois ans. 4. Monsieur l'agent, voulez-vous me dire où se trouve le Bon-Marché? 5. Il a trouvé que cette scène était terrible. 6. Ne vous rappelez-vous pas que ce personnage a été jeté du sommet de la tour? 7. **Combien êtes-vous?** Nous sommes dix. 8. **Quelle belle ville que Paris!**

(3) *Make French sentences of your own on each of these models.*

(4) 1. We have just seen Notre-Dame. It is magnificent. 2. We climbed (in) one (l'une) of the towers and admired the view. 3. What a magnificent view of Paris! 4. I thought of (à) Victor Hugo's great novel, but I tried in vain to recall the name of the heroine (l'héroïne), although I have just read the book for the second time. 5. Ah! I remember it! La Esmeralda! 6. The cathedral was built more than eight hundred years ago and is one of the most beautiful in the whole world. It is in the Île de la Cité, which is the oldest part of Paris. 7. It is there that the first Parisians lived (*invert order of subject and verb*) a long time ago. Now it is a very

¹ (*avoir*). ² When followed by an infinitive, *fait* does not agree with a noun or pronoun object that precedes. ³ (*donner*). ⁴ (*parler*).

quiet spot. 8. It is there that the traveler must go to see (the) old Paris, for Paris is now a modern (*moderne*) city, which makes it (*le*) less interesting for the foreigner (*étranger*), but more convenient for everybody.

D. *Supply questions for the following answers:* 1. Ce chien noir est à mon frère. 2. Mon frère a un bâton à la main. 3. Il va donner un coup de bâton au chien. 4. C'est le domestique qui a chassé l'âne de la salle à manger. 5. Nous allons visiter les monuments de Paris aujourd'hui. 6. Nous allons déjeuner au restaurant du café Voltaire. 7. Des haricots verts et des petits pois. 8. Nous allons payer notre déjeuner avec ces billets de banque. 9. On nous les a donnés dans une banque qui s'appelle le Crédit Lyonnais. 10. Mon banquier de New-York m'a dit d'y aller. 11. J'y ai rencontré un ancien camarade d'école. 12. Je lui ai parlé de notre projet d'aller voir la cathédrale de Notre-Dame et la Sainte-Chapelle. 13. Il m'a dit qu'il a eu beau essayer de se faire comprendre en français; personne ne le comprenait. 14. Il est le fils d'un vieil ami de mon père. 15. Il s'appelle Pierre Dupont. 16. Des deux églises, la Madeleine et Notre-Dame, nous trouvons Notre-Dame la plus intéressante. 17. Notre-Dame est la plus ancienne des deux.

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXI, A.

LESSON XXXIV

136. Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns of most frequent occurrence are:

1. **On** [ɔ̃], *one, some one, we, you, they, people, etc.* (cf. § 48).

2. **Quelqu'un** [kelkœ̄], *m., quelqu'une* [kelkyn], *f., somebody, some one, any one, plural quelques-uns* [kelkəzœ̄], *m., quelques-unes* [kelkəzyn], *f., some, some people, any, a few.*

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte. There is somebody at the door.

J'ai vu quelques-unes de vos amies. I have seen some of your friends.

Avez-vous des cerises, madame? Have you any cherries, madam?

J'en ai quelques-unes. I have a few.

3. *Quelque chose* [kelkəʃɔ:ʒ], *m.*, *something, anything:*

Quelque chose est tombé. Something has fallen.

J'ai *quelque chose* de bon. I have something good.

4. Along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, **personne** [**person**], *m.*, means *nobody, not anybody, no one*, and **rien** [rjɛ], *m.*, *nothing, not anything:*

Je n'ai parlé à *personne*. I did not speak to anybody.

Vous n'avez *rien* apporté. You have brought nothing.

Il n'a *rien* dit de mauvais. He said nothing bad.

Qu'a-t-il dit? — *Rien*. What did he say? — Nothing.

Personne ici! Nobody here!

137. Certain forms serve both as adjectives and as pronouns. Those of most frequent occurrence are:

1. *Autre* [otr], *other* (adjective); *un autre*, *another*, *l'autre*, *the other* (pronoun):

Une autre fois; d'autres causes. Another time; other causes.

Les autres iront aussi. The others will go too.

2. Distinguish *un autre* from *encore un*:

Une autre plume. Another (*a different*) pen.

Encore une plume. Another (*an additional*) pen.

3. With *autre* are formed various locutions:

L'une et l'autre occasion. Both occasions.

Les uns et les autres partent. All are going away.

Donnez-le à l'un ou à l'autre. Give it to either.

Ce n'est ni pour les uns ni pour les autres. It is for none of them.

Elles se flattent les unes les autres. They flatter each other.

Ils ont peur les uns des autres. They are afraid of one another.

4. When used with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, the verb being understood, **aucun** [okœ], **nul** [nyl], **pas un** [pazœ], as adjectives = *no, not one, not any*, and as pronouns = *none, no one, not one*:

Aucun auteur ne dit cela. No author says that.

A-t-on de l'espoir? — Aucun. Have they any hope? — None.

5. *Tel* [tel] = *such*, *un tel* = *such a*. *Such* as an adverb is *si* [si] or *tellement* [telmã]:

<i>Telles</i> sont mes douleurs.	Such are my griefs.
Qui raconte <i>une telle</i> histoire?	Who tells such a story?
Une <i>si</i> belle maison.	Such a beautiful house.
Un homme <i>tellement</i> cruel.	Such a cruel man.
Il s'est couché tout de suite, <i>telle-</i> <i>ment</i> il était fatigué.	He was so tired that he went to bed at once.

NOTE.—Observe the idiomatic use of *tel* (*telle*) in the expressions *Monsieur un tel*, Mr. So-and-So; *Madame une telle*, Mrs. So-and-So.

6. **Tout** [tu], *m.*, **toute** [tut], *f.*, **tous** [*pronounced tu*] (as adj.), **tus** (as pron.)], *m. pl.*, **toutes** [tut], *f. pl.*, = *all, every, any, whole, etc.*:

<i>Tous les hommes.</i>	All (the) men.
<i>Toute ma vie.</i>	All my (My whole) life.
<i>Tous (toutes)</i> sont arrivé(e)s.	All have come.

7. **Même** [mɛ:m], before a noun or as a pronoun = *same*; **même**, following the noun or pronoun qualified = *self, very, even*, and agrees, but has no article; as adverb **même** = *even*.

<i>La même chose.</i>	The same thing.
<i>Ce sont les mêmes.</i>	They are the same.
<i>Dieu est la bonté même.</i>	God is goodness itself.
<i>Les enfants mêmes le savent.</i>	The very children know it.
<i>Nous-mêmes; elles-mêmes.</i>	We ourselves; they themselves.
<i>Ils nous ont même battus.</i>	They even beat us.

EXERCISE XXXIV

<i>la beauté</i> [bɔ:tɛ] beauty	<i>aider</i> (à) [ɛde] help
<i>le berger</i> [bɛrʒe] shepherd	<i>devenir</i> [dəvni:r] become;
<i>un endroit</i> [œnādrwɑ] spot, place	<i>qu'est-il devenu?</i> what has
<i>une entrée</i> [ãtʁe] entrance	become of him (it)?
<i>la grandeur</i> [grãdœ:r] size, gran-	<i>envoyer</i> [ãvwaje] send
deur	<i>incendier</i> [ɛsãdje] set fire to,
<i>le loup</i> [lu] wolf	burn
<i>la révolution</i> [revɔlysjɔ] revolu-	<i>ramener</i> [ramne] bring back
tion	<i>rendre</i> [rã:dr] give back, re-
<i>actif</i> [aktif] lively, energetic	store
<i>intelligent</i> [ɛteliʒã] intelligent	<i>tellement</i> [tɛlmã] so
<i>plein</i> [plɛ̃] full	<i>rarement</i> [rãrmã] rarely, not
<i>vide</i> [vid] empty	often

A. Bring out the differences between the words in black type:

1. Nous venons de faire une promenade dans les champs qui étaient pleins d'animaux.
2. Nous avons vu des vaches, des moutons, des chèvres, et des chevaux qui mangeaient l'herbe dans des prairies vertes.
3. Il y avait là quelques enfants qui les gardaient.
4. Ils avaient des chiens de berger avec eux.
5. Quelques-uns des enfants nous ont arrêtés et ont demandé quelle heure il était.
6. Pendant que nous causions avec eux, quelques-unes des vaches ont voulu (*wished*) manger le blé d'un champ voisin.
7. On a envoyé des chiens après elles pour les chasser.
8. Les chiens jouaient en courant, mais quelques-uns, en entendant la voix des petits garçons, sont partis au galop pour ramener les vaches.
9. C'était quelque chose d'amusant de les voir chasser ces grosses bêtes dont quelques-unes ne voulaient pas quitter le champ de blé.
10. Mais elles avaient beau vouloir y rester, elles ne le pouvaient pas, tellement les chiens étaient actifs.
11. Aucune (Pas une) n'y est restée.
12. Je n'ai rien vu de plus intelligent que ces chiens de berger, dont quelques-uns ressemblaient beaucoup à de gros loups.
13. Ils ont fait tout ce que les enfants leur ont dit de faire.

B. (1) Supply from §§ 136–137 the missing words: 1. Je n'ai —— (*two possibilities*) mangé aujourd'hui, et j'ai faim. 2. Donnez-moi —— de bon pour mon dîner, s'il vous plaît. 3. Je crois que la salle est vide. Je n'y vois ——. 4. Ma tasse est vide; il n'y a —— dans ma tasse. 5. —— n'est dans la salle. 6. Voyez-vous quelqu'un dans la salle? Non, ——; elle est vide. 7. S'il y avait une vache et un mouton dans le champ de blé, les chiens iraient les chasser —— (= *both*). 8. Je ne peux pas dormir, —— (§ 137, 5) je suis fatigué. 9. Nous serons —— fatigués que nous ne pourrons (*fut. of pouvoir*) pas dormir. 10. Dites-moi —— de nouveau. 11. Je ne sais —— de nouveau.

(2) Translate in several ways: 1. On dit. 2. Que dit-on? 3. On apprend à parler en parlant. 4. On sert le potage avant la viande.

C. (1) Écrivez en français: 1. Paris is a city of which people

have often spoken to me. 2. My friend knows the city well and will show me everything that is interesting. 3. The place at which we begin our trip (*promenade*) is the Place de la Concorde. 4. What do those statues represent? Which ones? The ones that are (*se trouver*) around the square. 5. They represent the most important cities in (*de*) France. The one on which you see so many flowers is the statue of the city of Strasbourg, which has just been restored to France. 6. What strikes me is (*c'est*) the size of the square, and the beauty of that broad avenue by which you approach the Arc de Triomphe. 7. But first let's visit those gardens the entrance of which we (*on*) see there, behind us. They are the Tuileries gardens in which (*two ways*) there was formerly a fine palace of the kings of France. 8. What has become of it? It was burned (*On and active voice*) during a revolution. 9. Wasn't the Louvre formerly a palace too? What has become of it? 10. There it is on the other side of that square. It is now a famous museum.

(2) 1. We like the very streets of Paris. 2. In France even the children speak French. 3. Everything is interesting. 4. We (*On*) see something new at every street corner. 5. The sheep walk one in front of (*devant*) the other. 6. The cows and dogs were afraid of each other (§ 137, 3). 7. I never saw anything funnier. 8. Some of the goats got frightened. 9. Not one stayed in the neighboring wheat field. 10. Not one? Some of the sheep got frightened too, the dogs were so (*tellement*) energetic.

(3) Rewrite A, 5–11, using the historical present as the basic tense. The 3d sing. pres. of *envoyer* is *envoie*. Why do not *jouaient* and *c'était* shift to the present?

D. (1) a. *Conjugate in the present and in the past indefinite: Je me rappelle cette scène. Do the same, substituting a pronoun for the noun object.*

b. *Conjugate in the present and translate: je viens (see § 178) de rencontrer un vieil ami. In the imperfect: je venais de (= had just) rendre le journal à mon voisin. Repeat, substituting the proper pronouns for the noun objects.*

c. *Conjugate in the future and conditional, making the necessary changes in the possessive adjective:* je ressemble à mon père; je ressemble à mes parents.

d. *Conjugate in the present and also in the past indefinite:* je viens voir mon ancien professeur.

e. *Conjugate in the present and in the imperfect:* je pars avant la fin de la pièce; je finis un roman de Victor Hugo.

f. *Make a list of the verbs that resemble partir (see Lesson XVIII, C, 2).*

(2) a. *Study the forms of envoyer (§ 161).*

b. *Does the peculiarity of the present indicative and subjunctive, 1st, 2d, 3d, sing. and 3d pl., appear in the pronunciation or only in the spelling? Is the same thing true of the irregularity of the future and conditional? This peculiarity occurs in the forms of verbs in -oyer where the -y-would otherwise come before [ə].*

c. *Supply the forms of envoyer and then vary by changing the person or number of each subject:* 1. Les enfants — (present) les chiens après les bêtes. 2. Il faut que nous — (present) des chiens pour chasser ces moutons. 3. Le berger — (fut.) le chien pour chasser les vaches de cet endroit. 4. Si nous avions des chiens de berger nous les — (cond.) chercher nos moutons perdus.

E. (1) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Qui gardaient les bêtes? 2. Qui les aidait? 3. Est-ce que les enfants allaient chasser les bêtes des champs de blé? 4. Est-ce que les chiens dormaient ou jouaient? 5. Comment jouaient-ils? 6. Lesquels étaient les plus grands, les vaches ou les chiens? 7. Est-ce que les chiens avaient peur des vaches? 8. À quels animaux les chiens ressemblaient-ils? 9. Est-ce que quelques vaches restaient dans les champs de blé? 10. Que voulaient-elles y faire? 11. Pourquoi les chiens sont-ils partis au galop? 12. Ont-ils fait tout ce que les enfants leur ont dit de faire? 13. Que venons-nous de faire dans les champs? 14. Qu'est-ce que les enfants nous ont demandé? 15. Avez-vous jamais vu des chiens de berger?

(2) Dictée: Lesson XXXIII, A. 1-12.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 5

(1) *Donnez le contraire de:* loin de, actuellement, désagréable, rarement, content, possible, à droite, nouveau, bête (*adj.*), vide.

(2) *À quels autres mots pensez-vous quand on dit:* le milieu, un individu, la soupe, le chien, des caresses, la journée, la soirée, un bâton, une pièce, une église, une grande rue, le bout, un roi, un musée, mener, autrefois?

(3) *Fit words to the definitions:* dire plus d'une fois; aller près de quelqu'un; celui qui accompagne quelqu'un; les assiettes, les tasses, les verres, etc. pour la table; le pied d'un animal; une figure en pierre, etc., qui représente une personne, une ville, etc.; porte d'une voiture; l'endroit où l'on entre dans un parc, etc.; celui qui garde les moutons; animal qui mange les moutons.

(4) *Translate:* 1. The policeman has arrested (*arrêter*) this fellow. 2. He has just set fire to the palace. 3. The dogs tried in vain to bring back the sheep; they would not (= did not want to) come. 4. He cannot remember what you told (*past part. of dire is dit*) him ten minutes ago. 5. These statues are like each other.

(5) *Supply the missing words:* 1. Les voitures de chemin de fer en France ont plusieurs _____. 2. D'un côté elles ont un _____. 3. Pour sortir il faut ouvrir les _____. 4. L'âne a _____ la table et fait _____ la vaisselle. 5. Le maître a _____ les domestiques qui ont donné à l'âne des _____ de _____ et l'ont _____ de la salle. 6. L'âne veut chanter mais sa _____ est _____. 7. Les députés font les _____ du pays. 8. Presque (*Almost*) tous les édifices en France sont bâtis en _____. 9. Louis XVI était _____ de France. 10. Son palais a été incendié pendant une _____. 11. Le voleur a _____ son revolver de sa _____. 12. Dans le musée du Louvre il y a de belles _____. 13. Nous traversons la Seine sur un _____ qui s'appelle le _____. 14. La _____ de Notre-Dame se trouve sur une _____ de la _____. 15. Elle a été bâtie _____ plus de huit _____ ans.

(6) *Translate:* over there, convenient, infrequent, wretched, so much (many), as much (many), together, in fact, opposite, threaten, a bank note, with pleasure (gladly), around, for, because, why, spot (place), give back, full, empty, in former times, to become, to meet, to relate, to send.

(7) *Translate:* 1. What has become of the kings of France (What have the kings . . . become)? 2. What became of you? 3. I shall send you news of myself (= of my news). 4. I begged him to send me news of them. 5. What [a] terrible scene (que) that one [is]! 6. What do you think of * (*two ways*) that scene?

(8) *Translate:* Everybody, nobody, somebody; everything, something, nothing; such a day, such a bad day; each other (*two persons*), each other (*more than two persons*), to each other.

(9) *Pièce* is the general word for 'room': what other meaning has it? What are the distinctive meanings of chambre and salle? Supply the missing words: 1. Ma maison a six —, un salon, une cuisine, trois — à coucher et une — à manger. 2. Le jour je travaille à l'école dans notre — de classe; je passe la nuit chez moi dans ma —. 3. Nous avons cherché l'enfant dans toutes les — de la maison.

(10) *Racontez d'abord oralement, puis écrivez « La Montre de mon ami. » (Make use of the following words and expressions in Leçon XXX:)* Un jour, se trouver, compartiment, homme, ne savoir pas, la différence, mien, tien. Ami, avoir, montre, or. Train, approcher de, petite ville, marcher, moins vite. L'individu, tirer, poche, revolver, dire. Votre montre, plus jolie, la mienne, donnez-la-moi. Je, donner, la mienne, afin que, vous, savoir l'heure. Le voleur, approcher, revolver, de la tête. Ami, avoir peur. Il, donner, montre. Voleur, donner, la sienne, sauter du train. Compartiment, français, être, commode, mais, on, pouvoir, se trouver avec, compagnon de voyage, désagréable, même dangereux.

* Penser de = *think of, have an opinion of*; penser à = *think of, have in mind*. Example: Au revoir! Pensez à moi quand vous serez en France! — Je penserai souvent à vous et je vous enverrai des cartes postales. May penser à be used in (7), 6?

LESSON XXXV

138.

Cardinal Numerals

1 un, une	[œ, yn]	21 vingt et un	[vɛ̃teœ̄]
2 deux	[dø]	22 vingt-deux	[vɛ̃tdø]
3 trois	[trwa]	30 trente	[trã:t]
4 quatre	[katr̥]	31 trente et un	[trã:teœ̄]
5 cinq	[sɛ:k]	40 quarante	[karã:t]
6 six	[sis]	50 cinquante	[sɛkã:t]
7 sept	[set]	60 soixante	[swasã:t]
8 huit	[ɥit]	70 soixante-dix	[swasã:tdis]
9 neuf	[nœf]	71 soixante et onze	[swasã:teɔ̄z]
10 dix	[dis]	80 quatre-vingts	[katravɛ̄]
11 onze	[ɔ̄:z]	81 quatre-vingt-un	[katravɛ̄œ̄]
12 douze	[du:z]	90 quatre-vingt-dix	[katravɛ̄dis]
13 treize	[tre:z]	91 quatre-vingt-onze	[katravɛ̄ɔ̄:z]
14 quatorze	[katɔ̄rz]	100 cent	[sã]
15 quinze	[kɛ:z]	101 cent un	[sã œ̄]
16 seize	[sɛ:z]	200 deux cents	[døsã]
17 dix-sept	[disset]	201 deux cent un	[døsãœ̄]
18 dix-huit	[dizɥit]	1000 mille	[mil]
19 dix-neuf	[diznœf]	1001 mille un	[milœ̄]
20 vingt	[vɛ̄]	2000 deux mille	[dømil]

NOUNS OF NUMBER: 1,000,000 = un million [œ miljõ]; 2,000,000 = deux millions [dø miljõ]; 1,000,000,000 = un milliard [œ milja:r].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites the parts of compound numerals under 100, except where et occurs. 2. Et stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or h aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: Cinq livres [sɛ li:vʁ], but le cinq mai [lə sɛ:k mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before huit, onze: le huit [lə ɥit]; les huit livres [le ɥi li:vʁ]; le onze [lə ɔ̄:z]; les onze francs [le ɔ̄:z frã]. 3. The t is sounded in vingt in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, is sounded with the d in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in cent un, deux cent un, etc.

139. Million and milliard require de before the object enumerated; cent = a (or one) hundred; mille = a (or one) thousand:

Il a payé un million de francs. He has paid a million (of) francs.
Ceci vaut cent francs. This is worth a hundred francs.

140. Quatre-vingt and the multiples of **cent** take **-s** only when immediately preceding a noun, or when they themselves are used as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.

Eighty francs.

Trois cents francs.

Three hundred francs.

Les cinq cents.

The five hundreds.

But: **Trois cent un francs; quatre-vingt-un francs, etc.**

Obs.: They are not nouns of number in dates, or when used as ordinals.

141. Multiplicatives. *Once = une fois, twice = deux fois, three times = trois fois, etc.:*

Dix fois dix font cent.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

142. Ordinal Numerals. They are formed from ‘third’ upwards by adding **-ième** to the corresponding cardinal, final e being dropped; **cinq** adds **u**, and **neuf** changes **f** to **v** before **-ième**:

1st	premier	[prɛ̃mjɛ]	7th	septième	[sɛtjɛm]
2nd	{ second [səgɔ̃]		8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm]
	deuxième [døzjɛm]		9th	neuvième	[nœvjɛm]
3rd	troisième [trwazjɛm]		10th	dixième	[dizjɛm]
4th	quatrième [katriɛm]		11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjɛm]
5th	cinquième [sɛkjɛm]		21st	vingt et unième	[vɛtεynjɛm]
6th	sixième [sizjɛm]		22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛtdøzjɛm]

143. Fractions. The numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal, as in English. **Half** = **moitié, f.** (as noun), and **demi** (as adjective); $\frac{1}{4}$ = **un quart**, $\frac{1}{3}$ = **un tiers** [tje:r]. Before a noun, **demi** is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere. Use **la moitié** (not **demi**) where *the half of* is, or may be, used in English:

Un huitième; les trois dixièmes.	One-eighth; the three tenths.
La moitié de l'année.	(The) half (of) the year.
Une heure et demie.	An hour and a half.
Une demi-heure.	Half an hour.
Les trois quarts de cette somme.	Three-fourths of that sum.

EXERCISE XXXV

le centime [sātim] centime	en être à [āne:tr a] be (<i>at a point in a book, etc.</i>)
la façon [fasō] manner, way	se fâcher [səfaʃe] get angry
la moitié [mwatje] half	indiquer [ɛdike] assign, point out
la monnaie [mōne] change, money; monnaie française, French money (<i>argent is more general</i>)	nommer [nōme] name
le nom [nō] name	ôter [ote] take off, remove
un objet [əbʒe] object, article, thing	il vaut [vo] is worth (<i>pres. of valoir</i>)
la page [pa:ʒ] page	veuillez [vœje] please (<i>imperative of vouloir</i>)
le par-dessus [pardəsy] overcoat	à haute voix [ao:twa] aloud
le quart [ka:r] fourth	autant (de) [otā] as many, as much
le sou [su] cent, penny, sou	jusqu'à [zyska] until, as far as, up to
le tiers [tje:r] third	par [par] by
demi [dəmi] half	sur [syr] out of
compléter [kōplete] fill out, finish	

A. (1) *Lisez à haute voix en français:* 40, 41, 50, 51, 55, 60, 61, 66, 69, 70, 71, 75, 79, 80, 81, 88, 90, 91, 92, 93, 95, 99, 100, 101, 140, 175, 190, 200, 201, 250, 281, 500, 1000, 1001, 25,000 hommes, 1,000,000 de francs.

(2) *Complétez:* 2 fois 1 font —; 2 fois 2 font —; 2 fois 3 font —. *Continuez jusqu'à 2 fois 25.*

(3) *Parlez-vous français le $\frac{1}{4}$ du temps, ou la $\frac{1}{2}$ du temps, ou les $\frac{2}{3}$ du temps, ou les $\frac{3}{4}$ du temps ou tout le temps en classe? Quelle partie du temps le professeur parle-t-il? Parle-t-il trop?*

(4) *On indique la valeur des objets par francs, par sous et par centimes. Il y a 20 sous dans un franc. Un sou vaut un cent américain. Cinq centimes font un sou.*

1. Combien de centimes y a-t-il dans un franc? 2. Combien de sous un dollar américain vaut-il? 3. Quelle partie d'un franc un sou est-il? 4. Quelle partie d'un franc un centime est-il? 5. Quelle partie d'un dollar américain un franc est-il? 6. Quelle est la valeur en monnaie américaine de cinq francs?

7. De dix francs? 8. De cent francs? 9. De cinq centimes?
 10. De vingt-cinq centimes? 11. De cinquante centimes?
 12. De soixante-quinze centimes?

NOTE. — If the teacher can secure some French coins and bank notes or facsimiles of them, it will be helpful at this point. The teacher may also exhibit a number of articles with the prices marked in francs and centimes. This will stimulate interest in converting the sums into dollars and cents.

Much drill is needed for teaching the numerals thoroughly, more than can be provided in Exercises in the text. In addition to seizing every occasion to make the students count, have them tell the page of each lesson, answer questions involving dates, and tell the prices in French money of real and imaginary articles and meals. The teacher will find it profitable to cut up several pages of a calendar that has the numerals printed in large type and to paste the numbers in order on sheets of paper. These may be manipulated before the class like flash-cards so as to show any desired combination, and are very useful in rapid daily practice.

B. (1) *Study (a), the future and conditional forms of voir* (§ 224); and (b), *the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect indicative, and the imperative.* Refer each of these forms to the “principal parts” according to the grouping in § 159, 1, 2, 3, 4.

(2) *Study the present, imperfect, and future of mettre* (§ 198). Tabulate according to § 159.

C. (1) *Dites en français:* 1. You must get a ticket before taking the train. 2. We got enough bread for two days. 3. This fellow gets angry too easily. 4. Please go and get my hat. 5. His horse got frightened.

(2) *Écrivez en français:* 1. If the cows were in our neighbor's wheat field, the dogs would see them. 2. If they were to see the cows, they would go and bring them back. 3. Please go [and] get the animals (*bête*) when you see them in your neighbor's yard. 4. If no one went and got them, they would eat [up] the grass in our neighbor's yard. 5. If he saw them, he would get angry. 6. He will get angry when he sees them in his field. 7. If our neighbors were to see these goats in their fields, there would be no use (*avoir beau* in 1st pl.: *which tense?*)

in our trying to run them out, for (*car*) our neighbors would go and get them first (*les premiers*).

(3) 1. No one puts on his hat in the house. 2. I shall put on my hat before (*avant de*) going out (see § 99, 5). 3. When it is cold, you (*indef.*) put on your (*which possessive adj.?*) overcoat before going out and take it off before coming in. 4. Half the time he would put on his overcoat in the house, because his mother had told him to do it (*le*), but once outside he would take it off. 5. Nine times out of ten he would get angry.

D. *Répondez en français:* (1) a. 1. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une semaine? 2. Combien de semaines dans un mois? 3. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans les mois de septembre [sept̄ã:br], avril [avr̄l], juin [ʒyɛ], novembre [novã:br]? 4. Combien de jours dans les mois de janvier [ʒãvje], mars [mars], mai [mɛ], juillet [ʒyjɛ], août [u], octobre [ɔktɔbr], décembre [desã:br]? 5. Quels sont les mois qui ont trente et un jours? 6. Nommez ceux qui ont trente jours. 7. Combien de jours le mois de février [fevrie] a-t-il? 8. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une année?

b. 1. Combien d'élèves êtes-vous dans cette classe? 2. Comptez: un élève, deux élèves, etc. 3. Comptez les places dans la salle de classe: une place, deux places, etc. 4. Y a-t-il assez de places pour les élèves? 5. Y a-t-il autant d'élèves qu'il y a de places? 6. Y a-t-il autant de places qu'il y a d'élèves? 7. Y a-t-il plus de places ou moins de places que d'élèves?

c. 1. Combien de pages votre livre de français a-t-il? 2. À quelle page est-ce que nous en sommes? 3. À quelle page en étions-nous hier? 4. Avant-hier? 5. Lundi dernier? 6. À quelle page en serons-nous demain? 7. À quelle page en sommes-nous restés hier? 8. À quelle page en êtes-vous resté avant-hier?

(2) 1. Quel est le premier jour de la semaine? 2-7. Quel est le deuxième jour de la semaine, etc. 8. Quel est le premier mois de l'année? 9-19. Quel est le deuxième mois de l'année? etc. 20. Quelle leçon étudions-nous aujourd'hui? 21. Quelle

leçon aurons-nous pour demain? 22. À quelle leçon en étions-nous hier? 23. À quelle page nous sommes-nous arrêtés hier? 24. À quelle page en sommes-nous restés avant-hier?

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXIII, A, 13-22.

F. *Lisez à haute voix* (*compare Lessons V, VII*): un billet, un âne, une banque, un; deux députés, deux édifices, deux; trois monuments, trois obélisques, trois; quatre statues, quatre arcs de triomphe, quatre; cinq rois, cinq avenues, cinq; six lois, six églises, six; sept promenades, sept objets, sept; huit personnages, huit endroits, huit; neuf ponts, neuf ans, neuf; dix repas, dix avenues, dix.

a. Which of these numerals have two pronunciations? Make examples illustrative of each, using other nouns than those above. See § 138, *Notes on Pronunciation*.

b. Which of these numerals have three pronunciations? Illustrate as in a.

LESSON XXXVI

144. Dates, Titles, etc. 1. The form *mil* is used in dates of the Christian era, from 1001 to 1999; from 1100 onward, dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

(En) l'an *mil* six.

(In) the year 1006.

En *mil* neuf cent vingt.

In nineteen hundred and twenty.

En dix-neuf cent vingt et un.

In 1921.

2. Days of the month and numerical titles of rulers are indicated by cardinals, except *first* = *premier*:

Le premier mai. Charles premier. The first of May. Charles I.

Paris, le deux mai. Paris, on the 2nd of May.

Louis quatorze (XIV). Louis XIV.

OBSERVE: — The English word *the* in titles is not translated in French.

3. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	" " " "
Quel quantième [kātjēm] du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	" " " "
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	<i>On</i> the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came <i>on</i> Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (<i>future</i>).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

OBSERVE: — The English words *on* and *of* in dates are not translated. Before days of the week *on* is likewise omitted.

4. The names of the seasons are: **l'été**, summer, **l'automne**, autumn, **l'hiver**, winter, **le printemps**, spring. The names of the months may be conveniently learned from the following rhyme; they are all masculine:

Trente jours ont septembre,
Avril, juin, novembre;
Trente et un ont mars et mai,
Août, octobre, puis juillet,
Et décembre et janvier;
De vingt-huit est février.

5. Observe the following idioms referring to age:

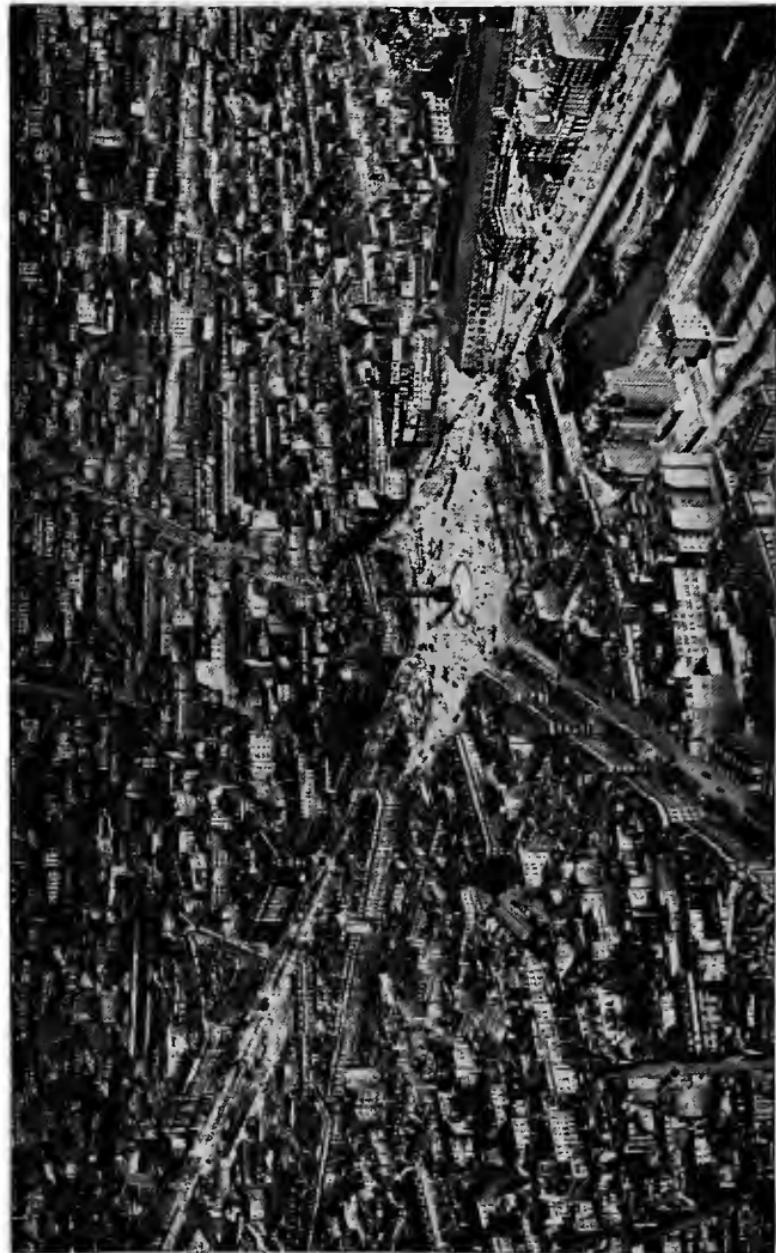
Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fillette (âgée) de six ans.	A girl six years old (or of age).
À l'âge de vingt-cinq ans.	At the age of twenty-five (years).

EXERCISE XXXVI

le cadeau [kado] present	le foyer [fwaje] hearth
la date [dat] date	une importance [ɛpɔrtă:s] importance
une encyclopédie [ĕsiklopēdi] encyclopedia	la naissance [nəsă:s] birth
la fête [fă:t] festival. holiday	le Noël [nɔël] Christmas

Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

LA PLACE DE LA BASTILLE, PARIS



EXERCISE XXXVI (Continued)

une origine [ɔriʒin] origin	faire froid [fe:r frwa] be, get cold (<i>of weather</i>)
la plupart (de) [plypa:r] ma- jority, most	régner [reŋe] reign
la prise [pri:z] capture	revenir [rəvni:r] come back
la prison [prizɔ] prison	couramment [kuramɑ̃] flu- ently, generally
le règne [ʁeŋ] reign	environ [ãvirɔ̃] about
le souvenir [suvnir] memory	non plus [nɔply] either, neither
catholique [katolik] Catholic	davantage [davɑ:tɔ̃] more
historique [istorik] historical	à cause de [ako:z də] on ac- count of
national [nasjɔnal] national	jusqu'à [ʒyska] until, up to, as far as
protestant [prɔtɛstɑ̃] Protes- tant	parmi [parmi] among
religieux [rəlizijs] religious	
croire [krwa:r] believe, think	
durer [dyre] last	

A. (1) 1. Dans tous les pays il y a des jours de fête où on ne travaille pas. 2. Quelques-uns de ces jours de fête ont une origine religieuse, comme les dimanches et le jour de Noël, le 25 décembre. 3. D'autres ont une origine historique, comme le 14 juillet. 4. La plupart des fêtes ont une origine religieuse, surtout dans les pays catholiques, comme la France. 5. Combien de dimanches y a-t-il dans une année? — Il y en a — (?). 6. On appelle le premier jour de l'année le « jour de l'an ». 7. Ce jour-là on fait des visites, on envoie des cartes et des lettres à ses amis. 8. La fête du jour de l'an a plus d'importance en France que chez nous.

(2) 1. Le 14 juillet on célèbre la fête nationale française en souvenir de la prise de la Bastille, le 14 juillet, 1789. 2. La Bastille était une prison où le roi mettait les individus dont il avait peur. 3. Ce jour-là la Révolution française a commencé. 4. Elle a duré dix ans environ, jusqu'à Napoléon. 5. Quelle est la date de la fête nationale américaine? 6. Quand est-ce qu'on l'a célébrée la première fois?

(3) 1. Le 25 décembre nous célébrons le jour de Noël, en souvenirs de la naissance de Jésus-Christ [zezykri]. 2. On célèbre ce jour-là dans les pays protestants aussi bien que dans les pays

catholiques. 3. Le soir du 24 décembre, avant de se coucher, les petits Français laissent leurs souliers autour du foyer, et le petit Noël (ou le petit Jésus [ʒezy]) vient y mettre des cadeaux pendant la nuit. 4. Dans trois semaines nous allons célébrer la fête de Noël.

B. (1) 1. Parmi les rois de France les plus célèbres se trouvent Charlemagne, Saint Louis (Louis IX), François I^{er}, Henri IV, Louis XIV et Louis XVI, sous lequel la Révolution a commencé. 2. Trouvez dans une encyclopédie ou un livre d'histoire, les dates de leurs règnes et lisez-les à haute voix dans la classe. Par exemple, François I^{er} a régné de 1515 à 1547. 3. Trouvez les dates de trois présidents de la République française et lisez-les devant la classe.

(2) a. Study the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present subjunctive, the conditional and compound forms of aller (§160); of venir (§ 178). Tenir is conjugated like venir except that it takes a different auxiliary in the compound tenses. Which?

b. Tabulate the forms of these verbs under the principal parts (§ 159).

C. (1) Étudiez la § (section [sɛksjɔ]) 106. Écrivez en français:
 1. Will winter come soon? I do not want it to come this month. 2. I am glad that it is not cold yet, but I am afraid that winter will come soon. 3. Last year it got very cold in November. 4. Old people (*Les vieux*) do not like the cold, and I do not like it either, although I am young. 5. I want my family to go south (*dans le sud*) before winter comes, because when January and February and March come there will be much snow and ice. 6. It will be necessary for us to wear our gloves and overcoats when we go out, in order not to be cold (in order that we, etc.). 7. When spring and summer come, I shall prefer that we come back (*subjunct.*) (to the) north before it gets too warm. 8. We went south last year in December and we came back in April. 9. My mother wants the family to go to Canada for May, June, July, August, and September. 10. I think (*Je crois*) that we shall have to come back before the middle of September, on account of the cold.

(2) a. 1. He is coming to-morrow. 2. He used to come every day. 3. They will come on Friday. 4. Our sisters came back on June 1st. 5. They would come back at once if you asked them to do it (*le*).

b. 1. We shall go to the country on June 2nd. 2. We used to go (*y*) on June 15. 3. We should go to France in July if we had 3500 francs. 4. Did those ladies go to England in July or in August?

c. 1. How old is he? He is ten. 2. What is his name? His name is Pierre. 3. He has a sister 15 years old. 4. He wants to go to Europe when he is sixteen and stay two years. 5. He thinks that in (*au bout de*) two years he will be able to speak French fluently.

D. (1) *Voici le participe présent du verbe lire: lisant.*

Complétez par la forme convenable (proper) de lire: 1. Je — (*present*) un roman de Dumas. 2. Nous ne — (*present*) pas beaucoup de romans français. 3. Il faut que vous — (*present*) l'histoire de France avant de visiter ce pays. 4. Quoique cet enfant ne — (*present*) pas trop facilement le français, il aime *les Misérables* de Victor Hugo. 5. Si tous les voyageurs — (*imperfect*) plus d'histoire, ils s'amuseraient davantage. 6. Quand nous aurons le temps, nous — (*future*) des romans de Balzac. 7. J'ai déjà — (*past participle*) son *Eugénie Grandet*.

(2) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Quel âge avez-vous? 2. Quel âge aurez-vous dans cinq ans? 3. Quelle est la date de l'anniversaire de votre naissance? 4. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? 5. Quel jour du mois serons-nous d'aujourd'hui en huit? 6. D'aujourd'hui en quinze? 7. Quel jour du mois étions-nous il y a huit jours? 8. Il y a trois jours? 9. Quel âge aviez-vous il y a trois ans? 10. Il y a cinq ans? 11. Quel jour de la semaine Noël tombe-t-il cette année? 12. Et le 14 juillet quel jour de la semaine tombe-t-il? 13. Quels sont les mois qui n'ont que trente jours? 14. Le mois de février combien de jours a-t-il? 15. Répétez-moi les noms des six premiers mois de l'année. 16. Dans quel mois êtes-vous né?

LESSON XXXVII

145. The Time of Day. The hours and fractions of hours are indicated as follows:

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.
Trois heures et demie.	Half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Quatre heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to four.
Trois heures cinquante-cinq.	Three fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (<i>noon</i>).
Il est minuit.	It is twelve o'clock (<i>midnight</i>).
À sept heures du soir.	At seven o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what time?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	About three o'clock.

It will be noted that:

1. The time of day is expressed by *être* combined with the impersonal subject *il*.
2. Contrary to English usage, in French the hour is given first and then the minutes are added or subtracted. The word *heure(s)* is always mentioned, but the word *minute(s)* is frequently omitted.
3. *Le midi* [*midi*] means *noon, midday*; *le minuit* [*minqi*] means *midnight*.
4. *Demi* when preceding a noun, is regarded as part of the noun and is joined to it by means of a hyphen and does not agree with it in gender; as an adjective, following the noun, *demi(e)* observes the usual rules of agreement; *e.g. une demi-heure, a half-hour*, but *une heure et demie, half past one* or, *one and a half hours*.
5. In the French time tables and in the usage of some

Frenchmen, time is counted from 1 to 24 hours; *e.g.* **dix heures (du soir) = vingt-deux heures.**

N.B.—Distinguish carefully between telling *the time of day* (*il + être*) and describing the *condition of weather, temperature and natural phenomena* (*il + faire*), § 98.

EXERCISE XXXVII

un avis [ānnavi] opinion, mind
 un employé [ānōplwaje] clerk,
 agent
 le lendemain [lādmē] next day,
 morrow
 la méfiance [mefjā:s] distrust
 la part [pa:r] portion, share;
 pour ma part for my part;
 de ma part, from me
 la partie [parti] part, game
 la poste [pōst] post office
 le repos [lēpo] rest
 le veston [vestō] (sack) coat
 fou [fu], (*f. folle*) mad, crazy
 précis [presi] exact, precise
 agir [aʒi:r] act, have an effect
 avancer [avāse] be fast, ad-
 vance
 changer [ʃāze] change
 discuter [diskyte] argue, dis-
 cuss
 se fier à [səfjea] trust, have faith in
 se méfier de [səmefjedə] distrust,
 beware of

oublier [ublie] forget
 plaisanter [plezāte] joke
 raconter [rakōte] relate, re-
 count
 recommencer [rēkōmāse] be-
 gin again, do again
 remonter [rēmōte] wind (*of a*
watch or clock)
 retarder [rētarde] be behind,
 be late, delay
 tromper [trōpe] deceive, fool
 varier [varje] vary
 d'ailleurs [dajœ:r] besides fur-
 thermore
 d'autant [dotā] so much more,
 all the more
 ça va it's all right, it will do,
 that works
 ne . . . jamais [ne ʒame] never
 pourtant [purtā] however
 tiens! [tjē] Is that so! Indeed!
 (*imperative of tenir, hold*)

A. (1) 1. Avez-vous une montre, Louise? — Oui, made-
 moiselle, j'en ai une. 2. C'est un cadeau de mon père. Il me
 l'a donnée pour mon anniversaire. 3. — Est-elle en or ou en
 argent? — En or, mais elle marche mal. À présent elle retarde
 d'un (*by*) quart d'heure. 4. — Alors ça ne va pas. On ne peut
 pas se fier à votre montre. 5. Et la vôtre, Édouard, marche-

t-elle mieux que celle de Louise? 6. — Oui, mademoiselle, la mienne marche très bien. Vous savez que les montres des garçons marchent toujours mieux que celles des jeunes filles. 7. — Tiens! Comment expliquez-vous cela, Édouard? — Mais, c'est facile! 8. Les jeunes filles changent si souvent d'avis, elles varient tant elles-mêmes, qu'on ne peut pas se fier à elles, et cela agit sur leurs montres. 9. D'ailleurs elles ne les remontent jamais. Elles oublient toujours de les remonter. 10. — Tiens, Édouard! Vous commencez très jeune à vous méfier des femmes. 11. Vous avez entendu chanter sans doute: « Souvent femme varie, Bien (*very*) fou qui s'y fie ». 12. Pourtant vous avez beau parler de cette façon, vous ferez comme les autres. 13. Vous payerez bien cher cette méfiance. On vous trompera d'autant plus facilement. Vous allez voir! 14. Mais ne discutons pas cette question. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre? — Il est midi moins le quart. 15. — Et à la vôtre, Pierre? — Il est midi moins treize, mademoiselle. 16. — Alors vous avancez de deux minutes? — Non, mademoiselle; je ne crois pas. 17. C'est que la montre d'Édouard tarde de deux minutes. On ne peut pas s'y fier. 18. — Ah? Alors vous n'êtes pas de l'avis d'Édouard sur les jeunes filles et les garçons et leurs montres? 19. Mais je crois qu'il plaisait. Pourtant nous ne pouvons pas passer l'heure à discuter sur les femmes et leurs montres. 20. Nous ne serions jamais d'accord. Nous n'arriverions jamais à rien.

(2) 1. Racontez-moi votre journée, Pierre. — Les jours de classe je me lève à sept heures moins vingt. 2. Il me faut vingt-cinq minutes pour faire ma toilette, et à sept heures cinq je suis prêt à travailler une demi-heure avant le déjeuner. 3. Le déjeuner est prêt à huit heures moins vingt-cinq et à huit heures dix je pars pour l'école. 4. J'arrive à l'école à huit heures vingt-cinq. La première classe commence à huit heures et demie et dure quarante-cinq minutes. 5. La deuxième classe commence à neuf heures et quart, . . . etc. (*Continuez*). 6. À midi nous avons un peu de repos. Nous prenons notre déjeuner et à une heure les classes recommencent. 7. J'arrive chez moi à quatre heures de l'après-midi, nous dinons à six heures et demie, et après le dîner je travaille ou je m'amuse

à lire jusqu'à dix heures. 8. Alors je me couche et je dors jusqu'au lendemain matin. 9. — Très bien, Pierre. Vous êtes un jeune homme sage. 10. Je comprends pourquoi votre montre marche mieux que celle de Louise, — et même que celle d'Édouard!

B. (1) *Substitute pronouns for the italicized object nouns:*
 1. Voici une *lettre*. 2. J'ai écrit la *lettre* hier soir. 3. J'ai demandé à mon frère de mettre la *lettre* à la poste, mais il a mis la *lettre* dans sa poche. 4. Il a mis la *lettre* dans sa poche il y a cinq jours. 5. Il y a trouvé la *lettre* ce matin quand il changeait de veston. 6. Il n'avait pas ouvert la *lettre*. 7. Enfin il a donné la *lettre* au facteur le 4 juillet. 8. Donnez la *lettre* au facteur. 9. Ne mettez pas la *lettre* à la poste. 10. Prenez vos *billets* avant de monter dans une voiture. 11. Il faut donner les *billets* à l'*employé* avant de sortir de la gare de destination.

(2) *Study the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect, future, and conditional forms, and the compound forms of dire* (§ 193) *and of prendre* (§ 202).

Group these forms according to § 159.

C. (1) *Traduisez en français:* 1. People say so (*le*). 2. Some one said so. 3. No one will say so. 4. Your father doesn't want him to say so. 5. Tell me at once. 6. I regret that he told (*perf. subj.*; see § 155) you that. 7. You never say anything (*rien*). 8. What would you say if I told him what you said yesterday? 9. She takes sugar in her coffee. 10. They take the 8:28 train (*le train de ...*) every morning. 11. Your father must get (*prendre*) the tickets before taking the train. 12. The apples we took were yours, weren't they? 13. Somebody has just taken all my apples. 14. It is 5:45 exactly; I shall put on my overcoat at once and take the street car at the corner. 15. If you took the car at 6:15 exactly, you would get (*être*) to my house before a quarter to seven. 16. Tell him to take the 7:36 train. 17. Don't let's take it.

(2) *For les jours de classe in A, (2), 1 substitute hier and rewrite to the end of the eighth sentence, making the necessary changes in the tense form.*

(3) Substitute *demain* for *les jours de classe*, and rewrite as indicated in (2).

D. (1) The teacher dictates the English of the examples in § 145 and the class gives the French, orally or in writing.

(2) a. Note the idiomatic expressions: 1. *Cette dame a changé de robe.* 2. *Vous pouvez vous fier à cette jeune fille, car elle ne ressemble pas aux autres.* 3. *Si vous vous méfiez trop des hommes, ils vous tromperont d'autant plus souvent.* 4. *Il passe son temps à penser aux* (*compare Lesson XX, A, (3), 11, 12, 13 and (7) of Vocabulary Review No. 5*) *parties de baseball.* 5. *Elle ne pense jamais à remonter sa montre.* 6. *Cet enfant ne pense à rien d'utile.*

b. Write sentences in French after the model of those in (2) a.

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXIV, A.

LESSON XXXVIII

146. Past Definite of *donner, finir, vendre*

<i>I gave, etc.</i>	<i>I finished, etc.</i>	<i>I sold, etc.</i>
<i>donnai</i> [dõneɪ]	<i>finis</i> [fini]	<i>vendis</i> [vãdi]
<i>donnas</i> [dõna]	<i>finis</i> [fini]	<i>vendis</i> [vãdi]
<i>donna</i> [dõna]	<i>finis</i> [fini]	<i>vendit</i> [vãdi]
<i>donnâmes</i> [dõnam]	<i>finîmes</i> [finim]	<i>vendîmes</i> [vãdim]
<i>donnâtes</i> [dõnat]	<i>finîtes</i> [finit]	<i>vendîtes</i> [vãdit]
<i>donnèrent</i> [dõne:r]	<i>finîrent</i> [fini:r]	<i>vendîrent</i> [vãdi:r]

147. Past Definite of *avoir, être*

<i>I had, etc.</i>	<i>I was, etc.</i>
<i>eus</i> [y]	<i>éûmes</i> [ym]
<i>eus</i> [y]	<i>éûtes</i> [yt]
<i>eut</i> [y]	<i>eurent</i> [y:r]

<i>fus</i> [fy]	<i>fûmes</i> [ym]
<i>fus</i> [fy]	<i>fûtes</i> [yt]
<i>fut</i> [fy]	<i>furent</i> [y:r]

a. All verbs have the same endings (-mes, -tes, -rent) in the plural, and all take a circumflex over the vowel of the first and second plural.

b. In the *donner* group, the letter a appears in the endings of all forms except the 3d plural. Note the pronunciation of â in -âmes and -âtes.

c. The past definite endings of the *finir* and *vendre* groups are alike

d. Observe the pronunciation of the past definite of *avoir*.

148. Use of the Past Definite. The past definite is used in the literary narrative style to denote what happened (completed past action), or what happened next (successive events). It never denotes, like the imperfect (§ 87), what was happening or used to happen, or continued to happen:

Les Romains brûlèrent Carthage.

Dieu accepta les présents d'Abel, qui *était* plus pieux que son frère; mais il détourna les yeux de ceux de Cain [kaɛ̃], parce que son cœur *n'était* pas pur... Un jour Cain et Abel *étaient* seuls dans un champ, et Cain se jeta sur Abel, et le tua.

The Romans burnt Carthage.

God accepted the gifts of Abel, who *was* more righteous than his brother; but he turned away his eyes from those of Cain, because his heart *was not* pure.... One day Cain and Abel *were* alone in a field, and Cain fell upon Abel, and slew him.

149. Past Definite of *faire* (irreg.)

I did, etc.

je fis [ʒefi]

tu fis [tyfi]

il fit [ilf]

nous fimes [nufim]

vous fîtes [vufit]

ils firent [ilfi:r]

EXERCISE XXXVIII

un accueil [œnakœ:j] welcome,	gentil [ʒati] nice, pretty
reception	joyeux [ʒwajø] merry, cheerful
un automne [otɔn] autumn	avoir pitié de [avwa:rpitjedə]
le chant [ʃɑ̃] song	have pity on
la compagne [kɔ:pap] wife, mate	corriger [kɔrige] correct
la confiance [kɔ:fjã:s] confidence	employer [œplwaje] use
le dieu [djø] god	savoir [savwa:r] know how (= can); je ne saurais, I can- not
un événement [œnevẽnmã] event	sembler [sã:bble] seem, appear
la faute [fo:t] mistake, fault	tuer [tɥe] kill
la miette [mjet] crumb	voler [vole] fly
le nid [ni] nest	
la pitié [pitje] pity	
le printemps [prɛtã], spring	
le rouge-gorge [ru:ʒgɔrʒ] red-	de nouveau [dənuvo] again
breast	lorsque [lɔrskø] when
la saison [sezʒ] season	entre [ã:tr] between

A. 1. Un petit rouge-gorge frappa à notre fenêtre. Il semblait dire: « Ayez pitié de moi! 2. Ouvrez-moi, je vous prie; il neige, il fait du vent. 3. J'ai bien froid et je ne puis rien trouver à manger parce que la terre est couverte de neige. » 4. Nous eûmes pitié du petit rouge-gorge, et nous ouvrîmes la fenêtre. 5. Le gentil petit oiseau entra dans la chambre. 6. Il vola même dans la salle à manger et mangea les miettes qui étaient tombées de la table. 7. Bientôt il mangea même dans nos mains et il resta chez nous tout l'hiver jusqu'au printemps. 8. Mais lorsque la neige fut partie, le printemps revint, et les arbres se couvrirent de feuilles. 9. Nous ouvrîmes de nouveau la fenêtre, et notre petit ami en sortit joyeux. 10. Il alla dans le bois voisin où il fit son nid et nous entendîmes souvent ses chants joyeux. 11. Lorsque l'été et l'automne furent passés, l'hiver revint, et le rouge-gorge revint aussi, cette fois avec sa petite compagne. 12. Les deux petits oiseaux ne semblaient pas du tout se méfier de nous. 13. J'ouvris la fenêtre et ils entrèrent avec confiance dans la maison, où ils passèrent la froide saison sans essayer même de nous quitter avant le printemps. 14. Vous pouvez être sûr que nous leur fîmes bon accueil.

B. (1) *Study the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect, future, conditional, and compound tense forms of pouvoir (§ 221); of savoir (§ 222). Group these forms according to § 159.*

(2) a. *Change to the conversational past the literary past forms in the story of Cain and Abel (§ 148). Are the three imperfect forms changed? Explain.*

b. *Similarly, retell the incident in the present.*

(3) *Traduisez:* 1. I cannot trust you (*à vous*). 2. They can trust their friends. 3. Why couldn't you trust your watch? 4. We shall come when we can. 5. He could come to-morrow if he wished (*insert le*). 6. The pupils must (*Il faut*) be able to leave home (*partir de chez eux*) earlier (*compar. of tôt*). 7. I could have left home earlier if I had wished.

C. (1) *Traduisez (use the past definite where suitable):*
1. What did Cain do? 2. Do you not know what Cain did

(*inverted order*)? 3. Did you know that Cain killed his brother (*see § 148, example 2*)? 4. I couldn't (*compare B, (1)*) kill my brother. 5. Could you kill yours? 6. Cain did not know that God was looking at him. 7. Do you know that God saw everything (*§ 132, 7, 9*) Cain did (*use past of conversation*)? 8. When he learned (*past indef. of savoir*) that I had fallen ill, he came to see me at once. 9. You must (*devez*) know that I would not distrust those persons if I did not know (*connaître or savoir?*) them very well. 10. The pupils must (*Il faut*) know how to explain the difference between "connaître" and "savoir." 11. If I were to ask you (*supply it, le*), could you answer the question?

(2) Rewrite A, changing the past narrative of literary style to the past narrative of conversational style. Note that *fut partie* becomes *était partie*. Why do not the imperfects change?

(3) a. Some verbs have a special meaning in the past definite, differing from that of the infinitive:

<i>avoir</i>	to have	<i>j'eus</i>	I have received
<i>savoir</i>	to know	<i>je sus</i>	I found out (learned)
<i>être</i>	to be	<i>je fus</i>	I became

b. Traduisez: 1. Il était bien triste quand il reçut (*see § 213*) ma lettre. 2. Il fut bien triste quand il reçut ma lettre.

(4) Racontez en français les événements de la journée, en indiquant l'heure à laquelle vous vous êtes levé, etc. [Leçon XXXVII, A, (2)].

(5) Écrivez « L'Histoire du rouge-gorge, » le livre fermé. Employez les temps de la conversation. Servez-vous des expressions et des mots suivants: frapper, sembler dire, avoir pitié, ouvrir, il neige, fait froid, terre couverte de neige. Nous ouvrir, gentil petit oiseau, entrer, manger miettes, rester, tout l'hiver, partir au printemps, bâtir nid, chanter, été, automne passer, hiver revenir, rouge-gorge revenir avec compagne, ne se méfier pas, leur faire bon accueil.

D. Dictée: « L'Histoire du rouge-gorge. » Chaque élève corrige les fautes de son devoir en se servant du texte, et le donne ensuite au professeur.

LESSON XXXIX

150. Imperfect Subjunctive of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*

(That) I gave, might give, etc.	(That) I finished, might finish, etc.	(That) I sold, might sell, etc.
donn ^{asse} [dənas]	fin isse [finis]	vend isse [vādis]
donn ^{asses} [dənas]	fin isses [finis]	vend isses [vādis]
donn ^{ât} [dəna]	fin it [fini]	vend it [vādi]
donn ^{assions} [dənasjɔ̃]	fin issions [finisjɔ̃]	vend issions [vādisjɔ̃]
donn ^{assiez} [dənasje]	fin issiez [finisje]	vend issiez [vādisje]
donn ^{assent} [dənas]	fin issent [finis]	vend issent [vādis]

151. Imperfect Subjunctive of *avoir*, *être*

(That) I had, might have, etc.	(That) I was, were, might be, etc.
eusse [ys] eussions [ysjɔ̃]	fusse [fys] fusions [fysjɔ̃]
eusses [ys] eussiez [ysje]	fusses [fys] fussiez [fysje]
eut [y] eussent [ys]	fût [fy] fussent [fys].

152. Tense Sequence. In complex sentences any other tense than the present or future (§ 107) in the governing clause regularly requires the imperfect subjunctive in the governed clause; so also for compound subjunctive tenses, the auxiliary in the principal clause being considered as the verb:

IMPF. Je désirais	} qu'il restât.	I was desiring him to remain.
P. DEF. Je désirai		I desired him to remain.
P. INDEF. J'ai désiré		I (have) desired him to remain.
CONDL. Je désirerais		I should desire him to remain.
PLUPF. J'avais désiré		I had desired him to remain.

NOTE.—The imperfect subjunctive is of very limited use in the language of everyday life, being rarely employed except in the literary or elevated style. There is a tendency in tense sequence to avoid the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive in favor of the present and the perfect subjunctive; *e.g.* *j'allais rentrer dans l'église en attendant qu'il vienne* (*instead of vint*) *me chercher*.

EXERCISE XXXIX

le compatriote [kōpatriōt] fellow countryman	royal [rwa:jal] royal
la mort [mɔ:r] death	accepter [aksepte] accept
le petit-fils [lēptifis] grandson	s'agir de [saʒi:rde] be a question of
le prince [prē:s] prince	devoir [dəvwa:r] owe
la religion [larliʒjɔ] religion	élever [elve] bring up
le rocher [rɔʃe] rock (<i>large</i>), boulder	grimper [grēpe] climb
le sang [sā] blood	lutter [lyte] fight, struggle
le siècle [sjékl] century	mourir [muri:r] die
le soldat [solda], soldier (<i>more specific than militaire</i>)	nourrir [nuri:r] feed
assassiné [asasine] assassinated	ordonner [ordone] give orders
civil [sivil] civil, civilian	reconnaitre [rekone:tr] recognize
entier [ātje] whole, entire	ruiner [rqine] ruin
habitué [abitue] accustomed	vivre [vi:vr] live
montagneux [mōtagnø] mountainous	d'ordinaire [dōrdine:r] usually
	en soldat [āsolda] like a soldier, in the rôle of a soldier

A. (1) 1. Il s'agit de l'éducation d'Henri IV qui fut roi de France au seizième siècle. 2. Il fut élevé non (*not*) en prince, mais en soldat. 3. Son grand-père ne voulut pas qu'on l'élevât comme on élève d'ordinaire les enfants de sang royal. 4. Il ordonna qu'on habillât et qu'on nourrit son petit-fils comme les autres enfants de son pays montagneux de Navarre. 5. Il voulut aussi que le jeune prince vécût (vivre, § 211) comme ses jeunes compatriotes. 6. Il voulut qu'il courût, jouât, luttât avec eux comme s'il n'était pas de sang royal. 7. Et même il voulut qu'il fût habitué à grimper aux arbres et à courir sur les rochers pour se faire fort. 8. Il désira que son petit-fils n'eût peur de rien.

(2) 1. Henri IV devint roi de France en 1589 par la mort de son cousin Henri III. 2. Il fut le premier roi de la famille des Bourbons. 3. La ville de Paris ne voulut pas le reconnaître roi parce qu'il était protestant. 4. Voyant que la France entière ne voulait pas accepter un roi protestant, et qu'il s'agissait de ruiner son pays par la guerre civile, s'il con-

servait sa religion, il se fit catholique. 5. Henri IV fut un excellent roi jusqu'au moment où il mourut assassiné en 1610.

B. (1) a. *With what tense of the indicative is the imperfect subjunctive evidently to be grouped in formation? With what tense of the indicative do we group the present subjunctive in formation?*

b. *Observe that the endings of all imperfect subjunctives are spelled alike: -sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent; and that the stem vowel preceding the -t of the 3d pers. sing. is always spelled with a circumflex accent.*

c. *Study the forms of mourir (§174) and of vivre (§ 211).*

Are there any irregularities in groups 2 and 4 (§ 159) of mourir? Does the vowel sound represented by eu [œ] occur in those forms of mourir that have the stress on the stem or on the ending?

d. *Point out the phonetic resemblances in the conjugation of appeler, mener, venir, mourir, vouloir, pouvoir.*

(2) *Study devoir and vouloir (§§ 214, 225) as in the preceding lessons. Group all the forms according to § 159.*

(3) a. *Note the various meanings of devoir and vouloir. Devoir* may be translated in several ways:*

Combien est-ce que je vous dois?	How much do I owe you?
Il me doit 3 fr. 50.	He owes me three francs fifty centimes.

Vous devez expliquer clairement cette phrase.	You are to explain this sentence clearly.
---	---

b. *It is less emphatic than il faut.*

Vous devez avoir froid.	You must be cold. (It is likely that . . .)
-------------------------	---

Il devait raconter cette histoire.	He was to tell that story.
Le facteur devait passer à 3 h. 10.	The postman was to go by at 3:10.
Il dut (a dû) changer de veston.	He had to change his coat.

* The chief difficulty with devoir is due to the fact that it is a fully conjugated verb in French, and that the corresponding English verbs (*ought*, *should*, *must*) have only a few forms. The result is that in English we have to make up for the missing forms by the use of auxiliaries. The same is true of pouvoir and, to a certain extent, of vouloir.

Le professeur devrait indiquer la leçon d'avance.	The teacher ought to (but does not) assign the lesson in advance.
Il aurait dû expliquer cette difficulté.	He should have (ought to have) explained this difficulty.
Elle a dû changer d'avis.	She must have (probably has) changed her mind.
Vous auriez dû vous méfier.	You ought to have been on your guard.
Le facteur a dû passer sans apporter de lettres.	The postman must have gone by without bringing any letters.

(4) *Meanings of vouloir:*

Je ne veux pas.	I will not.
L'oiseau veut entrer.	The bird wants to come in.
Voulez-vous manger ces miettes de pain?	Will you (Do you want to) eat these bread crumbs?
Le rouge-gorge n'a pas voulu rester plus longtemps.	The robin would not stay longer.
Je lui ai demandé de raconter son histoire, mais il n'a pas voulu.	I asked him to tell his story, but he wouldn't.
Je voudrais (aimerais) discuter la question avec eux.	I should like to discuss the question with them.
J'aurais voulu agir autrement.	I should have liked to act differently.
Il voulait que le prince se méfât des femmes.	He wanted the prince to beware of women.

Note that English 'will,' 'should,' 'would,' have a variety of meanings, which are therefore expressed in French in various ways, according to the particular case.

C. *Traduisez:* (1) 1. You must know the date of the capture of the Bastille. 2. The Bastille must have been a prison. 3. The French national festival must have had an historical origin. 4. The taking of the Bastille was to be the beginning of the French revolution. 5. Henry IV was obliged (*past def.*) to become [a] Catholic in order (*pour*) to be king. 6. You should have given the letters to the postman. 7. You ought to know that he is to come at 8:35.

(2) 1. However, if you *will* not give him the letter, please (*veuillez*) mail it yourself. 2. We begged the robin to come in, but he wouldn't. 3. I should like the robin and his mate to come back (*pres. subj.*) every winter. 4. We should like to hear his merry songs again. 5. I have explained the matter (*affaire*) to him, but he will not (*two ways, two meanings*) change his mind. 6. We begged the teacher to explain the use (*emploi*) of these verbs, but he will not or cannot. 7. Say what you will (§ 94), he will not change religions (*sing.*). 8. Do what you will (§ 94).

(3) *Beginning with *Il fut élevé* in A, write out the passage in the conversational past, making the necessary changes in the verb forms, e.g., *Il a été élevé*, etc.

(4) *Write out the passage on the basis of the historical present.

(5) *Racontez en français, oralement, l'Anecdote du rouge-gorge.*

D. Dictée: Leçon XXXVIII, A.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 6

(1) *À quels autres mots pensez-vous quand on dit:* la moitié, un franc, de la monnaie, avoir froid, croire, Noël, la Révolution française, catholique, le facteur, la méfiance, le nid, vivre, le prince, civil, le printemps?

(2) *Quel est le contraire de:* se fier à, vivre, joyeux, gentil, avancer, avoir chaud, faire chaud, se rappeler, s'en aller?

(3) *Remplacez le tiret par le mot convenable* ('Replace the dash by the proper word'): 1. J'ai quatre francs et je vous en donne deux; c'est la — de ce que j'ai. 2. Louis XVI — quand la Révolution a commencé; elle a commencé pendant son —. 3. Le quatorze juillet est la — nationale française. 4. Le 25 décembre est le jour de —. 5. Le 1^{er} janvier est le jour de —. 6. Un homme qui est en prison n'est pas —.

* NOTE.— In doing (3) and (4), shift the imperfect subjunctives to present or perfect subjunctives, consulting the alphabetical Reference List, § 226, in order to find the proper forms of the irregular verbs.

7. Le jour de l'an en France on envoie des — et on fait des —. 8. Il faut mettre cette lettre à la —. 9. Ma montre ne marche pas; j'ai dû oublier de la —. 10. Voulez-vous corriger les — dans ce devoir? 11. Les enfants aiment à — sur les arbres. 12. Les grands-pères aiment leurs —. 13. Henri IV est — en 1610. Il a été —. 14. Son grand-père a voulu — le prince comme les autres —. 15. Le voisin se — si les bêtes mangent son blé.

(4) *Traduisez:* pendant, pendant que. *Distinguish the latter from tandis que.* Use the two in sentences.

(5) *Employez dans des phrases:* jusqu'à; à cause de; penser à, penser de; il s'est agi de; tiens!; d'ailleurs; pourtant.

(6) *Traduisez:* ça ne va pas, habillé en soldat, environ cent personnes, à six heures précises, couramment, lorsque, jours d'école, la montre marche mieux, elle retarde d'une heure, être d'accord, d'autant plus facilement, avoir beau, à haute voix, neuf fois sur dix.

(7) *Racontez en français, oralement,* « L'Éducation et l'histoire de Henri IV, roi de France, » en vous servant des expressions et des mots suivants: s'agir, éducation, seizième siècle, élever, en prince, en soldat. Son grand-père, vouloir, éllever, d'ordinaire, enfants de sang royal. Il ordonna, habiller, nourrir, comme, les enfants, pays montagneux. Il voulut, jeune prince, courir, jouer, lutter, grimper, les arbres. Henri IV, devenir roi en —. La ville de Paris, ne vouloir pas, reconnaître, protestant. Il s'agissait, ruiner, pays, guerre civile, se faire catholique. Il, être, excellent roi, mourir, assassiner en —.

(8) *Traduisez:* 1. You're joking, aren't you? 2. Tell him from me (*use part*) that I was joking. 3. That's right! That works! 4. It is a question of bringing him up like the son of a poor man. 5. However, he is rich. Furthermore, he will be king of France some day. 6. What page are we on? At what page did we stop yesterday? 7. He lost a third or a fourth of his money. 8. I think so. He says so. We think not (*que non*). 9. We have just finished this part of the book. 10. It is a question now of remembering what we have learned. 11. If we succeed in doing so (*le*), we shall know a good deal of French.

ANECDOTES

XL. La Théière du Matelot

(The sections indicated give the forms of the irregular verbs.)

A. Un matelot, à bord d'un vaisseau, ayant¹ eu la maladresse de laisser tomber par-dessus le bord une théière d'argent, alla² trouver le capitaine et lui dit³: « Peut-on⁴ dire³ d'une chose, qu'elle est⁵ perdue⁶, lorsqu'on sait⁷ où elle est⁵? — Non, mon ami. — En ce cas, vous n'avez¹ rien à craindre⁸ pour votre théière, car je sais⁷ qu'elle est⁵ au fond de la mer. »

¹ § 154. ³ § 193. ⁵ § 154. ⁷ § 222. ⁸ § 190.
² § 160. ⁴ § 221. ⁶ § 210.

B. Complete the following by conjugating the tense in full, repeating also the remainder of the expression along with the verb:
 1. Il alla trouver le capitaine. 2. Il lui dit. 3. Peut-il dire?
 4. Il sait où elle est. 5. Elle est perdue. 6. Vous n'avez rien à craindre.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Où étaient ces personnes? 3. Qu'avait fait le matelot? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une théière? 5. En quoi était cette théière? 6. À qui était-elle? 7. Où était-elle tombée? 8. Savait-on où elle était? 9. Était-elle alors vraiment perdue? 10. Mais quel était l'argument du matelot?

D. 1. The sailor was so clumsy as to let the teapot fall. 2. If you let a silver teapot fall into the sea, it is lost. 3. Go to the captain. 4. I went to the captain. 5. Tell him that the teapot is not lost. 6. The captain will say: "My good fellow, did you drop my silver teapot into the sea?" 7. When we are on board of a ship we do not let teapots fall into the sea. 8. Where is the teapot? 9. I do not know where it is. 10. No one finds teapots at the bottom of the sea.

XLI. L'Arabe et les Perles

A. Un Arabe, égaré dans le désert, n'avait¹ pas mangé² depuis deux jours, et se voyait³ menacé⁴ de mourir⁵ de faim. En passant près d'un de ces puits où les caravanes viennent⁶ abreuver leurs chameaux, il voit⁷ sur le sable un petit sac de cuir. Il le ramasse et le tâte. « Allah soit⁷ béni⁸! dit-il⁹; ce sont,⁷ je crois,¹⁰ des dattes ou des noisettes. » Plein de cette douce espérance, il se hâte d'ouvrir¹¹ le sac; mais, à la vue de ce qu'il contient¹²: « Hélas! s'écrie-t-il douloureusement, ce ne sont⁷ que des perles! »

¹ § 154.	⁴ § 156.	⁷ § 154.	⁹ § 193.	¹¹ § 176.
² § 156.	⁵ § 174.	⁸ § 163.	¹⁰ § 191.	¹² § 177.
³ § 224.	⁶ § 178.			

B. Complete the following, as in the preceding exercise: 1. Il n'avait pas mangé. 2. Il se voyait menacé. 3. Ils viennent. 4. Il voit son sac. 5. Il le tâte. 6. Qu'il soit béni! 7. Je le crois. 8. Il se hâte d'ouvrir le sac. 9. Il s'écria.

Relate the story in the first person singular, thus: « Égaré dans le désert, je n'avais pas, » etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où demeurent les Arabes? 2. Où est l'Arabie? 3. Où s'était égaré l'Arabe? 4. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de déserts dans ce pays? 5. Dans quel état se trouvait l'Arabe? 6. Par où passait-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il a vu? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le sac? 9. Était-il content de trouver les perles? 10. Est-ce que les perles ne sont pas des choses précieuses? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'il espérait trouver dans le sac? 12. Pourquoi préférait-il des noisettes à des perles? 13. Lesquelles préféreriez-vous maintenant?

D. 1. The Arab has lost his way. 2. If we had not eaten for two days, we should be hungry. 3. We saw ourselves threatened with starvation. 4. The caravans will come to water their camels at the well. 5. We shall water our camels. 6. If I saw pearls on the sand, I should pick them up. 7. He felt the dates in the bag. 8. If there had been hazelnuts in the leatheren bag, he would have hastened to open it. 9. But the bag did not contain nuts, it contained only pearls. 10. At the sight of that he exclaimed: "I shall die of hunger."

XLII. Le Paysan et les Épis de Blé

A. Un paysan accompagné de son fils, le petit Auguste, alla¹ un jour visiter ses champs pour voir² dans quel état était³ son blé. Ils arrivèrent à un champ où certains épis se tenaient⁴ droits tandis que d'autres étaient⁵ lourdement inclinés vers la terre. Auguste s'écria: « Quel dommage que ces épis soient⁶ si courbés! Combien je préfère⁷ ceux-là qui sont⁸ vigoureux et droits. » Le père prit⁹ deux des épis, les roula entre ses doigts pour faire¹⁰ sortir¹¹ le grain, et répondit¹²: « Regarde un peu mon enfant; ces épis courbés sont¹³ pleins du meilleur blé, car c'est¹⁴ le poids qui fait¹⁵ pencher leur tête, tandis que ceux qui la relèvent¹⁶ si fièrement sont¹⁷ vides et ne valent¹⁸ rien. »

¹ § 160.

⁴ § 177.

⁷ § 202.

¹⁰ § 166.

¹³ § 158.

² § 224.

⁵ § 158.

⁸ § 195.

¹¹ § 210.

¹⁴ § 223.

³ § 154.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il alla visiter ses champs. 2. Ils arrivèrent à un champ. 3. Ils se tenaient droits. 4. Il s'écria. 5. Quel dommage qu'ils soient si courbés! 6. Je préfère ceux-là. 7. Il en prit deux. 8. Il fait pencher leur tête. 9. Ils ne valent rien.

Give the present indicative in full of: 1. Alla. 2. Se tenaient. 3. Prit. 4. Fait. 5. Valent.

Relate the story, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite, thus: « Un paysan . . . est allé visiter, » etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 2. Où ce paysan est-il allé? 3. Est-ce qu'il était seul? 4. Qui est allé avec lui? 5. Pourquoi sont-ils allés aux champs? 6. Comment se tenaient certains épis dans les champs qu'ils ont visités? 7. Tous les épis se tenaient-ils droits? 8. Comment les autres se tenaient-ils? 9. Quels épis préférait le petit Auguste? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est écrit? 11. Lesquels préférez-vous? 12. Pourquoi les préférez-vous? 13. Lesquels des épis étaient courbés? 14. Qu'est-ce qui leur faisait pen-

cher la tête? 15. Pourquoi les autres se tenaient-ils si droits? 16. Lesquels valent le plus? 17. Comment le père a-t-il démontré cela à son fils? 18. Les personnes fières valent-elles ordinairement grand'chose? 19. Préférez-vous les personnes modestes?

D. 1. I am going to see the fields. 2. If you were to go and visit the fields, in what condition would you find the wheat? 3. We reach the field where the wheat is standing upright. 4. Some of the ears of wheat are heavily weighted. 5. Why do you exclaim: "What a pity they are so bent down?" 6. You prefer those that are standing upright, do you? 7. Hold yourself upright. 8. Take two ears of wheat. 9. Rub the grain out. 10. The best wheat is not in the upright ears. 11. The full ears are bent, while the empty ears are upright. 12. Just look, my boy, the upright ears are empty. 13. Full heads are worth a great deal, but empty heads are worth nothing. 14. Do you not observe the same thing amongst men as among the ears of wheat?

Use either the past definite or the past indefinite for the narrative tenses of the following:

E. Little Augustus went one day to the fields. He went with his father who was going to see whether his wheat was ripe. They arrived at a wheat field. Augustus observed that certain ears of wheat were bent down towards the earth. He observed also that others held themselves upright. He said to his father: "Look at those ears of wheat. What a pity they are so bent down! I prefer those which hold themselves upright." His father wished to teach him a lesson. He took two of the ears of wheat and rolled them between his fingers. The one was empty and was worth nothing. The other was full of good wheat. Then he said: "Look, my boy, this ear which raised its head so proudly was almost empty. On the contrary, this other which was so bent down was full of the best grain. We observe the same thing amongst men. Those who are proud have an (the) empty head. They are worth nothing. On the contrary, those who are modest and humble are generally the best."

XLIII. Le Trésor du Laboureur

A. Un laboureur étant sur le point de mourir¹, et voulant² donner à ses enfants une dernière preuve de sa tendresse, les fit³ venir⁴ auprès de lui, et leur dit⁵: « Mes enfants, après moi vous aurez le champ que mon père a possédé⁶, le champ qui m'a servi⁷ à élever⁸ et à nourrir ma famille. Cherchez bien dans ce champ, et vous trouverez un trésor. »

Les enfants, après la mort de leur père, se mirent⁹ à retourner le champ en tous sens, bêchant, labourant la terre. Ils n'y trouvèrent ni or ni argent; mais la terre bien remuée, bien labourée, produisit¹⁰ une moisson abondante. Le sage vieillard ne les avait pas trompés; il leur avait enseigné que le travail est un trésor.

¹ § 174.	³ § 195.	⁵ § 193.	⁷ § 166.	⁹ § 198.
² § 225.	⁴ § 178.	⁶ § 158.	⁸ § 158.	¹⁰ § 185.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il les fit venir auprès de lui. 2. Ils se mirent à retourner le champ. 3. Il produisit une moisson. 4. Il ne les avait pas trompés.

Give the future and the past definite in full of: 1. Mourir. 2. Voulant. 3. Fit. 4. Venir. 5. Dit. 6. Servir.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle l'histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce (que c'est) qu'un laboureur? 3. Ce laboureur-ci était-il un jeune homme? 4. Dans quel état se trouvait-il? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il allait laisser à ses enfants? 6. Avait-il acheté ce champ? 7. Était-ce un bon champ? 8. Quel conseil le laboureur a-t-il donné à ses enfants? 9. Ont-ils bien cherché? 10. Est-ce qu'ils y ont trouvé de l'or? 11. Leur père les avait-il trompés, alors? 12. Quel trésor ont-ils trouvé? 13. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. The father gave his children a proof of his love. 2. He called his children into his presence. 3. The children will own the field after the father. 4. The children dug up and plowed the field. 5. Stir the land, and it will produce a harvest. 6. If you plow this field, you will find a treasure. 7. It will not be silver or gold, but it will be a good harvest.

8. Your father is not deceiving you, he is teaching you a good lesson.

E. A husbandman, who was at the point of death, wished to teach his children that labor is a treasure. Calling his children into his presence, he told them that they would have the field which his father had owned. It was a good field, and it had fed his father and his father's family. If they would seek in it, they would find a treasure there. After the old man's death, the children dug everywhere in the field, but they found no treasure. There was no gold or silver, but they stirred the land so well that they had an abundant harvest. They had not been deceived. Their father had taught them a good lesson.

XLIV. Louis XIV et Jean Bart

A. Louis XIV, traversant avec sa cour la galerie de Versailles, aperçoit¹ Jean Bart fumant sa pipe dans l'embrasure d'une fenêtre ouverte²; il le fait³ appeler⁴, et lui dit⁵ d'un ton affectueux: « Jean Bart, je viens⁶ de vous nommer chef d'escadre. — Vous avez bien fait³, sire, répondit⁷ le marin en continuant de fumer tranquillement sa pipe. » Cette brusque réponse ayant excité parmi les sots courtisans un grand éclat de rire: « Vous vous trompez, messieurs, leur dit⁶ gravement le roi, cette réponse est celle d'un homme qui sent⁸ ce qu'il vaut⁹, et qui compte m'en donner bientôt de nouvelles preuves. Sans doute, Jean Bart ne parle pas comme vous; mais qui de vous peut¹⁰ faire³ ce que fait³ Jean Bart? »

¹ § 213.

³ § 195.

⁵ § 193.

⁷ § 210.

⁹ § 223.

² § 176.

⁴ § 158.

⁶ § 178.

⁸ § 166.

¹⁰ § 221.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il aperçoit Jean Bart. 2. Il le fait appeler. 3. Je viens de le nommer. 4. Vous avez bien fait. 5. Vous vous trompez. 6. Il sent ce qu'il vaut. 7. Il ne parle pas comme les autres. 8. Je ne peux faire ce que fait Jean Bart. 9. Il continue de fumer tranquillement. 10. Il leur dit gravement. 11. Comptez-vous donner de nouvelles preuves?

Give the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive of:

1. Aperçoit.
2. Fait.
3. Dit.
4. Viens.
5. Sent.
6. Nomme.
7. Répondit.
8. Vaut.
9. Appelle.
10. Permit.
11. Montre.
12. Continuant.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qui était Louis XIV? 2. Où est Versailles? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'était autrefois? 4. Quel est l'autre personnage de notre histoire? 5. Quelle était sa profession? 6. Était-il, ce jour-là, à bord de son vaisseau? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il faisait qui montrait qu'il n'était pas courtisan? 8. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il montré qu'il n'en était pas mécontent? 9. Quelle sorte de réponse Jean Bart a-t-il faite au roi? 10. Quelle impression a-t-elle faite sur les courtisans? 11. Quelle en était l'opinion du roi? 12. Pourquoi était-il permis à Jean Bart, et non pas aux courtisans, de faire une brusque réponse?

D. 1. The king sends for Jean Bart. 2. I shall call him. 3. We have just called Jean Bart. 4. The king had just appointed him rear admiral. 5. A great outburst of laughter was excited by Jean Bart's blunt answer. 6. The king did not appoint the silly courtiers rear admirals. 7. We are mistaken; it is not a blunt answer. 8. Do not make a mistake. 9. The silly courtiers did not make blunt answers, because they did not feel their own worth. 10. Jean Bart hopes soon to give the king new proofs of his worth. 11. We cannot do what Jean Bart did.

E. Jean Bart was coolly smoking his pipe in the embrasure of a window in the palace (*château*) of Versailles, as the king, accompanied by his courtiers, was passing through the great gallery. The king sent for the brave sailor, and told him that he had just been appointed rear admiral. The sailor's blunt reply: "You have done well, sire," caused a burst of laughter among those who were with the king. But Louis knew that it was the reply of a man who would soon give proofs of his worth. Jean Bart did not talk like a courtier, but he did what courtiers could not do. At that time Jean Bart was already forty-one years old and it was late for him (*pour qu'il*) to change the habits of his youth.

XLV. La Fourmi et le Brin d'Herbe

A. J'ai vu¹ une petite fourmi qui allait² ça et là cherchant fortune. Elle a rencontré sur son chemin un brin d'herbe qu'elle voudrait³ bien emporter; mais comment faire⁴? Il est si gros, et elle est si faible. Alors elle est montée sur un caillou, du haut duquel elle regarde la campagne, comme du haut d'une tour. Elle regarde, elle regarde; enfin elle a aperçu⁵ deux de ses compagnes qui passent par là, et elle court⁶ à elles. Elle se frotte le nez contre leur nez pour leur dire⁷: « Venez⁸ vite avec moi; il y a par là quelque chose de bon! » Les trois fourmis se précipitent vers le brin d'herbe et le saisissent. Ce que l'une ne pouvait⁹ faire⁴, les trois le font⁴ aisément, et elles emportent en triomphe le brin devenu¹⁰ léger pour elles.

¹ § 224.³ § 225.⁵ § 213.⁷ § 193.⁹ § 221.² § 160.⁴ § 195.⁶ § 164.⁸ § 178.¹⁰ § 178.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Elle allait ça et là. 2. Elle voudrait bien l'emporter. 3. Elle est montée. 4. Elle court à elles. 5. Elle se frotte le nez. 6. Venez. 7. Elles se précipitent. 8. Elles le saisissent. 9. Elle ne pouvait pas le faire. 10. Elles le font aisément.

Give in full the past definite of: 1. Vu. 2. Rencontré. 3. REGARDÉ. 4. APERÇU. 5. COURT. 6. SE PRÉCIPITENT. 7. FONT.

Beginning at the second sentence, relate the story in the past definite, thus: « Elle rencontra, » etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quel insecte parle-t-on ici? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle faisait? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a rencontré sur son chemin? 4. Le brin d'herbe était-il gros ou petit? 5. Et la fourmi était-elle forte ou faible? 6. Qu'est-ce que la fourmi aurait voulu faire? 7. Est-ce qu'elle pouvait le faire toute seule? 8. Où est-elle montée? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a regardé du haut du caillou? 10. Pour la fourmi le caillou était comme une tour, n'est-ce pas? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a aperçue enfin? 12. Que faisaient les deux compagnes de la fourmi? 13. Et la fourmi qu'est-ce qu'elle a fait? 14. Est-ce qu'elle leur a parlé? 15. Comment leur a-t-elle parlé? 16. Qu'est-ce qu'elle

leur a dit? 17. Quelle est la première chose qu'ont faite les trois fourmis? 18. Et ensuite qu'ont-elles fait? 19. Une fourmi pouvait-elle emporter le brin d'herbe? 20. Les trois fourmis ensemble pouvaient-elles le faire aisément? 21. Pourquoi le brin d'herbe est-il devenu léger?

D. A little ant was going hither and thither one day. She found a blade of grass on the road. "This blade of grass is very big," thought the ant. "I am too weak to carry it off alone. I know what I shall do. I shall climb upon a pebble. From the top of the pebble I shall look around. The pebble will be for me like a tall tower." She did so. She looked about her a long time. At last she saw two of her companions. They were passing along (par) the same road. She called them, and they ran to her. She said to them: "Come here, for I have found something good." She said this by rubbing her nose against theirs. Ants, as you know, cannot speak like men. After that the three ants rushed towards the blade of grass. They seized it quickly. It had been very heavy for one ant. But the three together carried it off easily.

XLVI. Le Bon Samaritain

A. Un homme descendit¹ de Jérusalem à Jéricho, et tomba parmi des brigands, qui le dépouillèrent. Après l'avoir blessé de plusieurs coups, ils s'en allèrent², le laissant à demi mort.³ Un prêtre, qui par hasard descendait¹ par ce chemin-là, l'ayant vu⁴, passa outre. Un lévite, venant⁵ aussi dans le même endroit, et le voyant⁴, passa outre. Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait⁶, vint⁵ vers cet homme, et le voyant⁴, fut touché de compassion. S'approchant de lui, il banda ses plaies, et il y versa de l'huile et du vin; puis il le mit⁷ sur sa monture, le mena⁸ à une auberge, et prit⁹ soin de lui. Le lendemain, en partant¹⁰, il tira de sa poche deux deniers d'argent, et les donnant à l'aubergiste, lui dit¹¹: « Aie soin de lui, et tout ce que tu dépenseras de plus je te le rendrai¹ à mon retour. »

¹ § 210.

⁴ § 224.

⁶ § 156.

⁹ § 158.

¹⁰ § 166.

² § 160.

⁵ § 178.

⁷ § 198.

¹⁰ § 202.

¹¹ § 193.

³ § 174.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il descendit. 2. Ils le dépouillèrent. 3. Ils s'en allèrent. 4. Il descendit par ce chemin. 5. Il passa outre. 6. Il vint vers cet homme. 7. Il y versa de l'huile. 8. Il le mit sur sa monture. 9. Il prit soin de lui.

Give the present indicative and present subjunctive of: 1. S'en allèrent. 2. Mort. 3. Venant. 4. Voyant. 5. Mit.

C. (Oral.) 1. D'où a-t-on tiré cette histoire? 2. Comment s'appelle l'histoire? 3. Où sont Jérusalem et Jéricho? 4. Est-ce que la terre sainte est un grand ou un petit pays? 5. Qu'ont fait les brigands au voyageur? 6. En quel état se trouvait-il après leur départ? 7. Quelles personnes sont venues ensuite? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'elles ont fait? 9. Qui est venu après le prêtre et le lévite? 10. Est-ce que les Samaritains étaient bien aimés des Juifs? 11. Est-ce que cela a empêché le Samaritan de faire le bien? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait au Juif? 13. Après l'avoir soigné qu'a-t-il fait? 14. Qu'a-t-il donné à l'aubergiste? 15. En quittant l'auberge, qu'a-t-il dit?

D. 1. If we fall among thieves, they will strip us. 2. After having wounded us they will depart. 3. If you should see a poor traveler half dead, would you pass by on the other side? 4. If the priest had been touched with compassion, he would have bound up the wounds. 5. Let us pour oil and wine into his wounds. 6. Let us put the poor man on our own beast. 7. Let us take him to the inn. 8. Let us take care of him there. 9. The next day we shall give money to the inn-keeper. 10. On our return we shall give him back whatever he shall have spent for our friend.

E. A man, who was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, fell among thieves. They stripped him and wounded him, and left him half dead. Then a priest and a Levite came by chance to the same place, and they saw him and passed by on the other side. But a Samaritan, who was going down by that road, saw him, and was touched with compassion. Then, after having bound up his wounds, he put him on his beast and took him to an inn. On the morrow he gave money to

the innkeeper, and said that on his return he would give the innkeeper whatever he should spend if he took care of the poor man.

XLVII. M. Laffitte et l'Épingle

A. Lorsque M. Laffitte, le fameux banquier, vint¹ à Paris, en 1788, à l'âge de 21 ans, toute son ambition se bornait à obtenir² une petite place dans une maison de banque. Il se présenta chez un riche banquier. « Impossible de vous admettre³ chez moi, du moins pour le moment, lui dit⁴ le banquier: mes bureaux sont au complet. » Le jeune homme salut et se retire. En traversant la cour, il aperçoit⁵ à terre une épingle, et la ramasse. Debout devant la fenêtre de son cabinet le riche banquier avait suivi⁶ des yeux la retraite du jeune homme. Il lui vit⁷ ramasser l'épingle et ce trait lui fit⁸ plaisir. Le soir même le jeune homme reçut⁵ un billet du banquier, qui lui disait⁴: « Vous avez une place dans mes bureaux; vous pouvez⁹ venir¹ l'occuper dès demain. » Le jeune homme devint¹ bientôt caissier, puis associé, puis maître, de la première maison de banque de Paris, et enfin homme d'État très influent sous Louis-Philippe.

¹ § 178. ³ § 198. ⁵ § 213. ⁷ § 224. • § 221.
² § 177. ⁴ § 193. ⁶ § 206. ⁸ § 195.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il vint à Paris. 2. Elle se bornait à cela. 3. Il se présenta chez le banquier. 4. Il se retire. 5. Il aperçoit à terre une épingle. 6. Il l'avait suivi des yeux. 7. Il vit ramasser l'épingle. 8. Il reçut un billet. 9. Il lui disait. 10. Vous pouvez venir. 11. Il devint maître.

Give in full the future and conditional of: 1. Tenir. 2. Admettre. 3. Aperçoit. 4. Suivi. 5. Vit.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel âge avait M. Laffitte à son arrivée à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il cherchait? 3. Réussit-il d'abord à trouver une place? 4. Où se présenta-t-il? 5. Que lui a-t-on dit? 6. En se retirant où va-t-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il trouve? 8. Qui l'a vu? 9. En était-il content? 10. De quelle façon

a-t-il montré son contentement? 11. Qu'est devenu le jeune homme par la suite? 12. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. If your ambition is only to get a humble position, you will get it. 2. Present yourself at the office of the rich banker. 3. He will admit you into his employ. 4. His offices are not full. 5. Do you see that pin on the ground? 6. Pick it up. 7. There is the rich banker standing at his office window. 8. The banker is watching the young man as he retires. 9. If we see him pick up a pin, it (*cela*) will please us. 10. Did you receive a note from the banker? 11. You shall have a position in his banking-house. 12. You will soon become his partner, will you not? 13. Those who pick up pins may become statesmen.

E. When M. Laffitte was twenty-one years of age he came to Paris. He wished to get a humble position with a rich banker. But when he presented himself, the rich banker told him that his offices were full, and that he could not admit him. He withdrew. The rich banker watched him from his office window, and saw him pick up a pin which he noticed on the ground as he was crossing the yard. This action pleased the banker. That very evening he sent a note to the young man, which said that he could have a position in his offices the very next day. The young man became head of a great banking-house, and at last an influential statesman.

XLVIII. Le Sifflet de Benjamin Franklin

A. Benjamin Franklin raconte l'anecdote suivante¹: « Quand j'étais un enfant de cinq ou six ans, mes amis, un jour de fête, remplirent ma petite poche de sous. Je partis² tout de suite pour une boutique où l'on vendait³ des jouets. Chemin faisant⁴, je vis⁵ dans les mains d'un autre petit garçon un sifflet, dont le son me charma. Je lui donnai en échange tout mon argent. Revenu⁶ chez moi, fort content de mon achat, sifflant par toute la maison, je fatiguai les oreilles de toute la famille.

¹ § 206.

³ § 210.

⁵ § 224.

² § 166.

⁴ § 195.

⁶ § 178.

Mes frères et mes sœurs apprenant¹ que j'avais tout donné pour un mauvais instrument, me dirent² que je l'avais payé³ dix fois plus cher qu'il ne valait⁴. Alors ils énumérèrent⁵ toutes les jolies choses que j'aurais pu⁶ acheter⁵ avec mon argent si j'avais été plus prudent. Ils me tournèrent tellement en ridicule que j'en pleurai. Cependant, cet accident fut de quelque utilité pour moi. Lorsque plus tard j'étais tenté d'acheter⁵ quelque chose qui ne m'était pas nécessaire, je disais² en moi-même: *Ne donnons pas trop pour le sifflet, et j'épargnais mon argent.* »

¹ § 202.

³ § 157.

⁵ § 158.

² § 193.

⁴ § 223.

⁶ § 221.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Quand j'étais un enfant. 2. Ils remplirent ma poche. 3. Je partis tout de suite. 4. Je vis un sifflet. 5. Je fatiguai tous mes amis. 6. Je remplis mes poches, tu remplis tes poches, etc. 7. Ils me dirent, ils te dirent, etc. 8. Je disais en moi-même, tu disais en toi-même, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Benjamin Franklin? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quel âge avait-il à l'époque de l'anecdote? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il avait dans sa poche? 5. Qui le lui avait donné? 6. Pour quel endroit est-il parti ensuite? 7. Y est-il jamais arrivé? 8. Quel était l'obstacle? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait de son argent? 10. À son retour chez lui, qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 11. A-t-il charmé ses frères et ses sœurs? 12. Est-ce qu'il avait payé assez cher son sifflet? 13. Est-ce que la famille était contente de son achat? 14. De quelle façon la famille a-t-elle fait voir son mécontentement? 15. Le pauvre Franklin était-il content à la fin? 16. Quelle leçon Franklin a-t-il reçue par cet accident?

D. 1. You have paid twice as much for that apple as it is worth. 2. If you pay ten cents for that pencil, that will be three times as much as it is worth. 3. Never pay more for things than they are worth. 4. We could have bought many pretty things with our money, if we had been prudent. 5. If our friend had been less prudent, he could not have bought so many pretty things. 6. That accident will be of some use to

our friends. 7. When we are (*fut.*) tempted to buy something which is not necessary for us, we shall say to ourselves: "We are not going to give too much for the whistle."

E. When Benjamin Franklin was five years old, his brother, on a holiday, filled his pockets with coppers. Starting off at once for a shop where toys were sold, he met on the way another little boy who had a whistle. The sound of the instrument charmed him, and he gave all his money to have it. He was much pleased with his purchase, but he whistled so much all over the house that he tired the whole family. His brothers and sisters asked him where he had bought his whistle and how much he had paid for it. He told them he had given all his money to the little boy. Then they told him he had paid too much for it. They said too that if he had been more prudent, he could have bought ten times as many pretty things, and he cried on account of it. But the affair was of some use to him later on. Whenever he was tempted to buy things which he did not need, he would always say to himself: "I will not give too much for the whistle."

XLIX. Henri IV et le Paysan

A. Henri IV, dans une chasse, s'étant écarté, suivant¹ sa coutume, de ses gardes et de sa cour, rencontra un paysan assis² sous un arbre. « Que fais-tu³ là? lui dit⁴ le prince. — J'étais venu⁵ ici dès le point du jour, pour voir⁶ passer le roi, répondit⁷ le paysan; sans ce désir, je serais à labourer mon champ, qui n'est pas fort éloigné. — Si tu veux⁸ monter sur la croupe de mon cheval, lui répliqua Henri, je te conduirai⁹ où est le roi, et tu le verras⁶ à ton aise. »

Le paysan, enchanté, profite de la rencontre, monte à côté du roi, et demande, chemin faisant³, comment il pourra¹⁰ reconnaître¹¹ le roi. « Tu n'auras qu'à regarder celui qui sera couvert¹² pendant que tous les autres auront la tête nue. »

Enfin le moment arrive où le roi rejoit¹³ une partie de sa cour et se trouve parmi ses courtisans; tous se découvrent¹²,

¹ § 206.

⁴ § 193.

⁷ § 210.

¹⁰ § 221.

¹² § 176.

² § 215.

⁵ § 178.

⁸ § 225.

¹¹ § 188.

¹² § 190.

³ § 195.

⁶ § 224.

⁹ § 185.

excepté lui. Alors il demande au paysan: « Eh bien, quel est le roi? — Ma foi, monsieur, lui répondit-il¹, c'est vous ou moi, car il n'y a que nous deux qui ayons le chapeau sur la tête. »

¹ § 210.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. J'étais venu. 2. Tu veux voir le roi. 3. Tu le verras à ton aise. 4. Il pourra reconnaître le roi. 5. Il sera couvert. 6. Il rejoint les courtisans. 7. Ils se découvrent. 8. Il n'y a que nous qui ayons.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qui était Henri IV? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quelle était sa coutume quand il était à la chasse? 4. Qui a-t-il rencontré un jour? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 6. Que faisait le paysan? 7. Depuis combien de temps y était-il? 8. Pourquoi y était-il venu? 9. S'il n'était pas venu où aurait-il été? 10. Qu'est-ce que le roi a proposé au paysan? 11. Le paysan a-t-il accepté? 12. Qu'est-ce que le paysan a demandé au roi en chemin? 13. Quel était le signe par lequel on reconnaîtrait le roi? 14. Où le roi et le paysan arrivent-ils bientôt? 15. Qu'est-ce que les courtisans ont fait à leur approche? 16. Combien de personnes restaient couvertes? 17. Et combien de rois y avait-il dans la compagnie?

D. 1. We have wandered from the court. 2. If the king had not wandered from the court, he would not have met the peasant. 3. We came here at the very peep of day. 4. I have not seen the king go by. 5. The peasants are busy plowing the field. 6. If you get up beside me, you will see the king. 7. As they went along, the peasant said to the king: "Take me where the king is." 8. Everybody had his hat on, and we could not recognize the king. 9. If the courtiers had taken off their hats, we could have recognized the king.

E. One day Henry IV had wandered from his courtiers. Meeting a peasant who was sitting under a tree, he asked the latter what he was doing there. The peasant replied that he had been there since daybreak, and that he wished to see

the king, and that if he had not come, he would be busy plowing his field. The king said to him: "Get up behind me, and I shall take you where you can see the king." The peasant was delighted, and got up beside the king. As they went along, he asked how he should recognize the king, and the king told him to look at the one who should have his hat on, while the others should be bareheaded. When they arrived where the courtiers were, the latter took off their hats. Then the king asked the peasant which was the king. He replied: "We two have our hats on, the others are bare-headed: it is you or I."

L. Thomas et les Cerises

A. Un paysan traversait la campagne avec son fils Thomas. « Regarde! lui dit-il¹ en chemin, voilà par terre un fer à cheval perdu², ramasse-le! »

« Bah! répondit² Thomas, il ne vaut³ pas la peine de se baisser pour si peu de chose! » Le père ne dit¹ rien, ramassa le fer et le mit⁴ dans sa poche. Arrivé au village voisin, il le vendit² pour quelques centimes au maréchal ferrant, et acheta⁵ des cerises avec cet argent.

Cela fait⁶, ils se remirent⁴ en route. Le soleil était brûlant. Thomas mourait⁷ de soif, et avait de la peine à poursuivre⁸ son chemin. Le père, qui marchait le premier, laissa, comme par hasard, tomber une cerise. Thomas la ramassa avec empressement, et la mangea⁹. Quelques pas plus loin, une seconde cerise s'échappa des mains du père, et Thomas la saisit avec le même empressement. Le père fit⁶ de même avec toutes les cerises. Lorsque l'enfant eut porté à la bouche la dernière cerise, le père se retourna et lui dit¹: « Vois¹⁰, mon ami, tu n'as pas voulu¹¹ te baisser une fois pour ramasser le fer à cheval, et tu as été obligé¹² de te baisser plus de vingt fois pour ramasser les cerises. »

¹ § 193.

⁴ § 198.

⁷ § 174.

⁹ § 156.

¹¹ § 225.

² § 210.

⁵ § 158.

⁸ § 206.

¹⁰ § 224.

¹² § 156.

³ § 223.

⁶ § 195.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il ne dit rien. 2. Il

vendit le fer. 3. Il mourait de soif. 4. Il mangea une cerise. 5. Il la saisit. 6. Il fit de même. 7. Ils se remirent en route. 8. Il s'échappa de ses mains. 9. Il se retourna. 10. Tu t'es baissé.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 3. Était-il seul? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont vu en chemin? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un fer à cheval? 6. Qu'est-ce que le père a dit au fils? 7. Qu'est-ce que le fils a répondu? 8. Lequel des deux était le plus prudent? 9. Par quelle action a-t-il montré sa prudence? 10. À qui a-t-on vendu le fer à cheval? 11. Pourquoi l'a-t-on vendu à un maréchal ferrant? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on a acheté avec l'argent? 13. Quel temps faisait-il? 14. Quel était l'effet de la chaleur sur le petit Thomas? 15. Est-ce que le père n'avait rien pour la soif? 16. Est-ce que les cerises sont bonnes pour la soif? 17. Qu'est-ce que le père a fait des cerises? 18. Et qu'est-ce que son fils en a fait? 19. Combien en a-t-il mangées? 20. Pourquoi aurait-il mieux fait de se baisser pour le fer à cheval?

D. 1. It was not worth the trouble. 2. It will not be worth the trouble. 3. If it is worth the trouble, we shall pick up the horseshoe. 4. Put the horseshoe into your pocket and buy cherries. 5. We shall set out again on our journey. 6. If the sun is hot, they will not set out again. 7. I am very thirsty (dying with thirst); give me some cherries. 8. We have difficulty in picking up the cherries. 9. If you are dying with thirst, I shall drop a cherry. 10. The cherries are on the ground; pick them up. 11. If you walk ahead, will you pick up the cherries? 12. A few steps farther on, I stooped to pick up the horseshoe. 13. Why did you seize the horseshoe so eagerly? 14. We did not seize it eagerly. 15. If you had been willing to turn around, we should have given you the cherries. 16. Stoop, if you wish to pick them up.

E. As a peasant and his son were crossing the country, they saw a horseshoe on the ground. The father told his son to pick it up and put it into his pocket. The son replied that it was not worth while to stoop for a horseshoe. Then the

father stooped and picked it up. They sold it to the blacksmith of the neighboring village, and bought some cherries, which the father put into his pocket. They pursued their way, the father walking ahead. The sun was hot and Thomas was very thirsty, and, as if by chance, a cherry fell from his father's pocket. The son seizing it, ate it, and also a second one, which slipped from his father's pocket. Soon the last cherry was carried to his mouth, and his father, turning round, told him that if he had been willing to stoop once for the horseshoe, he would not have been obliged to stoop twenty times for the cherries.

LI. Frédéric le Grand et son Page

A. Un jour Frédéric le Grand, roi de Prusse, ayant sonné sans que personne répondit¹ à cet appel, ouvrit² la porte de son antichambre et trouva son page endormi³ sur une chaise. Au moment où il allait⁴ le réveiller, il aperçut⁵ un papier écrit⁶ sortant⁷ de la poche du page. La curiosité du roi fut excitée, il prit⁸ le papier et le lut⁹. C'était une lettre de la mère du jeune homme, dans laquelle elle remerciait son fils de ce qu'il lui envoyait¹⁰ une partie de ses gages pour la soulager¹¹ dans sa misère. Le roi, ayant lu⁹ la lettre, prit⁸ un rouleau de ducats et le glissa avec la lettre dans la poche du page. Un instant après il sonna si fort que le page se réveilla et accourut¹² auprès de lui. « Vous avez dormi³ » lui dit¹³ le roi. Le jeune homme, ayant honte, tâcha de s'excuser. Dans son embarras il mit¹⁴ la main dans sa poche, et y trouva le rouleau de ducats. Il le prit⁸, pâlit, trembla, et ne put¹⁵ articuler un seul mot. « Qu'avez-vous? dit¹³ le roi. — Hélas! sire, dit¹³ le page, quelqu'un veut¹⁶ me perdre¹; je ne sais¹⁷ pas d'où m'est venu¹⁸ cet or. — La fortune ne vient-elle¹⁸ pas souvent en dormant³? reprit⁸ Frédéric. Envoie¹⁰ cette somme à ta mère, en lui faisant¹⁹ mes compliments et assure-la bien que j'aurai soin d'elle et de toi. »

¹ § 210.

⁶ § 213.

⁹ § 197.

¹³ § 193.

¹⁷ § 222.

² § 176.

⁶ § 194.

¹⁰ § 157.

¹⁴ § 198.

¹⁸ § 178.

³ § 166.

⁷ § 166.

¹¹ § 156.

¹⁵ § 221.

¹⁹ § 195.

⁴ § 160.

⁶ § 202.

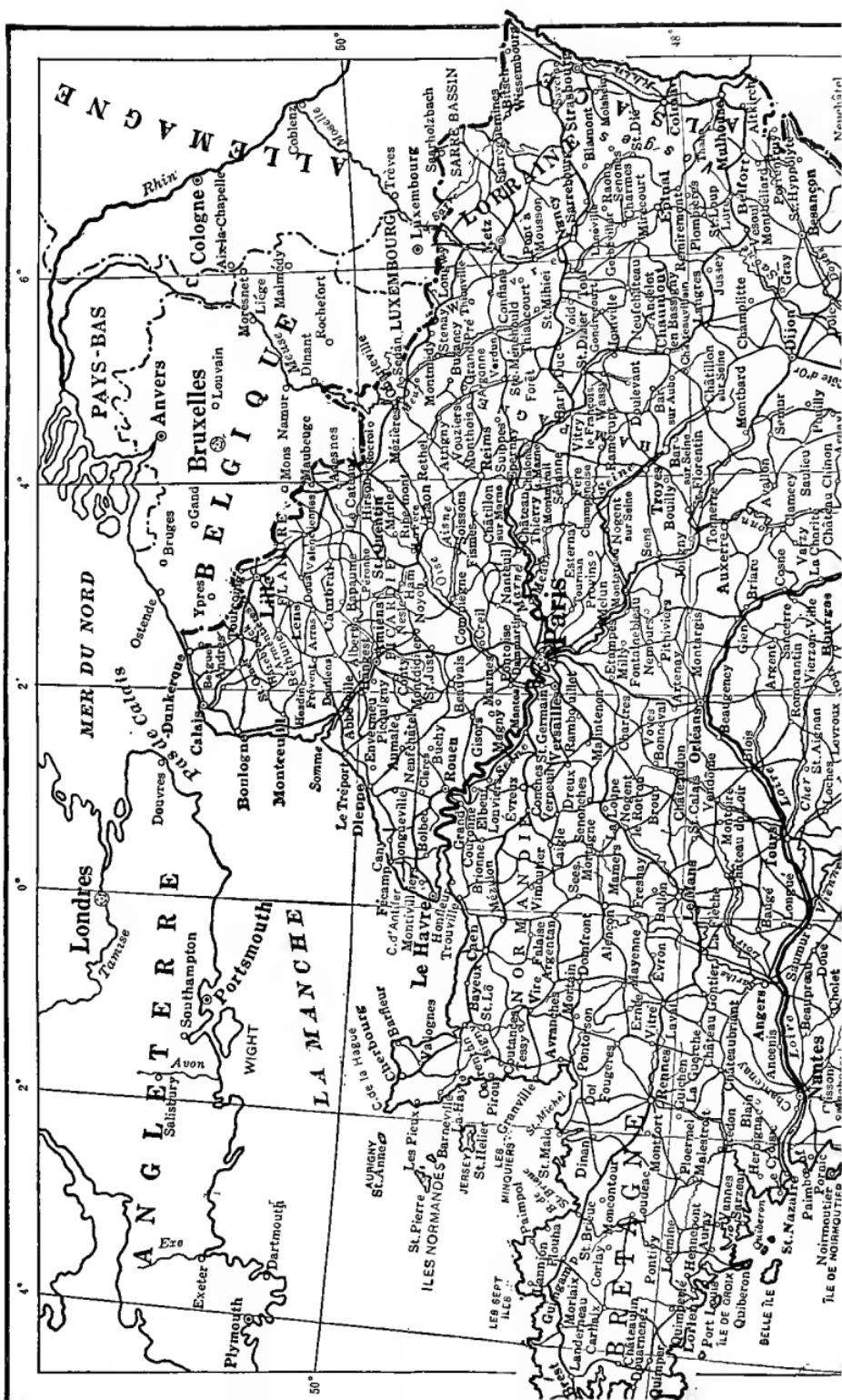
¹² § 164.

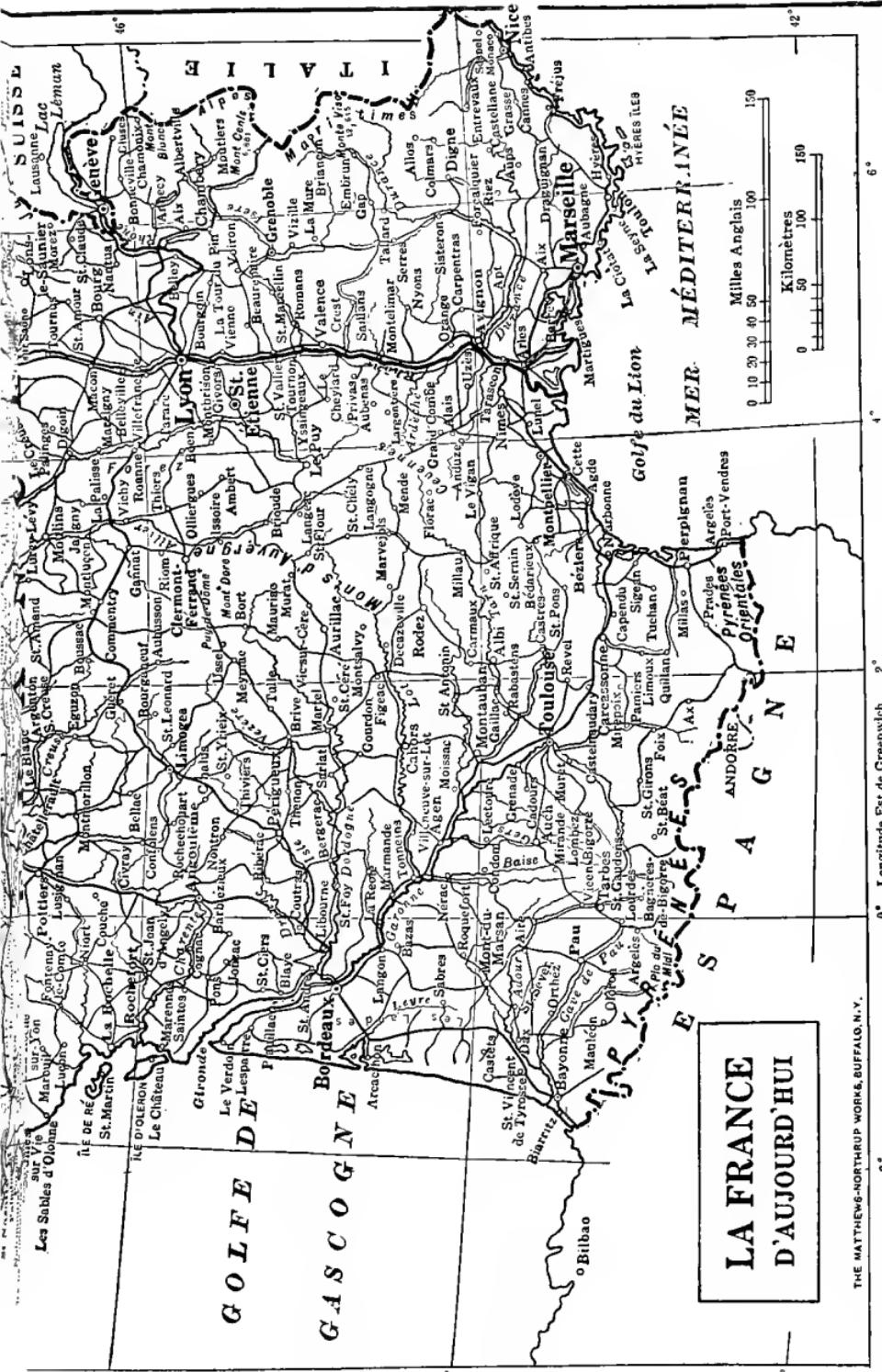
¹⁶ § 225.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Sans qu'il répondit.
 2. Il ouvrit la porte. 3. Il lut le billet. 4. Il allait le réveiller. 5. Il aperçut un papier. 6. Il remerciait le roi. 7. Il envoyait l'argent. 8. Il prit le rouleau.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel est le sujet de cette anecdote? 2. À quelle époque vivait Frédéric le Grand? 3. Où est la Prusse? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un page? 5. Où était le page dont parle l'histoire? 6. Qu'est-ce qu'il y faisait? 7. Qu'est-ce que les pages devraient faire dans les antichambres des rois? 8. Est-ce que le roi s'est mis en colère contre le page? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 10. En lisant la lettre qu'est-ce que le roi a découvert? 11. Est-ce que la mère du page était riche? 12. Qu'est-ce que le page faisait pour elle? 13. Le roi en était-il content? 14. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 15. Comment le jeune homme a-t-il découvert ce que le roi avait fait? 16. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un ducat? 17. Que pensait-il en sentant les ducats dans sa poche? 18. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il calmé le jeune homme? 19. Est-ce que le proverbe est toujours vrai: « La fortune nous vient en dormant? »

D. One day Frederick the Great rang, and nobody answered him. Opening the door of the antechamber, he finds his page asleep. A letter, which was sticking out of the page's pocket, aroused the king's curiosity. The young man used to send his mother a part of his wages, and in this letter she was thanking him for it. The king read the letter, and, taking a roll of ducats, slipped it, with the letter, into the young man's pocket. Then ringing very loud, he waked the page, who hastened into his presence. He asked the young man if he had been asleep. The young man was ashamed, and tried to excuse himself. Putting his hand into his pocket he finds the ducats. He trembles, and cannot utter a word. The king asked him what was the matter with him, and he replied that somebody wished to ruin him, for he did not know where the ducats came from. The king replies that good luck comes to us often while we sleep. He tells the page that he will take care of his mother.





PART II

THE VERB

REGULAR VERBS

153. Regular Conjugations. Regular verbs are conveniently divided into three classes or conjugations, according as the present infinitive ends in -er, -ir, -re, and are inflected in their simple tenses as follows:

I

II

III

Infinitive Mood

PRESENT

donn er, *to give*

PRESENT

fin ir, *to finish*

PRESENT

romp re, *to break*

Participles

PRESENT

donn ant, *giving*

PRESENT

fin iss ant, *finishing*

PRESENT

romp ant, *breaking*

PAST

donn é, *given*

PAST

fin i, *finished*

PAST

romp u, *broken*

Indicative Mood

PRESENT

*I give, am giving,
etc.*

je donn e

tu donn es

il donn e

nous donn ons

vous donn ez

ils donn ent

PRESENT

*I finish, am finishing,
etc.*

je fin i s

tu fin i s

il fin i t

nous fin iss ons

vous fin iss ez

ils fin iss ent

PRESENT

*I break, am breaking,
etc.*

je romp s

tu romp s

il romp t

nous romp ons

vous romp ez

ils romp ent

IMPERFECT

I was giving, used to give, etc.

je donnais
tu donnais
il donnait
nous donnions
vous donniez
ils donnaient

IMPERFECT

I was finishing, used to finish, etc.

je finissais
tu finissais
il finissait
nous finissions
vous finissiez
ils finissaient

IMPERFECT

I was breaking, used to break, etc.

je rompais
tu rompais
il rompait
nous rompions
vous rompiez
ils rompaient

PAST DEFINITE

I gave, etc.

je donnai
tu donnas
il donna
nous donnâmes
vous donnâtes
ils donnèrent

PAST DEFINITE

I finished, etc.

je finis
tu finis
il finit
nous finîmes
vous finîtes
ils finirent

PAST DEFINITE

I broke, etc.

je rompis
tu rompis
il rompit
nous rompîmes
vous rompîtes
ils rompirent

FUTURE

I shall give, etc.

je donnerai
tu donneras
il donnera
nous donnerons
vous donnerez
ils donneront

FUTURE

I shall finish, etc.

je finirai
tu finiras
il finira
nous finirons
vous finirez
ils finiront

FUTURE

I shall break, etc.

je romprai
tu rompras
il rompra
nous romprons
vous romprez
ils rompront

CONDITIONAL

I should give, etc.

je donnerais
tu donnerais
il donnerait
nous donnerions
vous donneriez
ils donneraient

CONDITIONAL

I should finish, etc.

je finirais
tu finiras
il finirait
nous finirions
vous finiriez
ils finiraient

CONDITIONAL

I should break, etc.

je romprais
tu rompras
il romprait
nous romprions
vous romprez
ils rompront

Imperative Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
<i>Give, etc.</i>	<i>Finish, etc.</i>	<i>Break, etc.</i>
donn e*	fin is	romp s
(qu'il donn e)	(qu'il fin iss e)	(qu'il romp e)
donn ons	fin iss ons	romp ons
donn ez	fin iss ez	romp ez
(qu'ils donn ent)	(qu'ils fin iss ent)	(qu'ils romp ent)

* This form becomes **donn es** when followed by **-y** or **-en** (cf. § 370, 3, obs. 3, 4).

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
(That) <i>I (may) give,</i> etc.	(That) <i>I (may) finish,</i> etc.	(That) <i>I (may) break,</i> etc.
(que) je donn e	(que) je fin iss e	(que) je romp e
(que) tu donn es	(que) tu fin iss es	(que) tu romp es
(qu') il donn e	(qu') il fin iss e	(qu') il romp e
(que) nous donn ions	(que) nous fin iss ions	(que) nous romp ions
(que) vous donn iez	(que) vous fin iss iez	(que) vous romp iez
(qu') ils donn ent	(qu') ils fin iss ent	(qu') ils romp ent
IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT
(That) <i>I (might) give,</i> etc.	(That) <i>I (might) finish,</i> etc.	(That) <i>I (might) break,</i> etc.
(que) je donn asse	(que) je fin isse	(que) je romp isse
(que) tu donn asses	(que) tu fin isses	(que) tu romp isses
(qu') il donn ât	(qu') il fin ît	(qu') il romp ît
(que) nous donn assions	(que) nous fin issions	(que) nous romp issions
(que) vous donn assiez	(que) vous fin issiez	(que) vous romp issiez
(qu') ils donn assent	(qu') ils fin issent	(qu') ils romp issent

AUXILIARY VERBS

154. The auxiliary verbs **avoir**, *to have*, and **être**, *to be*, are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows:

Infinitive

PRES. *avoir, to have*

PRES. *être, to be*

Participles

PRES. ayant, *having*
 PAST. eu, *had*

PRES. étant, *being*
 PAST. été, *been*

Indicative

PRESENT

I have, am having, etc.

j'ai	nous avons
tu as	vous avez
il a	ils ont

IMPERFECT

I had, was having, etc.

j'avais	nous avions
tu avais	vous aviez
il avait	ils avaient

PAST DEFINITE

I had, etc.

j'eus	nous eûmes
tu eus	vous eûtes
il eut	ils eurent

FUTURE

I shall have, etc.

j'aurai	nous aurons
tu auras	vous aurez
il aura	ils auront

CONDITIONAL

I should have, etc.

j'aurais	nous aurions
tu aurais	vous auriez
il aurait	ils auraient

PRESENT

I am, am being, etc.

je suis	nous sommes
tu es	vous êtes
il est	ils sont

IMPERFECT

I was, was being, etc.

j'étais	nous étions
tu étais	vous étiez
il était	ils étaient

PAST DEFINITE

I was, etc.

je fus	nous fûmes
tu fus	vous fûtes
il fut	ils furent

FUTURE

I shall be, etc.

je serai	nous serons
tu seras	vous serez
il sera	ils seront

CONDITIONAL

I should be, etc.

je serais	nous serions
tu serais	vous seriez
il serait	ils seraient

Imperative

PRESENT

Have, etc.

aie	ayons
(qu'il ait)	(qu'ils aient)

PRESENT

Be, etc.

sois	soyons
(qu'il soit)	(qu'ils soient)

Subjunctive

PRESENT

(*That*) *I (may) have, etc.*
 (que) j'aie (que) nous ayons
 (que) tu aies (que) vous ayez
 (qu') il ait (qu') ils aient

PRESENT

(*That*) *I (may) be, etc.*
 (que) je sois (que) nous soyons
 (que) tu sois (que) vous soyez
 (qu') il soit (qu') ils soient

IMPERFECT

(*That*) *I (might) have, etc.*
 (que) j'eusse (que) nous eussions
 (que) tu eusses (que) vous eussiez
 (qu') il eût (qu') ils eussent

IMPERFECT

(*That*) *I (might) be, etc.*
 (que) je fusse (que) nous fussions
 (que) tu fusses (que) vous fussiez
 (qu') il fût (qu') ils fussent

COMPOUND TENSES

155. Formation. Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb along with an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), see §§ 227–229.

Avoir

PERFECT

To have given
avoir donné

Être

Infinitive

PERFECT

To have arrived
être arrivé(e)(s)

Participle

PERFECT

Having given
ayant donné

PERFECT

Having arrived
étant arrivé(e)(s)

Indicative

PAST INDEFINITE

I have given, etc.
j'ai donné
tu as donné, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE

I have arrived, etc.
je suis arrivé(e)
tu es arrivé(e), etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had given, etc.
J'avais donné, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had arrived, etc.
j'étais arrivé(e), etc.

PAST ANTERIOR	PAST ANTERIOR
<i>I had given, etc.</i>	<i>I had arrived, etc.</i>
j'eus donné, etc.	je fus arrivé(e), etc.
FUTURE ANTERIOR	FUTURE ANTERIOR
<i>I shall have given, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have arrived, etc.</i>
j'aurai donné, etc.	je serai arrivé(e), etc.
CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR	CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR
<i>I should have given, etc.</i>	<i>I should have arrived, etc.</i>
j'aurais donné, etc.	je serais arrivé(e), etc.
Subjunctive	
PERFECT	PERFECT
(That) <i>I (may) have given, etc.</i>	(That) <i>I (may) have arrived, etc.</i>
(que) j'aie donné, etc.	(que) je sois arrivé(e), etc.
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
(That) <i>I (might) have given, etc.</i>	(That) <i>I (might) have arrived, etc.</i>
(que) j'eusse donné, etc.	(que) je fusse arrivé(e), etc.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES

156. Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger*

1. Verbs in *-cer*, e.g., *avancer* [avā̄sə], *to advance*, require the [s] sound of c throughout their conjugation, and hence c becomes ç before a or o of an ending (§ 5, 4), but not elsewhere:

Pres. Part.	Pres. Indic.	Impf. Indic.	Past Def.	Impf. Subj.
avançant	avance	avançais	avançai	avançasse
	avances	avançais	avanças	avançasses
	avance	avançait	avança	avançât
	avançons	avancions	avançâmes	avançassions
	avancez	avanciez	avançâtes	avançassiez
	avancent	avançaient	avançèrent	avançassent

2. Verbs in *-ger*, e.g., *manger* [mā̄ʒe], *to eat*, require the [ʒ] sound of g throughout their conjugation, and hence g becomes ge before a or o (§ 19, 2), but not elsewhere:

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Def.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>
mangeant	mange	mangeais	mangeai	mangeasse
	manges	mangeais	mangeas	mangeasses
	mange	mangeait	mangea	mangeât
	mangeons	mangions	mangeâmes	mangeassions
	mangez	mangiez	mangeâtes	mangeassiez
	mangent	mangeaient	mangèrent	mangeassent

157.

Verbs in *-yer*

Verbs in *-oyer* and *-uyer* change *y* to *i* whenever it comes before [ə] in conjugation, but not elsewhere; verbs in *-ayer* and *-eyer* may either retain *y* throughout, or change it to *i* before [ə]:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Cond.</i>
nettoie, etc.	nettoie, etc.	nettoierai, etc.	nettoierais, etc.
paye, } etc.	paye, } etc.	payerai, } etc.	payerais, } etc.
paie,	paie,	paierai,	paierais,

158.

Verbs with Stem-vowel *e* or *é*

Verbs with stem-vowel *e* require the [ɛ] sound of *e* (§ 12, 1) whenever, in conjugation, the next syllable contains [ə], i.e., when the stress falls on the stem-vowel; so also verbs with the stem-vowel *é*, shown orthographically as follows:—

1. By changing *e* or *é* to *è* (§ 12, 1), e.g., *mener*, *to lead*, *céder*, *to yield*:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Cond.</i>
mène	mène	mènerai	mènerais
mènes	mènes	mèneras	mènerais
mène	mène	mènera	mènerait
menons	menions	mènerons	mènerions
menez	meniez	mènerez	mèneriez
mènent	mènent	mèneront	mèneraient

But *céder* with the stem-vowel *é*:

cède, etc. *cède*, etc. *céderai* [séd(ə)re], etc. *céderais* [séd(ə)rɛ], etc.

Obs.: In *mené-je*? [mènə:ʒ], *e* of the ending is not mute, and hence the stem-vowel *e* is unchanged.

Like *mener*: Verbs with stem-vowel *e* (for exceptions in *-eler* and *-eter*, see below).

Like céder: Verbs with stem-vowel é + consonant, e.g., régner, reign, etc.

NOTE.—Verbs like créer, create, with stem-vowel followed by a vowel, are regular: Je crée, etc.

2. Most verbs in -eler, -eter, however, indicate the [ɛ] sound by doubling l or t, e.g., appeler, to call, jeter, to throw:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Cond.</i>
appelle	appelle	appellerai	appellerais
appelles	appelles	appelleras	appellerais
appelle	appelle	appellera	appellerait
appelons	appelions	appellerons	appellerions
appelez	appeliez	appellerez	appelleriez
appellent	appellent	appelleront	appelleraien

So also, jeter:

jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetteraïs, etc.
-------------	-------------	----------------	-----------------

A few verbs in -eler, -eter take the grave accent precisely like mener, e.g., acheter, to buy:

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèteraïs, etc.
--------------	--------------	-----------------	------------------

Exceptions like acheter:

agneler, lamb	épousseter, dust	modeler, model
becqueter, peck	étiqueter, label	peler, peel
bourrcler, goad, torture	geler, freeze	rapiéceter, patch
démanteler, dismantle	harceler, harass	trompeter, trumpet
écarteler, quarter	marteler, hammer	

* *Fut. épousseterai* according to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*.

Exceptions like appeler or acheter:

botteler, bale (hay, etc.)	caqueter, cackle	crocheter, pick (a lock)
canneler, groove	ciseler, chisel	

FORMATION OF TENSES

159. Principal Parts. By the following rules, the various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs may be known from five forms of the verb, called principal parts or primary tenses:—

1. The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding -ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont, and the *Conditional* by adding -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient

— dropping the final infinitive -e of the third conjugation for both tenses.

2. The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing -ant into -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient, and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing -ant into -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

3. The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses*, with the auxiliary *avoir* (§ 227) or *être* (§ 228), and the *Passive*, with the auxiliary *être* (§ 239).

4. The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the -s of the first conjugation second singular being also dropped, except before y and en (cf. § 370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

5. The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (-i or -s) into -sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent, and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

Obs.: The tenses, except the future and conditional, are not really derived from the principal parts, as is sometimes said in grammars: the method is merely an aid to memory.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -er

160.

Aller, to go

1. *Infinitive.* aller; *fut.* * irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* allant; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille [a:j], illes, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

3. *Past Part.* allé; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* vais [ve], vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impv.* va (vas-y), allons, allez.

5. *Past Def.* allai, allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

* The stem of the future is from the Latin infinitive ire.

Like *aller*:

s'en aller, *go away*.

161.

Envoyer, to send

1. *Infinitive.* envoyer; *fut.* enverrai, etc.; *condl.* enverrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* envoyant; *impf. indic.* envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [āvwaij5], envoyiez, envoyaienit; *pres. subj.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [āvwaij5], envoyiez, envoient.

3. *Past Part.* **envoyé**; *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient; *impve.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.
5. *Past Def.* **envoyai**, envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer**:

renvoyer, send away, dismiss

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -ir

162.

Acquérir, to acquire

1. *Infinitive.* **acquérir**; *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc.; *condl.* acqueras, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant**; *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc.; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquierent.
3. *Past Part.* **acquis**; *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* acquires, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquierent; *impve.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.
5. *Past Def.* **acquis**, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquisitions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir**:

<i>conquérir, conquer</i>	* <i>querir or quérir, seek</i>	<i>requérir, require, claim</i>
<i>s'enquérir, inquire</i>	<i>reconquérir, reconquer</i>	

* Has only the infinitive.

163.

Bénir, to bless

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **bénit**, used only as adjective:

De l'eau bénite; du pain bénit Holy water; consecrated bread

164.

Courir, to run

1. *Infinitive.* **courir**; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc.; *condl.* courrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **courant**; *impf. indic.* courais, etc.; *pres. subj.* courre, courues, courue, courions, couriez, courent.
3. *Past Part.* **couru**; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours**, cours, court, courons, courez, courent; *impve.* cours, courons, couruez.
5. *Past Def.* **courus**, courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, couru-

rent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussenent.

Like *courir* are its compounds:

accourir, <i>run up, hasten</i>	discourir, <i>discourse</i>	recourir, <i>run again, apply</i>
concourir, <i>coöperate, con-</i>	encourir, <i>incur</i>	secourir, <i>succor, help</i>
<i>cur, compete</i>	parcourir, <i>run over</i>	

NOTE. — *Courre*, *chase* (a hunting term), sometimes replaces *courir* in the infinitive.

165. Cueillir, *to gather, pick*

1. *Infinitive.* *cueillir*; *fut.* *cueillerai*, etc.; *condl.* *cueillerais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* *cueillant*; *impf. indic.* *cueillais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.*
3. *Past Part.* *cueilli*; *past indef.* *j'ai cueilli*, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* *cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent;* *impv.* *cueille, cueillons, cueillez.*
5. *Past Def.* *cueillis, cueillis, cueillit, cueillimes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; impf. subj.* *cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.*

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of *donner*.

Like *cueillir*:

accueillir, <i>welcome</i>	* <i>assailir, assail</i>	* <i>tressaillir, start</i>
recueillir, <i>gather, collect</i>	† <i>saillir, jut out</i>	

* Regular in future and conditional: *assaillirai*, etc.

† *Saillir, gush out, rush forth*, is regular, like *finir*.

166. Dormir, *to sleep*

1. *Infinitive.* *dormir*; *fut.* *dormirai*, etc.; *condl.* *dormirais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* *dormant*; *impf. indic.* *dormais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.*
3. *Past Part.* *dormi*; *past indef.* *j'ai dormi*, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* *dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment;* *impv.* *dors, dormons, dormez.*
5. *Past Def.* *dormis, dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; impf. subj.* *dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.*

Like *dormir*:

endormir, <i>put to sleep</i>	se rendormir, <i>go to sleep</i>	ébouillir, <i>boil away</i>
s'endormir, <i>fall asleep</i>	again	rebouillir, <i>boil again</i>
rendormir, <i>put to sleep</i>	redormir, <i>sleep again</i>	mentir, <i>lie</i>
again	bouillir, <i>boil</i>	démentir, <i>contradict, belie</i>

<i>partir, set out</i>	<i>se repentir, repent</i>	<i>servir, serve</i>
<i>départir, distribute</i>	<i>sentir, feel</i>	<i>se servir, make use</i>
<i>se départir, desist</i>	<i>consentir, consent</i>	<i>desservir, clear the table</i>
<i>repartir, set out again, reply</i>	<i>pressentir, forebode</i>	<i>sortir, go out</i>
	<i>ressentir, resent</i>	<i>ressortir, go out again</i>

NOTE. — Asservir, *enslave*, assortir, *sort*, *match*, ressortir, *depend* (on, à), répartir, *distribute*, are like finir.

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list:

<i>bouillir:</i> bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent
<i>mentir:</i> mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent
<i>partir:</i> pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent
<i>se repentir:</i> repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent
<i>sentir:</i> sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent
<i>servir:</i> sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent
<i>sortir:</i> sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent

167. Faillir, to fail

1. *Infinitive.* faillir; *fut.* faudrai, faudras, etc.; *condl.* faudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* faillant; *impf. indic.* faillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent.
3. *Past Part.* failli; *past indef.* j'ai failli, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* faux, faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillettent; *impve.* _____, _____, _____.
5. *Past Def.* faillis, faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent; *impf. subj.* faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.

NOTE. — The irreg. forms of pres. indic., fut., and condl. are usually replaced by the regular forms (cf. finir).

Like faillir:

défaillir, *faint, fail* (pres. indic. usually défaus, défaus, défault)

NOTE. — Faillir, *fail in business*, is usually like finir.

168. Férir, to strike

Used only in *Sans coup férir*, *Without striking a blow*, and in the *past part.* féru, *wounded* (a veterinary term).

169. Fleurir, to flourish, etc.

Pres. Part. florissant; *impf. indic.* florissais, etc., when used of persons or a collection of persons, or fleurissais, etc., when used of things, otherwise like finir.

NOTE. — Fleurir, *blossom, bloom* (in a literal sense) is like finir.

170. Fuir, to flee, fly

1. *Infinitive.* *fuir*; *fut.* *fuirai*, etc.; *condl.* *fuirais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* fuyant; *impf.* *indic.* *fuyaïs*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *fui*, *fuiés*, *fui*, *fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuent*.
3. *Past Part.* fui; *past indef.* *j'ai fui*, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fuis, *fuis*, *fuit*, *fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuent*; *impve.* *fuis*, *fuyons*, *fuyez*.
5. *Past Def.* *fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, *fuîmes*, *fuîtes*, *fuirent*; *impf. subj.* *fuisse*, *fuisses*, *fût*, *fuissions*, *fuissiez*, *fuissent*.

Like *fuir*:

s'enfuir, *flee*, *escape*

171. Gésir, to lie, lie buried

1. *Infinitive.* *gésir*; *fut.* —; *condl.* —.
2. *Pres. Part.* *gisant*; *impf.* *indic.* *gisais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, *gît*, *gisons*, *gisez*, *gisent*; *impve.* —, —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj* —.

NOTE.— Its most frequent use is in epitaphs: *Ci-gît*, *Here lies*, *Ci-gisent*, *Here lie*.

172. Haïr, to hate

1. *Infinitive.* *haïr*; *fut.* *haïrai*, etc.; *condl.* *haïrais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* *haïssant*; *impf.* *indic.* *haïssais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *haïsse*, *haïsses*, *haïsse*, *haïssions*, *haïssiez*, *haïssent*.
3. *Past Part.* *hai*; *past indef.* *j'ai hai*, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* hais, *hais*, *hait*, *haïsons*, *haïssez*, *haïssent*; *impve.* *hais*, *haïssons*, *haïssez*.
5. *Past Def.* *hai*, *hai*; *impf. subj.* *haïsse*, *haïsses*, *hai*, *haïssions*, *haïssiez*, *haïssent*.

Obs.: *Haïr* loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent; otherwise like *finir*.

173. Issir, to spring (from, de), etc.

Used only in the *past part.* *issu*; *past indef.* *je suis issu*, etc.

174. Mourir, to die

1. *Infinitive.* *mourir*; *fut.* *mourrai*, *mourras*, etc.; *condl.* *mourrais*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. mourant*; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* mort; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impv.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* mourus, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes eu wherever it bears the stress.

Like mourir:

se mourir, *be dying* (used only in infin., pres. indic., impf. indic.)

175. Ouir, *to hear*

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle: *J'ai ouï dire*, *I have heard said*, etc.

176. Ouvrir, *to open*

1. *Infinitive.* ouvrir; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. ouvrant*; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part. ouvert*; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impv.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* ouvris, ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrissse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs.: The present indicative is like that of donner.

Like ouvrir:

entr'ouvrir, *open slightly*
rouvrir, *open again*
couvrir, *cover*

découvrir, *discover*
recouvrir, *cover again*

offrir, *offer*
souffrir, *suffer*

177. Tenir, *to hold*

1. *Infinitive.* tenir; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendas, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. tenant*; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.

3. *Past Part. tenu*; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* tiens, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impv.* tiens, tenons, tenez.

5. *Past Def.* *tins*, *tins*, *tint*, *tinmes* [tē:m], *tin̄tes* [tē:t̄], *tinrent* [tē:r̄]; *impf. subj.* *tinsse*, [tē:s], *tinsses*, *tint*, *tinssions*, *tinssiez*, *tinssent*.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes ie wherever it bears the stress.

Like *tenir* are its compounds:

s'abstenir, <i>abstain</i>	détenir, <i>detain</i>	obtenir, <i>obtain</i>
appartenir, <i>belong</i>	entretenir, <i>entertain</i>	retenir, <i>retain</i>
contenir, <i>contain</i>	maintenir, <i>Maintain</i>	soutenir, <i>sustain</i>

178.

Venir, to come

1. *Infinitive.* *venir*; *fut.* *viendrai*, *viendras*, etc.; *condl.* *viendrais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* *venant*; *impf. indic.* *venais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *vienne*, *viennes*, *vienne*, *venions*, *veniez*, *viennent*.

3. *Past Part.* *venu*; *past indef.* *je suis venu*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* *viens*, *viens*, *vient*, *venons*, *venez*, *viennent*; *impve.* *viens*, *venons*, *venez*.

5. *Past Def.* *vins*, *vins*, *vint*, *vînmes* [vē:m], *vîntes* [vē:t̄], *vinrent* [vē:r̄]; *impf. subj.* *vinsse* [vē:s], *vinsses*, *vînt*, *vinssions*, *vinssiez*, *vinssent*.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes ie wherever it bears the stress.
2. *Venir* is precisely like *tenir* in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like *venir* are its compounds:

avenir, <i>happen</i>	disconvenir, <i>be discordant</i>	redevenir, <i>become again</i>
advenir, <i>happen</i>	intervenir, <i>intervene</i>	se souvenir, <i>recollect</i>
convenir, <i>agree</i> , <i>suit</i>	parvenir, <i>attain</i>	subvenir, <i>aid</i>
contrevenir, <i>violate</i>	prévenir, <i>prevent</i> , <i>anticipate</i>	survenir, <i>occur</i>
circonvenir, <i>circumvent</i>	provenir, <i>proceed</i> (<i>from</i> , <i>de</i>)	se ressouvenir, <i>recollect</i>
devenir, <i>become</i>	revenir, <i>come back</i>	

179.

Vêtir, to clothe

1. *Infinitive.* *vêtir*; *fut.* *vêtirai*, etc.; *condl.* *vêtirais*, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* *vêtant*; *impf. indic.* *vêtais*, etc.; *pres. subj.* *vête*, *vêtes*, *vête*, *vêtions*, *vêtiez*, *vêtent*.

3. *Past Part.* *vêtu*; *past indef.* *j'ai vêtu*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* *vêts*, *vêts*, *vêt*, *vêtons*, *vêtez*, *vêtent*; *impve.* *vêts*, *vêtons*, *vêtez*.

5. *Past Def.* *vêtis*, *vêtis*, *vêtit*, *vêtîmes*, *vêtîtes*, *vêtirent*; *impf. subj.* *vêtisse*, *vêtisses*, *vêtît*, *vêtissions*, *vêtissiez*, *vêtissent*.

Like *vêtir*:

devêtir, <i>divest</i>	revêtir, <i>clothe</i> , <i>invest</i>	se revêtir, <i>put on clothing</i>
se devêtir, <i>take off clothing</i>		

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -RE

180.

Battre, to beat

Loses one t in the present indicative singular: bats, bats, bat; otherwise like rompre.

Like battre:

<i>abattre, fell</i>	<i>débattre, debate</i>	<i>rabattre, beat down</i>
<i>combattre, fight, oppose</i>	<i>se débattre, struggle</i>	

181.

Boire, to drink

1. *Infinitive.* boire; *fut.* boirai, etc.; *condl.* boirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* buvant; *impf. indic.* buvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* boive, boives, boive, buvions, buvie, boivent.
3. *Past Part.* bu; *past indef.* j'ai bu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; *impve.* bois, buvons, buvez.
5. *Past Def.* bus, bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; *impf. subj.* busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.

Like boire:

<i>emboire, coat</i> (in painting)	<i>imboire, imbibe, imbue</i>
<i>s'emboire, become dull</i> (used in third person)	<i>reboire, drink again</i>

182.

Bruire, to murmur, rustle

1. *Infinitive.* bruire; *fut.* bruirai, etc.; *condl.* bruirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* bruyant; *impf. indic.* bruyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* bruit; *past indef.* j'ai bruit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* bruis, bruis, bruit, —, —, —; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

NOTES.— 1. The *pres. part.* *bruyant*, *noisy*, is used as adjective only.
2. The forms *bruissant*, *bruissais*, etc., *bruisse*, etc., are also in use.

183.

Clore, to close, enclose

1. *Infinitive.* clore; *fut.* clorai, etc.; *condl.* clorais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* —; *pres. subj.* close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closest.
3. *Past Part.* clos; *past indef.* j'ai clos, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* clos, clos, clôt, —, —, —; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

Like clore:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| déclore, <i>throw open</i> | † enclore, <i>enclose</i> |
| * éclore, <i>hatch, open (of flowers)</i> | †† forclore, <i>foreclose, debar</i> |
| * Has also <i>pres. pl.</i> éclosons, etc.; <i>impf. indic.</i> éclosais, etc. Its future and conditional are éclorai, etc. | |
| † Has also <i>pres. pl.</i> enclosons, etc.; <i>pres. part.</i> enclosant; <i>impf. indic.</i> enclosais, etc. | |
| †† Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses. | |

184.

Conclure, *to conclude*

1. *Infinitive.* conclure; *fut.* conclurai, etc.; *condl.* conclurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* concluant; *impf. indic.* concluais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluez, concurrent.
3. *Past Part.* conclu; *past indef.* j'ai conclu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concurrent; *impv.* conclus, concluons, concluez.
5. *Past Def.* conclus, conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent; *impf. subj.* conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclusions, conclusiez, conclussent.

Like conclure:

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| exclude, <i>exclude</i> | * inclure, <i>enclose</i> | † reclure, <i>shut up</i> |
| * <i>Past Part.</i> inclus. | | |
| † Used only in infin., past part., and comp. tenses. <i>Past part.</i> reclus. | | |

185.

Conduire, *to conduct, etc.*

1. *Infinitive.* conduire; *fut.* conduirai, etc.; *condl.* conduirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* conduisant; *impf. indic.* conduisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisez, conduisent.
3. *Past Part.* conduit; *past indef.* j'ai conduit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent; *impv.* conduis, conduisons, conduisez.
5. *Past Def.* conduisis, conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent; *impf. subj.* conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisit, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent.

Like conduire:

se conduire, <i>conduct oneself</i>	induire, <i>induce</i>	reproduire, <i>reproduce</i>
econduire, <i>show out, dismiss</i>	introduire, <i>introduce</i>	séduire, <i>seduce</i>
reconduire, <i>lead back</i>	produire, <i>produce</i>	traduire, <i>translate</i>
déduire, <i>deduct</i>	réduire, <i>reduce</i>	construire, <i>construct</i>
enduire, <i>coat (with plaster)</i>		

déconstruire, <i>take apart</i>	détruire, <i>destroy</i>	* luire, <i>shine</i>
instruire, <i>instruct</i>	cuire, <i>cook</i>	* reluire, <i>glisten</i>
reconstruire, <i>reconstruct</i>	recuire, <i>cook again</i>	† nuire, <i>injure</i>

* Past part. *lui* and *relui* respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.

† Past part. *nui*.

186. *Être, to be*

See § 154 for the full conjugation.

187. *Confire, to preserve, etc.*

1. Infinitive. *confire*; fut. *confirai*, etc.; condl. *confirais*, etc.
2. Pres. Part. *confisant*; impf. indic. *confisais*, etc.; pres. subj. *confise*, *confisées*, *confise*, *confissions*, *confisiez*, *confisent*.
3. Past Part. *confit*; past indef. *j'ai confit*, etc.
4. Pres. Indic. *confis*, *confis*, *confit*, *confisons*, *confisez*, *confisent*; impv. *confis*, *confisons*, *confisez*.
5. Past Def. *confis*, *confis*, *confit*, *confimes*, *confites*, *confirent*; impf. subj. *confisse*, *confisses*, *confit*, *confissions*, *confissiez*, *confissent*.

Like *confire*:

déconfire, *discomfit*; circoncire (p.p. -cis), *circumcise*: suffire (p.p. suffi), *suffice*

188. *Connaître, to know, etc.*

1. Infinitive. *connaître*; fut. *connaîtrai*, etc.; condl. *connaîtrais*, etc.
2. Pres. Part. *connaissant*; impf. indic. *connaissais*, etc.; pres. subj. *connaisse*, *connaises*, *connaisse*, *connaissons*, *connassiez*, *connaisSENT*.
3. Past Part. *connu*; *j'ai connu*, etc.
4. Pres. Indic. *connais*, *connais*, *connaît*, *connaissions*, *connaissez*, *connaissent*; impv. *connais*, *connaissons*, *connaissez*.
5. Past Def. *connus*, *connus*, *connut*, *connûmes*, *connûtes*, *connurent*; impf. subj. *connusSE*, *connusSES*, *connûT*, *connusSions*, *connusSiez*, *connusSENT*.

✓Obs.: Stem-vowel i has circumflex (î) everywhere before t.

Like *connaître*:

méconnaître, <i>not to know</i>	comparaître, <i>appear</i> (law * paître, <i>graze</i>	
reconnaitre, <i>recognize</i>	term)	repaître, <i>feed, feast</i>
paraître, <i>appear</i>	disparaître, <i>disappear</i>	se repaître, <i>feed, feast</i>
apparaître, <i>appear</i>	reparaître, <i>reappear</i>	

* Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

NOTE. — *Appoir* (also used in third singular *il appert*, *it appears*) and *comparoir* are archaic variants of *apparaître* and *comparaître*.

189.

Coudre, *to sew*

1. *Infinitive.* **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, courses, cose, couse, cousons, cousiez, cousent.
3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds**, **couds**, **coud**, **cousons**, .causez, **cousent**; *impv.* couds, cousons, coseuz.
5. *Past Def.* **cousis**, **cousis**, **cousit**, **cousîmes**, **cousîtes**, **cousirent**; *impf. subj.* **cousisse**, **cousisses**, **cousit**, **cousissions**, **cousissiez**, **cousissent**.

Like *coudre*:

découdre, *rip, unsew*

recoudre, *sew again*

190.

Craindre, *to fear*

1. *Infinitive.* **craindre**; *fut.* **craindrai**, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent.
3. *Past Part.* **caint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains**, **crains**, **caint**, **craignons**, **craignez**, **craignent**; *impv.* **crains**, **craignons**, **craignez**.
5. *Past Def.* **craignis**, **craignis**, **craignit**, **craignîmes**, **craignîtes**, **craignirent**; *impf. subj.* **craignisse**, **craignisses**, **craignît**, **craignissions**, **craignissiez**, **craignissent**.

Like *craindre*:

in *-aindre*:

contraindre, *constrain*
plaindre, *pity*
se plaindre, *complain*

enfreindre, *infringe*
épreindre, *squeeze out*
éteindre, *extinguish*

reteindre, *dye again*

in *-eindre*:

astreindre, *abstract*
atteindre, *attain*
ceindre, *enclose, gird, gird on* (a sword, etc.)
dépeindre, *depict*
empreindre, *imprint*
enceindre, *gird*

étreindre, *draw tight*
feindre, *feign*
geindre, *groan*
peindre, *paint*
ratteindre, *overtake*
repeindre, *paint again*
restreindre, *restrain*
teindre, *dye*
dêteindre, *fade*

in *-oindre*:

joindre, *join*
adjoindre, *adjoin*
conjoindre, *conjoin*
déjoindre, *disjoin*
disjoindre, *disjoin*
enjoindre, *enjoin*
rejoindre, *rejoin*
oindre, *anoint*
* poindre, *dawn*

* Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.

191.

Croire, *to believe*

1. *Infinitive.* **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* croyant; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, eroies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* cru; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient; *impve.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* crus, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like croire:

* *accroire, believe* (an untruth) † *décroire, disbelieve*

* Found only in faire accroire, *to cause to believe* (an untruth).

† Used only in je ne crois ni ne **décrois**, *I neither believe nor disbelieve*.

192.

Croître, *to grow*

1. *Infinitive.* croître; *fut.* croîtrai, etc.; *condl.* croîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* croissant; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* crû (f. crue); *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* croîs, croîs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent; *impve.* croîs, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* crus, crus, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes several otherwise similar forms of croître and croire.

193.

Dire, *to say, tell*

1. *Infinitive.* dire; *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* disant; *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* dit; *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dit, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like dire:

* contredire, *contradict* * interdire, *interdict* * prédire, *predict*

* dédire, *retract, deny* * médire (de), *stander* redire, *say again*

* The 2nd pl. pres. indic. and impve. is: Contredisez, dédisez, interdisez, etc.

NOTE. — Maudire is like dire only in infinitive, past participle (*maudit*), future, and conditional; otherwise like finir.

194.

Écrire, to write

1. *Infinitive.* écrire; *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* écrivant; *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.
3. *Past Part.* écrit; *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent; *impv.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.
5. *Past Def.* écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivîrent; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like écrire are all verbs in -(s)crire:

circonscrire, <i>circumscribe</i>	prescrire, <i>prescribe</i>	souscrire, <i>subscribe</i>
décrire, <i>describe</i>	proscrire, <i>proscribe</i>	transcrire, <i>transcribe</i>
inscrire, <i>inscribe</i>	récire, <i>rewrite</i>	

195.

Faire, to do, make

1. *Infinitive.* faire; *fut.* ferai [f(ə)re], etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* faisant [fazā]; *impf. indic.* faisais [faze], etc.; *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.
3. *Past Part.* fait; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fais, fais, fait, faisons [fazɔ̃], faites, font; *impv.* fais, faisons, faites.
5. *Past Def.* fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fit, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like faire:

contrefaire, <i>imitate</i>	méfaire, <i>harm</i>	refaire, <i>do again</i>
défaire, <i>undo</i>	parfaire, <i>complete</i>	satisfaire, <i>satisfy</i>
forfaire, <i>forfeit</i>	redéfaire, <i>undo again</i>	surfaire, <i>overcharge</i>

196.

Frire, to fry (intr.)

1. *Infinitive.* frire; *fut.* frirai, etc.; *condl.* frirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* —; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* frit; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fris, fris, frit, —, —, —; *impv.* fris, —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

197.

Lire, to read

1. *Infinitive.* lire; *fut.* lirai, etc.; *condl.* lirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* lisant; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.
3. *Past Part.* lu; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent; *impve.* lis, lisons, lisez.
5. *Past Def.* lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like lire:

élire, elect	réélire, reélect	relire, read again
--------------	------------------	--------------------

198.

Mettre, to place, put

1. *Infinitive.* mettre; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* mettant; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.
3. *Past Part.* mis; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.
5. *Past Def.* mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mit, missions, missiez, missent.

Like mettre:

se mettre, begin	démettre, dismiss	promettre, promise
admettre, admit	émettre, emit	remettre, put back, hand to
commettre, commit	s'entremettre, interpose	repromettre, promise again
compromettre, compro-	omettre, omit	soumettre, submit
mise	permettre, permit	transmettre, transmit

199.

Moudre, to grind

1. *Infinitive.* moudre; *fut.* moudrai, etc.; *condl.* moudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* mouvant; *impf. indic.* moulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, moulez, moulent.
3. *Past Part.* moulu; *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* môuds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent; *impve.* mouds, moulons, moulez.
5. *Past Def.* moulus, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like moudre:

moudre, whet	remoudre, grind again	rémoudre, sharpen
--------------	-----------------------	-------------------

200. **Naitre, to be born, arise, etc.**

1. *Infinitive.* naître; *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* naissant; *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.
3. *Past Part.* né; *past indef.* je suis né, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* nais, nais, naît, naissions, naissiez, naissent; *impv.* nais, naissions, naissiez.
5. *Past Def.* naquis, naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquîrent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.; Stem-vowel i has the circumflex (î) everywhere before t.

Like naître:

renaître, revive

201. **Plaire, to please**

1. *Infinitive.* plaire; *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* plaisant; *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent.
3. *Past Part.* plu; *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* plais, plais, plaît, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent; *impv.* plais, plaisons, plaisez.
5. *Past Def.* plus, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like plaisir:

complaire, humor	déplaire, displease	* taire, say nothing about
------------------	---------------------	----------------------------

* Il tait has no circumflex.

202. **Prendre, to take**

1. *Infinitive.* prendre; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* prenant; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.
3. *Past Part.* pris; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impv.* prends, prenons, prenez.
5. *Past Def.* pris, pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prissee, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like prendre are its compounds:

apprendre, learn	entreprendre, undertake	rapprendre, learn again
déprendre, part	s'éprendre, be taken	reprendre, take back
désapprendre, unlearn	se méprendre, be mistaken	surprendre, surprise
comprendre, understand		

203.

Résoudre, to resolve

1. *Infinitive.* résoudre; *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* résolvant; *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.
3. *Past Part.* résolu and *résous; *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.
5. *Past Def.* résolus, résolus, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

* Of restricted usage.

Like résoudre:

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| * absoudre, <i>absolve</i> | * dissoudre, <i>dissolve</i> |
| * <i>Past part.</i> absous (f. <i>absoute</i>), dissous (f. <i>dissoute</i>), respectively: lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive. | |

204.

Rire, to laugh

1. *Infinitive.* rire; *fut.* irai, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* riant; *impf. indic.* riais, etc.; *pres. subj.* rie, ries, rie, rions, riiez, rient.
3. *Past Part.* ri; *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.
5. *Past Def.* ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. subj.* risse, risses, rit, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like rire:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| se rire, <i>make sport (of, de)</i> | sourire, <i>smile</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|

205.

Sourdre, to rise, spring up, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* sourdre; *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* sourdant; *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.
3. *Past Part.* —; *past indef.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, sourd, —, —, sourdent; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il sourdit; *impf. subj.* il sourdit.

NOTE. — Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

206.

Suivre, to follow

1. *Infinitive.* suivre; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* suivant; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

3. *Past Part.* suivi; *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent; *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.
5. *Past Def.* suivis, suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like *suivre*:

s'ensuivre (impers.), *it follows*

poursuivre, *pursue*

207.

Tistre, to weave

Used only in the *past part.* tissu, and compound tenses.

208.

Traire, to milk

1. *Infinitive.* traire; *fut.* trairai, etc.; *condl.* trairais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* trayant; *impf. indic.* trayais, etc.; *pres. subj.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.
3. *Past Part.* trait; *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* traïs, traïs, trait, trayons, trayez, traient; *impve.* traïs, trayons, trayez.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

Like *traire*:

abstraire, *abstract*
attraire, *attract*
distraire, *distract*

extraire, *extract*
rentraire, *darn*
retraire, *redeem* (legal)

soustraire, *subtract*
* braire, *bray*

* Commonly used only in the infin. and the third pers. pres. indic., fut. and cond.

209.

Vaincre, to conquer

1. *Infinitive.* vaincre; *fut.* vaincrai, etc.; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* vainquant; *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquez, vainquent.
3. *Past Part.* vaincu; *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* vaincs [vē], vaines, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent; *impve.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.
5. *Past Def.* vainquis, vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

✓*Nbs.*: Stem c [k] becomes qu [k] before any vowel except u.

Like *vaincre*:

convaincro, *convince, convict*

210. Vendre, *to sell*

Irregular only in third singular present indicative: Il vend (t omitted).

Like vendre:

All verbs in -andre, -endre,* -erdre, -ondre, -ordre

* Except prendre, reprendre, surprendre, etc.

211. Vivre, *to live*

1. *Infinitive.* **vivre**; *fut.* vivrai, etc.; *condl.* vivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant**; *impf. indic.* vivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent.
3. *Past Part.* **vécu**; *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis**, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent; *impve.* vis, vivons, vivez.
5. *Past Def.* **vécus**, vécus, vécut, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like vivre:

revivre, <i>revive</i>	survivre, <i>survive</i>
------------------------	--------------------------

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -oir

NOTE. — The few verbs in -oir, which are all irregular, form in some grammars a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in -re being the fourth.

212. Avoir, *to have*

See § 154 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like avoir:

ravoir, *have again* (used only in the infinitive)

213. Recevoir, *to receive*

1. *Infinitive.* recevoir; *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant**; *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçois, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.
3. *Past Part.* **reçu**; *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois**, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.
5. *Past Def.* **reçus**, reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes *oi* wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem *e* [s] is written *ç* [s] before *o* or *u* (§ 5, 4).

Like *recevoir*:

apercevoir, perceive

décevoir, deceive

percevoir, collect taxes

concevoir, conceive

214.

Devoir, to owe

1. *Infinitive. devoir; fut. devrai, etc.; condl. devrais, etc.*
2. *Pres. Part. devant; impf. indic. devais, etc.; pres. subj. doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.*
3. *Past Part. dû (f. due, pl. du(e)s); past indef. j'ai dû, etc.*
4. *Pres. Indic. dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; impv. —.*
5. *Past Def. dus, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; impf. subj. dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.*

NOTE. — *Devoir* follows the *recevoir* model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like *devoir*:

redevoir, still owe

215.

Asseoir, to seat

1. *Infinitive. asseoir; fut. assiérai, etc., or asseyerai, etc., or assoirai, etc.; condl. assiérais, etc., or asseyerais, etc., or assoirais, etc.*
2. *Pres. Part. asseyant or assoyant; impf. indic. asseyais, etc., or assoyais, etc.; pres. subj. asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, or assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyez, assoient.*
3. *Past Part. assis; past indef. j'ai assis, etc.*
4. *Pres. Indic. assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, or assois, assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient; impv. assieds, asseyons, asseyez, or assois, assoyons, assoyez.*
5. *Past Def. assis, assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; impf. subj. assisse, assisses, assit, assissions, assissiez, assissent.*

Like *asseoir*:

*s'asseoir, sit down se rasseoir, sit down again * messeoir, fit badly
rassseoir, reseat, calm * seoir, be becoming † surseoir, suspend, reprieve*

* Used in third person of the following: *Pres. indic. sied, siéent (messied, messiéent); impf. indic. seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaint), pres. subj. siée, siéent (messiée, messiéent); fut. siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); condl. siérait, siéraient (messiérait, messiéraient).*

† Like the forms in *oi* (*oy*) of *asseoir*, but *fut.* and *condl.* *surseoirai(s)*

216. Déchoir, *to decline, etc.*

1. *Infinitive.* déchoir; *fut.* décherrai, etc.; *condl.* décherrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* —; *pres. subj.* déchoic, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyez, déchoient.
3. *Past Part.* déchu; *past indef.* j'ai déchu or je suis déchu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient; *impve.* déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
5. *Past Def.* déchus, déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent; *impf. subj.* déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Like déchoir:

- * choir, *fall* * rechoir, *fall again*
 * Hardly used beyond the infin. and comp. tenses.

217. Échoir, *to fall due, etc.*

1. *Infinitive.* échoir; *fut.* il écherra; * *condl.* il écherrait.*
2. *Pres. Part.* échéant; *impf. indic.* il échoyait; *pres. subj.* il échoie.
3. *Past Part.* échu; *past indef.* je suis échu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, échoit or échet, —, —, échoient or échéent; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* —, —, il échut; —, —, ils échurent; *impf. subj.* il échût.

* Or regular: il échoira(it).

218. Falloir, *must, etc. (impers.)*

1. *Infinitive.* falloir; *fut.* il faudra; *condl.* il faudrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* il fallait; *pres. subj.* il faille.
3. *Past Part.* fallu; *past indef.* il a fallu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il faut; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il fallut; *impf. subj.* il fallût.

219. Mouvoir, *to move, drive*

1. *Infinitive.* mouvoir; *fut.* mouvrai, etc.; *condl.* mouvräis, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* mouvant; *impf. indic.* mouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent.
3. *Past Part.* mû (f. mue, pl. mu(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai mû, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* meus, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent; *impve.* meus, mouvons, mouvez.

5. *Past Def.* mus, mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent; *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes eu wherever stressed.

Like *mouvoir*:

- * *émuvoir, arouse*
- * *promouvoir, promote*
- * Past participle has no circumflex accent.

220. Pleuvoir, to rain (impers.)

1. *Infinitive.* pleuvoir; *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* pleuvant; *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve
3. *Past Part.* plu; *past indef.* il a plu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il pleut; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il plut; *impf. subj.* il plût.

221. Pouvoir, to be able, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* pouvoir; *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* pouvant; *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puissé, puisses, puise, puissions, puissiez, puissent.
3. *Past Part.* pu; *past indef.* j'ai pu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* puis or peux, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* pus, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually je ne peux pas or je ne puis; in questions, only puis-je? otherwise puis or peux.

222. Savoir, to know, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* savoir; *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* sachant; *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.
3. *Past Part.* su; *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* sais [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impve.* sache, sachons, sachiez.
5. *Past Def.* sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

223. Valoir, to be worth

1. *Infinitive.* valoir; *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* valant; *impf. indic.* valais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

3. *Past Part.* valu; *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* vaux, vautx, vaut, valons, valez, valent; *impv.* vaux, valons, valez.
5. *Past Def.* valus, valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like *valoir*:

équivaloir, *be equivalent*
revaloir, *pay back, return*
like for like

* *prévaloir, prevail*

† *chaloir*

* *Pres. subj. prévale*, etc.

† Hardly used beyond, *Il ne me chaut de, I care not for.*

224.

Voir, to see

1. *Infinitive.* voir; *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* verrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* voyant; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.
3. *Past Part.* vu; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impv.* vois, voyons, voyez.
5. *Past Def.* vis, vis, vit, vimes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like *voir*:

entrevoir, *catch sight of* * *pourvoir, provide* † *prévoir, foresee*
revoir, see again * *dépourvoir, strip, leave destitute*

* *Past def. -vus*, etc.; *impf. subj. -vusse*, etc.; *fut. and condl. -voirai(s)*, regular.

† *Fut. and condl. -voirai(s)*, etc., regular.

225.

Vouloir, to will, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* vouloir; *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* voulant; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.
3. *Past Part.* voulu; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impv.* veux, voulons, voulez.
5. *Past Def.* voulus, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes *eu* whenever it is stressed.

Note. — The regular *impv.* veux, voulons, voulez is rare; veuillez = *have the kindness to* generally serves as second plural imperative.

226. Reference List of Irregular Verbs

NOTE.—Each verb in the list is referred to the section in which its irregularity is explained. For verbs in -cer, -ger, see § 156; for verbs in -yer, § 157; for verbs with stem-vowel e or é, § 158; for verbs in -andre, -endre, -erdre, -ondre, -ordre, § 210.

A	C	D
abattre..... § 180	ceindre..... § 190	courir..... § 164
absoudre..... 203	chaloir..... 223	courre..... 164
abstenir..... 177	choir..... 216	couvrir..... 176
abstraire..... 208	circoncire..... 187	craindre..... 190
accourir..... 164	circonscrire..... 194	croire..... 191
accroire..... 191	circonvenir..... 178	croître..... 192
accueillir..... 165	clore..... 183	cueillir..... 165
acquérir..... 162	combattre..... 180	cuire..... 185
adjoindre..... 190	commettre..... 198	
admettre..... 198	comparaître..... 188	débattre..... 180
advenir..... 178	comparoîr..... 188	décevoir..... 213
aller..... 160	complaire..... 201	déchoir..... 216
apercevoir..... 213	comprendre..... 202	déclore..... 183
apparaître..... 188	compromettre..... 198	déconfire..... 187
apparoir..... 188	concevoir..... 213	déconstruire..... 185
appartenir..... 177	conclure..... 184	découdre..... 189
apprendre..... 202	concourir..... 164	découvrir..... 176
assailir..... 165	conduire..... 185	décrire..... 194
asseoir..... 215	confire..... 187	décroire..... 191
astreindre..... 190	conjoindre..... 190	dédire..... 193
atteindre..... 190	connaître..... 188	déduire..... 185
attraire..... 208	conquérir..... 162	défaillir..... 167
venir..... 178	consentir..... 166	défaire..... 195
avoir..... 154	construire..... 185	déjoindre..... 190
	contenir..... 177	démentir..... 166
	contraindre..... 190	démettre..... 198
battre..... 180	contredire..... 193	départir..... 166
bénir..... 163	contrefaire..... 195	dépeindre..... 190
boire..... 181	contrevenir..... 178	déplaire..... 201
bouillir..... 166	convaincre..... 209	dépourvoir..... 224
braire..... 208	convenir..... 178	déprendre..... 202
bruire..... 182	coudre..... 189	désapprendre... 202

desservir.....	§ 166	entr'ouvrir.....	§ 176	M
déteindre.....	190	envoyer.....	161	maintenir..... § 177
détenir.....	177	épreindre.....	190	maudire..... 193
détruire.....	185	éprendre.....	202	méconnaître..... 188
devenir.....	178	équivaloir.....	223	médire..... 193
dévêtir.....	179	éteindre.....	190	méfaire..... 195
devoir.....	214	être.....	154	mentir..... 166
dire.....	193	êtreindre.....	190	méprendre..... 202
disconvenir.....	178	exclure.....	184	messeoir..... 215
discourir.....	164	extraire.....	208	mettre..... 198
disjoindre.....	190	F		moudre..... 199
disparaître.....	188	faillir.....	167	mourir..... 174
dissoudre.....	203	faire.....	195	mouvoir..... 219
distraire.....	208	falloir.....	218	N
dormir.....	166	feindre.....	190	naître..... 200
E		férir.....	168	nuire..... 185
ébouillir.....	166	fleurir.....	169	O
échoir.....	217	forclore.....	183	obtenir..... 177
éclore.....	183	forfaire.....	195	offrir..... 176
éconduire.....	185	frire.....	196	oindre..... 190
écrire.....	194	fuir.....	170	omettre..... 198
élire.....	197	G		ouïr..... 175
emboire.....	181	geindre.....	190	ouvrir..... 176
émettre.....	198	gésir.....	171	P
émoudre.....	199	H		paître..... 188
émouvoir.....	219	haïr.....	172	paraître..... 188
empreindre.....	190	I		parcourir..... 164
enceindre.....	190	imboire.....	181	parfaire..... 195
enclore.....	183	inclure.....	184	partir..... 166
encourir.....	164	induire.....	185	parvenir..... 178
endormir.....	166	inscrire.....	194	peindre..... 190
enduire.....	185	instruire.....	185	percevoir..... 213
enfreindre.....	190	interdire.....	193	permettre..... 198
enfuir.....	170	intervenir.....	178	plaindre..... 190
enjoindre.....	190	introduire.....	185	plaire..... 201
enquérir.....	162	issir.....	173	pleuvoir..... 220
ensuivre.....	206	J		poindre..... 190
entremettre.....	198	joindre.....	190	poursuivre..... 206
entreprendre.....	202	L		pourvoir..... 224
entretenir.....	177	lire.....	197	pouvoir..... 221
entrevoir.....	224	luire.....	185	prédir..... 193

prendre.....	§ 202	réécrire	§ 197	séduire.....	§ 185				
prescrire.....	194	refaire.....	195	sentir.....	166				
pressentir.....	166	rejoindre.....	190	seoir.....	215				
prévaloir.....	223	relire.....	197	servir.....	166				
prévenir.....	178	reluire.....	185	sortir.....	166				
prévoir.....	224	remettre.....	198	souffrir.....	176				
produire.....	185	remoudre.....	199	soumettre.....	198				
promettre.....	198	rémoudre.....	199	sourdre.....	205				
promouvoir.....	219	renaître.....	200	sourire.....	204				
proscire.....	194	rendormir.....	166	souscrire.....	194				
provenir.....	178	rentraire.....	208	soustraire.....	208				
Q									
querir }.....	162	renvoyer.....	161	soutenir.....	177				
quérir }		repaître.....	188	souvenir.....	178				
R									
rabattre.....	180	reparaître.....	188	subvenir.....	178				
rapprendre.....	202	repartir.....	166	suffire.....	187				
rasseoir.....	215	repeindre.....	190	suivre.....	206				
ratteindre.....	190	repentir.....	166	surfaire.....	195				
ravoir.....	212	reprendre.....	202	surprendre.....	202				
reboire.....	181	reproduire.....	185	surseoir.....	215				
rebouillir.....	166	repromettre.....	198	survenir.....	178				
recevoir.....	213	requérir.....	162	survivre.....	211				
rechoir.....	216	résoudre.....	203	T					
reclure.....	184	ressentir.....	166	taire.....	201				
reconduire.....	185	ressortir.....	166	teindre.....	190				
reconnaitre.....	188	ressouvenir.....	178	tenir.....	177				
reconquérir.....	162	restreindre.....	190	tistre.....	207				
reconstruire.....	185	reteindre.....	190	traduire.....	185				
recoudre.....	189	retenir.....	177	traire.....	208				
recourir.....	164	retraire.....	208	transcrire.....	194				
recouvrir.....	176	revaloir.....	223	transmettre.....	198				
récrire.....	194	revenir.....	178	tressaillir.....	165				
recueillir.....	165	revêtir.....	179	V					
recuire.....	185	revivre.....	211	vaincre.....	209				
redéfaire.....	195	revoir.....	224	valoir.....	223				
redevenir.....	178	rire.....	204	vendre.....	210				
redevoir.....	214	rouvrir.....	176	venir.....	178				
redire.....	193	S							
redormir.....	166	saillir.....	165	vêtir.....	179				
réduire.....	185	satisfaire.....	195	vivre.....	211				
		savoir.....	222	voir.....	224				
		secourir.....	164	vouloir.....	225				

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS

227. **Avoir** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs (cf. § 155).

228. **Être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 242), and of the following intransitives denoting motion or change of condition (cf. § 155):

aller, go	entrer, enter, go (<i>come</i>) in	rentrer, go in again
arriver, arrive	monter, go up	rester, remain
décéder, die	mourir, die	retourner, go back
descendre, descend	naître, be born	sortir, go out
échoir, fall due	partir, set out	tomber, fall
éclore, hatch out	remonter, go up again	venir, come

So also, the following compounds of **venir**:

devenir, become	parvenir, attain	survenir, supervene
redevenir, become again	provenir, proceed	
intervenir, intervene	revenir, come back	

229. 1. **Avoir** or **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of a number of intransitive verbs, the general distinction being that **avoir**, when so used, denotes action, while **être** denotes state or condition resulting from action:

Il a passé par Lyon.	He went by way of Lyons.
C'est passé de mode.	It is out of fashion.
Elle a grandi bien vite.	She grew up very fast.
Elle est grandie.	She is grown up.

2. Reference list of verbs with **avoir** or **être**:

aborder, land	déchoir, decay	empirer, grow worse
accourir, run to	décroître, decrease	expirer, expire
apparaître, appear	dégénérer, degenerate	grandir, grow up
baisser, fall, decline	demeurer, remain	passer, pass
cesser, cease	disparaître, disappear	réchapper, escape again
changer, change	échapper, escape	repasser, pass again
croître, grow	échouer, be stranded, fail	sonner, strike, toll
déborder, overflow	embellir, grow handsomer	vieillir, grow old

a. Any verb in the list, used transitively, must, of course, take *avoir* (§ 227):

Il m'a passé la plume.	He handed me the pen.
Avez-vous rentré votre blé ?	Have you taken in your wheat?
Ils ont descendu le tableau.	They have taken down the picture.

b. The meaning also determines the auxiliary in a few other cases:

<u>Avoir</u>	<u>Être</u>
<i>convenir, suit, become</i>	<i>convenir, agree</i>
<i>disconvenir, not to suit, be dis-</i>	<i>disconvenir, deny</i>
<i>cordant</i>	
<i>repartir, reply</i>	<i>repartir, go away again</i>
Nous sommes convenus du prix.	We are (have) agreed on the price.
Le prix ne m'a pas convenu.	The price did not suit me.

USE OF VERB PHRASES

230. Auxiliary Function. Several verbs, when followed by an infinitive, have a sort of auxiliary function, and serve to form verb phrases of various values, modal, temporal, etc.:

1. *Vouloir = will, wish to, want to, desire to, etc.:*

Je ne veux pas rester.	I will not remain.
Il voudrait (bien) le savoir.	He would like to know it.
Elle n'a pas voulu m'écouter.	She would not listen to me.
Il aurait voulu le faire.	He would have liked to do so
Veuillez le faire.	Be so good as to do so.

a. Distinguish from 'will' of simple futurity:

Elle vous écoutera.	She will listen to you.
---------------------	-------------------------

2. *Devoir = ought, should, must, be to, have to, be obliged to, intend to, etc., varies in force in different tenses:*

<i>Present: je dois rester.</i>	<i>I am to (have to, intend to, must) remain.</i>
<i>Imperfect: je devais parler.</i>	<i>I was to (had to, etc.) speak.</i>
<i>Future: je devrai revenir.</i>	<i>I shall have to (be obliged to) come back.</i>
<i>Conditional: je devrais écrire.</i>	<i>I ought to (should) write.</i>
<i>Past Indefinite: j'ai dû m'arrêter.</i>	<i>I have had to (been obliged to) stop, must have stopped.</i>

Past Definite: je dus revenir.

I had to come back.

Conditional Anterior: j'aurais dû savoir.

I ought to have (should have) known.

3. Pouvoir = can, be able to, be permitted to, may, etc.:

Il ne pouvait pas porter le sac.

He could not carry the sack.

Puis-je aller à la ville?

May I go to town?

Ils auraient pu le faire.

They could (might) have done it.

Je pourrais le faire, si je voulais.

I could do it if I would.

Pouvaient-ils en trouver?

Could they find any?

Pourrais-je vous demander?

Might I ask you?

4. Savoir = know how to, can, etc.:

Elle sait chanter et danser.

She can sing and dance.

Il ne sait pas lire.

He can't read.

a. Distinguish savoir in this sense from pouvoir:

Elle est enrouée et ne peut pas chanter ce soir.

She is hoarse and cannot sing this evening.

b. The conditional with ne has peculiar idiomatic force:

Je ne saurais le croire.

I cannot believe it.

5. Oser = dare :

Je n'ose pas le lui dire.

I dare not tell him so.

NOTE. — The above five verbs are sometimes called 'Modal Auxiliaries.'

6. Faire = make, cause to, cause to be, have, order, order to be, etc.:

J'ai fait étudier les enfants.

I have made the children study.

Il les fera écouter.

He will make them listen.

Il s'est fait faire un habit.

He had a coat made for himself.

a. A governed substantive follows the infinitive, but a governed conjunctive personal pronoun (not reflexive) goes with faire:

Faites venir le domestique.

Have the servant come.

Faites-le venir.

Have him come.

b. If the infinitive with faire have a direct object, the personal object of faire must be indirect (cf. § 293, 2, a):

Je fis écrire mon fils.

I had my son write.

Je fis écrire un devoir à mon fils.

I made my son write an exercise.

Faites-le-lui écrire.

Make him write it.

Je le leur fis voir.

I showed them it.

c. Possible ambiguity is sometimes avoided by *par*:

Il fit porter le sac *par* le guide. He had the sack carried by the guide.

d. Note the (seeming) passive force of a transitive infinitive after *faire*:

Je ferai écrire une lettre. I shall have a letter written.

7. **Laisser = let,** is in construction somewhat like *faire*:

Laissez écrire les enfants. Let the children write.

Laissez-leur (or -les) écrire un devoir. Let them write an exercise.

8. The present and imperfect of *aller + an infinitive* give a kind of immediate future, as also in English:

Il va l'acheter. He is going to (is about to) buy it.

Nous allions nous arrêter. We were about to stop.

Il allait se noyer. He was on the point of drowning.

9. Similarly the present and imperfect of *venir de + an infinitive* give a kind of immediate past:

Je viens de le voir. I have just seen him.

Il venait de l'entendre. He had just heard it.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

231. General Rule. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person:

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortal.

Tout le monde est ici. Everybody is here.

Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un. You and I are but one.

232. Simple Subject. Special rules for the agreement of a verb with one subject are:

1. A collective subject singular, when not followed by *de*, or when followed by *de + the singular*, has regularly a singular verb:

Le peuple français est brave. The French people are brave.

Le sénat l'a décidé. The senate has (*or have*) decided it.

La plupart du monde le croit. Most people believe it.

2. A collective subject singular + *de + a plural* takes a plural verb, unless the sense of the collective be dominant:

Une nuée de sauvages l'attaquèrent.	A host of savages attacked him.
Une nuée de traits l'obscurcit.	A cloud of arrows hid him.
Une partie des soldats restent.	A part of the soldiers remain.
Une partie des bourgeois protesta.	A part of the citizens protested.
Cette sorte de poires est chère.	This sort of pears is dear.
a. When so used, adverbs of quantity, <i>e.g.</i> , <i>beaucoup</i> , <i>peu</i> , etc., the nouns <i>nombre</i> , <i>quantité</i> , without article, and <i>la plupart</i> , are regularly plural in sense; so also, <i>force</i> :	

Beaucoup de gens pensent ainsi.	Many people think so.
Peu de gens le savent.	Few people know it.
Que d'ennemis m'attaquent!	How many enemies attack me!
Nombre d'Athèniens avaient fui.	Many Athenians had fled.
La plupart des soldats périrent.	Most of the soldiers perished.
Force sots le tenteront.	Many a fool will try it.
b. <i>Beaucoup</i> , <i>peu</i> , <i>combien</i> , used absolutely, are singular or plural according to the sense of the <i>de</i> clause implied; <i>la plupart</i> when so used is generally plural:	

Beaucoup (<i>sc. de gens</i>) le croient.	Many (<i>sc. people</i>) believe it.
Peu (<i>sc. de ceci</i>) me suffira.	Little (<i>sc. of this</i>) will suffice me.
La plupart votèrent contre.	The majority voted nay.
c. Plus d'un is singular, unless reciprocal or repeated, and moins de deux is plural:	
Plus d'un témoin a déposé.	More than one witness has sworn.
Moins de deux ne valent rien.	Less than two is no use.
Plus d'un fripon se dupent l'un l'autre.	More rogues than one cheat each other.
Plus d'un officier, plus d'un général furent tués.	More than one officer, more than one general was killed.

3. Ce requires a plural verb only when the predicate is a plural noun, a plural pronoun of the third person, or when ce refers to a preceding plural:

Sont-ce vos amis? — Ce sont eux.	Is it your friends? It is they.
Ce doivent être les siens.	Those must be his.
Ce sont nos semblables.	They are our fellow-creatures.
Ses désirs, ce sont sa loi.	His desires are his law.

But: C'est moi; c'est toi; c'est lui; c'est nous; c'est vous.

a. The third singular is often used for the third plural in this construction, more especially in familiar language or to avoid harsh locutions.

Est-ce les Anglais que je crains?	Is it the English that I fear?
C'est eux qui l'ont fait.	It is they who did it.
C'est des bêtises.	That is stupidity.
Ne fut-ce que quelques lignes.	If it were only a few lines.

b. The verb with *ce* is singular when the predicate is a numeral + a noun of collective force:

C'est dix heures qui sonnent.	It is ten o'clock that is striking.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

c. Si *ce n'est* is always singular:

Qui, si ce n'est nos parents?	Who, if it is not our parents?
-------------------------------	--------------------------------

4. *Il* (impers.) always has a singular verb, whatever be the logical subject:

Il est arrivé bien des choses.	There have happened many things.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.

a. Importer is construed personally or impersonally:

Qu'importe (importent) les dépens?	What matters the cost?
------------------------------------	------------------------

233. Composite Subject. A verb common to two or more subjects is regularly plural; when the subjects differ in person, the verb agrees with the first person, if one subject is of the first person, otherwise with the second:

Toi et moi nous ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.
-----------------------------------	------------------------

Sa sœur et lui sont là.	His sister and he are there.
-------------------------	------------------------------

a. With subjects of different person, pleonastic *nous*, *vous* is generally used:

Vous et lui vous l'avez vu.	You and he have seen it.
-----------------------------	--------------------------

b. With *ou = or*, *ni . . . ni = neither . . . nor*, the verb is singular if the sense is clearly alternative, i.e., the one subject excluding the other, otherwise generally plural; *l'un ou l'autre* is always singular:

Sa vie ou sa mort en dépend.	His life or death depends on it.
------------------------------	----------------------------------

Ni lui ni votre frère n'aura ce poste.	Neither he nor your brother will have that post.
--	--

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont bons.	Neither is good.
----------------------------------	------------------

L'une ou l'autre viendra.	The one or the other will come.
---------------------------	---------------------------------

L'un ou l'autre jour me convient.	Either day suits me.
-----------------------------------	----------------------

c. If the subjects (generally without *et*) are synonymous, or nearly so, or form a climax, the verb may be singular:

Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa tout le monde. His dignity, his nobility struck everybody.

L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit aujourd'hui. The hour, the place, the arm are chosen to-day.

Une excuse, un mot le désarme. An excuse, a word disarms him.

d. When the subjects are recapitulated by a word in the singular, *e.g.*, tout, rien, etc., the verb is singular agreeing with it:

Remords, crainte, périls, rien ne m'a retenue. Remorse, fear, dangers, nothing deterred me.

e. With an intervening clause, *e.g.*, ainsi que, plus que, etc., the subject is usually only apparently composite:

La vertu, plus que le savoir, élève l'homme. Virtue, more than knowledge, elevates man.

f. Even with et the sense is occasionally singular, or distributive, or alternative, and a singular verb is required:

Le bien et le mal est en ta main. Good and ill are in thy hand.

L'été est revenu et le soleil. Summer has returned and the sun.

Tombe Argos et ses murs. Let Argos and its walls fall.

234. Relative Subject. The verb agrees with the relative pronoun subject, which is itself of the number and person of the antecedent (see also Relative Pronoun, § 396):

C'est nous qui l'avons fait. It is we who have done it.

Dieux (vous) qui m'exauciez ! (Ye) Gods who hear me !

POSITION OF SUBJECT

235. General Rule. The subject usually precedes the verb. Exceptions to this rule are noted in the following sections.

236. Interrogative Word Order. Direct interrogation is expressed as follows:

1. A personal pronoun subject (also *ce* or *on*) follows the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen:

Parlez-vous français?

Do you speak French?

Est-ce lui?

Is it he?

a. The letter *-t-* is inserted after a third singular with final vowel before a pronoun with initial vowel:

Parla-t-elle? *Parle-t-on?* Did she speak? Do they speak?

b. A final *e* of the first singular takes acute accent, but with the sound of [ɛ]:

Donnē-je? [dɔnɛ:ʒ] Do I give?

2. A noun subject precedes the verb, and is repeated after it by a pleonastic pronoun; so also, possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns:

Cet homme parle-t-il anglais? Does that man speak English?

Cela est-il vrai? Is that true?

Les miens ne sont-ils pas bons? Are mine not good?

3. Questions are also asked by interrogative words (adjectives, pronouns, adverbs):

Quel poète a écrit cela? What poet wrote that?

À quelle heure partira son ami? At what time will his friend go?

Qui est là? Qu'y a-t-il? Who is there? What is the matter?

Lequel des deux est parti? Which of the two has gone?

Combien coûte cela? How much does that cost?

Combien cela coûte-t-il?

a. The word order of either of the last two examples is commonly permissible for noun subject under this rule.

b. The word order of the last example is obligatory when the verb has a direct object (not reflexive), or a prepositional complement, or when ambiguity might arise; this arrangement is preferable with *pourquoi?* or when a compound tense is used:

Où le roi tient-il sa cour?

Where does the king hold his court?

De quoi le roi parle-t-il?

Of what is the king speaking?

Quel prix le roi paya-t-il?

What price did the king pay?

Jean qui aime-t-il?

Whom does John love?

Pourquoi mon ami part-il?

Why does my friend go?

Quand ce roi a-t-il été décapité?

When was this king beheaded?

4. By prefixing *est-ce que?* a statement becomes a question without change in its word order:

Est-ce que vous partez? Are you going away?

Quand est-ce que vous partez? When are you going away?

a. The use of *est-ce que?* is permissible with all forms of the verb, but is obligatory with a monosyllabic first singular (except *ai-je?* *suis-je?* *dis-je?* *dois-je?* *fais-je?* *puis-je?* *sais-je?* *vais-je?* *vois-je?*), and is preferable to avoid forms like *donné-je?*:

Est-ce que je sers, moi? Do I serve?

Est-ce que je parle de lui? Do I speak of him?

5. Interrogation is also expressed by mere inflection of the voice, without change in word order:

Vous partez déjà? You are going already?

237. Rhetorical Inversions. Owing to rhetorical considerations, the noun subject not uncommonly follows the verb, or the sentence assumes interrogative form, though not interrogative, as follows:

1. In interjected remarks explanatory of direct quotation, as in English:

Fais comme tu voudras, dit-il. Do as you please, said he.

Que veux-tu? demanda la mère. What do you wish? asked the mother.

2. In optative clauses when *que* is omitted, and also after the rare omission of *si, if*:

Vive le roi! Périsse le tyran! (Long) live the king! Perish the tyrant!

Voulait-il de l'argent, son père lui en donnait toujours. If he wished money, his father always gave him some.

Ne fût-ce que pour cela. If it were only for that.

3. Very commonly after certain adverbs and adverbial locutions:

Du moins devrait-il attendre. He should at least wait.

À peine le jour fut-il arrivé. Hardly had the day arrived.

Such are:

<i>à peine, hardly</i>	* <i>peut-être, perhaps</i>	<i>toutefois, however</i>
<i>aussi, hence</i>	<i>encore, besides</i>	<i>en vain, in vain</i>
<i>aussi bien, moreover</i>	<i>toujours, however</i>	<i>rarement, rarely</i>
<i>au moins, at least</i>	<i>tout au plus, at most</i>	<i>probablement, probably</i>
<i>du moins, at least</i>	<i>d'autant plus, the more</i>	<i>etc.</i>

* *Peut-être* que does not cause inversion: *Peut-être qu'il le fera, Perhaps he will do so.*

4. Sometimes in exclamatory sentences:

Avons-nous crié! Didn't we shout!

5. When a predicate adjective heads the phrase:

Telle fut la fin de Carthage. Such was the end of Carthage.

Quelque riche que soit cet homme. However rich that man is.

NOTE. — All the above inversions, except the last given, may take place whatever be the nature of the subject, but the following rules do not usually hold good for a personal pronoun subject.

6. Very commonly in a relative clause, especially when a second relative clause qualifies its subject:

Il fera ce que peut faire un homme qui se respecte. He will do what a man can who respects himself.

Dites-moi ce qu'a fait votre ami. Tell me what your friend did.

Dis-moi où est ton ami. Tell me where your friend is.

NOTE. — The relative is unstressed (proclitic), and naturally stands next the verb which governs it.

7. Commonly after **c'est que**, and in the second member of a comparative sentence:

C'est en vous qu'espèrent tous. It is in you that all hope.

J'en ai plus que n'en a mon ami. I have more of it than my friend has.

8. Commonly when an adverb, other than those mentioned in (3) above, e.g., **ainsi**, **bientôt**, **ici**, **là**, etc., or an adverbial phrase heads the sentence:

Ainsi va le monde. So goes the world.

Bientôt viendra le printemps. Spring will soon come.

À la tête de l'armée fut porté l'étandard sacré. At the head of the army was carried the sacred standard.

9. Quite exceptionally, when the verb comes first:

Viendra un autre. (Along) will come another.

NOTE. — No inversion of noun subject usually occurs if the verb has a direct object or a prepositional complement.

238. Indirect Interrogation. It has no special rules of word order apart from those of the clause in which it occurs:

Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit. Tell me what he said.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

239. Formation. The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed from the auxiliary *être* + the past participle, which agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number:

PRES. INFIN. *Être loué(e) or loué(e)s, to be praised*

PERF. INFIN. *Avoir été loué(e) or loué(e)s, to have been praised*

PRES. PART. *Étant loué(e) or loué(e)s, being praised*

PERF. PART. *Ayant été loué(e) or loué(e)s, having been praised*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

I am (I am being) praised, etc.

je suis	}	loué(e)
tu es		
il (elle) est		

nous sommes	}	loué(e)s
vous êtes		
ils (elles) sont		

PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE

I have been (I was) praised, etc.

j'ai été	}	loué(e)
tu as été		
il (elle) a été		

nous avons été	}	loué(e)s
vous avez été		
ils (elles) ont été		

Obs.: 1. The past participle *été* is always invariable. 2. The past participle after *vous* agrees with the sense: Madame, vous serez méprisée de tous, Madam, you will be despised by all.

240. The Agent. The person by whom the action is done is usually denoted by *par*, when a specific intention or definite volition is implied, and by *de* when the action is habitual, usual, or indefinite, a condition rather than a definite action:

Elle fut saisie par le voleur. She was seized by the thief.

Le général fut suivi de près par l'ennemi. The general was closely followed by the enemy.

La reine était suivie de ses dames. The queen was followed by her ladies.

Il s'ont aimés de tous. They are loved by everybody.

241. Remarks. 1. Only transitive verbs regularly have the passive voice, but the intransitive *obéir*, *désobéir*, *pardonner* (§ 296, 2) may also be made passive:

Vous êtes pardonnés tous. You are all pardoned.

Elle est toujours obéie. She is always obeyed.

2. The passive is less used than in English, especially if the agent be not specified, or if the corresponding French

verb is intransitive, or if an indirect object be present. Substitutes are:

a. A verb with the indefinite pronoun *on*:

On m'a trompé.	I have been deceived.
On me soupçonne.	I am suspected.
On a répondu à ma question.	My question has been answered.
On lui a rendu l'argent.	The money has been given back to him.

b. A reflexive construction:

Ce livre se publie à Paris.	This book is published in Paris.
La guerre se prolongea.	The war was prolonged.
Voilà ce qui se dit.	This (<i>or</i> that) is what is being said.

¶ 3. A transitive infinitive in French sometimes equals a passive in English, after verbs of 'perceiving,' (*voir*, etc.), after *faire*, *laisser*, and when *à* + an infinitive is used adjectivally (cf. § 284).

Le ferez-vous vendre?	Will you have it sold?
On entend dire cela.	You hear that said.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

242. Compound Tenses. The auxiliary *être* + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs, as follows:

PRES. INFIN. Se flatter, *to flatter oneself*

PERF. INFIN. S'*être* flatté(e) or flatté(e)s, *to have flattered oneself*

PRES. PART. Se flattant, *flattering oneself*

PERF. PART. S'*tant* flatté(e) or flatté(e)s, *having flattered oneself*

Indicative

PRESENT

I flatter myself, etc.

je me flatte
tu te flattes
il(elle) se flatte
nous nous flattions
vous vous flattez
ils (elles) se flattent

PAST INDEFINITE

I (have) flattered myself, etc.

je me suis
tu t'es
il (elle) s'est
nous nous sommes
vous vous êtes
ils (elles) se sont

} flatté(e)

} flatté(e)s
etc., etc.

Imperative

Flatter thyself, etc.

flatte-toi

(qu'il se flatte)

flattons-nous

flattez-vous

(qu'ils se flattent)

Do not flatter thyself, etc.

ne te flatte pas

(qu'il ne se flatte pas)

ne nous flattons pas

ne vous flattez pas

(qu'ils ne se flattent pas)

NOTES. — 1. *Se flatter, se flattant, etc.*, are the infinitive and participial forms found in dictionaries, but *se* must be replaced by *me, te, etc.*, according to the sense.

2. Except in the use of *être* as auxiliary, reflexive verbs have no peculiarities of conjugation on account of being reflexive.

243. Reflexive or Reciprocal. A reflexive verb often has reciprocal force, especially in the plural. Ambiguity is generally avoided by some modifying expression:

Elles se flattent.

{ They flatter themselves.
They flatter each other.

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.

They flatter one another.

On se dupe mutuellement.

They cheat each other.

✗ **244. Agreement of Past Participle.** 1. In compound tenses, the past participle of a reflexive agrees in gender and number with the direct object, as in the case of verbs compounded with *avoir*:

Elle s'est écriée.

She cried out.

Elle s'est dit à elle-même.

She said to herself.

Ils se sont écrit.

They wrote to each other.

Elles se sont acheté des robes.

They bought themselves dresses.

2. Besides the reflexive object, a direct object may precede the verb, and with this object the participle agrees:

Les plumes qu'ils se sont achetées. The pens they bought themselves.

NOTES. — 1. The auxiliary *être* is considered as replacing *avoir*, and the above agreements are explained by the general principle (§ 291).

2. The agreement with *vous* is according to the sense: *Vous vous êtes trompée, madame, You were mistaken, madam.*

245. Omission of Reflexive Object. 1. It is always omitted with the past participle used as attributive adjective:

Le temps écoulé.

The time past.

2. The infinitives of certain verbs, such as *s'asseoir*, *se souvenir*, *se taire*, regularly omit *se* when preceded by *faire*; but modern French has many exceptions.

Faites asseoir vos amis. Make your friends sit down.

Je vous en ferai souvenir. I shall remind you of it.

But also: *Il la fit se souvenir de . . .* He reminded her of . . .

a. A similar omission of *se* sometimes occurs after *laisser*, *entendre*, *voir*, etc.

246. Remarks. The reflexive construction is much commoner in French than in English:

1. It often translates the English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

La bourse s'est retrouvée. The purse has been recovered.

Cela se raconte partout. That is being told everywhere.

2. Or it is expressed by an English non-reflexive verb, generally intransitive:

S'arrêter; s'écrier; se porter. Stop; exclaim; be (of health).

S'asseoir; se hâter; se tromper. Sit down; hasten; be mistaken.

3. Or the French reflexive + a preposition has the value of an English transitive:

S'approcher de; se douter de. Approach; suspect.

S'attendre à; se fier à. Expect; trust.

Se passer de; se souvenir de. Do without; recollect.

247. S'en Aller. The conjugation of *s'en aller*, *to go away*, presents special difficulty:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

I go away, etc.

je m'en vais	
tu t'en vas	
il s'en va	
nous nous en allons	
vous vous en allez	
ils s'en vont	

PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE

I have gone (I went) away, etc.

je m'en suis	}
tu t'en es	
il (elle) s'en est	}
nous nous en sommes	
vous vous en êtes	
ils (elles) s'en sont	

IMPERATIVE

Go away, etc.

va-t'en

(qu'il s'en aille)

allons-nous-en

allez-vous-en

(qu'ils s'en aillent)

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE

Do not go away, etc.

ne t'en va pas

(qu'il ne s'en aille pas)

ne nous en allons pas

ne vous en allez pas

(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas)

Further examples:

Est-ce que je m'en vais?

Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.

Vous en allez-vous?

Ne nous en sommes-nous pas al-

S'en sont-elles allées?

lé(e)s?

IMPERSONAL VERBS

248. Conjugation. An impersonal verb, or a verb used as such, is one conjugated, in the third singular only, with the subject *il* = *it, there*, used indefinitely and absolutely, e.g., *tonner, to thunder*:

Indicative

PRES. Il tonne, *it thunders*PAST INDF. Il a tonné, *it has thundered*IMPF. Il tonnait, *it thundered*PLUPF. Il avait tonné, *it had thundered*PAST DEF. Il tonna, *it thundered*PAST ANT. Il eut tonné, *it had thundered*etc., etc., like the third singular of *donner*

NOTE. — Apart from being limited to the third singular, their conjugation does not differ from that of ordinary verbs. Some are regular, others irregular.

249. Use of Impersonals. 1. Verbs denoting natural phenomena and time are impersonal, as in English:

Il tonne; il a plu; il pleuvra.

It thunders; it rained; it will rain.

Il a gelé hier; il dégèle.

It froze yesterday; it is thawing.

Il est une heure; il est tard.

It is one o'clock; it is late.

Such verbs are:

pleuvoir, *rain*grêler, *hail*geler, *freeze*neiger, *snow*éclairer, *lighten*dégeler, *thaw*

2. **Faire** = *make*, is also much used impersonally to describe weather, temperature, etc.:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait beau (temps) ce matin.	It is fine (weather) this morning.
Il a fait bien froid hier.	It was very cold yesterday.
Il faisait du vent aussi.	It was windy too.
Est-ce qu'il fera obscur ce soir?	Will it be dark this evening?
Il fait des éclairs.	It is lightning.

Obs.: Distinguish these from constructions with a personal subject: **Le temps est beau**, *The weather is fine*; **L'eau est froide**, *The water is cold*.

250. Impersonal *avoir* and *être*. 1. The verb *avoir*, preceded by *y*, used impersonally = *there is, there are, there was, there were*, etc.:

Il y a. Il y a eu. Y a-t-il?	There is. There has been. Is there?
Il n'y a pas. Il n'y a pas eu.	There is not. There has not been.
Y a-t-il eu? N'y a-t-il pas eu?	Has there been? Has there not been?
Y aura-t-il? Il peut y avoir.	Will there be? There may be.

2. **Il est** is sometimes used for **il y a** in this sense:

Il est des hommes qui le croient. There are men who think so.

3. **Il y a** = *there is, there are*, is distinguished from **voilà** = *there is, there are*. **Voilà** answers the question ‘where is?’ ‘where are?’ and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question ‘where is?’ ‘where are?’ and makes a general statement.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are pens on the table.
Voilà les plumes sur la table.	There are the pens on the table.

4. **Y avoir** also forms idiomatic expressions of time, reckoned backwards, and of distance:

Ils sont arrivés il y a trois jours.	They came three days ago.
Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là.	I had been there three days.
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à la ville?	How far is it to the city?
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.	It is ten miles from here to the city.

251. Falloir = *be necessary*, expresses the various meanings of *must*, *be obliged to*, *have to*, *need*, as follows:

1. *Must + infinitive* = **falloir + que** and subjunctive:

Il faut que je parte.
Il faudra que vous restiez.

I must go.
 You will have to (be obliged to) stay.

2. Or the subject of *must*, etc., if a personal pronoun, may become indirect object of **falloir + an infinitive**:

Il me faudrait rester.
Il leur faut faire cela.
Il lui a fallu parler.

I should be obliged to remain.
 They must do that.
 He was forced (obliged) to speak.

✗ 3. The infinitive construction without indirect object is used in general or indefinite statement:

Il faut faire son devoir.
Il ne faut pas voler.

One must do one's duty.
 We must not steal.

4. **Falloir + an indirect object and a substantive** signifies *lack, need*:

Il faut une ardoise à Jean.
Il leur faudra cent francs.

John needs a slate.
 They will need a hundred francs.

5. S'en falloir = lack:

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que l'un vaille l'autre.

The one is not nearly so good as the other.

— 252. Other Impersonals. already noted, many other verbs take a special meaning as impersonals:

De quoi s'agit-il?
Il est souvent arrivé que, etc.
Il vaudra mieux ne rien dire.
Il y va de ses jours.
Il se peut que je me trompe.

What is the matter?
 It has often happened that, etc.
 It will be better to say nothing.
 His life is at stake.
 It may be that I am mistaken.

Obs.: Compare the literal meanings: *agir, act, arriver, arrive, valoir, be worth, aller, go, pouvoir, be able.*

2. Many verbs may stand in the third singular with impersonal **il** representing a logical subject, singular or plural, following the verb:

Il viendra un meilleur temps.
Il en reste trois livres.
Il est arrivé des messagers.

There will come a happier time.
 There remain three pounds of it.
 Messengers have arrived.

253. Omission of *il*. *Il* is understood in certain phrases, such as:

Reste à savoir.	It remains to be seen.
N'importe.	No matter (it matters not).
Mieux vaut tard que jamais.	Better late than never.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

254. Use of Indicative. The indicative is the mood of direct or indirect assertion, and of direct or indirect interrogation. It stands both in principal and in subordinate clauses, both affirmative and negative:

Dieu créa le monde.	God created the world.
Moïse dit que Dieu créa le monde.	Moses says that God created the world.
Où allez-vous?	Where are you going?
Dites-moi où vous allez.	Tell me where you are going.
Je le ferais, si je pouvais.	I should do so if I could.

NOTES.—1. It should be noted especially that the indicative is regularly the mood of indirect discourse and of 'if' clauses.

2. When the verb of a subordinate clause is subjunctive, the mood is determined by the context, and not simply by the fact that the clause is subordinate.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

255. Periphrastic Forms. Such forms, so common in English, are not used in French:

Je parle.	I speak (am speaking, do speak).
Il a écrit.	He has written (has been writing).
Il disait.	He was saying (used to say, etc.).

256. Elliptical Forms. Ellipsis of part of a verb form is common in English; in French the form is either fully given or entirely avoided:

J'irai. — Moi, je n'irai pas.	I shall go. — I shall not (go).
Il a promis de venir, mais il n'est pas venu.	He promised to come, but he did not (come).

Il est venu. — Vraiment!
Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?
Il était sorti, n'est-ce pas?

He has come. — Has he! (Indeed!)
 You will come, will you not?
 He had gone out, had he not?

257. Present Indicative.

The present tense is used:

- To denote what is happening, including the habitual and the universally true:

Je crois qu'il pleut.	I think it is raining.
Il se lève toujours de bon matin.	He always rises early.
L'homme propose et Dieu dispose.	Man proposes and God disposes.

✗ 2. To denote what has happened and still continues, after *il y a . . . que*, *voici (voilà) . . . que*, *depuis*, *depuis quand?* *depuis . . . que*:

Depuis quand attendez-vous?	How long have you been waiting?
Il y a (or voici, voilà) trois jours que j'attends, or j'attends depuis trois jours.	I have waited (I have been waiting) for three days.

- Instead of a past tense in animated narrative:

La nuit approche, l'instant arrive, César se présente, etc.	Night draws on, the moment comes, Cæsar appears, etc.
---	---

a. This use is much commoner than in English, especially side by side with past tenses. It is called the 'Historical Present.'

b. *C'est . . . que* + a past tense = *was . . . that*:
C'est là que je l'ai vu. It was there that I saw him.

- Instead of a future in familiar style:

Nous partons demain matin.	We go to-morrow morning.
----------------------------	--------------------------

- As a virtual future after *si* = *if*:

<u>Je serai content, si vous venez.</u>	I shall be glad if you (will) come.
---	-------------------------------------

258. Imperfect Indicative. The action or state denoted by the imperfect is in general viewed as being in progress, i.e., as contemporaneous, customary, continued, etc., and it is employed as follows:

- To denote what was happening, when something else happened or was happening:

Il était nuit, quand je sortis. It was night when I went out.
Il parlait, pendant que je chantais. He was talking while I sang.

2. To denote what used to happen:

Il se levait de bon matin.	He used to rise early.
Je parlais souvent de cela.	I often spoke (used to speak, would speak) of that.
Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts.	The Romans were accustomed to burn their dead.

3. To denote what continued to happen:

Son père était négociant et de-	His father was a merchant and
meurait dans cette rue.	lived in this street.

4. To denote what had happened and still continued, after *il y a . . . que*, *voici (voilà) . . . que*, *depuis*, *depuis quand?* *depuis . . . que* (cf. § 257, 2):

Je le <i>disais</i> depuis longtemps.	I had long been saying so.
Voilà un an que je le <i>disais</i>.	I had been saying so for a year.

5. In indirect discourse, after a past tense, instead of the present:

Je croyais qu'il revenait.	I thought he was coming back.
Je demandai où il était.	I asked where he was.
But: Où <i>est-il?</i> demandai-je.	"Where is he?" I asked.

6. Regularly in an 'if' clause when the 'result' clause is conditional:

S'il <i>venait</i>, je serais content.	If he came, I should be glad.
---	-------------------------------

7. Occasionally, instead of the conditional anterior in conditional sentences:

Si je ne l'avais pas arrêté, il <i>tombait</i> (= serait tombé) du train.	Had I not stopped him he would have fallen from the train.
--	--

8. Sometimes instead of the past definite (§ 260):

Un moment <i>après</i>, le père Alphée se dressait, marchait à grands pas, voilà, s'écriait-il, etc.	A moment afterwards, Father Alpheus rose, walked about with great strides, "There," cried he, etc.
---	--

259. Past Indefinite. The past indefinite is used:

1. To denote what has happened or has been happening, equivalent to an English tense with 'have,' reference to the present being implied:

<i>J'ai fini mon ouvrage.</i>	I have finished my work.
<i>L'avez-vous vu dernièrement?</i>	Have you seen him lately?
<i>Je l'ai souvent rencontré.</i>	I have often met him.
<i>J'ai chanté toute la matinée.</i>	I have been singing all morning.

2. In familiar style, spoken or written, to denote a past event, without implied reference to the present, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of a narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' For narrative in the literary style, see § 260:

<i>Ils sont arrivés ce soir.</i>	They arrived this evening.
<i>Je l'ai vu il y a dix ans.</i>	I saw him ten years ago.
<i>De quoi est-il mort?</i>	What did he die of?
<i>J'ai quitté Rome le dix. Puis je suis allé voir des amis à Lyon, j'ai passé quelques jours à Paris, et je suis revenu à Londres hier.</i>	I left Rome on the tenth. Then I visited some friends at Lyons, I spent some days in Paris, and I came back to London yesterday.

3. Occasionally instead of a future anterior:

<i>Attendez, j'ai bientôt fini.</i>	Wait, I shall have finished soon.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

260. Past Definite. The past definite denotes a past event, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of the narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' Its use is largely confined to literary or "book" French, and formal public address. It is not much used in conversation or in easy correspondence:

<i>Dieu créa le monde.</i>	God created the world.
<i>La guerre dura sept ans.</i>	The war lasted seven years.
<i>On força le palais, les scélérats n'osèrent pas résister longtemps et ne songèrent qu'à fuir. Astarbé voulut se sauver dans la foule, mais un soldat la reconnut; elle fut prise.</i>	They broke into the palace, the villains did not dare to resist long, and only thought of fleeing. Astarbé tried to escape in the crowd, but a soldier recognized her; she was captured.

a. Some verbs have a special force in the past definite:

Être: *je fus.*

To be: I became.

Avoir: *j'eus.*

To have: I received.

Savoir: *je sus.*

To know: I found out (learned).

Connaître: *je connus.*

To know: I realized.

In this force *fus* and *sus* are common, the other two less so.

261. Examples of Narrative. 1. The following examples illustrate the principal uses of the past definite, imperfect, past indefinite, and historical present, in the literary narrative style:

Les Turcs, qui cependant entouraient cette maison tout embrasée, voyaient avec une admiration mêlée d'épouvante que les Suédois n'en sortaient point; mais leur étonnement fut encore plus grand lorsqu'ils virent ouvrir les portes, et le roi et les siens fondre sur eux en désespérés. Charles et ses principaux officiers étaient armés d'épées et de pistolets: chacun tira deux coups à la fois à l'instant que la porte s'ouvrit; et dans le même clin d'œil, jetant leurs pistolets et s'armant de leurs épées, ils firent reculer les Turcs plus de cinquante pas; mais le moment d'après cette petite troupe fut entourée: le roi, qui était en bottes selon sa coutume, s'embarrassa dans ses éperons, et tomba; vingt et un janissaires se jettent aussitôt sur lui: il jette en l'air son épée pour s'épargner la douleur de la rendre; les Turcs l'emmènent au quartier du bacha. — *Voltaire*.

Stanislas se déroba un jour à dix heures du soir de l'armée suédoise qu'il commandait en Poméranie, et partit avec le baron Sparre, qui a été depuis ambassadeur en Angleterre et en France, et avec un autre colonel: il prend le nom d'un Français, nommé Haran, alors major au service de Suède, et qui est mort depuis commandant de Dantzick.

— *Voltaire*.

2. So nearly identical may be the force of the past definite and the past indefinite, as narrative tenses, that they are often used interchangeably, as in the following extract, taken from a newspaper:

LONDRES, 5 août. — Hier soir, à onze heures et demie, un incendie a éclaté dans l'atelier de composition de la *National Press Agency*. Plusieurs pompes à vapeur arrivèrent immédiatement sur le lieu du sinistre, et l'incendie s'étendit avec une telle rapidité, que toute la maison a été complètement détruite. — *Le Matin*.

262. Pluperfect and Past Anterior. 1. Both denote what ‘had happened,’ like the English pluperfect:

Lorsque je l'avais (eus) fini. When I had finished it.

2. The pluperfect is of much commoner occurrence than the past anterior, and is used after *si* = *if*, in conditional clauses, or when custom, continuance, etc., is implied (but cf. §§ 258, 275, *b*):

Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit. Had I seen it, I should have said so.
J'avais toujours fini avant midi. I always had finished before noon.

3. The past anterior denotes what had happened immediately before another past event. It is rarely used except after conjunctions of time, such as *lorsque*, *quand*, *après que*, *aussitôt que*, *ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que*, etc.:

Après qu'il eut diné, il partit. After he had dined, he set out.

263. Future. The future is used:

1. To denote what will happen:

Ils viendront demain. They will come to-morrow.

Je les verrai bientôt. I shall see them soon.

Je ne sais pas s'il viendra. I know not whether he will come.

a. Distinguish English ‘will’ of futurity from ‘will’ of volition, and from ‘will’ of habitual action:

Il ne restera pas. He will not stay.

Il ne veut pas rester. He will not stay.

Ce chasseur reste souvent dans les bois pendant des mois entiers. That hunter will often remain whole months in the woods.

b. Observe the following commonly occurring forms:

Ne voulez-vous pas rester? Will you not stay?

Voulez-vous que je reste? Shall I stay?

Je ne resterai pas. I shall not stay.

2. Regularly in a subordinate clause of implied futurity:

Payez-le quand il viendra. Pay him when he comes.

Faites comme vous voudrez. Do as you please.

Tant que je vivrai. As long as I live.

3. To denote probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc.:

La nef appartient au XII^e siècle, mais le chœur sera du XV^e. The nave belongs to the 12th century, but the choir is probably of the 15th.

4. Sometimes with imperative force:

Tu ne tueras point.

Thou shalt not kill.

Vous voudrez bien m'écouter.

Be good enough to hear me.

- a. This use is common in official style (edicts, etc.).

264. Future Anterior. The futuré anterior is used:

1. To denote what will have happened:

Il aura bientôt fini.

He will soon have done.

2. To denote implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2), probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. (cf. § 263, 3):

Quand vous serez rentré je sortirai.

When you have come home, I shall go out.

Je me serai trompé.

I must have made a mistake.

265. Conditional. 1. The main use of the conditional is to denote result dependent on condition, *i.e.*, what would happen in case something else were to happen:

Je serais content, s'il venait. I should be glad if he came.

a. The condition on which the result would depend is often merely implied, but not formally stated:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse. To hesitate would be weakness.

b. Distinguish English 'should' of duty, etc., 'would' of volition, and 'would' of past habit, from conditional 'should' and 'would':

Je devrais partir.

I should (ought to) set out.

Il ne voulait pas écouter.

He would not listen.

J'allais souvent le voir.

I would often go to see him.

2. It corresponds to an English past in a subordinate clause of implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2):

Je prendrais ce qui resterait. I should take what remained.

3. In indirect discourse, it denotes what was once future and is now regarded as past, *i.e.*, the original future of the

assertion or question becomes a conditional when in a clause subordinate to a verb in a past tense:

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.	I thought it would rain.
A-t-il dit s'il le ferait?	Did he say whether he would do so?
But: Je le ferai, dit-il.	"I shall do so," said he.

4. It is used in statement or request expressed with deference or reserve:

Je le croirais au moins.	I should think so, at least.
Auriez-vous la bonté d'y aller?	Would you have the kindness to go?
Cela ne serait jamais vrai.	That never could (can) be true
Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Je voudrais qu'il fût (soit) ici.	I wish he were here.

✗ 5. It sometimes denotes probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc., in exclamations and questions (cf. § 263, 3):

Serait-il vrai qu'il l'aït dit?	Can it be true that he said so?
Serait-il possible?	Can (could) it be possible?

✗ 6. It sometimes denotes concession after **quand**, **quand même**, or with **que**:

Quand (même) il me tuerait, etc.	Even if he should kill me, etc.
Vous me le jureriez que je ne vous croirais pas.	Even if you swore it to me, I should not believe you.

✗ 7. It is used to give the substance of hearsay information:
À ce qu'on dit, le roi serait malade. By what they say, the king is ill.

266. Conditional Anterior. Its uses are precisely parallel with those of the conditional (§ 265); it denotes what would have happened, etc., etc.:

Je serais parti, s'il était venu.	I should have gone had he come.
Selon les journaux, la guerre se serait déclarée <u>hier soir</u> .	According to the newspapers, war was declared last evening.

267. Imperative Mood. It is used in general as in English:

Lisez-le. Ne le lisez pas.	Read it. Do not read it.
Allons-nous-en à présent.	Let us go away now.
Veuillez m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. The first plural sometimes serves instead of the lacking first singular:

<i>Soyons digne de ma naissance.</i>	Let me be worthy of my birth.
<i>Pensons un moment.</i>	Let me think a moment.

b. The imperatives *va*, *allons*, *allez*, *voyons*, often have special idiomatic force:

<i>Allons donc! Allons, du courage!</i>	Nonsense! Come, courage!
<i>J'en suis content, allez!</i>	I am glad of it, I can assure you!
<i>Voyons, que pensez-vous?</i>	Come now, what do you think?

c. An imperative perfect is rare:
Ayez fini votre tâche ce soir. Have your task done to-night.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

268. General Function. The subjunctive denotes, in general, what is viewed as being desirable or undesirable, uncertain, contingent, or the like, and usually stands in a subordinate clause.

269. Subjunctive in Noun Clause. The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by *que* and serving as logical subject or as object of a verb:

1. After expressions of desiring (including willing, wishing, preferring) and avoiding:

<i>Je désire (veux) qu'il parte.</i>	I desire (wish) him to go.
<i>Voulez-vous que je reste?</i>	Do you wish me to (shall I) stay?
<i>Je souhaite qu'il ait du succès.</i>	I wish that he may have success.
<i>Il préfère que vous restiez.</i>	He prefers that you should stay.
<i>Évitez qu'il (ne) vous voie.</i>	Avoid his seeing you.

Such are:

<i>aimer, like</i>	<i>éviter, avoid</i>	<i>souhaiter, wish</i>
<i>aimer mieux, prefer</i>	<i>préférer, prefer</i>	<i>il me tarde, I long</i>
<i>avoir envie, be desirous</i>	<i>prendre garde, take</i>	<i>vouloir, will, wish,</i>
<i>désirer, desire, wish</i>	<i>care (lest)</i>	<i>etc.</i>

a. *Prendre garde* requires *ne* in the subjunctive clause; so also, *éviter* generally.

Prends garde que cela ne se fasse. Take care lest that happen.

2. After expressions of commanding (including requesting, exhorting), forbidding, consenting:

<i>Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.</i>	You order me to go.
<i>Je demande que vous me payiez.</i>	I ask that you should pay me.
<i>Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts.</i>	Tell them to be ready.
<i>Le médecin défend que je sorte.</i>	The doctor forbids me to go out.
<i>Je consens que cela se fasse.</i>	I consent that that be done.

Such are:

<i>admettre, admit</i>	<i>demande, ask</i>	<i>permettre, permit</i>
<i>agréer, permit</i>	<i>empêcher, hinder</i>	<i>prier, beg, ask</i>
<i>avoir soin, take care</i>	<i>exhorter, exhort</i>	<i>souffrir, suffer</i>
<i>conjurer, implore</i>	<i>exiger, exact</i>	<i>supplier, beg, pray</i>
<i>consentir, consent</i>	<i>laisser, allow</i>	<i>trouver naturel, find natural</i>
<i>convenir, agree</i>	<i>s'opposer, oppose</i>	<i>veiller, take care</i>
<i>défendre, forbid</i>	<i>ordonner, order</i>	etc.

So also, *dire, tell, écrire, write, entendre, mean, prétendre, intend*, when denoting command.

a. The future or conditional often stands after *arrêter, commander, décider, décréter*, etc., especially when the subject is a word denoting final authority, such as *cour, roi*, etc.:

Le roi décrète qu'il sera pendu. The king decrees that he shall be hanged.

b. The subjunctive after *empêcher* usually has *ne*:

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte. Prevent his going out.

3. After expressions of judgment or opinion involving approval or disapproval:

<i>J'aprouve qu'il revienne.</i>	I approve of his coming back.
<i>Il mérite qu'on le craigne.</i>	He deserves to be feared.
<i>Il vaut mieux que vous restiez.</i>	It is better for you to stay.
<i>Je tiens beaucoup à ce qu'il y soit.</i>	I am very anxious that he should be there.

Such are:

<i>approuver, approve</i>	<i>louer, praise</i>	<i>trouver juste, think just</i>
<i>blâmer, blame</i>	<i>mérir, deserve</i>	<i>trouver injuste, think unjust</i>
<i>désapprouver, disapprove</i>	<i>tenir (à ce que), insist</i>	<i>valoir, be worthy</i>
<i>être digne, be worthy</i>	<i>trouver bon, approve</i>	etc.
<i>être indigne, be unworthy</i>	<i>trouver mauvais, dis-</i>	
<i>juger à propos, think fit</i>	<i>approve</i>	

So also, a large number of impersonals of like force:

il convient, <i>it is fitting</i>	+ important, <i>important</i>	il faut, <i>it is necessary</i> ,
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ indispensable, <i>indis-</i>	<i>must</i>
+ à propos, <i>proper</i>	<i>pensable</i>	il importe, <i>it is important</i>
+ bien, <i>well</i>	+ juste, <i>just</i>	il peut se faire, <i>it may be</i>
+ bon, <i>good</i>	+ naturel, <i>natural</i>	il suffit, <i>it suffices</i>
+ convenable, <i>fitting</i>	+ nécessaire, <i>necessary</i>	il vaut mieux, <i>it is better</i>
+ essentiel, <i>essential</i>	+ à souhaiter, <i>to be wished</i>	etc., and their opposites
+ à désirer, <i>to be desired</i>		
+ facile, <i>easy</i>	+ temps, <i>time</i>	

4. After expressions of emotion or sentiment, such as joy, sorrow, anger, shame, wonder, fear:

Êtes-vous content qu'il soit ici?	Are you glad he is here?
Je regrette qu'il soit parti.	I regret that he has gone.
Il est fâché que vous le blâmiez.	He is angry at your blaming him.
Il a honte que vous le sachiez.	He is ashamed that you know it.
Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas honte.	I wonder he is not ashamed.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop dit.	I fear he has said too much.

Such are:

admirer, <i>be astonished</i>	+ étonnant, <i>astonishing</i>	+ joyeux, <i>glad</i>
s'affliger, <i>grieve</i>	+ fâcheux, <i>annoying</i>	+ mécontent, <i>displeased</i>
avoir honte, <i>be ashamed</i>	+ heureux, <i>fortunate</i>	+ satisfait, <i>satisfied</i>
avoir crainte, <i>fear</i>	enrager, <i>be enraged</i>	+ surpris, <i>surprised</i>
avoir peur, <i>fear</i>	s'étonner, <i>be astonished</i>	+ triste, <i>sad</i>
craindre, <i>fear</i>	être, <i>be . . .</i>	se fâcher, <i>be sorry, angry</i>
déplorer, <i>deplore</i>	+ affligé, <i>grieved</i>	se plaindre, <i>complain</i>
c'est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ bien aise, <i>very glad</i>	redouter, <i>fear</i>
+ un bonheur, <i>fortunate</i>	+ charmé, <i>delighted</i>	regretter, <i>regret</i>
+ dommage, <i>a pity</i>	+ content, <i>glad</i>	se réjouir, <i>rejoice</i>
+ une honte, <i>a shame</i>	+ désolé, <i>very sorry</i>	se repentir, <i>repent</i>
+ honteux, <i>a shame</i>	+ étonné, <i>astonished</i>	soupirer, <i>sigh</i>
+ pitié, <i>a pity</i>	+ fâché, <i>sorry, angry</i>	trembler, <i>tremble</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ heureux, <i>happy</i>	etc.
+ curieux, <i>strange</i>	+ indigné, <i>indignant</i>	

~~a.~~ When it is feared something will happen the subjunctive has *ne*; when it is feared something will not happen the subjunctive has *ne . . . pas*; when the expression of fearing is negative, or interrogative, or conditional, *ne* is usually omitted; with double negation *ne . . . pas* stands in both (see also § 419 and Appendix referring to § 419):

Je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne.	I fear he will come.
Je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne <i>pas</i> .	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I do not fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?	Do you fear he will come?

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il *ne vienne*? Do you not fear he will come?
 Si je craignais qu'il vint. If I feared he would come.
 Je ne crains pas qu'il *ne vienne pas*. I do not fear he will not come.

b. After expressions of emotion or sentiment (except fear), which admit de after them, de ce que + indicative may be used:

J'ai honte *de ce qu'il a échoué*. I am ashamed that he failed.

5. After expressions of doubt, denial, despair, ignorance, or very slight probability:

Il doute que je sois loyal. He doubts that (whether) I am honest.
 Je nie que cela soit vrai. I deny that that is true.
 Il est rare que vous ayez tort. You are rarely in the wrong.

Such are:

contester, dispute	+ faux, false	de (à) quoi sert-il? of what use is it?
désespérer, despair	+ impossible, impossible	il ne sert de (à) rien, it is of no use
disconvenir, deny	+ possible, possible	il se peut, it may be
dissimuler, not confess	+ rare, rare	il ne se peut pas, it cannot be
se dissimuler, be hidden	il s'en faut, there is wanting	il semble, it seems, etc.
douter, doubt	ignorer, not know	
il est, it is . . .	nier, deny	
+ douteux, doubtful		

a. Douter si (= if, whether) requires the indicative:

Il doute si je suis loyal. He doubts if (whether) I am honest.

b. Il semble regularly has the subjunctive, since it indicates slight probability as distinguished from il paraît = it appears, is evident, and il me semble = it appears to me (personal conviction; but cf. 6, c):

Il semble que vous me *craigniez*. It seems that you fear me.

Il me semble (il paraît) que vous It seems to me (it appears) that you
me *craignez*. fear me.

c. Verbs of doubt and denial used negatively or interrogatively regularly require ne in the subjunctive clause:

Je ne nie pas que je *ne le sois*. I do not deny that I am such.

d. Ignorer + negative = know well, and hence takes indicative:

Je n'ignore pas qu'il *a menti*. I know well he has lied.

NOTE. — Peut-être que, perhaps, and sans doute que, doubtless, require the indicative.

6. Note, however, that after positive and affirmative expressions of perceiving, thinking, knowing, declaring, result-

ing, the *indicative* is used, the subjunctive being used only when negation, interrogation, or condition imply uncertainty or doubt:

Je crois que c'est lui.

I think it is he.

J'espèrre qu'il réussira.

I hope he will succeed.

But: *Je ne crois pas que ce soit lui.*

I do not think that it is he.

Espérez-vous qu'il réussisse ?

Do you hope he will succeed ?

Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne.

I am not sure he will come.

Si je prétendais qu'il eût tort.

If I claimed he was wrong.

Such are:

affirmer, affirm

espérer, hope

prévoir, foresee

s'apercevoir, perceive

être certain, be certain

promettre, promise

apprendre, learn, hear

être persuadé, be persuaded

se rappeler, recollect

assurer, assure

être sûr, be sure

reconnaître, acknowledge

s'attendre, expect

se figurer, imagine

remarquer, remark

avertir, warn

se flatter, flatter oneself

répéter, repeat

avouer, declare

imaginer, imagine

répondre, answer

conclure, conclude

s'imaginer, imagine

savoir, know

connaître, recognize

juger, judge, think

sentir, feel, notice

croire, believe, think

jurer, declare

soutenir, maintain

déclarer, declare

oublier, forget

se souvenir, recollect

deviner, guess

penser, think

supposer, suppose

dire, say, tell

persuader, persuade

trouver, find, think

se douter, suspect

pressentir, forebode

voir, see

écrire, write

prétendre, assert, claim

etc.

entendre dire, hear said

prévenir, forewarn

So also, a number of impersonals of like force:

il s'ensuit, it follows

+ évident, evident

+ sûr, sure

il est avéré, it is stated

+ démontré, demonstrated

+ vraisemblable, probable

il est, it is . . .

+ incontestable, indisput-

il résulte, it follows

+ certain, certain

able

✓il me semble, it seems to

+ clair, clear

+ probable, probable

me

✗a. Negative question usually implies affirmation; hence the indicative:

Ne trouves-tu pas qu'il est beau? Don't you think he is handsome?

✗b. When what the speaker regards as fact follows the negative or conditional clause, or when a person is questioned as to his knowledge of what is regarded as fact, the indicative stands:

Il ne croit pas que je suis ici.

He does not believe I am here.

S'il savait que tu es ici.

If he knew you were here.

Savez-vous qu'il est arrivé?

Do you know that he has come?

~~X~~c. *Il ne me semble pas* is followed by the subjunctive, but in negative interrogation by the indicative (cf. also 5, b):

Il ne me semble pas qu'il soit fou. It does not seem to me he is mad.
Ne vous semble-t-il pas qu'il est fou? Does it not seem to you he is mad?

~~X~~d. A preceding dependent clause with this class of verbs always has the subjunctive:

Qu'il ait échoué, je le sais. That he has failed, I know.

NOTE.—For the choice between *que* clause and infinitive see § 283.

270. Subjunctive in Adjectival Clause. The subjunctive is used as follows in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun:

1. When purpose regarding the antecedent, or unattained result is implied:

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise à la science. Show me a way which leads to knowledge.

Je cherche un endroit où je sois en paix. I seek a place where I may be in peace.

a. The indicative, however, is used to express what is regarded as fact or certain result:

Montrez-moi le chemin qui conduit à la ville. Show me the road which leads to the town.

J'irai où je serai libre. I shall go where I shall be free.

2. When the principal clause contains general negation, interrogation implying negative answer, or condition (all of which imply non-existence of the antecedent):

Il n'a pas de raison qui vaille. He has no reason worth anything.

As-tu un seul ami qui soit fidèle? Have you one friend who is true?

Si j'ai un ami qui soit fidèle c'est lui. If I have one friend who is true, it is he.

a. General negation is sometimes merely implied:

Il y a peu de gens qui le sachent. There are few people who know it.

b. When the negation is not general, or when the interrogation does not imply negative answer, the indicative stands:

Ce n'est pas vous que je crains. It is not you that I fear.

N'est-ce point un songe que je vois! Is it not a dream that I see!

c. In a negative relative clause *ne*, not *ne . . . pas*, is used when the principal clause is negative or implies negation:

En est-il un seul qui *ne* tremble? Is there one who does not tremble?

3. When the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, or by **seul, unique, premier, dernier** (all with superlative force):

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie. He is the best friend that I have.

C'est le seul ami que j'aie. He is the only friend I have.

X a. What is stated unreservedly as fact requires the indicative:

C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite. It is the only thing he said.

4. With concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (= 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.):

Quoi que vous fassiez. Whatever you do.

Qui qu'on y puisse élire. Whosoever may be elected to it.

Qui que tu sois, parle! Whoever you are, speak!

Quelles que soient vos raisons. Whatever be your reasons.

271. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clause. The subjunctive is used in clauses of adverbial force, as follows:

X 1. After conjunctions of time before which or up to which (*avant que, en attendant que, jusqu'à ce que*):

Dis-le-lui, avant qu'il parte. Tell it to him before he goes.

Asseyez-vous, en attendant qu'il revienne. Sit down until he comes back.

Persévérez jusqu'à ce que vous ayez réussi. Persevere till you have succeeded.

a. *Jusqu'à ce que* may have the indicative when referring to completed past event:

Il y resta jusqu'à ce que je revins. He remained till I came back.

X 2. After conjunctions of purpose or result (*afin que, pour que; de crainte que, de peur que*):

J'écris ceci afin que (pour que) vous sachiez la vérité. I write this in order that you may know the truth.

Je le tins de crainte qu'il ne tomberât. I held him for fear he should fall.

a. So also, de sorte que, en sorte que, de telle sorte que, de façon que, de manière que, tel . . . que, tellement . . . que, when denoting purpose, but not result:

Agis de sorte que tu réussisses. Act in such a way as to succeed.
But: J'ai agi de sorte que j'ai réussi. I acted so that I succeeded.

✗ 3. After conjunctions of condition (en cas que, au cas que, à moins que . . . ne, pourvu que, supposé que, en supposant que):

Je viendrai au cas que je sois libre demain, ou à moins que je ne soit retenu. I shall come in case I am free tomorrow, or unless I am detained.

a. After si = *if*, the pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally (§ 275, b).

b. The present subjunctive sometimes expresses condition:

Vienne l'ennemi, il s'enfuit. If the enemy comes, he flees.

c. À (la) condition que takes indicative, conditional, or subjunctive:
Je lui donne l'argent à (la) condition qu'il partira (or parte). I give him the money on condition that he will go.

NOTE. — Dans le cas où, au cas où usually have conditional: Au cas où cela serait vrai, In case that should be true.

✗ 4. After conjunctions of concession (quoique, bien que, encore que, nonobstant que, soit que . . . soit que or ou que, pour (si) peu que, si tant est que, malgré que):

Bien qu'il soit malade, il sortira. Although he is ill, he will go out.
Pour peu qu'il fût malade, il se croyait mourant. If he were ever so little ill, he thought himself dying.

a. The present subjunctive with que sometimes has concessive force:
Qu'il perde ou gagne, il partira. Though he lose or win, he will go.

b. The use of a subjunctive after adverbial quelque (tout, si, etc.) + que = *however* depends on the same principle:

Quelque grand que vous soyez. However great you may be.
Si brave qu'il se croie. However brave he thinks himself.

c. Quand (même) used concessively sometimes takes the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional anterior (cf. § 265, 6):

Quand (même) il m'eût dit cela. Even if he had told me that.

~~5.~~ After conjunctions of negative force (**non que, non pas que, loin que, sans que**):

Il partit sans que je le susse. He went away without my knowing it.

6. After **que** replacing any conjunction requiring the subjunctive, and also after **que** replacing **si = if**:

Venez que (= **afin que, pour que**) Come, that I may see you.
je vous voie.

Si je viens et que je le voie. If I come, and if I see him.

272. Subjunctive in Principal Clause. The subjunctive is sometimes used in principal clauses, as follows:

1. Either with or without **que** to denote what is desired, etc.:

Ainsi soit-il ! Vive le roi !	So be it ! (Long) live the king !
Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi !	Would to God it were so !
Qu'il parte tout de suite.	Let him go at once.
(Que) je meure, si je mens !	May I die if I am lying !
Le croie qui voudra !	Let him believe it who will !

a. Que followed by the third person present subjunctive regularly serves as an imperative; so also, sometimes, the first singular:

Qu'il parte.	Let him go.
Que je vous entende.	Let me hear you.

NOTE. — This construction, as also those without **que**, may be explained by ellipsis of some expression of desire, command, etc. (§ 269, 1, 2).

2. The present subjunctive first singular of **savoir** is sometimes used to denote modified assertion:

Je ne sache rien de plus beau. I know nothing finer.

3. The pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally for conditional anterior in a 'result' clause (cf. § 275, b):

S'il eût (or avait) su cela, il ne l'eût (or aurait) pas dit. If he had known that, he would not have said it.

273. Tense Sequence. The tense of the subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the finite verb in the governing clause, as follows:

1a. A present (including present subjunctive and imperative) or a future, in the governing clause, requires the present subjunctive in the governed clause in order to denote incomplete action:

<i>Je doute</i>	<i>qu'il vienne.</i>	I doubt that (whether) he will come.
<i>Quoique je doute</i>		Though I doubt that he will come.
<i>Doutez</i>		Doubt that he will come.
<i>Je douterais</i>		I shall doubt that he will come.

1b. But if we wish to denote completed action the perfect subjunctive must be used:

<i>Je doute qu'il soit venu.</i>	I doubt that he has come.
----------------------------------	---------------------------

2a. Any other tense than the above (*i.e.*, an imperfect, past definite, past indefinite, conditional, etc.) requires the imperfect subjunctive in order to denote incomplete action:

<i>Je doutais</i>	<i>qu'il</i>	I doubted whether he would come.
<i>Quoique je doutasse</i>		Though I doubted that he would come.
<i>{ Je doutai }</i>		I doubted that he would come.
<i>{ J'ai douté }</i>		I should doubt that he would come.

2b. But if we wish to denote completed action, the pluperfect subjunctive must be used:

<i>Je doutais</i>	<i>qu'il fût</i>	I doubted that he had come.
<i>J'aurais douté</i>		I should have doubted that he had come.

3. The following exceptional cases depend mainly on the sense of the context:

a. *J'ai douté qu'il vienne.* I have doubted that he will come.

b. After verbs of saying, believing, etc., a governing present may take a past subjunctive and *vice versa*:

<i>Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.</i>	I do not say he was to blame.
<i>Il ne croyait pas qu'il y ait un Dieu.</i>	He did not believe that there is a God.

c. In a relative clause a past indefinite may stand for a pluperfect:
Il portait cet habit la seule fois que je l'aie vu. He was wearing that coat the only time that I saw him.

X d. The conditional of modified assertion (§ 265, 4), being virtually a present, is commonly followed by the present subjunctive:

Je désirerais que vous veniez. I should like you to come.
Il faudrait qu'il s'en aille. He would have to go.

e. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, with the force of an English conditional, may follow any tense:

Il n'y a pas de rang qu'elle ne pût tenir. There is no rank she could not hold.

Je doute qu'il jouât (eut joué), s'il avait (avait eu) de l'argent. I doubt that he would play (would have played) if he had (had had) money.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

274. Typical Form. A conditional sentence consists regularly of two parts: the condition, introduced by **si = if**, and the result:

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais à B. If I had time, I should go to B.

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result:
Irez-vous à B, s'il pleut? Will you go to B if it rains?
S'il ne fait pas beau, je n'irai pas. If it is not fine, I shall not go.

b. The condition is often disguised or implied, or the result understood:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse. To hesitate would be weakness.
Je n'irais pas (si j'étais de lui). I should not go (if I were he).
Ah! si j'étais à sa place. Ah, if I were in his place!

275. Mood and Tense. A ‘result’ clause in the present indicative, imperative, or future, regularly requires the ‘if’ clause in the present indicative; a ‘result’ clause in the conditional regularly requires the ‘if’ clause in the imperfect indicative:

S'il a le temps, il y va. If he has time, he goes there.
S'il a le temps, dites-lui de venir. If he has (have, will have, should have) time, tell him to come.

S'il a le temps, il viendra.

If he has (have, will have, should have) time, he will come.

S'il avait le temps, il viendrait.

If he had (had he, were he to have, if he should have, should he have) time, he would come.

✗ *Obs.:* The condition is regularly expressed by the indicative present or imperfect, whatever be the corresponding English form.

a. The above rules hold good for compound tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb:

S'il l'a dit, il le fera.

If he has said it, he will do it.

S'il est venu, faites-le-moi savoir.

If he has come, let me know.

S'il a eu le temps, il sera venu.

If he has had time, he will have come.

Si j'avais eu le temps, je serais parti.

If I had had time, I should have gone.

S'il était brave, il aurait fait cela.

If he were brave, he would have done that.

b. Sometimes, in literary style, the pluperfect subjunctive stands in the 'if' clause, or in the 'result' clause, or in both:

S'il eût (or avait) su cela, il ne l'eût (or aurait) pas dit.

Had he known that, he would not have said so.

c. Occasionally the imperfect indicative stands in the 'if' clause instead of the pluperfect, and in the 'result' clause instead of the conditional anterior:

Si Stanislas demeurait (= était demeuré), il était (= aurait été) perdu.

If Stanislas had remained, he would have been lost.

d. Occasionally the condition is expressed by inversion, without si:

N'était-ce la crainte de cela.

If it were not for fear of that.

Eût-il été moins riche.

If he had been poorer.

e. A virtual condition (concession) is sometimes expressed by various locutions:

Quiconque le fera.

Whoever (if any one) does it.

Quand même il ne l'aurait pas dit.

Even though he had not said so.

Il le dirait que je ne le croirais pas.

Even if he said it, I should not believe it.

f. The past definite is rare in the 'if' clause. The expression s'il en fut, however, is noteworthy:

Riche, s'il en fut (jamais), mais corrompu. Rich, if any one ever was, but corrupt.

✓g. Si = *whether* may take the future or conditional:

Dis-moi si tu iras (irais) chez elle. Tell me whether (if) you will (would) go to her house.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD

276. Function. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs, and as a noun it serves as subject, object, etc.:

Vous devriez lui parler. You ought to speak to him.

Voir c'est croire. Seeing is believing.

Il lit sans comprendre. He reads without understanding.

277. Use of Infinitive. The chief difficulty in the use of the infinitive is to determine, (1) when it should stand without any preposition, (2) when it should be preceded by à, (3) when it should be preceded by de.

278. Infinitive without Preposition. The infinitive without any preposition is used:

1. As subject, or in apposition:

Mentir est honteux. To lie (lying) is base.

Trop parler nuit. Too much talk does harm.

Vivre c'est souffrir. To live is to suffer.

2. As predicate after a few verbs (see list below):

Vous semblez hésiter. You seem to hesitate.

Il est censé l'avoir fait. He is supposed to have done it.

3. As logical subject after a few impersonals (see list below):

Il vaudrait mieux se taire. It would be better to keep quiet.

Il fait cher vivre à Paris. Living is dear in Paris.

✗4. As object or complement after the so-called modal auxiliaries (§ 230), after most verbs of motion and causation of motion, after verbs of desiring and preferring, after verbs of perceiving, after verbs of thinking and intending, after

verbs of saying and declaring, and after certain verbs of lacking and failing (see list below):

Voulez-vous dîner chez nous?	Will you dine with us?
Faites-lui apprendre sa leçon.	Make him learn his lesson.
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	Send for the doctor.
Je désirerais lui parler.	I should like to speak to him.
Je les vois venir.	I see them come (coming).
Quand comptez-vous revenir?	When do you expect to come back?
Il prétend avoir raison.	He claims to be in the right.
J'avais beau crier.	It was in vain that I shouted.

5. Sometimes, in elliptical expressions, as an imperative, as a direct or indirect interrogative, or absolutely:

Voir les affiches.	See the posters.
Que faire? Où me cacher?	What (am I) to do? Where hide?
Je ne sais que faire.	I know not what to do.
Penser qu'il a dit cela!	To think that he said that!

6. Reference list of verbs requiring direct infinitive:

accourir, <i>hasten</i>	envoyer, <i>send</i>	se rappeler, ¹ <i>recollect</i>
affirmer, <i>affirm</i>	espérer, ¹ <i>hope</i>	reconnaître, <i>acknowledge</i>
aimer (<u>condl.</u>), <i>should like</i>	être, <i>be</i>	regarder, <i>look at</i>
aimer autant, <i>like as well</i>	être censé, <i>be supposed</i>	rentrer, <i>go in again</i>
aimer mieux, <i>prefer</i>	faillir, ² <i>be on the point of</i>	retourner, <i>go back</i>
aller, <i>go</i>	faire, <i>make, cause</i>	revenir, <i>come back</i>
apercevoir, <i>perceive</i>	il fait (impers.), <i>it is</i>	savoir, <i>know how to, can</i>
assurer, <i>assure</i>	falloir, <i>be necessary</i>	sembler, <i>seem</i>
avoir beau, <i>be in vain</i>	se figurer, <i>imagine</i>	sentir, <i>hear, feel</i>
avouer, <i>avow</i>	s'imaginer, <i>fancy</i>	souhaiter, ¹ <i>wish</i>
compter, ¹ <i>intend</i>	juger, <i>consider</i>	soutenir, <i>Maintain</i>
confesser, <i>confess</i>	jurer, ⁴ <i>swear, attest by oath</i>	supposer, <i>suppose</i>
courir, <i>run</i>	laisser, ³ <i>let, allow</i>	être supposé, <i>be supposed</i>
croire, <i>think</i>	mener, <i>lead, bring</i>	témoigner, <i>testify</i>
daigner, <i>desire</i>	mettre, <i>set, put at</i>	se trouver, <i>be</i>
déclarer, <i>declare</i>	monter, <i>go up</i>	valoir autant, <i>be as good</i>
déposer, <i>testify</i>	oser, <i>dare</i>	valoir mieux, <i>be better</i>
descendre, ³ <i>come(go)down</i>	ouïr, <i>hear</i>	venir, ^{3,4} <i>come</i>
désirer, ¹ <i>desire, wish</i>	paraître, <i>appear</i>	voir, <i>see</i>
devoir, <i>ought, to be, etc.</i>	penser, ³ <i>intend, be near</i>	voler, <i>fly</i>
dire, ⁴ <i>say</i>	pouvoir, <i>can, may</i>	vouloir, <i>will, wish</i>
écouter, <i>listen to</i>	préférer, <i>prefer</i>	
entendre, <i>hear, intend</i>	prétendre, <i>assert, claim</i>	

¹ Sometimes takes de. ² Sometimes takes à or de. ³ See also list of verbs requiring à (§ 279, 6). ⁴ See also list of verbs requiring de (§ 280, 6).

a. **Devoir** = *owe, be indebted*, with indirect object takes de:
Je lui dois d'être encore en vie. I owe to him that I am still alive.

b. **Faire** takes de in ne faire que de:
Il ne fait que de sortir. He has just gone out.

c. **Ne pas laisser** = *not to cease*, etc., takes de:
Il ne laisse pas (que) de le dire. He is always saying so (says so for all that).

279. Infinitive with the Preposition à. The infinitive preceded by à = *to, in, at, by*, etc., is used:

1. As direct object of a few transitives (see list below):

<u>J'aime à chanter.</u>	I like to sing.
<u>Continuez à lire.</u>	Continue to read.
<u>Il m'enseigne à chanter.</u>	He teaches me to sing (singing).
<u>J'ai à étudier demain.</u>	I have to study to-morrow.
<u>Il n'y a pas à se plaindre.</u>	There is nothing to complain of.

2. As a complement, after many verbs, to denote the object to which the action tends (answering the question 'to do what?') or the object in, at, on, about which the action takes place (answering the question 'in doing what?' 'at doing what?' etc.):

<u>Il aspire à devenir riche.</u>	He aspires to become rich.
<u>Poussez-les à agir.</u>	Urge them to act.
<u>Je les ai invités à venir.</u>	I have invited them to come.
<u>Aidez-moi à porter cette malle.</u>	Help me to carry this trunk.
<u>Il réussit à me trouver.</u>	He succeeded in finding me.
<u>Je suis à écrire une lettre.</u>	I am (busy) writing a letter.
<u>Il s'amuse à me taquiner.</u>	He amuses himself teasing me.
<u>J'ai gagné à vendre ma maison.</u>	I gained by selling my house.
<u>Il joue à faire le malade.</u>	He plays at being ill.

3. As the complement of certain adjectives (cf. § 280, 2) and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.:

<u>Ceci est bon à manger.</u>	This is good to eat.
<u>Je suis prêt à vous écouter.</u>	I am ready to hear you.
<u>Quelque chose d'utile à savoir.</u>	Something useful to know.
<u>Cela est facile à faire.</u>	That is easy to do.

La tendance à se croire grand. The tendency to think oneself great.
Une bonne à tout faire. A maid of all work.

a. So also, le premier, le dernier, le seul:
 Il n'est pas le seul à le dire. He is not the only one to say so.

×4. To form adjectival phrases denoting use, fitness, quality, etc.:

Une salle à manger.	A dining-room.
Une chose à voir.	A thing worth seeing.
Des contes à dormir debout.	Very tiresome stories.
Un spectacle à faire peur.	A terrible sight.
De manière à réussir.	In such a way as to succeed.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
C'est à en mourir.	It is enough to kill one.

×5. To form adverbial phrases:

Elle chante à ravir.	She sings charmingly.
Elle pleurait à faire pitié.	She wept pitifully.
À vrai dire, je le plains.	To tell the truth, I pity him.
Elle est laide à faire peur.	She is frightfully ugly.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with à:

s'abaisser, <i>slope</i>	s'arrêter, <i>stop</i>	condamner (se), <i>condemn</i>
abandonner (s'), <i>give up</i>	aspirer, <i>aspire</i>	condescendre, <i>descend</i>
aboutir, <i>end (in)</i> , <i>tend</i>	assujettir (s'), <i>subject</i>	conduire, <i>lead</i>
s'abuser, <i>be mistaken (in)</i>	astreindre, <i>compel</i>	consacrer (se), <i>devote</i>
s'accorder, ² <i>agree (in)</i>	s'astreindre, <i>bind o. s.</i>	consentir, <i>consent</i>
être d'accord, <i>agree (in)</i>	attacher, <i>attach</i>	consister, <i>consist (in)</i>
accoutumer(s'), ² <i>accustom</i>	s'attacher, <i>be intent (on)</i>	conspirer, <i>conspire</i>
s'acharner, <i>be bent (on)</i>	attendre (s'), <i>expect</i>	consumer (se), <i>consume (in)</i>
✓admettre, <i>admit</i>	autoriser, <i>authorize</i>	continuer, ¹ <i>continue</i>
s'adonner, <i>addict o. s.</i>	s'avilir, <i>stoop</i>	contraindre, ¹ <i>constrain</i>
aguerrir (s'), <i>inure</i>	✓avoir, <i>have, must</i>	contribuer, <i>contribute</i>
aider, <i>help</i>	avoir (de la) <i>peine, have difficulty (in)</i>	convier, ² <i>invite</i>
aimer, ⁴ <i>like</i>	balancer, <i>hesitate</i>	coûter, <i>cost</i>
amener, <i>lead</i>	se borner, <i>limit o. s.</i>	décider, ³ <i>induce</i>
amuser (s'), <i>amuse (in, by)</i>	✓chercher, <i>seek, try</i>	se décider, <i>resolve</i>
animer (s'), <i>excite</i>	commencer, ² <i>begin</i>	défier, ³ <i>challenge, incite</i>
✓appeler, <i>call</i>	se complaire, <i>take pleasure (in)</i>	demander, ¹ <i>ask (for)</i>
appliquer (s'), <i>apply</i>	concourir, <i>coöperate (in)</i>	demeurer, <i>remain</i>
✓apprendre, <i>learn, teach</i>		dépenser, <i>spend (in)</i>
apprêter (s'), <i>get ready</i>		désapprendre, <i>forget</i>

descendre, ⁴ <i>stoop, abase</i>	<i>finir</i> (neg.), ³ <i>have done</i>	porter, <i>induce</i>
destiner, <i>destine</i>	[o.s. <i>forcer</i> , ¹ <i>force</i>	pousser, <i>urge, incite</i>
déterminer, ³ <i>induce</i>	<i>gagner, gain (by)</i>	prendre garde, ³ <i>take care</i>
se déterminer, <i>resolve</i>	<i>habituer</i> , ² <i>accustom</i>	prendre plaisir, <i>delight (in)</i>
dévouer (se), <i>devote</i>	<i>s'habituer, accustom</i> o. s.	se prendre, <i>begin</i>
différer, ² <i>delay</i>	<i>hair, hate</i>	préparer (se), <i>prepare</i>
disposer (se), <i>dispose</i>	<i>se hasarder</i> , ² <i>venture</i>	prétendre, ⁴ <i>aspire</i>
divertir (se), <i>amuse</i>	✓ <i>hésiter</i> , ² <i>hesitate</i>	✓ prier, ³ <i>invite (formally)</i>
donner, <i>give</i>	<i>inciter, incite</i>	procéder, <i>proceed</i>
dresser, <i>train</i>	<i>incliner, incline</i>	provoquer, <i>incite</i>
s'efforcer, ¹ <i>try</i>	<i>induire, induce</i>	recommencer, ¹ <i>begin again</i>
s'égayer, <i>divert o. s. (by)</i>	<i>instruire, instruct</i>	réduire, <i>reduce</i>
employer (s'), <i>employ (in)</i>	✓ <i>intéresser (s'), interest (in)</i>	se réduire, <i>confine o. s.</i>
s'empresser, ¹ ³ <i>be eager</i>	✓ <i>inviter, invite</i>	✓ refuser, ³ <i>refuse to give</i>
encourager, <i>encourage</i>	<i>jouer, play (at)</i>	se refuser, <i>refuse</i>
engager (s'), ² <i>engage, advise</i>	laisser, ³ ⁴ <i>leave</i>	renoncer, <i>renounce</i>
enhardir, ² <i>embolden</i>	<i>se lasser</i> , ³ <i>tire o. s. (in)</i>	répugner, <i>be reluctant</i>
s'enhardir, ² <i>venture</i>	<i>manquer</i> , ³ <i>be remiss (in)</i>	se résigner, <i>resign o. s.</i>
s'ennuyer, ² ³ <i>tire o. s. (in)</i>	<i>mettre, put, set</i>	résoudre, ³ <i>induce</i>
enseigner, <i>teach</i>	<i>se mettre, set about</i>	se résoudre, <i>resolve</i>
s'entendre, <i>know well how</i>	<i>montrer, show how</i>	✓ rester, <i>remain</i>
entrainer, <i>allure</i>	✓ <i>obliger</i> , ¹ ³ <i>oblige, force</i>	réussir, <i>succeed (in)</i>
essayer, ¹ <i>try</i>	<i>s'obliger</i> , ² <i>bind o. s.</i>	servir, <i>serve</i>
s'essayer, <i>try o. s. (in)</i>	<i>s'obstiner, persist (in)</i>	songer, <i>think (of)</i>
✓ être, ³ <i>to be occupied (in, at)</i>	<i>occuper (s'), employ (in)</i>	souffrir, ¹ <i>suffer</i>
être à, ³ <i>be one's turn</i>	<i>s'offrir</i> , ² <i>offer</i>	suffire, <i>suffice</i>
s'étudier, <i>apply o. s.</i>	<i>s'opiniâtrer, persist (in)</i>	surprendre, <i>discover</i>
s'évertuer, <i>exert o. s., try</i>	<i>parvenir, succeed (in)</i>	tarder, ¹ <i>be long, delay (in)</i>
exceller, <i>excel (in)</i>	✓ <i>passer, spend (in)</i>	tendre, <i>tend</i>
exciter (s'), <i>excite</i>	<i>pencher, incline</i>	✓ tenir, <i>be anxious (in)</i>
exercer (s'), <i>exercise (in)</i>	<i>penser</i> , ⁴ <i>think (of)</i>	travailler, <i>work</i>
exhorter, <i>exhort</i>	<i>perdre, lose (in, by)</i>	trembler, ³ <i>tremble (at, on)</i>
exposer (s'), <i>expose</i>	✓ <i>persévéérer, persevere (in)</i>	trouver, <i>find</i>
se fatiguer, ³ <i>tire o. s. (in, at)</i>	<i>persistir, persist (in)</i>	venir, ³ ⁴ <i>happen</i>
	<i>se plaire, delight (in)</i>	viser, <i>aim</i>
	<i>se plier, submit</i>	vouer (se), <i>devote</i>

¹ Or de. ² Sometimes takes de. ³ See also list of verbs requiring de (§ 280, 6). ⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

a. Suffire sometimes takes pour:

Cela suffira pour l'amuser. That will suffice to amuse him.

b. The infinitive after être à often has passive force:

Cet ouvrage est à refaire. That work has to be done again.

c. Hâit may take de when negative:

Il ne hâit pas à (d') être endetté. He does not dislike being in debt

280. Infinitive with the Preposition *de*. The infinitive preceded by *de* = *to, of, from, for, at*, etc., is used:

✗ 1. As logical subject of an impersonal verb (for rare exceptions see § 278, 3)

<u>Il est facile de faire cela.</u>	It is easy to do that.
<u>Il importe d'arriver à temps.</u>	It is important to arrive in time.
<u>Bien vous sied de vous taire.</u>	It well becomes you to be silent.

✓ a. Similarly as subject in inverted sentences:

<u>C'est une folie (que) d'aller là.</u>	It is madness to go there.
--	----------------------------

✗ 2. As complement of most adjectives and nouns (cf. § 279, 3):

<u>Le désir de partir.</u>	The desire of going.
<u>La nécessité de rester.</u>	The necessity of remaining.
<u>Il n'est pas digne de vivre.</u>	He is not worthy to live.
<u>J'ai envie de pleurer.</u>	I feel like crying.

a. So also, many expressions, like the last example, made from verb + noun, e.g., *avoir besoin* (*honte, peur, raison, soin, tort*, etc.), *faire envie* (*plaisir, semblant*, etc.), *courir risque*, etc., etc.

✗ 3. After verbs as object or complement, usually to denote the source or occasion of action (answering 'whence?' 'concerning what?'), or to denote separation or cessation from (answering 'from what?'). See list below:

<u>Je me réjouis de le voir.</u>	I rejoice to see it.
<u>Elle se pique d'être la première.</u>	She prides herself on being first.
<u>Prenez garde de (ne pas) tomber.</u>	Take care not to fall.
<u>Il s'excuse d'y aller.</u>	He excuses himself from going.
<u>Promettez de ne pas le dire.</u>	Promise not to tell it.

4. As historical infinitive (= a past definite):

<u>Et l'ennemi de s'enfuir.</u>	And the enemy fled.
---------------------------------	---------------------

✗ 5. After *que* in the second member of a comparison, unless the sentence be very short:

<u>Il vaudra mieux rester que de partir si tard.</u>	It will be better to stay than to go so late.
<u>But: Mieux vaut savoir qu'avoir.</u>	Better wisdom than wealth.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with de:

s'absenter, <i>absent</i> o. s.	défendre, <i>forbid</i>	éviter, <i>avoid</i>
(from) [from]	se défendre, <i>forsbear</i> , ex-	excuser(s'), <i>excuse (from)</i>
s'absoudre, <i>absolve</i> o. s.	cuse o. s.	exempter, <i>exempt (from)</i>
s'abstenir, <i>abstain</i> (from)	défier, ³ <i>defy</i>	faire bien, <i>do well</i>
accorder, <i>grant</i> [customed	se dénier, <i>distrust</i>	se fatiguer, ³ <i>be tired (of)</i>
avoir accoutumé, <i>be ac-</i>	dégoûter, <i>disgust (with)</i>	feindre, <i>feign</i>
accuser (s'), <i>accuse (of)</i>	délibérer, <i>deliberate</i>	féliciter (se), <i>congratulate</i>
achever, <i>finish</i>	(about)	finir, ³ <i>finish</i> [(on)]
admirer, <i>wonder (at)</i>	demander, ¹ <i>ask</i>	se flatter, <i>flatter o. s.</i>
affecter, <i>affect</i>	se dépêcher, <i>make haste</i>	forcer, ¹ <i>force</i>
s'affliger, <i>grieve (at, over)</i>	désaccoutumer (se), <i>dis-</i>	frémir, <i>shudder</i>
s'apercevoir, <i>perceive</i>	accustom (from)	gager, <i>wager</i>
s'applaudir, <i>congratulate</i>	désespérer, <i>despair (of)</i>	garder (se), <i>forsbear</i>
o. s. (on)	déshabiter (se), <i>disac-</i>	gémir, <i>groan</i>
appréhender, <i>fear</i>	custom (from)	gêner, <i>incommode</i>
arrêter, <i>prevent (from)</i> ,	déterminer, ³ <i>resolve</i>	se glorifier, <i>boast (of)</i>
determine [at)	détester, <i>detest</i> [(from)]	gronder, <i>scold (for)</i>
s'attrister, <i>become sad</i>	détourncr, <i>dissuade</i>	hasarder, <i>venture</i>
avertir, <i>notify, warn</i>	dire, ⁴ <i>bid</i>	se hâter, <i>hasten</i>
s'aviser, <i>think (of)</i>	discontinuer, <i>cease</i>	imaginer, <i>imagine</i>
blâmer, <i>blame (for)</i>	disconvenir, <i>deny</i> [(for)]	s'impatienter, <i>be impa-</i>
brûler, <i>long</i>	se disculper, <i>excuse o. s.</i>	tient
censurer, <i>censure (for)</i>	dispenser, <i>dispense (from)</i>	imputer, <i>impute</i>
cesser, <i>cease</i> [over]	dissuader, <i>dissuade (from)</i>	s'indigner, <i>be indignant</i>
se chagrinier, <i>grieve (at,</i>	douter, <i>hesitate</i>	s'ingérer, <i>meddle (with)</i>
charger, <i>charge</i>	se douter, <i>suspect</i>	inspirer, <i>inspire</i>
se charger, <i>undertake</i>	écrire, <i>write</i>	interdire, <i>interdict (from)</i>
choisir, <i>choose</i>	s'efforcer, ¹ <i>try</i>	jouir, <i>enjoy</i>
commander, <i>command</i>	s'effrayer, <i>be afraid</i>	juger bon, <i>think fit</i>
commencer, ¹ <i>begin</i>	empêcher, <i>prevent</i>	jurer, ⁴ <i>promise (on oath)</i>
conjurer, <i>beseech</i>	s'empêcher, <i>abstain</i>	ne pas laisser, ^{3,4} <i>not to</i>
conseiller, <i>advise</i>	(from)	cease
consoler, <i>console (for)</i>	s'empresser, ³ <i>hasten</i>	se lasser, ³ <i>be weary (of)</i>
se contenter, <i>be satisfied</i>	s'empresser, ¹ <i>be eager</i>	louer, <i>praise (for)</i>
continuer, ¹ <i>continue</i>	enjoindre, <i>enjoin</i>	mander, <i>bid</i> [point of
contraindre, ¹ <i>constrain</i>	s'ennuyer, ^{2,3} <i>be tired (of)</i>	manquer, ³ <i>fail, be on</i>
convaincre, <i>convict (of)</i>	s'enorgueillir, <i>be proud</i>	méditer, <i>meditate</i>
convenir, <i>agree</i>	enrager, <i>be enraged (at)</i>	se mêler, <i>meddle (with)</i>
craindre, <i>fear</i>	entreprendre, <i>undertake</i>	menacer, <i>threaten</i>
crier, <i>cry</i>	épargner, <i>spare</i>	mérriter, <i>deserve</i> [(of)]
décider, ³ <i>decide, resolve</i>	essayer, ¹ <i>try</i>	se moquer, <i>make sport</i>
décourager (se), <i>discour-</i>	s'étonner, <i>be astonished</i>	mourir, <i>die, long</i>
age (from)	être à, ^{2,3} <i>be duty or office</i>	négliger, <i>neglect</i>
dédaigner, <i>disdain</i>	(of)	notifier, <i>notify</i>

obliger, ¹ <i>oblige, force</i>	presser, <i>urge</i>	reprocher (se), <i>reproach</i>
obliger, ³ <i>do favour</i>	se presser, <i>hasten</i>	(with)
obtenir, <i>obtain</i>	présumer, <i>presume</i>	résoudre, ³ <i>resolve</i>
s'occuper, ³ <i>be intent (on)</i>	prier, ³ <i>beg, pray</i>	se ressouvenir, <i>remember</i>
offrir, <i>offer</i>	priver (se), <i>deprive (of)</i>	rire (se), <i>laugh</i>
omettre, <i>omit</i>	projeter, <i>intend</i>	risquer, <i>risk</i>
ordonner, <i>order</i>	promettre (se), <i>promise</i>	rougir, <i>blush</i>
oublier, ² <i>forget</i>	proposer, <i>propose</i>	sommer, <i>summon</i>
pardonner, <i>forgive</i>	se proposer, <i>intend</i>	se soucier, <i>care</i>
parier, <i>bet</i>	protester, <i>protest</i>	souffrir, ¹ <i>suffer</i>
parler, <i>speak</i>	punir, <i>punish (for)</i>	soupçonner, <i>suspect</i>
se passer, <i>do without</i>	recommander, <i>recommend</i>	sourire, <i>smile</i>
permettre (se), <i>permit</i>	recommencer, ¹ <i>begin again</i>	se souvenir, <i>recollect</i>
persuader, <i>persuade</i>	refuser, ³ <i>refuse</i>	suggérer, <i>suggest</i>
se piquer, <i>pride o. s. (on)</i>	regretter, <i>regret</i>	supplier, <i>beseech</i>
plaindre, <i>pity</i> [of]	se réjouir, <i>rejoice</i>	tâcher, ² <i>try</i>
se plaindre, <i>complain</i>	remercier, <i>thank (for)</i>	tenter, ² <i>attempt</i>
prendre garde, ³ <i>take care</i>	se repentir, <i>repent (of)</i>	trembler, ³ <i>tremble, fear</i>
not, beware (of)	reprendre, <i>reprove (for)</i>	trouver bon, <i>think fit</i>
prendre soin, <i>take care</i>	réprimander, <i>reprimand</i>	se vanter, <i>boast (of)</i>
prescrire, <i>prescribe</i>	(for)	venir, ³ ⁴ <i>have just</i>

¹ Or à. ² Sometimes à. ³ See also list of verbs requiring à (§ 279, 6).

⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

281. Distinctions. As appears from the list, the same verb sometimes requires à, de, or the direct infinitive. The following are examples of cases in which the sense varies with the construction:

1. Aimer:

J'aimerais bien le connaître.
J'aime mieux vous dire tout.
Aimez-vous à demeurer ici?

I should like to know him.
I prefer to tell you all.
Do you like to live here?

2. Décider:

Il m'a décidé à entrer.
Nous décidâmes de partir.

He induced me to go in.
We decided to set out.

3. Défier:

On le défia à boire.
Je vous défie de prouver cela.

They challenged him to drink.
I defy you to prove that.

4. Descendre:

Descends chercher ton chapeau.
Il descendit même à voler.

Go down and get your hat.
He even descended to theft.

5. Déterminer:

Je l'ai déterminé à rester.
Il avait déterminé de le rebâtir.

I induced him to stay.
 He had determined to rebuild it.

6. Dire:

Il dit l'avoir vu.
Je lui ai dit de venir.

He says he saw it.
 I told him to come.

✓7. S'empresser:

Il s'empressait à lui plaire.
Il s'empressa de répondre.

He was eager to please her.
 He hastened to reply.

8. Être:

Je suis à écrire des lettres.
C'est à vous de parler.
C'est à vous à parler.

I am (busy) writing letters.
 It is your place (*or* turn) to speak.
 It is your turn to speak.

✓9. Se fatiguer:

Il se fatigua à jouer au billard.
Il est fatigué de jouer.

He fatigued himself playing billiards.
 He is tired playing.

10. Finir:

Il ne finissait pas à me le dire.
J'ai fini de travailler.

He was never done telling me so.
 I have finished working.

11. Jurer:

Je jure l'avoir vu.
Je jure de le faire.

I swear I saw it.
 I swear I will do it.

✓12. Laisser:

Je l'ai laissé dire.
Je vous laisse à penser.
Il ne laissa pas de parler.

I let him talk.
 I leave you to think.
 He did not stop talking.

13. Se lasser:

Il s'est lassé à courir.
Il se lasse de courir.

He tired himself out (by) running.
 He is tired of running.

14. Manquer:

Ne manquez pas d'y être.
Je manquai de tomber.
Il ne manque jamais à faire son devoir.

Don't fail to be there.
 I was on the point of falling.
 He never fails to do his duty.

15. Obliger:

Je l'ai obligé à (de) le faire.

I obliged him to do it.

Je suis obligé de partir.

Vous m'obligerez beaucoup de le faire.

I am obliged to go.

You will greatly oblige me by doing it.

16. S'occuper:

Il s'occupe à lire.

Il s'occupe de détruire les abus.

He is busy reading.

He is intent on destroying abuses.

17. Penser:

Que pensez-vous faire ?

Je pensai tomber.

Je pense à répondre à cela.

What do you intend to do ?

I nearly fell.

I think of replying to that.

18. Prendre garde:

Prenez garde à ne pas le faire.

Prenez garde de (ne pas) tomber.

Take care not to do it.

Take care not to fall.

19. Prétendre:

Il prétend vous connaître.

Il prétend à devenir savant.

He asserts that he knows you.

He aspires to become learned.

20. Prier:

Il m'a prié à dîner.

Je vous prie de m'aider.

He invited me to dine.

I pray (ask) you to help me.

21. Refuser:

Me refusez-vous à manger ?

Je refuserai d'y aller.

Do you refuse to give me food ?

I shall refuse to go.

22. Résoudre:

Il m'a résolu à l'acheter.

J'ai résolu de l'acheter.

He induced me to buy it.

I have determined to buy it.

23. Trembler:

Il tremble à me voir.

Il tremble de me rencontrer.

He trembles when he sees me.

He fears to meet me.

24. Venir:

Venez nous voir.

Si vous veniez à le voir.

Je viens de le voir.

Come to see us.

If you should happen to see him.

I have just seen him.

282. Infinitive with other Prepositions. The infinitive stands also after **par**, **pour**, **sans**, **après**, **entre**, and after locutions ending in **de** or **à**, such as **afin de**, **avant de**, **jusqu'à**, etc.:

1. **Par** = *by* usually only after **commencer** and **finir**:

Il finit par m'insulter.

He ended by insulting me (*or He finally insulted me*).

2. **Pour** usually translates *in order to*, *for the purpose of*; sometimes also *for*, *from*, *because*, *though*, etc., and *to* after *assez*, *trop*, etc.:

Il faut manger pour vivre.

We must eat (in order) to live.

Il est mort pour avoir trop bu.

He died from over-drinking.

Il fut puni pour avoir ri.

He was punished for laughing.

Pour être pauvre, il n'est pas larron.

Though poor, he is no thief.

Il est trop franc pour se taire.

He is too frank to keep quiet.

a. Pour after a verb of motion (§ 278, 4) emphasizes the purpose:
J'irai pour le voir. I shall go to see him.

3. **Sans** = *without*:

Ne partez pas sans manger.

Do not go without eating.

4. **Après** = *after* requires the perfect infinitive:

Après avoir diné, je partis.

After having dined, I set out.

283. Infinitive for Subordinate Clause. 1. An infinitive construction usually replaces a **que** clause of which the subject is the same with that of the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause:

Il croit vous avoir vu.

He thinks that he has seen you.

Dites-leur de s'en aller.

Tell them to be gone.

2. Similarly **afin de**, **à moins de**, **après**, **avant de**, **de crainte de**, **de peur de**, **de façon à**, **de manière à**, **pour**, **sans**, etc. + the infinitive stand for **afin que**, etc. + the subjunctive, but only when the subject of both verbs is the same:

Il partit sans me voir.

He went without seeing me.

But: Il partit sans que je le visse.

He went without my seeing him.

284. Infinitive with Passive Force. A transitive infinitive has (seeming) passive force after verbs of perceiving

(*voir*, etc.), after *faire*, *laisser*, and when *à* + an infinitive is used adjectively (cf. § 241, 3):

<i>J'ai vu bâti cette maison.</i>	I saw this house being built.
<i>Je me fais faire un habit.</i>	I am having a coat made for myself.
<i>Vous êtes à plaindre.</i>	You are to be pitied.
<i>Une faute à éviter.</i>	A mistake to be avoided.

NOTE.—This construction may be explained by supplying some such ellipsis as the following: *J'ai vu bâti une maison à or par quelqu'un*, *I have seen somebody building a house.*

285. Infinitive for English -ing. The infinitive must be used to translate many such forms (see § 287, 2, 3, 4).

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

286. Functions. The participial form in *-ant* serves as a verbal adjective, as a present participle (without *en*), and as a gerund (with *en*):

1. As a verbal adjective, it denotes quality or state, and agrees like an adjective:

<i>Elle paraît bien portante.</i>	She seems well.
<i>Les enfants doivent être obéissants.</i>	Children must be obedient.
<i>Les vivants, et les mourants.</i>	The living and the dying.
<i>Des paroles consolantes.</i>	Comforting words.

✓*Obs.:* The verbal adjective, attributively, regularly follows the noun, as in the last example.

a. Some verbs have a special form for the verbal adjective:

ADJ.	PART.	ADJ.	PART.
<i>différent, different</i>	<i>diffréant</i>	<i>négligent, careless</i>	<i>négligeant</i>
<i>convaincant, convincing</i>	<i>convainquant</i>	<i>puissant, powerful</i>	<i>pouvant</i>
<i>fatigant, fatiguing</i>	<i>fatiguant</i>	<i>savant, learned</i>	<i>sachant</i>

2. As a present participle, it is used, in general, like the English present participle, to denote simultaneous action, manner, cause, motive, etc., and is invariable:

<i>Pleurant, elle continua le récit.</i>	Weeping, she continued the story.
<i>Je le trouvai riant comme un fou.</i>	I found him laughing like mad.
<i>Elle ne sortit pas, étant malade.</i>	She did not go out, being ill.

Ayant parlé ainsi, il sortit.
Il n'entrera pas, moi vivant.

Having thus spoken, he went out.
 He shall not enter while I live.

NOTES. — 1. It is often difficult to determine whether the form in -ant is participle (invariable) or adjective (variable). As a participle, the action (generally transitory) is prominent, but as an adjective, quality or else continued action (state) is denoted. It is nearly always a participle when it has a complement or a construction peculiar to the verb, such as object, negative, adverb following: *Une femme mourante*, *A dying woman*; *Des gens mourant de faim*, *People dying of hunger*; *Les ennemis se retirèrent, brûlant les villes partout*, *The enemy retired, burning the towns everywhere*; *Une femme ne craignant rien*, *A woman fearing nothing*; *Des dames parlant doucement*, *Ladies speaking softly*; *De soi-disant amis*, *So-called friends*.

2. In the last example, *soi-disant*, though adjective in force, remains invariable in view of the literal meaning, *calling themselves*.

3. Ayant and étant are also always invariable, except in *les ayants-droit* (-cause).

3. As a gerund, it denotes either simultaneous action or 'means by which,' and is invariable; **en** = *while, in, on, when, as, by, etc.*, or is untranslated:

En jouant, j'ai perdu ma montre. While playing, I lost my watch.
En rentrant, j'ai trouvé la lettre. On returning, I found the letter.
Vous perdrez, en agissant ainsi. You will lose if you act thus.
En lisant on apprend à lire. By reading one learns to read.

a. Both participle and gerund denote simultaneous action, but the use of **en**, strengthened sometimes by **tout**, usually emphasizes the continuity of the action: (+ concessive force):

(**En**) *disant ceci, il prit la lyre.* (While) saying this, he took the harp.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua. Still weeping, she went on.

b. The gerund usually refers to the subject:

Je l'ai vu en allant à la poste. I saw him while going to the post.
 But: **L'appétit vient en mangeant.** One's appetite comes while eating.

c. **En** is sometimes omitted, especially after **aller**:

Généralement parlant. Generally speaking.
Il s'en va (en) grondant. Off he goes grumbling.

✗d. The gerund denotes progressive action in a few expressions formed from **aller**:

Cela alla (en) diminuant. That kept growing less and less.

287. English Forms in -ing. These are variously translated into French; idiomatic differences are:

1. Periphrastic tense forms are avoided in French:
Il a joué toute la matinée. He has been playing all morning.
 ✗2. English gerunds are translated by an -ant form only when the preposition *en* may be used; otherwise by an infinitive, a noun, or a clause:

En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
But: Il parle de partir.	He speaks of going away.
Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.	He was hanged for having stolen.
Elle partit sans dire adieu.	She went without saying good-bye.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
J'aime la chasse (or à chasser).	I like hunting.
Je suis étonné qu'il soit venu.	I am surprised at his coming.

- ✗ 3. After verbs of perception (*entendre, sentir, voir*, etc.), the relative or infinitive construction is much commoner than the participle:

Je les vois venir (qui viennent or venant).	I see them coming.
Les voilà qui passent!	See them passing!
Il a vu sortir mes frères.	He saw my brothers going out.
Les avez-vous entendus frapper (qui frappaient)?	Did you hear them knocking?
Je la (or lui) vis frapper l'enfant.	I saw her striking the child.

4. Compound nouns with a first component in -ing are not literally translated:

Une machine à coudre. A sewing-machine.

5. It is often more elegant to avoid a French form in -ant, even when permissible:

Pendant mon voyage. While traveling.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

288. **General Use.** The past participle is used, (1) without auxiliary, (2) with *être*, (3) with *avoir* (or *être* used as *avoir*).

289. **Without Auxiliary.** A past participle without any auxiliary has the force of an adjective (attributive, predica-

tive, appositive), and agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word qualified:

Des fêtes données par le roi.	Festivities given by the king.
Les battus; les morts.	The beaten; the dead.
Le passé n'est plus à nous.	The past is no longer ours.
Jean et Marie semblent fatigués.	John and Mary look tired.
Tenez les portes fermées.	Keep the doors closed.
Ils me regardèrent étonnés.	They looked at me astonished.

~~a.~~ Certain past participles have prepositional force when preceding the substantive, and are invariable, but are variable when following:

Vu les difficultés.	In view of the difficulties.
Excepté eux; eux exceptés.	Except them; they excepted.

Such are: *Approuvé, attendu, certifié, collationné, y compris, non compris, entendu, excepté, oui, payé, passé, supposé, vu*, etc.

b. *Ci-inclus = enclosed* and *ci-joint = herewith*, are invariable when beginning a sentence, or when followed by a noun without article:

Ci-inclus la copie, etc.	Herewith the copy, etc.
Vous recevez ci-joint copie, etc.	You receive herewith a copy, etc.
But: J'envoie ci-jointe une (la) copie, etc.	I send herewith a (the) copy, etc.

290. Past Participle with *être*. A past participle with *être* agrees with the subject; for exceptions see § 244:

Ils sont (ont été) battus.	They are (have been) beaten.
Marie et Louise sont venues.	Mary and Louisa have come.
Ils sont sortis.	They have gone out.
Les dames étant arrivées.	The ladies having come.
Elle parla d'avoir été blessée.	She spoke of having been hurt.

~~a.~~ Hence the past participle of an impersonal verb with *être* is invariable, agreeing strictly with the grammatical subject *il*:

Il était venu des soldats.	Soldiers had come.
----------------------------	--------------------

291. Past Participle with *avoir*. 1. A past participle with *avoir* agrees with a preceding direct object; otherwise it is invariable:

La pièce que j'ai écrite, l'avez-vous lue?	Have you read the play I wrote?
Quels livres a-t-il apportés?	What books did he bring?

But: *J'ai écrit la lettre.*
Elles ont lu et écrit.
Je lui ai donné la lettre.

I have written the letter.
 They have read and written.
 I have given her the letter.

2. Similarly, the past participle of a reflexive verb (conjugated with *être* for *avoir*) always agrees with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect:

Ils se sont réjouis.
Elles s'étaient trompées.
Elle s'est blessée.
Elle s'est laissée tomber.
 But: *Ils se sont écrit.*
Elle s'est blessé la main.
Ils se sont arrogé ce privilège.
Ils se sont plu à Paris.

They have rejoiced.
 They were mistaken.
 She wounded (*or* hurt) herself.
 She has fallen (fell).
 They wrote to each other.
 She wounded her hand.
 They assumed that privilege.
 They enjoyed themselves in Paris.

3a. Besides the indirect reflexive object, a direct object may be present, with which the following past participle agrees:

Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées. The dresses she bought herself.

292. Remarks. All cases of the agreement of the past participle depend upon the above general principles; special difficulties are:

1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is invariable:
La belle journée qu'il a fait! What a fine day it was!
La disette qu'il y a eu. The scarcity that there was.

2. A noun denoting distance, time, price, weight, etc., with such verbs as *marcher*, *courir*, *vivre*, *coûter*, *peser*, *valoir*, etc., is adverbial accusative (not direct object); hence no agreement:

Les dix milles que j'ai marché. The ten miles I walked.
Les cent francs que cet ouvrage m'a coûté. The hundred francs that book cost me.

a. Such verbs used transitively, or figuratively with transitive force, follow the general rule:

La malle que j'ai pesée. The trunk which I weighed.
Les dangers qu'il a courus. The dangers he incurred.
La peur que cela a coûtée. The fear which that caused.

3. A past participle preceded by an expression of number or quantity, a collective, etc., is variable or invariable according to the sense (cf. § 231-234):

Que de maux il a soufferts !	What ills he endured !
C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.	It is the half of the furniture that has been seized.
La moitié des meubles que j'ai vendus.	The half of the furniture which I sold.
Quelle joie, quel bonheur vous lui avez procuré !	What joy, what happiness you have procured him !

a. Partitive en is never a direct object; agreement, however, takes place with combien, plus, moins, preceding en, if the sense be plural:

Combien Dieu en a-t-il exaucés !	How many of them God has heard !
Plus on vous a donné de livres, plus vous en avez lus.	The more books you were given, the more of them you read.

4. When an infinitive (with or without a preposition) follows, the past participle is invariable when the preceding direct object is governed by the infinitive, and variable if governed by the past participle alone:

La lettre que j'ai voulu écrire.	The letter I wished to write.
La lettre que j'ai oublié d'écrire.	The letter I forgot to write.
Il nous a priés d'y aller.	He begged us to go.
On nous a dit de sortir.	They told us to go out.

a. Entendu, vu, laissé, agree when the infinitive has active force, but are invariable if it has passive force (§ 284):

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.	The lady I heard sing(ing).
Les enfants que j'ai vu battre.	The children I saw beaten.

b. After dû, pu, voulu, osé, with auxiliary force, a governing infinitive is either expressed or implied; hence no agreement:

J'ai lu tous les livres que j'ai pu (lire).	I read all the books that I could (read).
But: Les livres que j'ai voulus.	The books I wished.

c) Fait + infinitive is invariable:

Les médecins qu'il a fait venir.	The doctors he sent for.
----------------------------------	--------------------------

d. The past participle of avoir à is variable or invariable:

Les lettres que j'ai eu (eues) à lire.	The letters I had to read.
--	----------------------------

~~X~~5. The relative pronoun *que* is sometimes direct object of a verb in a following *que* clause, either fully expressed or implied, and hence the past participle is invariable:

Des choses que j'ai cru qu'il ferait. Things I thought he would do.
 J'ai lu les livres qu'il a voulu (que I read the books which he wished
 je lusse). (me to read).

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

293. Transitives. 1. A transitive verb governs a direct object, as in English:

J'ai écrit la lettre (des lettres). I wrote the letter (letters).

2. A transitive verb can have only one direct object; other substantives related to it must stand as indirect object or as prepositional complement:

Pardonnez-lui ses péchés.	Pardon him his sins.
Je donne le dé à la fille.	I give the girl the thimble.
Je lui donne le dé avec plaisir.	I give her the thimble with pleasure.
Je conseille à mon fils de partir.	I advise my son to go.

~~X~~a. By an extension of this principle, the verb *faire* = *make, cause to, etc.*, + an infinitive, requires an indirect personal object when the infinitive has a direct object:

Je fais lire ce livre à mon fils.	I make (have) my son read this book.
Je lui fais lire ce livre.	I make him read this book.
But: Je fais lire mon fils.	I make my son read.
Je le fais lire.	I make him read.

b. *Laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr*, may have, and frequently do have, the same construction:

Laissez-le (-lui) lire le livre.	Let him read the book.
Je l'(lui) ai vu jouer ce rôle.	I saw him play that part.
But: Laissez lire l'enfant.	Let the child read.

294. Intransitives. An intransitive verb can have no direct object, but may, of course, have an indirect object or a prepositional complement:

Il parle à ce soldat.	He is speaking to that soldier.
Il lui parle de la guerre.	He speaks to him of the war.

- a. A very few intransitives govern a direct object anomalously:
- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Il a vécu sa vie en héros. | He lived his life like a hero. |
| Il va tout droit son chemin. | He goes straight on his way. |

NOTE.—Many verbs serve either as transitives or intransitives: *Il est descendu* (intransitive), *He has gone down*; *Il a descendu le tableau* (transitive), *He has taken down the picture*.

~~X~~ 295. Predicative Complement.

Nouns are used predicatively after certain verbs, as follows:

1. In nominative relation:

Ils sont Anglais.	They are Englishmen.
Il est médecin.	He is a doctor.
Elle est morte jeune fille.	She died a young girl.

Such verbs are:

✓demeurer, remain	être censé, be supposed	passer, pass
✓devenir, become	✓mourir, die	rester, remain
entrer, enter	✓naître, be born	sembler, seem
être, be	✓paraître, appear	sortir, go out, etc.

2. In accusative relation:

On le fit roi.	They made him king.
Je le crois honnête homme.	I think he is an honest man.
Je le connais incapable de mentir.	I know he is incapable of falsehood.

Such verbs are:

✓appeler, call	estimer, esteem	✓se montrer, show oneself
couronner, crown	✓faire, make	✓nommer, name
croire, believe	se faire, become	✓proclamer, proclaim
déclarer, declare	instituer, institute	✓savoir, know, etc.

296. Prepositional Complement.

The use of **de** and **à** presents special difficulty; other prepositions have, in general, their usual literal force:

1. Some verbs with **de** have the force of an English transitive:

Il jouit d'une parfaite santé.	He enjoys perfect health.
Elle s'est trompée de porte.	She took the wrong door.
On se sert d'encre pour écrire.	Ink is used for writing.

Such verbs are:

abuser de, misuse	s'approcher de, approach	avoir peur de, fear
s'apercevoir de, perceive	avoir besoin de, need	avoir pitié de, pity

✓convenir de, admit	gémir de, <i>bemoan</i>	se passer de, <i>do without</i>
se défier de, <i>mistrust</i>	jouir de, <i>enjoy</i>	se servir de, <i>use</i>
✓se démettre de, <i>resign</i>	✓manquer de, <i>lack</i>	se souvenir de, <i>recollect</i>
disconvenir de, <i>deny</i>	médire de, <i>slander</i>	se tromper de, <i>mistake</i>
✓douter de, <i>doubt</i>	se méfier de, <i>mistrust</i>	user de, <i>employ, use</i>
se douter de, <i>suspect</i>	✓partir de, <i>leave</i>	etc.

2. Similarly, some verbs with à have the force of an English transitive:

Il obéit à son père.

He obeys his father.

Elle ressemble à sa mère.

She resembles her mother.

Such verbs are:

✓aller à, <i>fit, suit</i>	nuire à, <i>harm</i>	promettre à, <i>promise</i>
✓arriver à, <i>reach</i>	obéir à, <i>obey</i>	remédier à, <i>remedy</i>
attenter à, <i>attempt (the life)</i>	obvier à, <i>obviate</i>	renoncer à, <i>renounce</i>
compatir à, <i>pity</i>	ordonner à, <i>order</i>	répondre à, <i>answer</i>
✓convenir à, <i>suit</i>	pardonner à, <i>pardon</i>	✓résister à, <i>resist</i>
déplaire à, <i>displease</i>	parvenir à, <i>attain</i>	ressembler à, <i>resemble</i>
désobéir à, <i>disobey</i>	✓permettre à, <i>permit</i>	✓succéder à, <i>succeed</i>
se fier à, <i>trust</i>	persuader à, <i>persuade</i>	survivre à, <i>survive</i>
✓importer à, <i>concern</i>	plaire à, <i>please</i>	etc.

3. In some instances, on the contrary, a French transitive has the force of an English verb + a preposition.

Payez-lui les livres.

Pay him *for* the books.

Je regarde cet arbre-là.

I am looking *at* that tree.

Such verbs are:

accepter, <i>accept of</i>	demander, <i>ask for</i>	payer, <i>pay for</i>
admettre, <i>admit of</i>	désirer, <i>wish for</i>	regarder, <i>look at</i>
✓approuver, <i>approve of</i>	écouter, <i>listen to</i>	✓rencontrer, <i>meet with</i>
attendre, <i>wait for</i>	envoyer chercher, <i>send for</i>	souhaiter, <i>wish for</i>
chercher, <i>look for</i>	✓espérer, <i>hope for</i>	etc.

(4.) De and à frequently have, as compared with English, a special idiomatic force with certain verbs:

Cela dépend de vous.

That depends on you.

Pensez à votre devoir.

Think of your duty.

Such verbs are:

s'affliger de, <i>grieve at</i>	blâmer de, <i>blame for</i>	consoler de, <i>console for</i>
approcher(s') de, <i>draw near to</i>	complimenter de, <i>compliment on</i>	déjeuner de, <i>breakfast on</i>

se désoler de, grieve over	se nourrir de, live on	remercier de, thank for
dîner de, dine on	profiter de, profit by	rire de, laugh at
féliciter de, congratulate on	vpunir de, punish for	triompher de, triumph over
gémir de, lament over	récompenser de, re-	Aivre de, live on
✓touser de, praise for	ward for	etc.
se mêler de, meddle with	se réjouir de, rejoice at	

✓acheter qqch. à qqu., buy something from (or for) some one	ôter qqch. à qqu., take away from
arracher qqch. à qqu., snatch from	✓pardonner qqch. à qqu., pardon for
cacher qqch. à qqu., hide from	✓payer qqch. à qqu., pay for
conférer qqch. à qqu., confer on	penser à qqch. or à qqu., think of
demander qqch. à qqu., ask for (of)	prendre qqch. à qqu., take from
✓dérober qqch. à qqu., steal from	✓pourvoir à qqch., provide for
✓emprunter qqch. à qqu., borrow from	procurer qqch. à qqu., procure for
infliger qqch. à qqu., inflict on	prodiguer qqch. à qqu., lavish on
inspirer qqch. à qqu., inspire with	reprocher qqch. à qqu., reproach with
mêler qqch. à qqch., mingle with	✓souhaiter qqch. à qqu., wish
	voler qqch. à qqu., steal from

5. Many verbs have a double construction with varying meaning:

Il jouent *aux* cartes.

They are playing cards.

Elle joue *du* piano.

She is playing the piano.

Such verbs are:

abuser qqu., deceive	
abuser de qqch., misuse	
assister qqu., help	
assister à qqch., be present at, witness	
concourir à qqch., contribute to	
concourir pour qqch., compete for	
convenir à qqu., suit	
convenir de qqch., agree about	
croire qqu. or qqch., believe	
croire à, en, believe in	
démander qqu. or qqch., ask after	
démander qqch. à qqu., ask for (from, of)	

hériter de qqu., be heir of	
hériter de qqch., inherit	

jouer qqu., deceive	[strument
jouer d'un instrument, play on an in-	
jouer à un jeu, play (at) a game	
manquer qqu. or qqch., miss	
manquer de, lack, be nearly	
manquer à, fail in	

(penser à, think of (about))	
(penser de, have opinion of	
prétendre qqch., assert	
prétendre à, aspire to	
servir, serve (tr. and intr.)	
servir de, serve as	
servir à, be useful for	
se servir de, make use of	
suppléer qqu., take the place of	
suppléer à qqch., complete	
toucher qqu. or qqch., touch	
toucher de l'argent, draw money	
toucher à, meddle with, be near to	
toucher d'un instrument, play an instrument (keyed)	
user qqch., wear out	
user de, make use of	
en user de, deal, act	
veiller qqu., watch over, nurse	
veiller à qqch., attend to, watch over	
veiller sur qqu., watch over, etc.	

297. Position. Objects and prepositional complements regularly follow the verb, the direct object (if any) being first; but if of unequal length, the longer is usually last. For position of personal pronouns, see the Pronoun.

298. Composite Complement. The various parts of a complement must be of the same grammatical value, *i.e.*, all nouns, all verbs, etc.:

Il apprend à lire et à chanter. He learns to read and sing.
Il apprend la lecture et le chant. He learns reading and singing.

299. Manifold Verb. Two or more verbs can govern the same complement only if alike in government:

Il aime et respecte son *oncle*. He loves and respects his uncle.
Il aime son *oncle* et *lui* obéit. He loves and obeys his uncle.

THE NOUN

GENDER OF NOUNS

300. General Rule. Nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. As an aid to memory, general rules for determining gender are given in the following sections.

301. Gender by Derivation. 1. Nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine:

Mur (L. *murum*); livre (L. *librum*); Wall; book; order; poet.
ordre (L. *ordinem*); poète (L. *poeta*).

a. Exceptions are not uncommon; Latin masculine abstracts in -or (accusative -orem) have become feminine, except masculine honneur, déshonneur, labeur, amour:

candeur, f. (L. <i>candorem</i>), innocence	erreur, f. (L. <i>errorem</i>), error
* couleur, f. (L. <i>colorem</i>), color	fureur, f. (L. <i>furorem</i>), fury
douleur, f. (L. <i>dolorem</i>), pain	etc.

* Masculine in such phrases as couleur de feu, couleur de rose, etc., e.g., ce ruban est d'un beau couleur de rose.

2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines are regularly feminine:

Justice (L. *justitiam*); **charité** Justice; charity; hand; faith.
 (L. *caritatem*); **main** (L. *manum*); **foi** (L. *fidem*).

3. Nouns derived from Latin neuters are regularly masculine:

Corps (L. *corpus*); **fer** (L. *ferrum*); Body; iron; gold; meadow; **centor** (L. *aurum*); **pré** (L. *pratum*); tury; verb.
siècle (L. *sæculum*); **verbe** (L. *verbum*).

a. More than a hundred neuter plurals in -a have become feminine singular in French, just as if derived from nouns in -a of the Latin first declension:

arme (L. <i>arma</i>), arm	feuille (L. <i>folia</i>), leaf	lèvre (L. <i>labra</i>), lip
date (L. <i>data</i>), date	graine (L. <i>grana</i>), seed	œuvre (L. <i>opera</i>), work
dette (L. <i>debita</i>), debt	huile (L. <i>olea</i>), oil	pomme (L. <i>poma</i>) apple
étude (L. <i>studia</i>), study	joie (L. <i>gaudia</i>), joy	etc.

302. Gender by Endings. 1. Masculine are most nouns ending as follows:

(1) In a vowel sound (not -e mute):

Un opéra (côté, chapeau, cheveu). An opera (side, hat, hair).
 Un parti (zéro, caillou, tissu). A party (zero, pebble, tissue).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

guérilla, <i>guerilla</i>	moitié, <i>half</i>	bru, <i>daughter-in-law</i>
gutta-percha, <i>gutta-percha</i>	fourmi, <i>ant</i>	glu, <i>bird lime</i>
polka, <i>polka</i>	merci, <i>mercy</i>	tribu, <i>tribe</i>
razzia, <i>raid</i>	foi, <i>faith</i>	vertu, <i>virtue</i>
tombola, <i>charity lottery</i>	loi, <i>law</i>	eau, <i>water</i>
véranda, <i>veranda</i>	paroi, <i>wall</i>	peau, <i>skin</i>
cité, <i>city</i>	virago, <i>virago</i>	etc.

Further, most abstracts in -té, -tié:

amitié, <i>friendship</i>	liberté, <i>liberty</i>	santé, <i>health</i>
charité, <i>charity</i>	pitié, <i>pity</i>	etc.

(2) In a consonant:

Le sac (pied, joug, sol, nez, temps). The sack (foot, yoke, soil, nose, time).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

clef, key	chair, flesh	vis, screw	croix, cross
nef, ship, nave	cour, court	dent, tooth	faux, scythe
soif, thirst	cuiller, spoon	dot, dower	noix, walnut
faim, hunger	mer, sea	forêt, forest	paix, peace
façon, fashion	tour, tower	gent, tribe	perdrix, partridge
fin, end	brebis, sheep	mort, death	poix, pitch
leçon, lesson	fois, time	nuit, night	xouxs, cough
main, hand	oasis, oasis	part, part, share	voix, voice
rançon, ransom	souris, mouse	chaux, lime	etc.

Further, nouns in -son, -ion and most abstracts in -eur (cf. § 301, a):

chanson, song	nation, nation	faveur, favor
maison, house	occasion, occasion	fureur, fury
raison, reason	possession, possession	peur, fear
trahison, treason	couleur, color	etc.

(3) In -acle, -age, -asme, -ège, -ème, -isme, -tère:

Le spectacle (voyage, sarcasme, collège, diadème, magnétisme, mystère). The spectacle (journey, sarcasm, college, diadem, magnetism, mystery).

a. The following feminines in -age should be noted:

cage, cage	nage, swimming	plage, beach
image, image	page, page (of a book)	rage, rage

2. Feminine are most nouns ending as follows:

(1) In -e preceded by a vowel or double consonant:

Une année (vie, vue, raie, soie, roue, pluie, famille, flamme, couronne, tristesse, botte). A year (life, sight, streak, silk, wheel, rain, family, flame, crown, sadness, boot).

(2) In -ace, -ade, -ance, -ence, -ense, -ière, -oire, -ude, -ure:

La préface (salade, constance, présence, défense, lumière, histoire, habitude, culture). The preface (salad, constancy, presence, defence, light, history, habit, culture).

303. Gender by Meaning. 1. Names of male beings are usually masculine, and names of female beings feminine:

Un homme; une femme. A man; a woman.

Un bœuf; une vache. An ox; a cow.

a. Most nouns denoting professions, *e.g.*, *auteur*, *author*, *écrivain*, *writer*, *imprimeur*, *printer*, etc., and a few nouns lacking a feminine form, *e.g.*, *ange*, *angel*, *témoin*, *witness*, etc., remain masculine when applied to females:

Cette dame est un auteur distingué. That lady is a celebrated author-ess.

Marie est un ange. Mary is an angel.

b. Some names of lower animals are masculine only, *e.g.*, *éléphant*, *elephant*, *hibou*, *owl*; others are feminine only, *e.g.*, *fourmi*, *ant*, *souris*, *mouse*; ambiguity may be avoided by adding *mâle* or *femelle*:

Un éléphant mâle (femelle). A bull (cow) elephant.

c. Some nouns are feminine only, whether applied to males or females:

caution, <i>surety</i>	personne, <i>person</i>	vedette, <i>scout</i>
connaissance, <i>acquaintance</i>	pratique, <i>customer</i>	victime, <i>victim</i>
dupe, <i>dupe</i>	recrue, <i>recruit</i>	vigie, <i>look-out man</i>
ganache, <i>blockhead</i>	sentinelle, <i>sentinel</i>	etc.

X 2. The following are masculine:

(1) Names of cardinal points and winds:

Le nord; le sud; le zéphyr. The north; the south; the zephyr.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

bise, <i>north wind</i>	mousson, <i>monsoon</i>	tramontane, <i>north wind</i>
brise, <i>breeze</i>		

(2) Names of seasons, months, days of the week:

Le printemps; octobre; lundi. Spring; October; Monday.

(3) Names of countries not ending in *-e*:

Le Canada; le Dauphiné; le Chili. Canada; Dauphiny; Chile.

(4) Most names of mountains not ending in *-es*, and most names of rivers:

Le Hartz; le Jura. The Harz mts.; the Jura mts.

Les Apennins. The Apennines.

Le Volga; le Rhône; le Rhin. The Volga; the Rhone; the Rhine.

But fem.: *Les Alpes (Pyrénées, Vosges, etc.).*

a. The rivers of France in *-e* are nearly all feminine:

La Seine, la Loire, etc. The Seine, the Loire, etc.

(5) Names of trees and shrubs:

Le chêne; le bouleau; le pommier. The oak; the birch; the apple tree.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

aubépine, <i>hawthorn</i>	épine, <i>thorn</i>	vigne, <i>vine</i>
bourdaine, <i>buckthorn</i>	hièble, <i>dwarf elder</i>	viorne, <i>wild clematis</i>
bruyère, <i>heath</i>	ronce, <i>bramble</i>	etc.

(6) Names of weights and measures of the metrical system:

Un mètre (*gramme, litre*, etc.). A meter (*gramme, liter*, etc.).

(7) Names of metals and chemicals:

Le fer (or, cuivre, argent, sul-	Iron (gold, copper, silver, sul-
fate).	phate).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

fonte, <i>cast iron</i>	tôle, <i>sheet iron</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------

X(8) Words and phrases not nouns when used as nouns:

Le beau; le blanc; le français. The beautiful; white; French.

Un a; un mais; un oui-dire. An 'a'; a 'but'; a rumor.

Le derrière de la tête. The back of the head.

a. Adjectives referring to concrete objects have the gender of the noun understood:

Une belle (sc. dame, femme, etc.). A beauty.

Une capitale (sc. ville, lettre). A capital.

b. The names of the letters of the alphabet, as given in § 4, are all masculine, but f, b, l, m, n, r, s are often treated as feminine.

Un a; un b; une (or un) f. An 'a'; a 'b'; an 'f.'

3. The following are feminine:

(1) Names of countries in -e:

La France (Asie, Normandie). France (Asia, Normandy).

a. Some masculine exceptions are:

le Bengale, *Bengal* le Mexique, *Mexico* le Maine, *Maine* (in Fr.)

(2) Most names of cities and towns, especially in -e, -es:

Rome; Athènes; Tyr; Ilion. Rome; Athens; Tyre; Ilium.

a. Masculine exceptions are:

le Caire, <i>Cairo</i>	Londres, <i>London</i>	Paris, <i>Paris</i>
le Havre, <i>Havre</i>	Versailles, <i>Versailles</i>	etc.

X NOTES.—1. Any name of a town or city is masculine as a collective: *Tout Rome le sait*, All Rome knows it. 2. In case of doubt as to the gender, the name may always be preceded by la ville de = the town (city) of.

(3) Names of holidays, *fête de* being understood:

La Saint-Martin; la mi-juin. Martinmas; mid-June.

a. Observe:

Noël, m. (la Noël, la fête de Noël). Christmas.

(4) Names of arts, sciences, trades:

La peinture (chimie, librairie). Painting (chemistry, book-trade).

a. Principal exception:

le dessin, drawing

304. Nouns of Double Gender. 1. Some nouns denoting persons, mostly in -e, and adjectives in -e, when so used, are either masculine or feminine:

Un (une) artiste; un (une) élève. An artist; a pupil.

Un (une) malade; un (une) rebelle. A patient; a rebel.

Such nouns are:

aide, assistant	* enfant, child	propriétaire, owner
camarade, comrade	esclave, slave	pupille, ward
compatriote, compatriot	locataire, tenant	etc.

* Regularly masculine in the plural. But: *belles enfants, pretty little girls.*

2. The meaning of some nouns varies with the gender:

Un critique; une critique. A critic; a criticism.

Le mode; la mode. The mode, mood (*gram.*); the fashion.

Other such nouns are:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
aide	assistant	assistant, help	page
aune	alder	ell	pendule
crêpe	crape	pancake	poêle
garde	guard (mil.), keeper, body of keeper	troops, watch, hilt	politique
guide	guide	rein	poste
livre	book	pound	somme
manche	handle	sleeve	souris
mémoire	memorandum	memory	statuaire
merci	thanks	mercy, pity	tour
moule	mould	mussel	vapeur
mousse	cabin-boy	moss	yase
office	service	larder	voile

page *page* (of a book)
 pendulum *clock*
 stove, pall *frying-pan*
 politician *politics*
 position *post office*
 sleep, nap *sum*
 smile *mouse*
 sculptor *sculpture*
 turn, trick *tower*
 trumpeteter *trumpet*
 steamer *steam*
 vase *slime, mud*
 veil *sail*

3. The following nouns are either masculine or feminine, with identical or closely related meaning:

a. **Après-midi** = *afternoon* and **automne** = *autumn* are usually masculine, sometimes feminine.

b. **Amour** (m.) = *love, loved object, passion, amour*; **amour** (f. s. poet.) = *passion, amour*; **amours** (f. pl.) = *passion, amours*.

c. **Automobile** (m. or f.), more commonly feminine.

✓d. **Délice** = *delight* and **orgue** = *organ (music)* are masculine in singular and feminine in plural.

e. **Hymne** (m.) = *hymn, song of praise*; **hymne** (f.) = *(church) hymn*. (Commonly *cantique* is used.)

f. **Couple** (m.) = *couple, pair* (joined by affection, sentiment, etc.); **couple** (f.) = *couple, two* (two like objects taken together):

Un couple d'amoureux. - *un couple de personnes (étoffes)* A pair of lovers.

Une couple d'œufs. Two (a couple of) eggs.

Note: *Une paire de gants*, etc. A pair of gloves, etc.

✓g. **Pâque** or **pâques** (m. s.) = *Easter*; **pâques fleuries** (f. pl.) = *Palm Sunday* (so also in other phrases); **pâque** (f.) = *Passover*.

h. **Orge** (f.) = *barley* is masculine in *orge mondé (perlé)* = *pot-(pearl-) barley*.

i. **Foudre** (f.) = *thunderbolt* is sometimes masculine in poetry or elevated prose; **foudre** (m.) in *le foudre de Jupiter* = *Jove's thunderbolt* and in figurative expressions, e.g., *un grand foudre de guerre* = *a great warrior*.

j. **Œuvre** (f.) = *work, works*, is sometimes masculine in elevated style; **œuvre** (m. s.) = *works* (collectively of an engraver or musician); *le grand œuvre* = *the philosopher's stone*.

k. **Gens** (pl. m. or f.) = *people, persons, etc.* Attributive adjectives are feminine when preceding, and masculine when following **gens**, but predicatives, before or after, are masculine. *All* is translated by *toutes* only when attributive and separated from **gens** by an adjective variable for the feminine; otherwise by **tous**:

De bonnes gens. Good people.

Les vieilles gens sont malheureux. Old people are unhappy.

Les petites gens et les grands.	The small people and the great.
Merci, bonnes gens, merci.	Thanks, good people, thanks.
Ces gens sont heureux.	Those people are happy.
Toutes les vieilles gens.	All (the) old people.
Tous les gens.	All the people.
But: Tous les habiles gens.	All the clever people.
Tous ces gens-ci.	All these people.
Tous sont de bonnes gens.	All are good people.
Les gens sont tous ici.	The people are all here.

NOTES. — 1. A pronoun to which *gens* is antecedent is masculine: *Les gens qui sont venus*, *The people who have come*. 2. *Gens* in expressions like *gens de robe* = *lawyers* and in *jeunes gens* = *young men* is always masculine.

305. **Gender of Compound Nouns.** 1. Compound nouns made up of a verb + a governed noun are regularly masculine:

Un cure-dents; un porte-plume.	A toothpick; a penholder.
Un tire-bouchon; un portefeuille.	A corkscrew; a portfolio.

a. Occasionally they are feminine:
Une perce-neige.

A snowdrop.

2. The gender of other compounds is regularly that of the noun when only one noun is present, or of the principal noun in case there are two:

Une eau-forte.	An etching.
Une mappe-monde.	A map of the world.
La fête-dieu.	Corpus Christi day.

306. **Formation of the Feminine.** Most nouns denoting living beings distinguish the masculine and feminine as follows:

1. Some by a different word:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
bœuf, <i>ox</i>	vache	mari, <i>husband</i>	femme
bouc, <i>he-goat</i>	chèvre	oncle, <i>uncle</i>	tante
coq, <i>cock</i>	poule	parrain, <i>godfather</i>	marraine
frère, <i>brother</i>	sœur	porc, <i>pig</i>	truite
homme, <i>man</i>	femme	etc.	etc.

a. The feminine form is often obviously cognate:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
ambassadeur, <i>ambassador</i>	ambassadrice	gouverneur, <i>tutor</i>	gouvernante
canard, <i>drake</i>	cane	loup, <i>wolf</i>	louve
* chanteur, <i>singer</i>	cantatrice	mulet, <i>mule</i>	mule
cochon, <i>hog</i>	coche	* procureur, <i>proxy</i>	procuratrice
compagnon, <i>companion</i>	compagne	serviteur, <i>servant</i>	servante
dindon, <i>turkey cock</i>	dinde	vieillard, <i>old man</i>	vieille
empereur, <i>emperor</i>	impératrice	etc.	etc.

* Also in -euse, see § 337, 2 (2), a.

2. Some by adding -esse to the last consonant:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
abbé, <i>abbot</i>	abbesse	ogre, <i>ogre</i>	ogresse
âne, <i>ass</i>	ânesse	pair, <i>peer</i>	pairesse
chanoine, <i>canon</i>	chanoinesse	pauvre, <i>pauper</i>	pauvresse
comte, <i>count</i>	comtesse	prêtre, <i>priest</i>	prêtresse
diable, <i>devil</i>	diablesse	prince, <i>prince</i>	princesse
drôle, <i>rogue</i>	drôlesse	suisse, <i>Swiss</i>	suisesse
druide, <i>druid</i>	druidesse	tigre, <i>tiger</i>	tigresse
hôte, <i>host</i>	hôtesse	traître, <i>traitor</i>	traîtresse
maître, <i>master</i>	maîtresse	etc.	etc.

a. So also the following, but with changes in the stem:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
dieu, <i>god</i>	déesse	défendeur, <i>defendant</i>	défenderesse
doge, <i>doge</i>	dogaresse	* demandeur, <i>plaintiff</i>	demanderesse
duc, <i>duke</i>	duchesse	docteur, <i>doctor</i>	doctoresse
larron, <i>thief</i>	larronnesse	enchanteur, <i>enchanter</i>	enchanteresse
nègre, <i>negro</i>	nègresse	pêcheur, <i>sinner</i>	pêcheresse
prophète, <i>prophet</i>	prophétesse	* vendeur, <i>seller (law)</i>	venderesse
* chasseur, <i>huntsman</i>	chasseresse	vengeur, <i>avenger</i>	vengeresse

* Also in -euse, see § 337, 2 (2), a.

3. A few nouns take -ine:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
tsar, <i>czar</i>	tsarine	Philippe, <i>Philip</i>	Philippine
héros, <i>hero</i>	héroïne	etc.	etc.

4. Most other nouns follow the analogy of adjectives of like termination, and will be noted under the Adjective.

NUMBER OF NOUNS

307. General Rule. The plural of a noun is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Roi(s); reine(s); jardin(s). King(s); queen(s); garden(s).

308. Principal Exceptions. The following are the principal exceptions to the above rule:

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z** remain unchanged in the plural, so also invariable words when used as nouns:

Le bras; la voix; le nez.	The arm; the voice; the nose.
Les bras; les voix; les nez.	The arms; the voices; the noses.
<u>Les oui et les non; les on dit.</u>	<u>The ayes and noes; the rumors.</u>
Plusieurs peu font un beaucoup.	Many littles make a ‘muckle.’

2. Nouns in -au, -eu, and seven in -ou, take -x:

Noyau(x); château(x); jeu(x), Kernel(s); castle(s); game(s);
vœu(x). vowel(s).

The seven nouns in -ou are:

1 bijou(x), jewel	4 genou(x), knee	6 joujou(x), toy
2 caillou(x), pebble	5 hibou(x), owl	7 pou(x), louse
3 chou(x), cabbage		

But: clou(s), nail, sou(s), half-penny, etc.

3. Most nouns in **-al** change **-al** to **-au**, and add **-x** as above:

Général; cheval; journal. General; horse; newspaper.
Généraux; chevaux; journaux. Generals; horses; newspapers.

a. But the following, and a few rarer ones in **-al**, are regular:

aval(s), endorsement	cal(s), callosity	chacal(s), jackal
bal(s), ball (for dancing)	carnaval(s), carnival	régal(s), treat

4. The following in -ail have the plural in -aux:

bail (-aux), lease	travail (-aux), work	vitrail (-aux), stained
corail (-aux), coral	vantail (-aux), folding-door	glass window
soupirail (-aux),	ventail (-aux), ventail	
air-hole		

But: détail(s), detail; éventail(s), fan, etc., are regular.

NOTE.—Bestiaux (pl.), cattle, is often given as the plural of bétail, cattle; it is from an obsolete form bestial, parallel to bétail.

5. Gent = race, tribe, has the plural gens = people, etc.

309. Double Plurals. The following have two plural forms, mostly with varying meaning:

aïeul (aieux), <i>ancestor</i>	œil (yeux), <i>eye</i>
aïeul (aïeuls), <i>grandfather</i>	œil (œils-) in compounds, e.g., œils-de-bœuf, <i>oval windows</i>
ail (aulx), <i>garlic</i>	
ail (ails), <i>garlic</i>	pal (paux), <i>pale, stake</i>
ciel (cieux), <i>sky, heaven, climate</i>	pal (pals), <i>pale, stake</i>
ciel (ciels), <i>bed-tester, sky (in painting), roof (of a quarry)</i>	travail (travaux), <i>work</i> travail (travails), <i>report (of a minister, etc.), brake (for horse-shoeing)</i>

Obs.; The -x plural regularly has the literal meaning of the word.

310. Foreign Nouns. Nouns of foreign origin take -s, usually only when fully naturalized, but usage varies greatly (see a dictionary):

a. Partial list of variable foreign nouns:

accessit(s), <i>honorable mention</i>	bill(s), <i>bill duo(s), duo</i>	toast(s), <i>toast tramway(s), street-railway</i>
album(s), <i>album alibi(s), alibi</i>	jury(s), <i>jury opéra(s), opera</i>	vivat(s), <i>hurrah etc.</i>
bifteck(s), <i>beefsteak</i>	pensum(s), <i>task</i>	

b. Partial list of invariable foreign nouns:

amen	in-folio	magnificat	requiem	veto
facsimile	in-octavo	nota bene	Te Deum	etc.
item	intérim	post-scriptum	vade mecum	

c. A few Italian nouns retain their plural in i:

dilettante(-i), <i>dilettante libretto(-i), libretto</i>	soprano(-i), <i>soprano lazzarone(-i), beggar</i>	quintetto(-i), <i>quintette etc.</i>
--	---	--------------------------------------

311. Compound Nouns. The only components which take a plural sign are nouns and adjectives. The following are special rules:

1. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word, and follow the general rules:

Portemanteau(x); grand'mère(s). Valise(s); grandmother(s).

a. Exceptions are:

bon(s)homme(s), <i>goodman, etc.</i>	madame (mesdames), <i>madam, Mrs.</i>
gentil(s)homme(s), <i>nobleman</i>	mademoiselle (mesdemoiselles), <i>Miss</i>
monsieur (messieurs), <i>Mr., sir, etc.</i>	monseigneur (messeigneurs), <i>my lord</i>

2. When placed in juxtaposition and connected by a hyphen, nouns and adjectives are variable:

Chef(s)-lieu(x); chou(x)-fleur(s); County-town(s); cauliflower(s);
grand(s)-père(s). grandfather(s).

a. Demi- is invariable in compounds.

Des demi-heures. Half hours.

b. Further exceptions are:

blanc-seing(s), <i>signature in blank</i>	terre-plein(s), <i>platform</i>
chevau-léger(s), <i>light-horseman</i>	etc.

3. Of two nouns joined by preposition and hyphens, the first only is variable:

Arc(s)-en-ciel; chef(s)-d'œuvre. Rainbow; masterpiece.

a. The preposition de is sometimes understood:

bain(s)-marie, <i>water bath, double boiler</i>	timbre(s)-poste, <i>postage-stamp</i>
hôtel(s)-dieu, <i>hospital</i>	etc.

b. The following are invariable, since the idea conveyed by their plural does not properly belong to the first component simply:

coq-à-l'âne, <i>cock-and-bull story</i>	pot-au-feu, <i>beef and soup</i>
pied-à-terre, <i>temporary lodging</i>	tête-à-tête, <i>private interview</i>

4. A noun with preceding invariable component is usually variable:

Anglo-Saxon(s); avant-garde(s)	Anglo-Saxon; vanguard
tire-bouchon(s); vice-roi(s)	corkscrew; viceroy
bouche-trou(s)	stop-gap

a. But the final noun remains invariable when the plural idea does not properly belong to it:

abat-jour, <i>lamp shade</i>	gagne-pain, <i>means of living</i>	réveille-matin, <i>alarm</i>
coupe-gorge, <i>cut-throat place</i>	perce-neige, <i>snowdrop</i>	clock
crève-cœur, <i>heartbreak</i>	prie-dieu, <i>praying-stool</i>	serre-tête, <i>headband</i>
contre-poison, <i>antidote</i>	boute-en-train, <i>jolly fellow</i>	etc.

b. On the other hand, a final noun of clearly plural sense retains -s in the singular:

un (des) casse-noisettes, <i>nutcracker</i>	un (des) porte-clefs, <i>turnkey</i>
un (des) cure-dents, <i>toothpick</i>	etc.

5. Invariable words, such as verb, adverb, preposition, etc., are invariable in compounds:

Des on dit; des passe-partout. Rumors; master-keys.

✓ a. *Garde-* is usually variable in compounds denoting persons, and invariable in those denoting things:

Des gardes-malades.	Sick-nurses.
But: Des garde-robés.	Wardrobes.

312. Plural of Proper Nouns. 1. Names of persons or families are usually invariable in the plural:

Les deux Racine.	The two Racines.
Les Corneille et les Racine de la scène.	The Corneilles and Racines of the stage (<i>i.e.</i> , Corneille, Racine, and others like them).
Les Duval sont arrivés.	(The) Duvals have come.

✓ a. A few Latin names, originally plural in form, and certain well-known historical names of families and dynasties, take -s:

Les Bourbons	Les Gracques	Les Pharaons	Les Tudors
Les Césars	Les Guises	Les Scipions	etc.
Les Condés	Les Horaces	Les Stuarts	

✓ b. Names of persons used as common nouns to denote 'persons like' or 'works by' those named are often variable, but usage is not fixed:

Les Corneilles sont rares.	Corneilles are rare.
J'ai vu deux Raphaëls.	I saw two Raphaels.
But: Les Hamlet; les La Fontaine; les Goethe; les Washington, etc.	

2. Names of places take -s when the idea is plural:

Les Indes; les Vosges.	The Indies; the Vosges.
Les deux Romes.	The two Romes (<i>i.e.</i> , the ancient and modern).

CASE RELATION AND AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

313. Case Relations. The noun in French does not vary in form to denote case; it is used as follows:

1. With verbs, as subject, object, predicate:

Le père aime son fils.	The father loves his son.
Jean est devenu soldat.	John has become a soldier.

2. In appositions, and with adjectival force:

Henri IV, roi de France.**Un roi enfant.**

Henry IV, King of France.

A child king.

3. After prepositions:

J'ai parlé à son père.

I have spoken to his father.

4. Absolutely, generally with adverbial force:

Le dîner fini, il partit.**Il était là, le chapeau à la main.****Je suis venu samedi.****Il est resté trois heures.****J'ai marché dix milles.****Nous l'avons acheté dix francs.**

The dinner ended, he set out.

He was there, (with) his hat in his hand.

I came on Saturday.

He stayed three hours.

I walked ten miles.

We bought it for ten francs.

5. Vocatively:

Bonjour, mes amis.

Good morning, my friends.

314. Agreement. A predicate noun, or a noun used adjectivally, usually agrees like an adjective with the word referred to (see Agreement of the Adjective):

Ils (elles) sont Allemand(e)s.**La reine mère.**

They are Germans.

The queen mother.

THE ARTICLE

315. The Indefinite Article

MASC.

un, a (an)

FEM.

une, a (an)

316. The Definite Article

SING.

MASC. le ('l') }
FEM. la ('l') }

PL.

MASC. or FEM. les, the

Obs.: For the forms in parenthesis, see § 19, 1.

317. Contractions. The prepositions **de** and **à + le** and **les**, are always contracted as follows:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{de} + \text{le} = \text{du} \\ \text{de} + \text{les} = \text{des} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{à} + \text{le} = \text{au} \\ \text{à} + \text{les} = \text{aux} \end{array}$$

NOTES.—1. No contraction takes place with **la**, **l'**. 2. Formerly **en** + **les** was contracted to **ès**, a form still used in academical titles, *e.g.*, Bachelier ès lettres, Bachelor of Arts.

318. Agreement and Repetition. The article agrees in gender and number with its noun, and is regularly repeated (as also **de**, **à**) before each noun or adjective denoting a distinctive object:

Une maison et un jardin.	A house and garden.
Le flux et le reflux.	High and low tide.
Au bon et au mauvais côté.	On the good and bad side.
Les bons et les mauvais.	The good and the bad.
Des hommes ou des femmes.	Men or women.
But: Le bon et pieux prêtre.	The kind and pious priest.
Le delta ou basse Égypte.	The Delta or Lower Egypt.

a. The definite article is not repeated when a single adjective precedes nouns joined by **et**:

Les principales villes et provinces de la France.	The principal towns and provinces of France.
--	--

b. Singular adjectives in apposition to a plural noun omit the article:

Les langues française et anglaise. The French and English languages.

Or: **La langue française et la langue anglaise.**

La langue française et l'anglaise.

c. A few expressions of collective force, like the following, are permissible, but are either not obligatory or are confined to set expressions:

Les père et mère.	The parents.
Les lundi et mardi.	(On) Mondays and Tuesdays.
Les trois et quatre avril.	The third and fourth of April.
Les officiers et soldats.	The officers and soldiers.
École des ponts et chaussées.	School of bridges and roads.

d. For the repetition of **le**, **la**, **les** with the superlative, see Comparison of Adjectives.

USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS

319. Use in General. French and English agree to a considerable extent in the use of the article; differences are noted below.

320. The Indefinite Article. 1. Its use corresponds in general with that of English *a*, *an*; its plural is the partitive *des* (§ 323):

Un homme; une femme; des gens. A man; a woman; people.

2. Contrary to English usage, the indefinite article also commonly stands before an abstract noun used partitively with an adjective or an adjectival adjunct:

Il montra un soin extrême.	He showed extreme care.
Il a une patience à toute épreuve.	He has patience equal to anything.
Elle jouit d'une bonne santé.	She enjoys good health.
C'est une triste nouvelle.	It is sad news.

a. The adjective or complementary clause depending on such a noun may be understood:

Voilà une patience !	There is patience for you !
J'étais d'une humeur . . .	I was in a temper . . .
Un garçon d'une raison . . .	A young fellow of (splendid) intellect !

NOTE. — For several cases in which the English indefinite article is replaced by the French definite article, or *vice versa*, or is omitted, see below.

321. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense, *i.e.*, ‘in general,’ ‘all,’ ‘every,’ etc., being implied with it, regularly has the definite article in French, though not usually in English:

La vie est courte.	Life is short.
Le fer et le cuivre sont utiles.	Iron and copper are useful.
J'étudie la musique.	I am studying music.
Les Français aiment la gloire.	The French love glory.
Le cheval est l'ami de l'homme.	The horse is the friend of man.
Le noir vous sied bien.	Black becomes you.
J'aime les pommes et les poires.	I like apples and pears.
Le beau et l'utile.	The beautiful and the useful.
Le boire et le manger.	Eating and drinking.

a. So also, names of languages, except after *en*; but not, however, after *parler*:

Sait-il le français ?	Does he know French ?
Il parle bien (le) français.	He speaks French well.
But: Dites cela en français.	Say that in French.
Parlez-vous français ?	Do you speak French ?

322. The Partitive Noun. A noun implying 'an undetermined quantity or number of' is said to be used partitively or in a partitive sense:

323. Partitive with Article. The partitive sense, expressed in English by the noun simply, or else the noun preceded by 'some' or 'any,' is regularly expressed in French by the noun preceded by *de* + the definite article:

Du pain trempé dans du vin.	(Some) bread dipped in wine.
A-t-il des amis ?	Has he (any) friends ?
Des enfants poussaient des cris désespérés.	Some children were uttering terrible cries.
Il est des gens qui le croient.	There are people who believe it.
C'est du Carlyle pur.	That is pure Carlyleism.

NOTE.—This use of *de* + the definite article, or even of *de* alone (see next section), is often called the 'partitive article'; it is entirely identical in form with *de* + the article in other senses, e.g., *Je vends du blé*, *I sell wheat*; *Quel est le prix du blé?* *What is the price of the wheat?*

324. Omission of Article. The partitive sense is expressed by *de* alone + the noun as follows:

1. When an adjective precedes the noun; so also, when a noun is understood after an adjective:

Avez-vous <i>de bon papier</i> ?	Have you any good paper ?
Donnez-moi <i>de ces plumes-là</i> .	Give me some of those pens.
J'ai <i>de vos livres</i> .	I have some of your books.
<i>De bon vin et de mauvais</i> (sc. <i>vin</i>).	Good wine and bad.
<i>De gros livres et de petits</i> (sc. <i>livres</i>).	Big books and little ones.
But: <i>Des soldats français</i> .	French soldiers.
J'ai <i>du pain blanc</i> .	I have white bread.

a. The article is not omitted when the noun has a distinctive adjunct:
Du bon papier qu'il a acheté. Some of the good paper he bought.

b. The article is not omitted when adjective and noun are indivisible in sense, i.e., when forming a real or a virtual compound:

Des grands-pères; des petits-fils.	Grandfathers; grandsons.
Des petits pois; <u>du bon sens</u> .	Green peas; common sense.
Des jeunes gens; de la bonne foi.	Young men; honesty.

c. Familiarly, the article is often used contrary to the rule:
Du bon vin; du vrai bonheur. Good wine; true happiness.

2. After a general negation, implying non-existence of the object in question:

Il n'a pas de montre.	He has no (not any) watch.
Je n'ai point de livres.	I have no (not any) books.
Sans avoir d'argent.	Without having (any) money.
Il ne fit pas de remarques.	He made no remarks.
Pas d'argent et pas d'amis.	No money and no friends.

3. But the article is not omitted, the negation being no longer general:

✓a. When the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Je n'ai plus <i>du vin</i> de cette année.	I have no more of this year's wine.
Je n'ai pas <i>de l'argent</i> pour le <u>gaspiller</u> .	I have no money to waste (= I have money, but not to waste).

✓b. In contrasts:

Pas <i>du lait</i> , mais <i>du thé</i> .	Not milk, but tea.
---	--------------------

c. In negative interrogation implying affirmative answer:

N'avez-vous pas <i>des amis</i> , <i>de la santé</i> , <i>de l'influence</i> ?	Have you not friends, health, influence?
--	--

325. Omission of the Partitive Sign. The partitive sense is expressed by the noun simply, when the preposition *de* forms an essential part of the governing expression, thus:

1. In expressions of quantity or number:

Une livre de thé (noix).	A pound of tea (nuts).
Un morceau de papier.	A piece of paper.
Une foule de gens.	A crowd of people.
Peu de temps; beaucoup d'amis.	Little time; many friends.
Assez de livres.	Enough books (<i>or</i> books enough).

Trop de peine.

Que de gens assemblés!

Too much trouble.

What a number of people assembled!

a. Analogous to the above are expressions like the following:

Trois jours de marche.

Three days' march.

Cent soldats de tués.

A hundred soldiers killed.

Quelque chose (rien) de bon.

Something (nothing) good.

b. *Bien* = *beaucoup* regularly has *de* + the definite article:

Bien de l'argent; bien du monde. Much money; many people.

Bien des gens le croient. Many people think so.

But: **Bien d'autres.** Many others.

NOTE. — *Bien* in other senses does not take *de*: *J'ai bien faim, I am very hungry.*

c. *La plupart* = *most, the greater part*, etc., has *de* + the def. art.:

La plupart des hommes. Most men.

La plupart du temps. Most of the time.

d. Expressions of quantity or number with a distinctive adjunct have *de* + the definite article; so also, *beaucoup, peu*, etc., absolutely:
Une livre du thé de ce marchand. A pound of this tradesman's tea.
Beaucoup des gens de ce pays. Many of the men of that country.

✓ 2. After a verb requiring *de* before its complement, and in phrases, adjectival or adverbial, formed from *de* + a noun:

Il vit de pain (not *de du pain*). He lives on bread.

Il manquait d'argent. He lacked money.

J'ai besoin d'argent. I need money.

Il se passe de vin. He does without wine.

Un vase rempli d'eau. A vessel filled with water.

Il était couvert de plaies. He was covered with wounds (sores).

Une robe de soie. A silk dress.

Un homme de génie. A man of genius.

Une bourse pleine d'or. A purse full of gold.

326. General and Partitive Sense. The general sense of a noun (§ 321) is to be carefully distinguished from the partitive sense (§ 322):

Les oiseaux ont des ailes. Birds have wings.

Les hommes sont des animaux. Men are animals.

X327. Article with Titles. A title of dignity or profession, preceding a proper name, regularly takes the definite article, except in direct address:

La reine Victoria fut aimée.	Queen Victoria was beloved.
Le docteur Ribot est arrivé.	Doctor Ribot has come.
Qu'est-ce que le père Daru dit?	What does Father Daru say?
But: Bonjour, docteur Ribot.	Good morning, Doctor Ribot.

✓a. So also, when such title is preceded by a title of courtesy (*monsieur*, *madame*, etc.), whether in speaking to or in speaking of the person:

Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.	Good morning, doctor.
Monsieur le président l'a dit.	The president said so.

✓b. A preceding attributive adjective may have the force of a title:

La petite Claire; le gros Robert.	Little Clara; big Robert.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------

328. Article for Possessive. The definite article is commonly used with the force of a possessive adjective, when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il a perdu la vie.	He has lost his life.
Il avait le chapeau sur la tête.	He had his hat on his head.

✓a. The use of an indirect pronoun object + the definite article often avoids ambiguity:

Le courage <i>lui</i> manqua.	His courage failed (him).
Elle <i>lui</i> a arraché <i>les yeux</i> .	She tore out his eyes.
Il s'est fait mal à la tête.	He hurt his head.

b. Possessive force appears also in *avoir mal* (*froid*, *chaud*, etc.) à + the definite article followed by a noun denoting part of the person; similarly, in phrases of personal description made up of *avoir* + the definite article + a noun + an adjective:

J'ai mal à la tête.	I have a headache (my head aches)
Il a mal aux yeux.	He has sore eyes (his eyes, etc.).
Il a froid aux pieds.	He has cold feet (his feet, etc.).
Il a la tête grosse (or une grosse tête).	He has a large head.
Il a les bras longs (or de longs bras).	He has long arms.
Le chêne a l'écorce rude.	The oak has (a) rough bark.

329. Article Distributively. 1. The definite article with distributive force replaces English *a* of weight, measure, number, when indicating price:

Deux francs *la* livre (*le* mètre). Two francs a pound (a meter).

Des œufs (*à*) dix sous *la* douzaine. Eggs at ten cents a dozen.

Des poires (*à*) un sou *la* pièce. Pears at a cent apiece.

✓a. Otherwise *par* is generally used with price:

Cinq francs *par* jour. Five francs a (per) day.

Cent francs *par* tête. A hundred francs a (per) head.

Trois francs *par* leçon. Three francs a (per) lesson.

2. The definite article is also used distributively with names of days:

Il vient *le* dimanche. He comes (on) Sundays.

Le bateau part tous *les* lundis. The boat goes every Monday.

330. Omission of the Article. The article, whether definite, indefinite, or partitive, is frequently omitted. This takes place:

1. In a large number of expressions made up of a verb + a noun:

J'ai sommeil; il a honte. I am sleepy; he is ashamed.

Je vous demande pardon. I beg your pardon.

Further examples are:

avoir besoin, need	<u>donner avis, notify</u>	<u>faire place, make room</u>
avoir faim, be hungry	<u>donner ordre, give orders</u>	<u>prendre congé, take leave</u>
avoir bonne mine, look well	<u>faire attention, pay attention</u>	<u>prendre garde, take care</u>
avoir peur, be afraid		<u>rendre visite, pay a visit</u>
avoir tort, be (in the) wrong	<u>faire cadeau, make a present</u>	<u>trouver moyen, find means</u>
courir risque, run the risk		
demandeur conseil, ask advice	<u>faire faillite, fail (in business)</u>	etc., etc.

2. In many adjectival and adverbial phrases made up of a preposition + a noun:

D'après nature; devant témoins. After nature; before witnesses.

Sans cause; à travers champs. Without cause; across the fields.

Further examples are:

<u>à bord, on board</u>	chien de berger, <u>par chemin de fer, by rail-</u>
<u>à cheval, on horseback</u>	<u>shepherd's dog way</u>
<u>à dessein, intentionally</u>	homme de cœur, <u>par exemple, for example</u>
<u>à genoux, on one's knees</u>	<u>man of feeling par expérience, by experience</u>
<u>à pied, on foot</u>	homme de génie, <u>par terre, by land</u>
<u>pot à fleurs, flowerpot</u>	<u>man of genius sans crainte, without fear</u>
<u>moulin à vent, windmill</u>	en bateau, <u>in a boat sans raison, without reason</u>
<u>après dîner, after dinner</u>	<u>en été, in summer sous condition, on condition</u>
<u>avec intérêt, with interest</u>	en voiture, <u>in a car- sur presse, in the press</u>
<u>avec plaisir, with pleasure</u>	<u>riage etc., etc.</u>
<u>sortir de table, leave the table</u>	par an, <u>by the year</u>

3. Before a predicate noun which qualifies in a general way the personal subject, or object, of certain verbs (cf. § 295):

Ils sont Russes.	They are Russians.
Elle est modiste.	She is a milliner.
Nous sommes médecins.	We are doctors.
Il paraît honnête homme.	He seems an honest man.
Son frère se fit soldat.	His brother became a soldier.
On l'a ordonné prêtre.	He was ordained a priest.
Soyons amis.	Let us be friends.

NOTE. — Nouns so used are commonly those of nationality, profession, title, etc., and their function is adjectival. Whenever a predicate noun denotes an individual or a species, it must have the article: *La rose est une fleur, The rose is a flower; Les rois sont des hommes, Kings are men.*

a. The article is not omitted when the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Son frère est <i>un</i> artiste de mérite.	His brother is an artist of merit.
Ils sont devenus <i>des</i> généraux distingués.	They became distinguished generals.

b. Observe the predicative force of a noun after *traiter + de*, *qualifier + de*:

Il m'a traité de sot.	He called me a fool.
Je qualifie cela de fraude.	I call that fraud.

c. After *c'est, ce sont*, the noun is logical subject, not predicate, and hence the article or some other determinative word must be used with it:

C'est <i>une</i> Allemande.	She is (a) German.
Ce sont <i>les (mes)</i> gants.	Those are the (my) gloves.

4. Before such an appositive noun as serves merely the purpose of a parenthetical explanation:

L'Avare, comédie de Molière. L'Avare, a comedy by Molière.
Pâris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène, Paris, the son of Priam, carried off
 femme de Ménélas. Helen, (the) wife of Menelaus.

a. Thus is explained the omission of the article in numerical titles:
Jacques premier (deux). James the First (the Second).

✓6. An apposition which distinguishes, contrasts, compares, regularly has the article, as in English:

<u>Pierre le Grand</u> .	Peter the Great.
<u>Racine le fils et non Racine le père</u> .	Racine the son and not Racine the father.
<u>Montréal, la plus grande ville du Canada</u> .	Montreal, the largest city in Canada.
<u>M. Cook, un ami de mon père</u> .	Mr. Cook, a friend of my father.

c. Colloquially, the article is often omitted in contrasts:
Dumas père et Dumas fils. Dumas the elder and Dumas the younger.

NOTE. — Pseudo-apposition (really ellipsis of de or of a de clause) is found in many cases like L'église (*sc. de*) Saint-Pierre, *St. Peter's Church*, des meubles (*sc. du temps de*) Louis XV, *Louis XV furniture*; La rue (*sc de*) Mirabeau, *Mirabeau Street*.

✓5. In condensed sentences, such as titles of books, enumerations, addresses, advertisements, proverbs, antithetical expressions, etc., and usually after ni... ni, sans... ni, soit... soit, tant... que, jamaïs:

<u>Causes de la perte de Rome</u> .	Causes of the fall of Rome.
<u>Portrait de Napoléon III</u> .	(A) portrait of Napoleon III.
<u>Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous accoururent</u> .	Soldiers, officers, citizens, all hastened up.
<u>Beauté, talent, esprit, tout s'use à la longue</u> .	Beauty, talent, wit, everything wears out in the long run.
<u>Il loge rue Richelieu</u> .	He lives in Richelieu street.
<u>Maison à vendre</u> .	(A) house for sale.
<u>Chapeaux pour hommes</u> .	Men's hats.
<u>Corps et âme; nuit et jour</u> .	Body and soul; night and day.
<u>Soit peur, soit prudence, il évita le combat</u> .	Whether from fear or prudence, he avoided the combat.

Il n'a ni père ni mère.

Sans amis ni argent.

Tant hommes que femmes.

Jamais père n'a tant aimé.

He has neither father nor mother.

Without friends or money.

As well men as women.

Never did a father love so much.

331. Unclassified Examples. The following examples show idiomatic distinctions in the use of the article which, from the point of view of English, cannot conveniently be brought under general rules:

Vous êtes le bienvenu.

You are welcome.

Demander (faire) l'aumône.

Ask (give) alms.

Avoir le temps.

To have time.

Aller à l'école (l'église).

To go to school (church).

Commander le respect.

To command respect.

Le feu s'est déclaré.

Fire broke out.

Faire la guerre.

To make war.

Jeter (lever) l'ancre.

To cast (weigh) anchor.

Garder le silence.

To keep silence.

Mettre le feu à.

To set fire to.

Sur (vers) les trois heures.

Towards three o'clock.

Au revoir !

Good-bye !

L'année dernière (prochaine).

Last (next) year.

La semaine (l'année) passée.

Last week (year).

Le vendredi saint.

Good Friday.

Le mercredi des cendres.

Ash Wednesday.

Le printemps, l'été, etc.

Spring, summer, etc.

Au printemps, en été, etc.

In spring, in summer, etc.

La (sc. fête de) Saint-Michel.

Michaelmas.

La (sc. fête de) mi-juin.

Mid-June.

La moitié de l'année.

(The) half (of) the year.

Les deux tiers du temps.

Two-thirds of the time.

Tous (les) deux; tous (les) trois.

Both; all three.

Tous les mois.

Every month.

Le ministre de la guerre.

The minister of war.

Le meilleur des amis.

The best of friends.

Il cria à l'assassin.

He cried murder.

Je l'ai dit au hasard.

I said it at random.

Prendre le deuil de quelqu'un.

To go into mourning for somebody

Sentir la fumée.

To smell of smoke.

Je vous souhaite la bonne année.

I wish you a happy new year.

Il n'a pas le sou.

He is wretchedly poor.

Il est plus grand que vous de <i>la</i> tête.	He is taller than you by a head.
Un homme à <i>la</i> barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
<i>La</i> belle question !	What a (fine) question !
À <i>la</i> (<i>sc. mode</i>) française.	In the French style.
S'en aller à <i>l'</i> anglaise.	To take French leave.
À <i>la</i> (<i>sc. mode de</i>) Henri IV.	In the style of Henry IV.
Cent (mille) ans.	A hundred (<i>a thousand</i>) years.
Les amis, où allez-vous?	(My) friends, where are you going?

THE ARTICLE WITH PROPER NOUNS

332. **Names of Persons.** 1. As in English, names of persons usually take no article:

Corneille; George Fox. Corneille; George Fox.

a. The definite article is a constituent part of some surnames:

Les romans de *Lesage*. The novels of Lesage.

Les fables de *La Fontaine*. The fables of La Fontaine.

2. The definite article is used according to Italian analogy in the French form of a few famous Italian surnames; so also sometimes in a very few names which are not Italian:

Le Corrège; le poème du Tasse. Correggio; the poem of Tasso.

Le Poussin; le Camoëns. Poussin; Camoens.

3. The article is used when the name has a distinctive adjunct, when it is plural, or when used as a common noun:

✓ Le Christ. Christ (= the 'Anointed').

Le Satan de Milton; le grand Condé. Milton's Satan; the Great Condé.

Les Corneille et les Racine.

A Corneille, a Racine (= Corneille, Racine and others like them).

✓ C'est un Alexandre.

He is an Alexander.

C'est du Cicéron tout pur.

It is pure Ciceronian.

J'ai lu le Télémaque.

I have read Télémaque.

4. Familiarly, often in a depreciatory sense, the definite article is not uncommon, especially with names of females:

Sans attendre la Barbette. Without waiting for Barbara.

Le Duval me l'a dit. Duval told me so.

X 333. Names of Countries. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large European islands, take the definite article, especially when standing as subject or object of a verb:

<i>L'Asie est un grand continent.</i>	Asia is a large continent.
<i>Nous aimons la France.</i>	We love France.
<i>La Normandie produit des céréales.</i>	Normandy produces cereals.
<i>La Corse est une île française.</i>	Corsica is a French island.

But non-European islands often do not take the article:

<i>Madagascar est une grande île.</i>	Madagascar is a large island.
<i>Cabot découvrit Terre-Neuve.</i>	Cabot discovered Newfoundland.

Note also such forms as: *L'île de Cuba, les îles Bahama.*

2. Before names of continents, European countries and islands singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe, *en* without the article denotes 'where,' 'where to'; so also, after *de* denoting 'point of departure from' and after *de* in most adjectival phrases:

<i>Il est en (va en) Europe.</i>	He is in (is going to) Europe.
<i>Il voyage en France (Portugal).</i>	He travels in France (Portugal).
<i>Il vient d'Espagne (Danemark).</i>	He comes from Spain (Denmark).
<i>Le roi de Portugal (Espagne).</i>	The King of Portugal (Spain).
<i>Le fer de Suède.</i>	Swedish iron.
<i>Il va en Corse.</i>	He is going to Corsica.

a. Exceptions are rare, e.g., *au Maine, Le duc du Maine*, etc.

NOTE.—In an adjectival phrase, *de* denoting titular distinction, origin, description, or mere apposition usually omits the article, e.g., *le pays de France, Le Royaume Uni de Grande-Bretagne et d'Irlande.*

3. But the definite article is not omitted, in answer to 'where?' 'where to?' or after *de* as above, when the name is plural, or has a distinctive adjunct, or denotes a masculine name of a country outside of Europe:

<i>Il est aux Indes.</i>	He is in India.
<i>Il va aux États-Unis.</i>	He goes to the United States.
<i>Aux Pays-Bas.</i>	In (to) the Netherlands.
<i>L'impératrice des Indes.</i>	The Empress of India.
<i>Venir des Indes (de l'Inde).</i>	To come from India.
<i>Dans la France méridionale.</i>	In Southern France.
<i>Dans le Midi de la France.</i>	

<u>Dans l'Amérique du Nord.</u>	In North America.
<u>La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.</u>	The Queen of Great Britain.
<u>Il revient de l'Afrique australe.</u>	He returns from South Africa.
<u>Au Mexique (Japon).</u>	In (to) Mexico (Japan).
<u>Le Dominion du Canada.</u> }	The Dominion of Canada.
<u>La Puissance du Canada.</u> }	
<u>Chassé de la Chine.</u>	Expelled from China.
<u>Le consul du Pérou.</u>	The consul of Peru.
<u>Le fer du Canada.</u>	Canadian iron.

But note such as: Son père est à Madagascar.

a. In a few names like Asie Mineure, basse Bretagne, the adjective is no longer felt to be distinctive:

En Asie mineure.

In Asia Minor.

4. Omission of the article in the predicate, in enumerations, titles, etc., sometimes occurs (cf. § 330, 5):

La Gaule est devenue France.

Gaul became France.

Espagne, Italie, Belgique, tout eût pris feu.

Spain, Italy, Belgium, all would have caught fire.

✗334. **Names of Cities.** Names of cities and towns usually have no article, unless used with a distinctive adjunct:

Londres, Paris, Québec.

London, Paris, Quebec.

À Boston (Montréal).

To or in Boston (Montreal).

But: (La) Rome de ce siècle.

(The) Rome of this century.

(La) Nouvelle-Orléans.

New Orleans.

✓a. The definite article is an essential part of several names of cities:

Le Caire; le Havre; la Havane. Cairo; Havre; Havana.

✗335. **Names of Mountains and Rivers.** Names of mountains always, and names of rivers regularly, have the definite article:

Les Alpes; le Nil; le mont Blanc. The Alps; the Nile; Mt. Blanc.

a. For rivers, the usage after en, de, is parallel with that described in § 333, 2:

De l'eau de Seine.

Seine water.

Un abordage a eu lieu en Seine.

A collision occurred on the Seine.

THE ADJECTIVE

THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES

336. General Rule. The feminine of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
grand,	grande, <i>tall</i>	facile,	facile, <i>easy</i>
joli,	jolie, <i>pretty</i>	jeune,	jeune, <i>young</i>
rusé,	rusée, <i>cunning</i>	sincère,	sincère, <i>sincere</i>
mort,	morte, <i>dead</i>	célèbre,	célèbre, <i>celebrated</i>

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination (but see § 306, 2):

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
marquis, <i>marquis</i> ,	marquise	artiste, <i>artist</i> ,	artiste
ami, <i>friend</i> ,	amie	camarade, <i>comrade</i> ,	camarade
cousin, <i>cousin</i> ,	cousine	concierge, <i>porter</i> ,	concierge
lapin, <i>rabbit</i> ,	lapine	malade, <i>patient</i> ,	malade

b. Adjectives in **-gu** are regular, but require the diæresis to indicate that **u** is sounded, e.g., aigu, *sharp*, aiguë.

c. The circumflex in dû (*f. due*) distinguishes it from **du** = *of the*, and disappears in the fem. (§ 214); observe also mû (*f. mue*, § 219).

d. Besides adjectives in **-e**, a very few others are invariable for the feminine, e.g., *capot*, in *être capot* = *have come to grief*, *grognon*, *grumbling*, *rococo*, *sterling*, *sterling*, and rarer ones.

NOTE. — Here also properly belongs *grand* in *grand'mère*, etc. In O. F. **grand** was masculine or feminine, but grammarians at a later date gave it the apostrophe to denote the supposed elision of **e**.

337. Special Rules. 1. Irregularities consist chiefly of changes in the stem on adding the feminine sign **-e**; thus, when **-e** is added:

(1) Final **f** = **v**, **x** = **s**, **c** = **ch** in some, and **qu** in others, **g** = **gu**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
actif, <i>active</i> ,	active	* blanc, <i>white</i> ,	blanche
bref, <i>brief</i> ,	brève	public, <i>public</i> ,	publique
heureux, <i>happy</i> ,	heureuse	long, <i>long</i> ,	longue

* So also: *franc*, *frank*, *franche*; *sec*, *dry*, *sèche*.

† So also: *ammoniac* (-que). *ammoniac*; *turc* (-que). *Turkish*.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
veuf, widower,	veuve	époux, spouse,	épouse	turc, Turk,	turque

NOTE.—Here also belongs bailli, *bailiff* (O. F. *baillif*), baillive.

b. The adjectives *doux*, *douce*, *sweet*, *faux*, *fausse*, *false*, *roux*, *rousse*, *red* (of hair, etc.), retain the [s] sound in the feminine, denoted by *c* and *ss* respectively; *grec*, *Greek*, has feminine *grecque*; *préfix*, *prefixed*, is regular.

✗ (2) Final *-el*, *-eil*, *-ien*, *-on*, and usually *-s*, *-t*, double the final consonant:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
cruel, <i>cruel</i> ,	cruelle	gros, <i>big</i> ,	grosse
pareil, <i>like</i> ,	pareille	épais, <i>thick</i> ,	épaisse
ancien, <i>old</i> ,	ancienne	exprès, <i>express</i> ,	expresse
bon, <i>good</i> ,	bonne	muet, <i>dumb</i> ,	muette
bas, <i>low</i> ,	basse	sot, <i>foolish</i> ,	sotte

But: *ras*, *rase*, *flat*; *gris*, *grise*, *gray*; *mat*, *mate*, *dead*, *dull*; *prêt*, *prête*, *ready*; *dévot*, *dévote*, *devout*; *bigot*, *bigote*, *bigoted*; *cagot*, *cagote*, *hypocritical*; *idiot*, *idiote*, *idiotic*, and a few rarer ones.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
mortel, <i>mortal</i> ,	mortelle	lion, <i>lion</i> ,	lionne	poulet, <i>chicken</i> ,	poulette
chien, <i>dog</i> ,	chienne	chat, <i>cat</i> ,	chattè	linot, <i>linnet</i> ,	linotte

b. A very few adjectives and nouns of other endings follow this analogy:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
paysan, <i>peasant</i> ,	paysanne	gentil, <i>nice</i> ,	gentille
rouan, <i>roan</i> ,	rouanne	nul, <i>null</i> ,	nulle

✗ (3) The following have two masculine forms, one of which doubles *l* for the feminine, like the above:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
beau or bel, <i>fine</i> ,	belle	mou or mol, <i>soft</i> ,	molle
fou or fol, <i>mad</i> ,	folle	nouveau or nouvel, <i>new</i> ,	nouvelle
jumeau or (O. F. jumel), <i>twin</i> ,	jumelle	vieux or vieil, <i>old</i> ,	vieille

Obs.: The *-l* form is regularly used only before a vowel or h mute; *vieux* before a vowel is permissible, e.g., *un vieux ami* (better: *un vieil ami*)

a. Analogous are a few nouns:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
chameau, <i>camel</i> ,	chamelle	jouvenceau, <i>young fellow</i> ,	jouvencelle, etc.

(4) Before final *-r* and *-et* of a few adjectives *e* becomes *è* (cf. § 12, 1); so also in *bref*, *brève*, *sec*, *sèche*:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
cher, <i>dear</i> ,	chère	complet, <i>complete</i> ,	complète
léger, <i>light</i> ,	légère	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns in *-er*.

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
berger, <i>shepherd</i> ,	bergère	étranger, <i>stranger</i> ,	étrangère, etc.

b. The complete list of adjectives in *-et* with fem. in *-ête* is:

(in)complet, (<i>in</i>)complete	(in)discret, (<i>in</i>)discreet	replet, <i>over-stout</i>
concret, <i>concrete</i>	inquiet, <i>uneasy</i>	secret, <i>secret</i>

(5) The following feminine stems show etymological elements which have disappeared in the masculine:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
coi (L. <i>quietus</i>), <i>quiet</i> ,	coite	frais (L. L. <i>frescus</i>), <i>cool</i> , <i>fraîche</i>	
bénin (L. <i>benignus</i>), <i>benign</i> ,	bénigne	tiers (L. <i>tertius</i>), <i>third</i> ,	<u>tierce</u>
<u>favori</u> (It. <i>favorito</i>), <i>favorite</i> ,	<u>favorite</u>		

2. Adjectives in *-eur* form their feminine as follows:

(1) *Majeur*, *mineur*, *meilleur* and those in *-éieur* are regular:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
majeur, <i>major</i> ,	majeure	extérieur, <i>exterior</i> ,	extérieure
meilleur, <i>better</i> ,	meilleure	supérieur, <i>superior</i> ,	supérieure

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
mineur, <i>minor</i> , <i>mineure</i> ;	prieur, <i>prior</i> , <i>prieure</i> ;	inférieur, <i>inferior</i> ,	inférieure		

(2) Those in *-eur* with a cognate present participle in *-ant* change *-r* to *-s* and add *-e*:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
causeur, <i>talkative</i> ,	causeuse	rêveur, <i>dreamy</i> ,	rêveuse
flatteur, <i>flattering</i> ,	flatteuse	trompeur, <i>deceitful</i> ,	trompeuse
menteur, <i>lying</i> ,	menteuse	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see also § 306, 1, a, 2, a:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
danseur, <i>dancer</i> ,	danseuse	buveur, <i>drinker</i>	buveuse
chanteur, <i>singer</i> ,	chanteuse	vendeur, <i>seller</i>	vendeuse
flatteur, <i>flatterer</i> ,	flatteuse	etc.	etc.

(3) Those in *-teur*, with no cognate present participle in *-ant*, have the feminine in *-trice*:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
accusateur, <i>accusing</i> ,	accusatrice	directeur, <i>directive</i> ,	directrice
créateur, <i>creative</i> ,	créatrice	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306, 1, a, 2, a:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
accusateur, <i>accuser</i> ,	accusatrice	créateur, <i>creator</i> ,	créatrice,
acteur, <i>actor</i> ,	actrice	etc.	etc.

THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES

338. General Rule. Most masculine adjectives and all feminines form their plural by adding *s* to the singular (cf. § 307):

grand(s),	grande(s)	jeune(s),	jeune(s)	bas,	basse(s)
joli(s),	jolie(s)	aigu(s),	aiguë(s)	doux,	douce(s)
rusé(s),	rusée(s)	complet(s),	complète(s)	etc.	etc.

339. Special Rules. The following rules are parallel with those for the irregular plural of nouns (cf. § 308):

1. Masculine adjectives in *-s*, *-x* (none in *-z*) remain unchanged:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
bas	bas	gris	gris	faux	faux
épais	épais	soumis	soumis	vieux	vieux
frais	frais, etc.	doux	doux, etc.	heureux	heureux, etc.

2. Masculine adjectives in *-eau*, and one in *-eu* take *x*:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
beau	beaux	jumeau	jumeaux
nouveau	nouveaux	hébreu	hébreux

But: bleu. bleus; feu, feus

✗3. Masculine adjectives in -al regularly have the plural in -aux:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
amical	amicaux	général	généraux	moral	moraux
brutal	brutaux	légal	légaux	principal	principaux
✓capital	capitaux	libéral	libéraux	rural	ruraux
cardinal	cardinaux	local	locaux	spécial	spéciaux
✓égal	égaux	loyal	loyaux	trivial	triviaux

a. Fatal makes *fatal*s; Littré gives also final(s).

b. According to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, the following have no masculine plural:

* automnal	frugal	* jovial	naval	† pascal
* colossal	glacial	natal	* partial	

* Littré gives a plural in -aux.

† Littré admits a plural in -aux, and quotes authority for a plural in -s.

NOTES.—1. There are upwards of a hundred and fifty adjectives in -al. The *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* is silent regarding the masculine plural of some sixty of these, to nearly fifty of which, however, Littré gives a plural in -aux. The following have not been pronounced upon by either authority: Brumal, déloyal, diagonal, instrumental, labial, médicinal, mental, monacal, paradoxal, quadragésimal, total, virginal.

2. Regular plurals in -als were formerly much commoner, and usage is still unsettled for some words. When the plural is wanting or doubtful it is often avoided, e.g., *Un repas frugal*; *des repas simples*. Plurals commonly so avoided are: Final, frugal, glacial, initial, matinal, natal, naval, théâtral.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

340. General Rule. An adjective, whether attributive or predicative, regularly agrees in gender and number with its substantive:

Les saisons froides sont saines.	Cold seasons are healthful.
Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Il se disaient malades.	They said they were ill.
Je les crois sincères.	I believe them sincere.

a. When the substantive has a **de** clause, the agreement is parallel with that explained for subject and verb (cf. § 232, 2).

✓b. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense:

Madame, vous êtes bien bonne. Madam, you are very kind.

341. Manifold Substantive. 1. One adjective qualifying two or more substantives is made plural, and agrees in gender with both, if of the same gender; if of different gender, the adjective is masculine.

De la viande et des pommes de terre froides. Cold meat and potatoes.

Sa sœur et lui sont contents. His sister and he are pleased.

a. When substantives are joined by ou, ni . . . ni, or are synonymous, or form a climax, etc., the principles stated for agreement of subject and verb apply (cf. § 233).

b. When nouns differ in gender, the masculine one is usually placed nearest the adjective, especially when the feminine form is distinct from the masculine.

La mer et le ciel bleus. The blue sea and sky.

2. When the noun is followed by a preposition + a noun, the agreement is, of course, according to the meaning:

Une table de bois dur. A table of hard wood.

Une table de bois carrée. A square wooden table.

342. Manifold Adjective. When two or more adjectives, denoting different objects singular, refer to one noun, the noun is made plural, and the adjectives follow it in the singular, or the noun is made singular, and the article repeated with each adjective.

Les nations grecque et romaine. The Greek and Roman nations.

La nation grecque et la romaine. The Greek nation and the Roman.

Or: La nation grecque et la nation romaine.

a. The agreement for a preceding ordinal is parallel to this:

Les sixième et septième rangs. The sixth and seventh ranks.

Le sixième rang et le septième. The sixth rank and the seventh.

Le sixième et le septième rang. The sixth and the seventh rank.

343. Special Cases. 1. Adjectives used as adverbs are regularly invariable:

Cette rose sent bon.

That rose smells sweet.

Les livres coûtent cher ici.

Books cost dear here.

a. Possible, replacing a clause, and *fort*, in *se faire fort* = *to pledge oneself*, are considered as adverbs:

J'ai fait le moins de fautes possible. I have made as few mistakes as possible.

Elle se fait fort de le payer. She pledges herself to pay it.

2. Compound adjectives, with or without hyphen, are treated as follows:

X(1) Both components are variable when coördinate, except first components in -o:

Des sourd(e)s-muet(te)s. Deaf-mutes.

Des oranges aigres-douces. Sourish oranges.

But: *Les lettres gréco-romaines.* Græco-Roman literature.

(2) A subordinate component is usually invariable, being regarded as adverbial, but the principle is not fully carried out:

Des mots grecs-moderne. Modern Greek words.

Des enfants court-vêtus. Short-coated children.

Une dame haut placée. A lady of high rank.

Des enfants nouveau-nés. New-born infants.

a. But the subordinated component is variable in *frais cueilli* = *freshly gathered*, in *ivre mort* = *dead drunk*, in *grand ouvert* = *wide open*, and in *premier*, *dernier*, *nouveau* + a past participle (except *nouveau-né*, see above):

Des fleurs fraîches cueillies. Freshly gathered flowers.

La porte est grande ouverte. The door is wide open.

Les nouveaux mariés. The bridegroom and bride.

X3. Nouns serving as adjectives of color are regularly invariable:

Des robes lilas (citron). Purple (lemon-colored) dresses.

a. *Rose*, *cramoisi*, *pourpre*, are exceptions, and vary:

Des robes roses (cramoisies). Pink (crimson) dresses.

b. Modified adjectives of color are also usually invariable, the modifier being also invariable by rule, 2 (2), above:

Des cheveux blond ardent. Reddish blond hair.

✓NOTE. — These constructions are explained by supplying the ellipsis:
Des robes (couleur de) lilas; Des cheveux (couleur de) blond ardent.

X 4. A few adjectives are variable or invariable according to position or context:

a. **Demi** = *half*, **nu** = *naked*, **plein** = *full of*, are invariable before and variable after the noun; so also, **excepté** and others (§ 289, *a, b*), **franc de port** = *postpaid* (also **franco**, adverb) is invariable before, and usually variable after:

Une demi-heure; une heure et demie. Half an hour; an hour and a half.

Il a de l'or plein ses poches.

He has his pockets full of gold.

Il est nu-tête; il a les bras nus.

He is bareheaded; his arms are bare.

Il a les yeux pleins de larmes.

His eyes are full of tears.

Recevoir franc de port une lettre.

To receive a letter postpaid.

Des lettres franches de port.

Postpaid letters.

Obs.: demi, nu, when preceding, form a compound with hyphen.

b. **Feu** = *late*, *deceased*, is invariable when preceding the definite article, or determinative, and variable after it:

Feu la reine (la feue reine).

The late queen.

c. After **avoir l'air** = *have an air* (*appearance*) the adjective agrees with **air**; but it agrees with the subject of the verb when the expression means *seem, appear*:

Cette dame a l'air hautain.

That lady has a haughty air.

Elle a l'air malheureuse.

She seems unhappy.

xCette soupe a l'air bonne.

This soup looks good.

5. A very few adjectives are always invariable:

Nous avons été capot.

We had come to grief.

Vingt livres sterling.

Twenty pounds sterling.

344. **Nouns as Adjectives.** By a sort of apposition, nouns are frequently used as adjectives; when so used, they usually agree like adjectives:

Une maîtresse cheminée.

A main chimney.

Des philosophes poètes.

Poet philosophers.

But: La race nègre, etc.

a. **Témoin** = *witness*, at the head of a phrase, is adverbial and invariable:

J'ai bien combattu, témoin les blessures que j'ai reçues.

I have fought well, witness the wounds I received.

b. For nouns as adjectives of color, see § 343, 3.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

345. The Comparative. It is regularly denoted by placing *plus = more*, *moins = less*, for inequality, and *aussi = as*, for equality, before each adjective compared; *than* or *as = que*:

Il est plus grand que Jean.

He is taller than John.

Il est moins grand que Jean.

He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.

Il est aussi grand que Jean.

He is as tall as John.

Il est plus diligent et plus attentif que Jean.

He is more diligent and (more) attentive than John.

Il est plus faible que malade.

He is more weak than ill.

✓*a.* Aussi, used negatively, may be replaced by *si*:

Il n'est pas aussi (si) grand que J. He is not so tall as John.

✓*b.* When *aussi* or *si* is omitted, *comme (not que)* is used:

Un roi riche comme Crésus. A king as rich as Croesus.

✓*c.* After *plus*, *moins*, affirmatively, *than = que ... ne* when coming before a finite verb:

Il est plus grand qu'il ne (le) paraît. He is taller than he seems.

✓*d.* More and more (or -er and -er) = de plus en plus; less and less (or -er and -er) = de moins en moins; the more ... the more = plus ... (et) plus; the less ... the less = moins ... (et) moins; the more ... = d'autant plus ...:

L'air devint de plus en plus froid.

The air became colder and colder.

Il devint de moins en moins actif.

He became less and less active.

Plus il devient riche (et) moins il est généreux.

The richer he becomes the less generous is he.

Il en sera d'autant plus riche.

He will be the richer for it.

✓**346. Irregular Comparison.** The adjectives *bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, have a special comparative form:

Pos.	COMP.
<u>bon, good,</u>	<u>meilleur</u>
<u>mauvais, bad,</u>	<u>pire</u>
<u>petit, small,</u>	<u>moindre</u>

Pos.	COMP.
<i>or bon,</i>	<i>plus bon (rare)</i>
<i>or mauvais,</i>	<i>plus mauvais</i>
<i>or petit,</i>	<i>plus petit</i>

- a. Bon is hardly ever compared regularly:
 À bon marché, à meilleur marché. Cheap, cheaper.
 Cela sent bon (meilleur). That smells good (better).
 But: Ce n'est ni plus bon ni plus mauvais.

NOTES. — 1. In expressions like Ce vin est plus ou moins bon, bon is not really comparative. 2. Some grammarians admit plus bon = more good-natured.

- b. Pire is, in general, stronger than plus mauvais, and may serve also as a comparative to méchant = bad, evil, wicked:

Cet homme est méchant (pire). That man is bad (worse).

- c. In general, moindre = less, lesser, less (in importance) and plus petit = smaller, less (in size):

Votre douleur en sera moindre. Your sorrow will hence be less.

Une plus petite pomme. A smaller apple.

347. The Superlative Relative. 1. It is denoted by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative of inequality:

Elle est la moins aimable. She is the least amiable.

Mes meilleurs amis. My best friends.

La moindre difficulté. The slightest difficulty.

- a. When the superlative follows the noun, the definite article is not omitted:

C'est l'enfant le plus diligent et le plus attentif de tous. He is the most diligent and attentive boy of all.

Mes amis les plus fidèles. My most faithful friends.

X 2. After a superlative, in = de (not à, dans, etc.); among = entre or d'entre:

L'homme le plus riche de la ville. The richest man in the city.

Le meilleur écrivain des États-Unis. The best writer in the United States.

Le plus brave (*d'*)entre les Grecs. The bravest among the Greeks.

348. The Superlative Absolute. It is expressed by le (invariable) + plus or moins before the adjective, or else by an adverb, such as très, bien, fort, extrêmement, etc., or some other modifying expression:

X Elle est le plus heureuse (moins heureuse) quand elle est seule. She is happiest (least happy) when she is alone.

<u>Vous êtes très aimable.</u>	You are very (most) kind.
<u>C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau.</u>	It is most beautiful.
<u>Un brave des braves.</u>	One of the bravest.
<u>Un homme des plus dignes.</u>	A most worthy man.
<u>Une dame on ne peut plus digne.</u>	A most worthy woman.
<u>Des tribus sauvages au possible.</u>	Most savage tribes.

a. Occasionally it is denoted in familiar style by repetition of the adjective, or by -issime:

<u>Cet homme est rusé, rusé.</u>	That man is very, very cunning.
<u>Il est richissime.</u>	He is very wealthy.

349. Remarks. 1. Comparative and superlative are indistinguishable in constructions requiring in English a definite article before the comparative:

Le plus fort de mes deux frères. The stronger of my two brothers.

2. De denotes *by how much* after a comparative or superlative:

<u>Plus âgé de trois ans.</u>	Older by three years.
<u>x Il est de beaucoup le plus grand.</u>	<u>He is the tallest by far.</u>
But: <u>Il est beaucoup plus grand.</u>	He is much taller.

3. Observe the following:

<u>Les basses classes.</u>	<u>The lower classes.</u>
<u>J'ai fait mon possible.</u>	<u>I did my utmost.</u>

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

350. Predicative Adjectives. They are placed, in general, as in English:

<u>Elles sont contentes.</u>	They are pleased.
<u>Elle parut fatiguée.</u>	She seemed tired.
<u>Brave, savant, vertueux, il se fit aimer de tous.</u>	Brave, learned, virtuous, he made himself beloved by all.

a. Observe the position after assez, after plus... plus, moins... moins, and in exclamations with combien! comme! que! tant! as compared with the order of words in English:

Il est assez sot pour le croire. He is silly enough to believe it.

Plus il devint riche moins il fut The richer he became the less généreux. generous was he.

Que vous êtes aimable de venir! How kind you are to come!

351. Attributive Adjectives. When used literally, to define, distinguish, specify, emphasize, etc., they usually follow; but when used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet, or denoting a quality viewed as essential to the object, or when forming, as it were, one idea with the noun, they usually precede:

Une rue étroite; une étroite A narrow street; an intimate amitié. friendship.

Un roi savant; le savant auteur. A learned king; the learned author.

Le fameux Pitt; un rusé coquin. The famous Pitt; a cunning rogue.

a. The following, of very common use, generally precede:

beau	grand	joli	meilleur	pire	vilain
bon	gros	long	moindre	sot	
court	jeune	mauvais	petit	vieux	

~~X~~ **352. Special Rules for Attributives.** 1. Certain adjectives serve regularly to define, distinguish, etc., and hence regularly follow; such are:

(1) Adjectives of physical quality:

Une table carrée; une pierre dure; A square table; a hard stone; cold de l'eau froide (chaude); de (hot) water; black ink; a pi-l'encre noire; une sauce piquante. quant sauce.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

De noirs chagrins; une verte vieillesse; le bleu ciel d'Italie. Dark sorrows; a green old age; the blue sky of Italy.

~~X~~(2) Adjectives of nationality, religion, profession, title, and those from proper names:

Le droit anglais; un prêtre catholique; une splendeur royale; le latin cicéronien. English law; a Catholic priest; royal splendor; Ciceronian Latin.

(3) Participles used as adjectives:

Une étoile filante; un homme instruit; une porte ouverte. A shooting star; an educated man; an open door.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

Une éclatante victoire. A signal victory.

b. Past participial forms which have become real adjectives, *e.g.*, prétendu, absolu, parfait, dissolu, feint, rusé, etc., very often precede (prétendu nearly always):

Une feinte modestie. Feigned modesty.

Le prétendu comte. The would-be count.

2. Adjectives sometimes follow the noun on account of their adjuncts or their function; thus:

(1) When modified by an adverb, other than aussi, si, très, bien, fort, plus, moins, assez:

Un discours extrêmement long. An extremely long speech.

But: Un très long discours. A very long speech.

(2) When modified by an adverbial phrase, or in comparisons:

Une contrée riche en vins. A district rich in wines.

Un guerrier brave comme un lion. A warrior as brave as a lion.

(3) Nouns used appositively as adjectives:

Une puissance amie. A friendly power.

3. Two or more adjectives, with one noun, follow, in general, the rules stated, but, if joined by a conjunction, they all follow, in case one is such as must follow:

Une jolie petite fille. A pretty little girl.

Une belle maison blanche. A beautiful white house.

Un objet blanc et étincelant. A white and dazzling object.

Une dame belle et savante. A beautiful and learned lady.

a. The more specific of two or more adjectives which follow comes last, contrary to English usage:

Des écrivains français habiles. Clever French writers.

X4. A considerable number of adjectives differ more or less widely in meaning, according as they precede or follow:

Mon cher enfant; une robe chère. My dear child; a costly dress.

Le moyen âge; un homme d'âge moyen. The Middle Ages; a middle-aged man.

Such adjectives are:

ancien	dernier	fort	jeune	parfait	sage
bon	différent	furieux	maigre	pauvre	seul
brave	digne	galant	malhonnête	petit	simple
certain	divers	grand	mauvais	plaisant	triste
cher	fameux	gros	méchant	premier	véritable
commun	faux	haut	mort	propre	vrai
cruel	fier	honnête	nouveau	pur	etc.

NOTE. — Distinctions of this kind depend, in the main, upon the general principles laid down above, but they are too numerous and too subtle to be given in detail here. Observation, and the use of a good dictionary will, in time, make the learner familiar with the most important of them.

353. Determinatives. Such adjectives, including numerals, possessives, demonstratives, indefinites, precede:

Trois plumes; mes plumes. Three pens; my pens.
Ces plumes-ci; d'autres plumes. These pens; other pens.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

354. An adjective is often followed by a complement connected with it by a preposition, such as *à*, *de*, *en*, *envers*, etc. The preposition to be used is determined by the meaning of the adjective, as explained in the following sections.

355. Adjective + à. The preposition *à* = *to*, *at*, *for*, etc., is required after most adjectives denoting tendency, fitness, and their opposites, comparison, etc.

Cet homme est adonné <i>à</i> la boisson.	That man is addicted to drink.
Il est favorable <i>à</i> mes projets.	He is favorable to my projects.
Il est bien habile <i>aux</i> affaires.	He is very clever in business.
Un homme supérieur <i>à</i> tous.	A man superior to all.
Ce n'est bon <i>à</i> rien.	That is good for nothing.

Such adjectives are:

accoutumé, accustomed (<i>to</i>)	cher, dear (<i>to</i>)	hardi, bold (<i>in</i>)
adroït, clever (<i>at</i>)	convenable, suitable (<i>to</i>)	improper, unfit (<i>for</i>)
agréable, pleasant (<i>to</i>)	égal, equal (<i>to</i>)	inférieur, inferior (<i>to</i>)
antérieur, anterior (<i>to</i>)	exact, exact (<i>in</i>)	infidèle, unfaithful (<i>to</i>)
ardent, ardent (<i>in</i>)	fidèle, faithful (<i>in</i>)	inutile, useless (<i>to</i>)
bon, good, fit (<i>for</i>)	fort, clever (<i>at</i>)	lent, slow (<i>in</i>)

not pour

<i>nuisible, hurtful (to)</i>	<i>prêt, ready (to)</i>	<i>semblable, similar (to)</i>
<i>opposé, opposed (to)</i>	<i>prompt, prompt (in)</i>	<i>utile, useful (to)</i>
<i>pareil, similar (to)</i>	<i>propice, propitious (to)</i>	<i>etc.</i>
<i>porté, inclined (to)</i>	<i>propre, fit (for)</i>	

a. Bon pour = *good for, beneficial to, kind to.*

356. Adjective + de. The preposition *de* = *of, from, with, etc.*, is required after most adjectives denoting source or origin (hence also, feeling, sentiment, abundance), separation (hence also, absence, distance, want, etc.), and after most past participles to denote the agent (cf. § 240):

<i>Êtes-vous natif de Paris?</i>	Are you a native of Paris?
<i>Ils sont contents de mon succès.</i>	They are pleased at my success.
<i>Elle est pleine de vanité.</i>	She is full of vanity.
<i>Je suis libre de soucis.</i>	I am free from care.
<i>Il est inconnu de tous.</i>	He is unknown to all.

Such adjectives are:

<i>absent, absent (from)</i>	<i>digne, worthy (of)</i>	<i>jaloux, jealous (of)</i>
<i>affligé, grieved (at)</i>	<i>éloigné, distant (from)</i>	<i>lourd, heavy (with)</i>
<i>aise, glad (of)</i>	<i>enchanté, delighted (with)</i>	<i>offensé, offended (at)</i>
<i>alarmé, alarmed (at)</i>	<i>ennuyé, weary (of)</i>	<i>pauprre, poor (in)</i>
<i>ambitieux, ambitious (of)</i>	<i>étonné, astonished (at)</i>	<i>plein, full (of)</i>
<i>avide, greedy (of)</i>	<i>exempt, free (from)</i>	<i>ravi, delighted (with)</i>
<i>bénî, blessed (by)</i>	<i>fâché, sorry (for)</i>	<i>satisfait, satisfied (with)</i>
<i>capable, capable (of)</i>	<i>fier, proud (of)</i>	<i>soucieux, anxious (about)</i>
<i>charmé, delighted (with)</i>	<i>glorieux, proud (of)</i>	<i>souillé, soiled (with)</i>
<i>cherî, beloved (by)</i>	<i>hérissé, bristling (with)</i>	<i>sûr, sure (of)</i>
<i>confus, confused (at)</i>	<i>heureux, glad (of)</i>	<i>surpris, surprised (at)</i>
<i>contrarié, vexed (with)</i>	<i>honteux, ashamed (of)</i>	<i>triste, sad (at)</i>
<i>dénoué, destitute (of)</i>	<i>ignorant, ignorant (of)</i>	<i>vain, vain (of)</i>
<i>dépourvu, devoid (of)</i>	<i>indigne, unworthy (of)</i>	<i>vexé, vexed (at)</i>
<i>désireux, desirous (of)</i>	<i>inquiet, uneasy (about)</i>	<i>vide, empty (of)</i>
<i>différent, different (from)</i>	<i>ivre, intoxicated (with)</i>	<i>etc.</i>

a. Fâché contre = *angry at or with (a person).*

357. Adjective + en. *En* is required after a few adjectives denoting abundance, skill, etc.:

<i>Le Canada est fertile en blé.</i>	Canada is fertile in wheat.
<i>Il est expert en chirurgie.</i>	He is expert in surgery.

Such adjectives are:

<i>abondant, abounding (in)</i>	<i>fort, strong (in), learned (in)</i>	<i>riche, rich (in)</i>
<i>fécond, fruitful (in)</i>	<i>ignorant, ignorant (in)</i>	<i>savant, learned (in)</i>

a. fort and ignorant sometimes have sur:

Il est fort *sur l'histoire.*

He is well versed (good) in history.

Ignorant *sur ces matières-là.*

Ignorant about those matters.

358. Adjective + *envers*. *Envers* is used after most adjectives denoting disposition or feeling towards:

Il est libéral *envers tous.*

He is liberal towards all.

Such adjectives are:

affable, <i>affable</i>	honnête, <i>polite</i>	poli, <i>polite</i>
bon, <i>kind</i>	indulgent, <i>indulgent</i>	prodigue, <i>lavish</i>
charitable, <i>charitable</i>	ingrat, <i>ungrateful</i>	reconnaissant, <i>grateful</i>
civil, <i>civil</i>	insolent, <i>insolent</i>	respectueux, <i>respectful</i>
cruel, <i>cruel</i>	juste, <i>just</i>	responsable, <i>responsible</i>
dur, <i>hard, harsh</i>	méchant, <i>malicious</i>	rigoureux, <i>stern</i>
généreux, <i>generous</i>	miséricordieux, <i>merciful</i>	sévère, <i>severe, stern</i>
grossier, <i>rude</i>	officieux, <i>obliging</i>	etc.

a. Bon, dur, very frequently take pour; indulgent may take pour or à:

Il est bon (dur) pour moi. He is kind (harsh) to me.

Indulgent pour (à) ses enfants. Indulgent to his children.

b. Observe that bien and mal are sometimes used adjectivally, as in: il est bien, he is good-looking; elle n'est pas mal, she is not bad-looking; nous sommes bien ici, we are comfortable here, etc.

THE PRONOUN

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

359.

Personal Pronouns

1. Conjunctive forms:

1ST PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.)	3RD PER. (f.)	3RD REF. (m.f.)
SING. N. je I	tu thou	il he, it	elle she, it	
D. me (to) me	te (to) thee	lui (to) him	lui (to) her	se (to) -self
A. me me	te thee	le him, it	la her, it	se -self
N. nous we	vous you	ils they	elles they	
D. nous (to) us	vous (to) you	leur (to) them	leur (to) them	se (to) -selves
A. nous us	vous you	les them	les them	se -selves

2. Disjunctive forms:

1ST. PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.)	3RD PER. (f.)	3RD REF. (m.f.)
-----------	----------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

(SING. N. A. (P.)	moi I, me	toi thou,	lui he, him thee	elle she, her	soi oneself, etc.
--------------------------------	-----------	-----------	---------------------	---------------	-------------------

(PLUR. N. A. (P.)	nous we, us	vous you	eux they, them	elles they, them	
--------------------------------	-------------	----------	----------------	------------------	--

[N. = nominative; D. = dative; A. = accusative; P. = object of a preposition.]

NOTE. — A more scientific terminology would be 'unstressed' and 'stressed' instead of 'conjunctive' and 'disjunctive,' as indicating the real distinction between the two sets of forms, e.g., *Je* (unstressed) *parle*; *Qui parle ?* — *Moi* (stressed). As a matter of fact, the unstressed forms usually stand in immediate connection with the verb (as subject or object), hence the term 'conjunctive,' while the stressed forms are usually employed otherwise, hence the term 'disjunctive.'

360.

Pronominal Adverbs

y = to (*at, on, in, into*, etc.) it or them; there, thither.

en = of (*from*, etc.) it or them; some, any, some of it, some of them; thence, from there.

NOTE. — Y and en were originally adverbs (y from L. *ibi* = there, and en from L. *inde* = thence), but they are now usually pronominal in function, and are used precisely like the conjunctive forms.

361. Agreement. The personal pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Nous les avons frappé(e)s.

We have struck them.

Elle lit la lettre; elle la lit.

She reads the letter; she reads it.

a. The first person plural for the first person singular is used by sovereigns and authorities, and by writers, as in English:

Nous (le roi) avons ordonné et We (the king) have ordained and
ordonnons ce qui suit. ordain as follows.

Comme nous avons dit déjà.

As we have said already.

b. Vous = you (singular or plural) has a plural verb; its other agreements, as also those of nous above, are according to the sense:

Nous (la reine) sommes contente. We (the queen) are satisfied.

Madame, vous êtes bien bonne. Madam, you are very kind.

- c. For imperative first plural instead of first singular, see § 267, a.
 ✓d. Il and le are used as invariable neutral forms, when the antecedent is one to which gender cannot be ascribed:

Y en a-t-il? — *Je le crois.* Is there any (of it)? I think so.

362. Case Relations of Conjunctives. 1. The nominative forms stand as subject and the accusative forms as direct object to a verb; their use is obvious:

Il nous a vus. He saw us.

a. The conjunctive is optional when there are two accusatives:
Je (les) blâme lui et elle. I blame him and her.

2. The dative forms denote the person or thing for whose 'advantage' or 'disadvantage' the action is done, denoted by à = *to, for, from*, with nouns:

Je leur prêterai les livres. I shall lend them the books.

On lui a volé son argent. His money has been stolen from him.

But à + a disjunctive form is used in the following cases:

(1) When two datives are joined by a conjunction, or when in emphasis a second dative is implied:

J'en ai parlé à lui et à elle. I spoke of it to him and to her.

Je donne le livre à elle (pas à lui). I give the book to her (not to him).

✗ (2) When the conjunctive direct object is any other pronoun than le, la, les:

Je vous présente à elle. I introduce you to her.

Il se présenta à moi. He introduced himself to me.

But: *Je le (la, les) leur présente*, etc.

(3) After verbs of motion and some others, to denote the 'object towards which the action tends,' the relation, though expressed by à, not being really dative:

Je courus à lui. I ran to him.

Cette maison est à moi. That house belongs to me.

Il pense (songe, rêve) à eux. He thinks (muses, dreams) of them.

Such verbs are:

<i>accoutumer, accustom</i>	<i>comparer, compare</i>	<i>prendre intérêt, take interest</i>
<i>aller, go</i>	<i>courir, run</i>	<i>✓prétendre, aspire</i>
<i>appeler, call</i>	<i>être (à), belong (to)</i>	<i>recourir, have recourse</i>
<i>en appeler, appeal</i>	<i>faire attention, pay attention</i>	<i>renoncer, renounce</i>
<i>aspirer, aspire</i>		<i>revenir, come back</i>
<i>attirer, attract</i>	<i>habituer, accustom</i>	<i>rêver, dream</i>
<i>avoir affaire, have to do</i>	<i>marcher, march</i>	<i>songer, muse</i>
<i>avoir recours, have recourse</i>	<i>penser, think</i>	<i>✓venir, come</i>
	<i>prendre garde, take heed</i>	

a. Certain verbs of this class, when not literal, take the conjunctive dative:

Il lui vint une idée.

There occurred to him an idea.

Vous nous reviendrez.

You will come to see us again.

NOTE. — The ethical dative, denoting the person 'interested in' or 'affected by' an action, rare in English, is common in French: *Gouitez-moi ce vin-là. Just taste that wine.*

363. Impersonal *il*. For invariable *il* as the subject of an impersonal verb, see §§ 248–253.

364. Predicative *le, la, les*. As predicate the third person is either variable or invariable:

1. **Le** agrees when referring to a determinate noun or to an adjective used as such:

Êtes-vous sa mère? — Je la suis. Are you his mother? — I am.

Êtes-vous la mariée? — Je la suis. Are you the bride? — I am.

2. **Le**, invariable, is used when referring to an adjective, or to a noun as adjective:

Êtes-vous fatiguée? — Je le suis. Are you tired? — I am.

Êtes-vous mère? — Je le suis. Are you a mother? — I am.

365. Pleonastic *le*. The neutral form *le* (§ 361, d) is often pleonastic, as compared with English usage:

Êtes-vous mère? — Je le suis. Are you a mother? — I am.

Qu'ils soient venus, je le sais. That they have come, I know.

Fais du bien, quand tu le peux. Do good when you can.

Ce qu'il voulait, il le veut encore. What he wished, he still wishes.

- Je suis prête, s'il *le* faut. I am ready if need be.
 Je m'en irai, si vous *le* désirez. I shall go if you wish (it).
 Ils sont comme je (*le*) désirerais. They are as I should like.
 Il est plus âgé que je ne (*le*) suis. He is older than I am.

Obs.: This *le* is optional in comparative clauses.

a. *Le* is also used in a number of fixed expressions:

- Il ne *le* cède à personne. He yields to nobody.
 Nous *l'avons* emporté. We have carried the day.
 ✗ Il *l'a échappé belle*. He had a narrow escape.

b. *Le* may sometimes be translated by *one* or *so*:

- Il est soldat; je *le* suis aussi. He is a soldier; I am one too.
 Sois brave, et je *le* serai aussi. Be brave and I shall be so too.

366. Reflexives. 1. A special conjunctive reflexive form, *se* for dative or accusative of either gender or number, is required in the third person only; for the first and second person the ordinary forms are used (cf. § 242):

- Il (elle) *se loue*. He (she) praises him (her) -self.
 Ils (elles) *se le sont dit*. They said so to each other.

But: Je *me loue*; tu *te loues*; nous *nous louons*; vous *vous louez*.

2. The disjunctive *soi* is hardly used beyond the third singular in an indefinite or general sense:

- Chacun travaille pour *soi*. Every one works for himself.
 On doit parler rarement de *soi*. One should rarely speak of oneself.
 De *soi* le vice est odieux. In itself vice is hateful.

But: Elle est contente d'*elle-même*; ils ne songent qu'à *eux-mêmes*.

a. The use of *soi* is rarer for the feminine than for the masculine:
 Un bienfait porte sa récompense A good deed brings its reward
 avec *soi* (*lui*). with it.

La guerre entraîne après *elle* (*soi*) War brings after it countless evils.
 des maux sans nombre.

✗ *Note.* — *Soi* is no longer used of persons denoted by a general noun, e.g., L'avare ne vit que pour *lui-même* (not pour *soi*), nor is it used, as formerly, of persons to avoid ambiguity, e.g., Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à *lui-même* (not à *soi*).

367. Uses of *en*. 1. *En* is in function an equivalent of *de* + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and less commonly of persons:

Je parle des plumes; j'en parle.
Donnez-les-moi; j'en ai besoin.
Il est mon ami; j'en réponds.
Il aime ses fils, et il en est aimé.

Vous voilà; j'en suis content.
Vient-il de Chicago? — Il en vient.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Voyons! où en étions-nous?
Ils en sont venus aux mains.
Il m'en veut.
Tant s'en faut.
C'en est fait de lui.
À vous en croire.
Quoi qu'il en soit.
Je n'en peux plus.
Il y en a qui le croient.

2. Through a somewhat special application of the general principle, it is further used:

(1) In a partitive sense:

Voici du papier; en voulez-vous?
 — Merci, j'en ai.
Avez-vous une plume? — J'en ai une (j'en ai plusieurs).
Il me faut en acheter d'autres.

(2) En = thereof + the definite article replaces a possessive adjective referring to a possessor in the preceding clause, but only when the thing possessed is a direct object, a subject of *être*, or a predicate noun:

J'aime ce pays; j'en admire les institutions.

Blâmez les péchés de ces gens, mais n'en blâmez pas les malheurs.

Cette affaire est délicate; le succès en est douteux.

Ceci est la gloire du pays; cela en est la honte.

But: Cette maison a ses défauts (the possessor not being in the pre-

I speak of the pens; I speak of them.
 Give me them; I need them.
 He is my friend; I answer for him.
 He loves his sons, and is loved by them.

There you are; I am glad of it.
 Does he come from C.? He does.

Let me see, how far on were we?
 They came to blows.
 He has a grudge against me.
 Far from it.
 It is all up with him.
 If one is to believe you.
 However it (that) may be.
 I am worn out.
 There are some who think so.

Here is some paper; do you wish any? — Thank you, I have some.
 Have you a pen? — I have one (I have several).
 I must buy others.

I like this country; I admire its institutions.

Blame the sins of those people, but do not blame their misfortunes.

That affair is delicate; its success is doubtful.

This is the country's glory; that is its disgrace.

vious sentence); *J'aime ces vers; leur harmonie me ravit* (the thing possessed being subject of another verb than être); *J'admire ce pays; il est fameux par ses bonnes lois* (the thing possessed being governed by a preposition).

368. Use of *y*. *Y* is in function equivalent to à (en, dans, etc.) + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and rarely of persons:

Je pense à mes péchés; j'y pense. I think of my sins; I think of them.
Il est en Europe; il y est, et moi j'y vais aussi. He is in Europe; he is there, and I am going there too.

Il se connaît en ces choses, mais moi je ne m'y connais pas. He is an expert in those things, but I am not.

Il aspire à cela; il y aspire. He aspires to that; he aspires to it.

Vous fiez-vous à lui? — Je m'y fie. Do you trust him? — I trust him.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Il y va de votre vie. Your life is at stake.

J'y suis! Qu'y a-t-il? (*vous y êtes?*) I have it! What is the matter?

Il s'y prend adroûtement. He goes about it cleverly.

Est-ce que Monsieur B. y est? Is Mr. B. at home?

Y pensez-vous? You don't mean it?

369. Position of Conjunctive Objects. 1. They stand immediately before their governing verb, except the imperative affirmative:

Je leur en parlerai. I shall speak to them of it.

Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire. I sent him there to tell them it.

Il lui faut parler; il faut lui parler. He must speak; one must speak to him.

a. With negative infinitive, the object may stand between *ne* and *pas* (point, rien, etc.); similarly adverb + infinitive:

Je suis étonné de ne point le voir I am astonished not to see him.
(or ne le point voir).

Pour les bien considérer. To consider them well.

✓ b. The objects of an infinitive governed by *faire*, *laisser* (cf. § 230, 6, 7) or a verb of perceiving (*entendre*, etc.), accompany the finite verb:

Je le lui ferai dire. I shall make him say it.

Il se le voit refuser. He sees himself being refused it.

Faites-vous-la raconter. Have it related to you.

c. A similar arrangement is permissible with *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer*, etc. + an infinitive:

<i>je vais le chercher.</i>	I'll fetch it (<i>or him</i>).
<i>J'enverrai le chercher or } Je l'enverrai chercher. }</i>	I shall send for him.

NOTE. — In the older language, objects of an infinitive often stood before the so-called modal auxiliaries, *e.g.*, *Je vous dois dire*, but usage hardly permits this now, except for *en*, *y*, *e.g.*, *Ce qu'on en doit attendre*.

2. Conjunctive objects stand immediately after an imperative affirmative:

<i>Regardez-les; écoutez-nous.</i>	Look at them; listen to us.
<i>Donnez-le-lui; allons-nous-en.</i>	Give it to him; let us go away.
<i>But: Ne les regardez pas.</i>	Do not look at them.
<i>Ne les écoutez point.</i>	Do not listen to them.
<i>Ne le lui donnez pas.</i>	Do not give it to him.

a. The rule does not apply to the subjunctive as impve. (§ 272, 1, a):
Qu'il les écoute. Let him listen to them.

XNOTES. — 1. Formerly, but rarely now, an imperative affirmative when joined to another by *et* (*ou*, *mais*) might have an object before it: *Achetez-les et les payez*, etc.

2. *Voici* and *voilà*, which are imperatives by derivation, are always preceded by their conjunctive object: *Les voici, en voilà*, etc.

370. Relative Position of Objects. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs are arranged with reference to each other, as follows:

1. When coming before the verb:

<i>me</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>{ le }</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>{ lui }</i>	<i>before y — before en</i>
<i>te</i>		<i>{ la }</i>			
<i>se</i>		<i>{ les }</i>			
<i>nous</i>					
<i>vous</i>					

<i>Il me les donne.</i>	He gives them to me.
<i>Il les lui donne.</i>	He gives them to him.
<i>Il nous en donne.</i>	He gives us some of it.
<i>Je leur en parlerai.</i>	I shall speak to them of it.
<i>Ne leur en parlez pas.</i>	Do not speak of it to them.
<i>Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.</i>	I sent him there to tell them it.

a. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, they become disjunctive and follow the verb:

J'ai vu *lui* et *elle*. I have seen him and her.
 J'en ai parlé à *lui* et à *elle*. I spoke of it to him and to her.

2. When coming after the verb:

le (la les)	before moi (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur)
me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before y (en)
y	before en
<i>Donnez-les-moi.</i>	Give them to me.
<i>Donnez-leur-en.</i>	Give them some of it.
<i>Donnez-m'en; va-t'en.</i>	Give me some; begone.
<i>Conduisez-nous-y.</i>	Take us there.
<u><i>Allez-vous-en.</i></u>	Go away.

a. After an imperative, the indirect objects nous, vous, may precede the direct le, la, les in familiar language:

Conservez-vous-le. Keep it for yourselves.
Tenez-vous-le pour dit. Consider it as final.

3. Reference table showing possible combinations of two pronouns:

(Before the Verb)					(After the Verb)		
me le	te le	se le	le	lui	-le -moi	-le -toi	-le -lui
me la	te la	se la	la	lui	-la -moi	-la -toi	-la -lui
me les	te les	se les	les	lui	-les-moi	-les-toi	-les-lui
nous le	vous le	se le	le	leur	-le -nous	-le -vous	-le -leur
nous la	vous la	se la	la	leur	-la -nous	-la -vous	-la -leur
nous les	vous les	se les	les	leur	-les-nous	-les-vous	-les-leur
m'en	t'en	s'en	lui	en	-m'en	-t'en	-lui-en
m'en	t'en	s'en	l'en		-m'en	-t'en	-l'en
nous en	vous en	s'en	leur	en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-leur-en
nous en	vous en	s'en	les	en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-les -en
m'y	t'y	s'y	[lui y]		[-m'y]	[-t'y]	[-lui-y]
m'y	t'y	s'y	l'y		[-m'y]	[-t'y]	-l'y
nous y	vous y	s'y	leur	y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-leur-y
nous y	vous y	s'y	les	y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-les -y
		y en				y-en	

Obs.: 1. The disjunctive forms *moi*, *toi* are used instead of *me*, *te* after the verb, except before *en*.

2. After the verb, the forms are joined to it and to each other by hyphens, apostrophe instead of hyphen being used according to § 19.

3. Combinations of three forms are rare, *e.g.*, *Il nous y en a donné*; they are usually avoided, *e.g.*, *Donnes-y-en à moi* for *Donne-m'y-en*.

4. The forms in [] are almost always avoided, either by transposition or by some other form of expression, *e.g.*, *Mènes-y-moi* or *Mène-moi là* for *Mène-m'y*, etc. See § 159, 4.

371. Omission of Object. The object of the second of two verbs in a compound tense joined by *et* or *ou* may be omitted along with the auxiliary and the subject:

Il l'a pris et tué.	He caught and killed it.
Or: Il l'a pris et l'a tué.	He caught it and killed it.
Il l'a pris et il l'a tué.	He has caught it and has killed it.
But: Il l'a pris, l'a tué.	He has caught it, has killed it.
Il le prend, et le tue.	He catches it, and kills it.

NOTE.—The verbs must be alike in government, must have the same auxiliary, must both be affirmative or negative, otherwise no omission is allowed.

372. Disjunctives. When, for any reason, the pronoun is stressed (§ 7), the disjunctive form is usually employed (see § 359, note); thus, the disjunctives are used:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:	
Qui est là? — Moi (eux, elle).	Who is there? — I (they, she).
Qui as-tu vu? — Lui (eux).	Whom did you see? — Him (them).
Toi absent, que ferai-je?	You absent, what shall I do?

a. So also, in comparisons, and analogously, after <i>ne . . . que</i>:	
Je suis plus grand que toi.	I am taller than you.
Faites comme eux.	Do as they do.
Je n'ai vu que lui.	I have seen him only.

2. In appositions, often emphatic:

Moi, je l'ai vu (moi-même).	(Why) I saw it myself.
Toi qui l'as vu, tu me crois.	You who saw it (you) believe me
Lui aussi (il) le sait.	He too knows it.
Cela vous est facile à vous.	That is easy for you.

a. With *lui* so used, and sometimes also with *eux*, the conjunctive subject may be omitted:

Lui seul (il) ne le voulait pas. *He alone* did not wish it.
Lui travaillait; eux jouaient. He worked; they played.

NOTE. — *Je soussigné* = *I the undersigned* is a relic of the earlier language.

3. As logical subject after *ce + être*:

C'est moi (toi, vous); ce sont eux. It is I (thou, you); it is they.

4. With an infinitive:

Moi t'oublier ! jamais. I forget thee ! Never.
Et eux de s'enfuir. And they made off.

5. When the subject or object is composite, see also § 362, 1, a and 2, (1):

Son frère et lui sont venus. His brother and he have come.

a. A composite subject or object is usually summed up by a pleonastic appositive conjunctive, especially when the components are unlike in person:

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu. You and he saw it.
Je vous envoie, toi et ton frère. I send you and your brother.

6. After a preposition:

Je parle de toi et d'eux. I speak of you and of them.
Ils sont chez eux. They are at home.
Il se moque de nous. He makes sport of us.

✓a. Observe the peculiar use of a preposition + a disjunctive pronoun as a sort of emphatic appositive of possession.

J'ai une maison à moi. I have a house of my own.
Mon idée à moi, c'est, etc. My (own) idea is, etc.

NOTE. — A disjunctive for things after a preposition is usually avoided, either by means of *en*, *y*, or else by an adverb, such as *dédans*, *dehors*, *dessus*, *devant*, *derrière*, etc.: *Je ne vois rien là dedans (in it); Voyez sur la table, cherchez dessus (on it) et dessous (under it).*

7. For *moi* and *toi* after imperative, see § 370, 3, obs. 1.

373. Pronouns in Address. In addressing one person *vous* is, in general, the pronoun of formality and respect, whilst *tu* denotes familiarity, affection, solemnity, etc., as follows:

1. **Tu** = *you*, of one person, is generally used between members of the same family (husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters), between very intimate friends, between children, by grown persons to children and sometimes to servants, by everybody to animals and inanimate objects:

Où es-tu, mon cher père?

Est-ce toi, mon enfant?

Pauvre chien, tu as faim.

Where are you, my dear father?

Is that you, my child?

Poor dog, you are hungry.

2. **Tu** = *thou* is used in poetry and elevated prose, and by Protestants in addressing God, Roman Catholics using vous:

Nous te (vous) louons, ô Dieu! We praise thee, O God!

3. **Vous**, with the above limitations, is used, both in the singular and plural, as 'you' is in English.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

374.

Possessives

1. Adjectival Forms:

SING.	PL.
m. mon	mes, my
f. ma (mon)	
m. ton	tes, thy, your
f. ta (ton)	
m. son	ses
f. sa (son)	its, one's
m. notre	nos, our
f. votre	vos, your
m. leur	leurs, their

2. Pronominal Forms:

SING.	PL.
m. le mien	les miens
f. la mienne	les miennes
m. le tien	les tiens
f. la tienne	les tiennes
m. le sien	les siens
f. la sienne	les siennes
m. le nôtre	les nôtres, ours
f. la vôtre	les vôtres, yours
m. le leur	les leurs, theirs
f. la leur	

Obs.: 1. The forms in parenthesis, *mon, ton, son*, are used instead

Obs.: 1. The feminine, except for *leur*, is formed as for adjectives of

of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before a vowel or h mute: *Mon amie*, *my friend* (f.); *ton histoire* (f.), *your story*; *son aimable tante*, *his amiable aunt*. 2. Since *son* (*sa*, *ses*) = *his*, *her*, *its*, *one's*, the context determines which sense is intended.

like ending. 2. *De*, à + le, les, contract as usual; thus, *du mien* (= *de + le mien*), *aux miennes* (= à + *les miennes*), etc. 3. Note the accent mark in *nôtre*, *vôtre*, absent in *notre*, *votre*. 4. Since *le sien* (*la sienne*, etc.) = *his*, *hers*, *its*, *one's*, the context determines which sense is intended.

NOTE. — The regular feminine forms, *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, were at one time used before a vowel sound; a trace of this usage survives in *ma mie* (for *m'amie*).

375. Agreement. The possessives agree in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

Elle a son crayon et les miens. She has her pencil and mine.
Il a sa plume et les vôtres. He has his pen and yours.

a. The possessive adjective must be repeated precisely like the definite article (cf. § 318):

Mes parents et mes amis. My relatives and friends.

b. When the possessor is indefinite, *son* (*sa*, etc.) and *le sien* (*la sienne*, etc.), are used:

On doit tenir sa parole. One must keep one's word.
Se charger des affaires d'autrui et négliger les siennes. To undertake the business of others and neglect one's own.

376. Use of Adjectival Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are:

1. The possessive adjective is commonly replaced by the definite article (cf. § 328) when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Il s'est cassé la jambe. He broke his leg.
Donnez-moi la main. Give me your hand.
Il m'a déchiré le visage. He has scratched my face.
But: *Il a déchiré son habit.* He has torn his coat.

a. If the sense is specific, emphatic, or distinctive, the possessive is used:

Mon bras me fait mal. My arm pains me.
Voilà ma migraine encore ! There is my sick-headache again!

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.
Elle lui a donné sa main.

I saw it with my own eyes.

She has given him her hand (*sc. in marriage*).

2. **En** + the definite article serves in certain cases as a substitute for **son**, **leur**, see § 367, 2, (2):

a. This construction is more usual for things than for persons; for things personified, for names of places, or to avoid ambiguity, **son**, **leur** are not uncommon:

La nécessité parle; il faut suivre sa loi.

Necessity speaks; we must follow her law.

Vous rappelez-vous cette ville?

Do you remember that city? Its

Ses promenades sont très belles.

promenades are very fine.

La source de toutes les passions est la sensibilité, l'imagination détermine leur pente.

Sensation is the source of all the passions, imagination determines their tendency.

3. The emphatic *own* is denoted by *propre* or by an apposition with *à*:

Je l'ai écrit de ma propre main.
C'est mon opinion à moi.

I wrote it with my own hand.
That is my own opinion.

Cf. also: J'ai un cheval à moi.

I have a horse of my own.

a. Along with **son** the **à** construction often avoids ambiguity:

Son père à lui.

His (i.e., not her) father.

Sa mère à elle.

Her mother.

4. Mon (ma) is commonly used, in direct address, before the name of a relative (not before *papa*, *maman*) or the title of a superior officer:

Bonjour mon père (mon colonel).
But: **Est-ce toi papa (maman)?**

Good morning, father (colonel).
Is that you, papa (mamma)?

XNOTE. — This usage explains the origin of **monsieur** (= **mon** + **sieur**) **madame** (= **ma** + **dame**), etc.

5. In speaking to a person of his or her relatives, **votre (vos)** is often preceded by **monsieur**, etc., for politeness:

Madame votre mère y est-elle? Is your mother in?

6. When there is plurality of possessor, the object possessed usually remains singular, if it is singular as regards the individual possessor:

Les hommes songent moins à leur âme qu'à leur corps. Men think less of their *souls* than of their *bodies*.
Ils ont perdu la vie. They lost their *lives*.

a. Sometimes the sense demands a plural:
Leurs têtes se ressemblent. Their heads are alike.

377. Use of Pronominal Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are the following:

1. Mine, etc., after être is regularly expressed by à moi, etc., when denoting ownership simply, while le mien, etc. denotes a distinction of ownership:

Cette montre est à moi. } That watch is mine.
Cette montre est la mienne. } That watch is mine (*not yours*).

2. The pronominal form sometimes stands without article in the predicate after certain verbs:

Ces opinions sont vôtres. Those opinions are yours.
Elle deviendra mienne. She shall become mine.
Je les ai fait miens. I made them mine.

Such verbs are:
être devenir dire faire regarder comme, etc.

3. The idiom a friend of mine, etc., is not literally translated:

Un de mes amis. A friend of mine.
Un médecin de mes amis. { One of my friends, (who is) a doctor.
A doctor, a friend of mine.
Un ami à moi. A friend of mine.
Mon ami que voici. This friend of mine.
Cf.: Un tour de sa façon. One of his tricks.

a. The use of mien (tien, sien) attributively in this sense is familiar:
Un mien parent. A relative of mine.
Une sienne cousine. A cousin of his.

4. Emphatic *own* is rendered by *propre*, or is, more usually, untranslated:

Son avis et le mien (*propre*). His opinion and my own.

5. When used absolutely, i.e., without antecedent, the singular denotes *property, what is mine, etc.*, and the plural *relatives, friends, allies, etc.*:

je ne demande que le mien. I ask only for what is mine.
Les nôtres se sont bien battus. Our soldiers (etc.) fought well.

a. Familiarly, the feminine means *pranks, etc.*:

Il fait encore des siennes. He is at his pranks again.

NOTE.—Other absolute uses are not permissible, e.g., *Votre lettre (not la vôtre) de la semaine dernière.*

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

378.

Demonstratives

1. Adjectival forms:

SING.	PL.
m. ce (cet)	ces
f. cette	
m. ce (cet) . . . -ci	ces . . . -ci
f. cette . . . -ci	
m. ce (cet) . . . -là	ces . . . -là
f. cette . . . -là	

Obs.: The form *cet* is used before a vowel or h mute: *Cet arbre; cet homme; cet autre dé;* but: *ce chêne; ce hêtre.*

2. Pronominal forms:

SING.	PL.
m. <i>celui</i>	<i>ceux</i>
f. <i>celle</i>	<i>celles</i>
m. <i>celui-ci</i>	<i>ceux-ci</i>
f. <i>celle-ci</i>	<i>celles-ci</i>
m. <i>celui-là</i>	<i>ceux-là</i>
f. <i>celle-là</i>	<i>celles-là</i>

ce, this (these), that (those), he (she, it, they)
var ceci, this
Jcela, that
Obs.: The *e* of *ce* is elided before a vowel or h mute (§ 19); *c'* becomes *ç'* before a (§ 5, 4); *ç'a été.*

379. **Agreement.** The adjectival form agrees in gender and number with the noun before which it stands; the pronominal form agrees in gender and number with the noun instead of which it stands:

Cette plume et celle de Jean.
J'aime ces livres-ci, mais je n'aime pas ceux-là.

This pen and that of John.
I like these books, but I do not like those.

a. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated like the definite article (cf. § 318).

380. Use of Adjectival *ce*. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.) = *this* or *that*; to distinguish *this* from *that* -*ci* and -*là* are respectively added to the noun:

Lis *ce* livre-*ci*; lis *ce* livre-*là*. Read this book; read that book.
J'aime *ces* tableaux-*là*. I like those pictures.

a. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.), referring to what has already been mentioned, sometimes has the force of *that*:

Le télégraphe, cette grande dé- The telegraph, that great discovery
couverte de notre siècle. of our century.

b. The definite article replaces the demonstrative adjective in a few idioms:

Ne parlez pas de *la sorte*. Do not speak in that way.
Je reviens à l'instant. I shall be back in a moment.

381. Celui. The pronoun *celui* (*celle*, etc.) = *that, that one, the one, he*, is regularly used only along with a relative clause or a *de* clause:

Ceux qui rient pleureront.	Those who laugh will weep.
Celle dont je parle est venue.	She of whom I speak has come.
Le devoir d'aimer Dieu et celui d'aimer son prochain.	The duty of loving God and that of loving one's neighbor.
Cette robe et celle que j'ai vue.	This dress and the one I saw.
Mes plumes et celles de mon frère.	My pens and my brother's.

Obs.: Note the use of *celui* = English possessive noun.

a. The relative sentence is sometimes elliptically expressed by the past participle:

Les découvertes énumérées sont The discoveries enumerated are
celles faites par Edison. those made by Edison.

b. *Celui-là* replaces *celui* when the predicate comes before the relative:

*Celui-là est riche qui est toujours
content.* He (that man) is rich who is always
happy.

382. Celui-ci, celui-là. The pronouns *celui-ci* (*celle-ci*, etc.) = *this, this one, he, the latter* and *celui-là* (*celle-là*,

etc.) = *that, that one, the former*, are used to contrast the nearer with the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez celle-ci, et renvoyez celle-là.

Veut-il ceux-ci ou ceux-là?

Cicéron et Virgile étaient Romains; celui-ci était poète, et celui-là orateur.

Here are the two chains; keep this (one), and send back that (one).

Does he wish these or those?

Cicero and Virgil were Romans; the former was an orator, and the latter a poet.

Obs.: The idiom in the last example is literally *the latter . . . , the former*.

a. *This or that* for emphasis, not contrast, is *celui-là*:

C'est une bonne loi (que) celle-là. This (that) is a good law.

✗383. *Ce* as Representative Subject. *Ce = this, that, these, those, he, she, it, they*, according to the context, is used with *être*, or with *devoir, pouvoir, savoir + être*, as representative subject, when the logical subject is:

✓1. *A proper noun, or a determinate noun, including adjectives as such:* *with article*

C'est Marie et sa mère.

It is Mary and her mother.

Ce sera un beau spectacle.

That (it) will be a fine sight.

Ce sont nos plumes.

These (those) are our pens.

Était-ce le meilleur?

Was it the best?

Ce sont des Allemands.

They (those) are Germans.

C'est mon ami(e).

He (she) is my friend.

Ce peut être Jean.

That may be John.

a. Before *être* + an indeterminate noun *il* (*ils, elles*) is the regular construction:

Il est temps de s'en aller.

It is time to go.

Ils sont amis (Français).

They are friends (French).

Elle est couturière.

She is a seamstress.

NOTE. — For a few expressions like *c'est dommage*, etc., in which *c'est* stands with an indeterminate noun, see 384, 1, note 3.

✓b. *Il est* is always used to indicate hours of the day:

Il est midi (trois heures).

It is noon (three o'clock).

But: *Quelle heure est-ce qui*

vient de sonner? — C'est cinq

heures.

is five.

c. Observe the use of *ce* in the following date idioms:

C'est aujourd'hui lundi.

To-day is Monday.

Ce sera demain le quatre.

To-morrow will be the fourth.

2. A pronoun:

Qui est-ce? — *Ce sont eux.*

Who is it? — It is they.

Ce sont les leurs.

Those are theirs.

C'est ceci; c'est cela.

It is this; it is that.

C'étaient les mêmes.

They (those) were the same.

Ce doivent être les miens.

Those must be mine.

3. An infinitive, or an infinitive with *de*:

Ce serait tout perdre.

That would be losing everything.

Voir c'est croire.

Seeing is believing.

Ce que je crains c'est de l'offenser.

What I fear is to offend him.

4. A noun sentence:

Est-ce que vous ne le ferez pas?

Will you not do it?

Où est-ce qu'il est?

Where is it that he is?

Ce n'est pas qu'il ait peur.

It is not that he is afraid.

a. The noun sentence may be understood:

Vous partirez, n'est-ce pas? (= You will go, will you not?
n'est-ce pas que vous partirez?)

5. An adverb of quantity:

Combien est-ce? C'a été trop. How much is it? It was too much.

NOTE. — For agreement of the verb, see § 232, 3.

 **384. *Ce* as Real Subject.** *Ce* stands as real subject of *être*, or of *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir + être*, when the complement of *être* is:

1. A masculine adjective, an adjective + à + an infinitive, an infinitive preceded by à, an adverb (in all these cases without further syntactical connection; see a, below):

C'est beau (vrai, bien).

That (it) is fine (true, well).

Ce doit être (ne saurait être) vrai.

That must be (cannot be) true.

Il est parti, c'est clair.

He is gone, that is clear.

C'est clair, il est parti.

It is clear, he is gone.

C'est à désirer.

That (it) is to be desired.

La vue est belle! — Oui, c'est beau! The view is fine! — Yes, it is fine!

Où sera-ce?

Where will it (that) be?

C'était bien mal à vous.

That was very wrong of you.

Xa. When followed by *de* + an infinitive or by a *que* clause, the regular construction for the above is impersonal *il* (not *ce*); so also the parenthetical *il est vrai* and *n'est-il pas vrai?* (= *n'est-ce pas?*), though without syntactical connection:

Il est facile de dire cela.

It is easy to say that.

Il est triste de vous voir ainsi.

It is sad to see you thus.

Il est clair que j'ai raison.

It is clear that I am right.

Il est à désirer que la guerre finisse bientôt.

It is to be desired that the war will soon end.

On rit, il est vrai, mais attendez.

They laugh, to be sure, but wait.

Il est bien mal à vous de parler ainsi.

It is very wrong of you to speak so.

NOTE. — 1. Colloquially, *c'est* is pretty freely used instead of *il est* before *de* + infinitive or a *que* clause: *C'est facile de faire cela; C'est clair que j'ai raison*, etc.

2. This use of *ce* is permissible in the literary style only in expressions of emotion, e.g., *C'est heureux (malheureux, beau, triste, étonnant, etc.), c'est à présumer (craindre, regretter, etc.): C'est triste de vous voir; C'est à craindre qu'il ne soit noyé.*

3. The *ce* construction is obligatory after a few noun phrases of like value, e.g., *C'est dommage (pitié, plaisir, justice)*, etc., *C'est pitié de l'entendre.*

2. A prepositional phrase, or a conjunction:

C'est pour vous.

It (that) is for you.

C'est pourquoi je suis venu.

That is why I came.

C'est comme vous (le) dites.

It is as you say.

X385. Ce + a Relative. As antecedent *ce* + a relative denotes *that which, what, which, etc.:*

Ce qui m'amuse.

What (that which) amuses me.

Ce que je dis est vrai.

What I say is true.

Ce dont nous parlions.

What we were speaking of.

Ce à quoi je pense.

What I am thinking of.

Il est âgé, ce qui est dommage.

He is old, which is a pity.

a. *Ce*, so used, either immediately precedes the relative, or is, for emphasis, divided from it by *être* + a predicate substantive:

Ce qu'il veut c'est la gloire.

What he desires is glory.

C'est la gloire qu'il veut.

It is glory that he desires.

NOTE. — This type of construction is widely used to render a predicate substantive emphatic, e.g., *C'est ton frère qui le dit; C'est à vous que* (= à qui) *je parle; C'est mourir que de vivre ainsi; C'est une belle ville que Paris* (cf. 397, 2, note 1).

386. Other uses of *ce*. Apart from its use with *être* or with a relative, *ce* is found in a few phrases only, mostly archaic, familiar or jocular:

<i>Ce devint un usage.</i>	This (that) became a custom.
<i>Tu crains, ce lui dit-il.</i>	"You fear," said he to him.
<i>Sur ce, je vous quitte.</i>	And now, I leave you.
<i>De ce non content.</i>	Not satisfied with this.

a. The parenthetical *ce semble* may be used only when unconnected (cf. § 384, 1, a), otherwise *il semble*:

C'est lui, ce me semble, au moins. It's he, it seems to me, at least.
But: *Il me semble que c'est lui.*

387. Pleonastic *ce*. As compared with English, *ce* is often pleonastic; thus, it is used with *être* + a logical subject:

1. Regularly, after *celui qui* and *ce qui*:

<i>Celle qui l'a dit c'est vous.</i>	The one who said so is you.
<i>Ce que je crains ce sont mes pré-tendus amis.</i>	What I fear is my would-be friends.
<i>Ce à quoi je pense c'est sa santé.</i>	What I think of is his health.

2. Regularly, between infinitives when not negative:

<i>Penser, c'est vivre.</i>	To think is to live.
<i>But: Végéter (ce) n'est pas vivre.</i>	To vegetate is not to live.

3. Regularly, in inversion with *que*:

<i>C'est une belle ville que Paris.</i>	{Paris is a beautiful city. It is a fine city, (is) Paris.
---	---

4. Optionally, in other inversions for emphasis:

La guerre (ce) serait la ruine. War would be ruin.

NOTE.—When the complement of *être* is an adjective or participle, pleonastic *ce* may not be used: *Ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste.*

388. *Ceci* and *cela*. *Ceci* = *this*, the nearer, and *cela* = *that*, the more remote, are used to denote something indicated, but not yet named:

Gardez ceci et donnez-moi cela. Keep this and give me that.

Obs.: If the object has been already named, or if the name is fully implied by the context, *celui-ci* (-là), etc. must be used.

a. Ceci also refers to what is about to be said, and cela to what has been said:

Réfléchissez bien à ceci. Think well on this.

Je ne dis pas davantage, cela suffit. I say no more, that is enough.

b. Ceci (*not cela*) may have a predicate noun:

Ceci est un secret.

Or: C'est ici un secret (rarer). } This is a secret.

But: C'est là un secret.

Cela c'est un secret. } That is a secret.

NOTE. — Cela is not so divided before même, seul, and its division in negations is optional: Cela seul (même) en est la cause; Cela n'est pas (or ce n'est pas là) une faute.

c. Cela (*not ceci*) = *this* before a de clause:

Paris a cela d'avantageux. Paris has this advantage.

d. Cela may be replaced by là after de and par:

De là vient que, etc. From that it comes that, etc.

Il faut commencer par là. We must begin with that.

e. Cela is often contracted to ça colloquially:

Ça ne fait rien. That doesn't matter.

f. Ça is sometimes used familiarly or contemptuously of persons instead of a personal pronoun:

Regardez comme ça mange. Look how they (etc.) eat.

Ça veut faire à sa tête. You (etc.) wish to do as you please.

NOTE. — Distinguish ça from çà (adverb) and çâ! (interjection).

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

389.

Interrogatives

1. Adjectival forms:

SING. PL.

m. quel?	quel?	quel?	m. lequel?	lesquels?	which? which?
f. quelle?	quelles?	quel?	f. laquelle?	lesquelles?	or what one(s)? qui? who? whom? que? what? (Invar.) quoi? what?

2. Pronominal forms:

SING. PL.

Obs.: 1. For the feminine and plural of quel, cf. §§ 337, 1 (2), and 338.
 2. Lequel = le + quel, both parts being inflected (§§ 316, 389, 1); de, à contract with le, les (duquel, auquel, etc., cf. § 317).
 3. Que = qu' before a vowel or h mute (§ 19).

390. Agreement. The adjectival forms agree like ordinary adjectives; the variable pronominal forms agree in gender, but not necessarily in number, with the nouns for which they stand; the invariable *qui?* assumes the number of the noun or pronoun referred to:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Quelle plume avez-vous prise?	Which pen did you take?
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Laquelle des dames est venue?	Which of the ladies has come?
Qui sonne? Qui sont-elles?	Who rings? Who are they?

X 391. Quel? Lequel? The adjective *quel?* = *which?* *what?* and the pronoun *lequel?* = *which (one)? what (one)?* refer either to persons or things, and stand both in direct and indirect questions:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Dites-moi quel livre il a.	Tell me which (what) book he has.
Desquels avez-vous besoin?	Which (ones) do you need?
Dites-moi lesquels vous avez.	Tell me which (ones) you have.
Quelle dame est arrivée?	Which (what) lady has come?
Je ne sais pas laquelle.	I do not know which (one).
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Quel homme est-ce là?	What (what kind of) man is that?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?	To which of the men does he speak?

a. *Quel!* in exclamations sometimes = *what a! what!*:

Quel héros! Quels héros!	What a hero! What heroes!
Quelle belle scène! — Oui, c'est beau!	What a beautiful scene! — Yes, it is fine.

b. *Quel?* as predicative adjective often replaces *qui?* = *who?*

Quels sont ces gens-là?	Who are those people? (or what kind of people are those?)
Sais-tu quelle est cette dame?	Do you know who that lady is?

NOTE. — A pleonastic *de* is commonly used before alternatives after *quel?* *lequel?* and other interrogatives, probably caused by case attraction with *des deux*, often present in such expressions: *Lequel (des deux) est le plus habile, de cet homme-ci ou de celui-là; Laquelle est la plus illustre, d'Athènes ou de Rome?*

392. Qui? 1. The pronoun qui? = *who?* *whom?* is regularly used of persons only, and stands in both direct and indirect questions:

Qui frappe? Qui est là?
De qui (à qui) parle-t-il?
Qui avez-vous vu?
Qui êtes-vous?
Dites-moi qui est venu.

Who is knocking? Who is there?
Of whom (to whom) is he speaking?
Whom did you see?
Who are you?
Tell me who has come.

a. Qui? is sometimes used, though rarely and not necessarily, as subject of a transitive verb in the sense of *what?*

Qui vous amène de si bonne heure? What brings you so early?

b. Qui? predicatively, is often replaced, especially when feminine or plural, by quel?

Quelle est cette dame?
Quels sont-ils?

Who is that lady? (What l. is that?)
Who are they?

2. Whose? denoting simply ownership = à qui? otherwise generally de qui? sometimes quel? but never dont:

À qui est cette maison-là?
De qui êtes-vous fils?
Quelle maison a été brûlée?

Whose house is that?
Whose son are you?
Whose (what) house was burnt?

NOTE. — Compare with this the idiom c'est à qui: C'était à qui finirait le premier, *It was a strife as to who would finish first.*

393. Que? Quoi? The form que? = *what?* is conjunctive, while quoi? = *what?* is disjunctive; their uses in detail are:

1. Que? stands regularly as direct object or as predicate, and in direct question only:

Que vous a-t-il dit?
Que cherchez-vous?
Que sont-ils devenus?

What did he say to you?
What are you looking for?
What has become of them?

a. Que? alternatively with quoi? may stand with an infinitive in indirect question:

Je ne sais que (quoi) dire.

I know not what to say.

✓b. Que? and que! sometimes have adverbial force:

Que ne m'avez-vous dit cela?	Why did you not tell me that?
Que vous êtes heureux!	How happy you are!
Que d'argent perdu!	What a quantity of money lost!

2. What? as subject of a verb is regularly qu'est-ce qui?

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?	What is making that noise?
------------------------------	----------------------------

1a. The form que? may stand as subject of a few intransitive verbs, mostly such as may also be impersonal, but never as subject of a transitive verb:

Que sert de pleurer?	What is the use of crying?
Que vous en semble?	What do you think of it?
Qu'est-ce?	What is it?

3. Quoi? is used absolutely, *i.e.*, with ellipsis of the verb, and after a preposition:

Il y a du nouveau. — <u>Quoi?</u>	There is news. — What?
Quoi de plus beau que cela?	What finer than that?
Quoi! vous l'admirez!	What! You admire him!
À quoi pensez-vous?	What are you thinking of?
En quoi puis-je vous servir?	In what can I help you?

a. In cases of special emphasis quoi? may be direct object:

Je reçois quoi? — Des lettres.	I receive what? — Letters.
--------------------------------	----------------------------

b. With an infinitive, que? or more emphatically, quoi? is used.

Que (quoi) faire?	What is one to do?
Je ne sais que (quoi) répondre.	I know not what to answer.

394. Interrogative Locutions. The use of interrogative phrases formed with est-ce, etc., instead of the simple forms is very frequent (cf. §§ 392-3):

Qui est-ce qui chante?	for Qui chante?
Qui est-ce que vous demandez?	" Qui demandez-vous?
À qui est-ce que vous parliez?	" À qui parliez-vous?
Qu'est-ce que cela prouve?	" Que prouve cela?
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	" Qu'est-ce?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?	" Qu'est-ce que cela?
De quoi est-ce qu'il parle?	" De quoi parle-t-il?

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

395.

Relative Pronouns

qui, who, which, that; whom (*after a preposition*)

que, whom, which, that

dont, whose, of whom, of which, etc.

où, in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel, m. s. **lesquels**, m. pl. } **laquelle**, f. s. **lesquelles**, f. pl. } who, whom, which, that

quoi, what, which

Obs.: For **qu'**, see § 19.

396. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent:

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là.

Les lettres que j'ai apportées.

Moi qui suis son ami(e).

Dieux (vous) qui m'exauciez!

C'est nous qui l'avons dit.

Je suis celui qui l'ai dit.

I who was (you who were) there.

The letters which I have brought.

I who am his friend (m. or f.).

(Ye) gods who hear me!

It is we who have said it.

I am the one who has said it.

a. When the antecedent is a predicate noun, or an adjective as such, the relative may agree in person either with this noun or with the subject of the sentence:

Nous sommes deux moines qui We are two monks who are traveling.
voyageons (voyagent).

Je suis le seul qui l'aie (ait) dit. I am the only one who has said it.

✓ b. The relative after **un** + a plural is either singular or plural, usually according to the sense:

C'est un de mes (des) procès qui It is one of my (of the) lawsuits
m'a (m'ont) ruiné. which has (have) ruined me.

397. Qui, Que. Both **qui** and **que** refer to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things; their uses in detail are:

1. **Qui** = *who, which, that*, serves as subject; **qui** = *whom*, of persons only, or things personified, may also be used after a preposition:

La dame qui a chanté.	The lady who (that) has sung.
Les amis qui sont arrivés.	The friends who (that) have come.
La vache qui beugle.	The cow which (that) lows.
Les livres qui ont été perdus.	The books which have been lost.
Les oiseaux qui volent.	The birds which (that) fly.
Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Rien qui soit beau.	Nothing that is beautiful.
La tante chez qui je demeure.	The aunt with whom I live.
Les amis à (de) qui je parlais.	The friends to (of) whom I spoke.
Rochers à qui je me plains.	Rocks to whom I complain.

a. Qui, without antecedent, sometimes = *celui qui (ceux qui, etc.)*, or, when repeated, = *les uns . . . les autres*:

Aimez qui vous aime.	Love him (the one) who loves you.
Jouera qui voudra.	Let those who will play.
Pour qui connaît.	For any one who knows.
Qui d'un côté, qui de l'autre.	Some on one side, some on the other.

b. Similarly, in a few phrases, mostly exclamatory or parenthetical, qui = ce qui:

Voilà qui est étrange !	That is strange !
Qui pis est (or ce qui est pis).	What is worse.

2. **Que** = *whom, which, that*, serves regularly as direct object:

Les ami(e)s que j'aime.	The friends whom (that) I love.
Le livre (cheval) que j'ai.	The book (horse) which I have.
Les plumes que j'ai achetées.	The pens which I have bought.
Ce que vous dites.	That which you say.
Rien de ce que vous dites.	Nothing that you say.

a. Que stands also as predicate nominative (cf. § 295, 1), and as logical subject of an impersonal verb:

Malheureuse que je suis !	Unhappy woman that I am !
Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue ?	What has become of her ?
À l'heure qu'il est.	At the present hour.
L'homme qu'il vous faut.	The man that you need.
Prenez ce qu'il vous faut.	Take what you need.

NOTES.—1. The que of emphatic inversions (§ 385, *a*, *n.*) is best explained as predicative que: *C'est une belle ville que Paris* = *C'est une belle ville que Paris (est)* or *C'est une belle ville (ce) que (c'est) Paris*; Erreur *que tout cela* = (*C'est*) erreur *que tout cela (est)* or (*C'est*) erreur (*ce*) *que (c'est) tout cela*.

2. The form que is often a relative adverb, not to be confounded in function with the relative proper: *Dans le temps que cela arrivait*; *C'est à vous que je parle* (or *C'est vous à qui je parle*).

~~X~~398. **Dont.** The form **dont** = *whose, of whom, of which, etc.*, has the value of de + a relative; it refers to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things (dont is never interrogative):

<u>L'homme dont le fils est mort.</u>	The man whose son is dead.
<u>Les gens dont je parle.</u>	The people of whom I speak.
<u>Les plumes dont je me sers.</u>	The pens which I make use of.
<u>La gloire dont il est avide.</u>	The fame for which he is eager.
<u>Ce dont je me plains.</u> <i>ce à quoi</i>	That of which I complain.

~~X~~a. A noun after **dont** = *whose* does not omit the article as in English, and must follow its governing verb (cf. § 400, 2):

<u>Le monsieur dont j'ai trouvé la bourse.</u>	The gentleman whose purse I found.
--	------------------------------------

b. As compared with *d'où* (cf. § 399, *a*), **dont** has figurative force in expressions referring to extraction, lineage, etc.:

<u>La maison dont il sort.</u>	The family from which he comes.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

c. **Dont** was originally an adverb (L. *de + unde*), and is often best construed as such:

<u>Le pays dont il est venu.</u>	The country whence he came.
----------------------------------	-----------------------------

~~X~~399. **Où.** The adverb **où** = *where* is also used as a relative with the value of dans (à, sur, vers, etc.) + a relative; if preceded by a preposition, **où** = *which, where*:

<u>La maison où je loge.</u>	The house in which I lodge.
<u>Le siècle où nous vivons.</u>	The age in which we live.
<u>Le but où il tend.</u>	The end towards which he tends.
<u>Les villes par où je suis venu.</u>	The cities through which I came.
<u>L'endroit d'où il vient.</u>	The place from which he comes.

a. D'où = *from which, whence*, is usually literal in force:
 La maison d'où il sort. The house out of which he comes.

400. **Lequel.** The form lequel = *who, whom, which, that*, refers to persons or things, and varies in form to agree with its antecedent; it is chiefly used where qui, que, etc., may not be employed:

x1. **Lequel**, being inflected, stands where qui, que, from want of inflection, would be ambiguous, or it serves, owing to its stress, to denote the more remote of two possible antecedents:

La sœur de mon ami <u>laquelle</u> vient d'arriver.	The sister of my friend who has just come.
Le fils du rédacteur <u>lequel</u> je viens de voir.	The son of the editor whom (<i>i.e.</i> , the son) I have just seen.

✓ a. Lequel may not be used of persons after en, and it must be used of persons after parmi, entre:

Un homme en qui je crois.	A man in whom I believe.
Les amis parmi (entre) lesquels.	The friends among whom.

2. When depending on a noun governed by a preposition, whose must be turned by duquel, etc., which must follow the noun (cf. § 398, a):

La dame au fils de laquelle (or ^{not dont}) The lady to whose son I give
de qui) je donne des leçons. lessons.

✓ NOTE. — Lequel is used exceptionally as an adjective: *J'espère partir demain, auquel cas, etc.; Je viens de toucher mille francs, de laquelle somme je payerai mes dettes.*

401. **Quoi.** 1. The form quoi = *what, which*, is used without definite antecedent, and stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de quoi je parlais.	That is what I was speaking of.
Sur quoi il est parti.	Whereupon he went away.
C'est à quoi je pensais.	That is what I was thinking of.
Il m'a payé, ce à quoi je ne m'attendais guère.	He paid me, which I hardly expected.

a. De quoi + an infinitive, expressed or implied, denotes the means or cause of the action of the infinitive:

<u>Il a de quoi vivre.</u>	He has enough to live on.
<u>Il a de quoi</u> (sc. vivre, etc.).	He has means (is well off).
<u>Donnez-moi de quoi écrire.</u>	Give me something to write with.
<u>Il n'y a pas de quoi.</u>	There is no occasion (don't mention it, etc.).

b. Quoi stands without a preposition in a few expressions:

<u>Quoi faisant.</u>	(By) doing which.
<u>Un je ne sais quoi de cruel.</u>	A certain indefinable cruelty.

2. *What = that which* is expressed by **ce** + a relative (cf. § 385):

<u>Je vois ce qui se passe.</u>	I see what is going on.
<u>Je sais ce que je sais.</u>	I know what I know.
<u>Ce dont je me plains.</u>	That of which I complain.
<u>Ce à quoi je me fiais.</u>	What I was trusting to.
<u>Il est sourd, ce qui est bien dommage.</u>	He is deaf, which is a great pity.

402. Remarks. 1. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

<u>Le tableau que j'ai vu là.</u>	The picture (which) I saw there
<u>Le livre dont je parle est à moi.</u>	The book (which) I speak of is mine.

2. Relative and antecedent should stand as near together as possible:

<u>Il y a de ce livre une édition qui se vend,</u> etc.	There is an edition of that book which is sold, etc.
---	--

Not: Une édition de ce livre qui, etc.

3. A preposition never ends the relative sentence, as sometimes in English:

<u>Ce à quoi je me fiais.</u>	What I was trusting to.
-------------------------------	-------------------------

4. For English forms in -ing = relative clause, see § 287, 3

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

403.

Indefinites

1. Adjectival forms:

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 1. certain, a certain; pl. certain | 4. <u>divers</u> , m. pl. | } various, etc. |
| 2. chaque, each, every | <u>diverse</u> , f. pl. | |
| 3. différent(e)s, pl., various, etc. | 5. <u>maint</u> , many a | 6. <u>quelque</u> , some; pl., some, (few) |
| | | |

Obs.: Except for divers, the feminine and plural are formed like those of ordinary adjectives.

2. Pronominal forms:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>autrui</u> , others, other people, etc. | 5. <u>quelqu'un</u> , m. s. | } somebody,
etc. |
| 2. <u>chacun</u> , m. } each (one), every | <u>quelqu'une</u> , f. s. | |
| <u>chacune</u> , f. } (one) | <u>quelques-uns</u> , m. pl. | } some (peo-
ple), etc. |
| 3. on (l'on), one, people, etc. | <u>quelques-unes</u> , f. pl. | |
| 4. <u>personne . . . ne</u> , nobody, etc. | 6. <u>quelque chose</u> , something | 7. <u>rien . . . ne</u> , nothing |
| | | |

Obs.: 1. On often becomes l'on after a vowel sound to avoid hiatus, especially after et, ou, où, que, lorsque, etc., qui, quoi, pourquoi, si, ainsi, aussi, but not usually when a closely following word has initial l; qu'on almost always becomes que l'on when a closely following word has initial [k] sound.

2. For quelqu'un(e), see § 19.

3. Note the hyphen of the plural of quelqu'un.*

3. Forms serving either as adjective or as pronoun:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. aucun . . . ne, no; nobody, etc. | 6. plusieurs, m. or f. pl., several |
| 2. autre, other | 7. tel, m. } such, etc. |
| 3. même, same, etc. | <u>elle</u> , f. } |
| 4. <u>nul . . . ne</u> , m. } no; nobody, | 8. tout, m. tous, m. pl. } all, every, |
| <u>nulle . . . ne</u> , f. } etc. | <u>toute</u> , f. toutes, f. pl. } etc. |
| 5. pas un . . . ne, no; nobody, etc. | 9. un, a; one, etc. |

Obs.: The feminine and plural are like those of adjectives of like ending, except the feminine of nul and the plural of tout.

404. Use of Adjectival Forms. 1. Certain = (a) certain, pl. certain, some, precedes its noun; the use of un in the singular, and of partitive de in the plural, is optional:

(Un) certain roi de France.

A certain French king.

(De) certaines gens.

Certain (some) people.

a. *Certains* is exceptionally used as a pronoun:

Certains prétendent, etc. Some assert, etc.

NOTE. — *Certain*, placed after the noun, is an ordinary adjective = *sure, trustworthy, positive*, etc. (cf. § 352, 4).

2. **Chaque** = *each, every*, is distributive and singular only:
Chaque homme (femme). Each or every man (woman).

a. Distinguish *chaque* = *every, each*, which individualizes, from *tout* = *every, all*, which generalizes:

<i>Chaque homme a des passions.</i>	Every (each) man has passions.
<i>Tout homme a une passion dominante.</i>	Every man has (all men have) a ruling passion.
<i>Chaque année; tous les ans.</i>	Each year; every year.

3. **Différents, Divers** = *various, several, sundry, divers*, are indefinite adjectives only when plural and standing before nouns:

<i>Différentes choses m'ont retenu.</i>	Various things detained me.
<i>On a essayé divers moyens.</i>	Several methods have been tried.

NOTE. — With the sense of *different, diverse*, they are used as ordinary adjectives.

4. **Maint,** whether singular or plural, = *many a*; it is often repeated:

<i>Maint(s) danger(s).</i>	Many a danger.
<i>Mainte(s) fois.</i>	Many a time.
<i>En mainte et mainte occasion.</i>	On many an occasion.

5. **Quelque** = *some*; when used of quantity or number, *quelque* = *some, but not much or many, a little, a few*, and is of more limited force than the partitive *some* (§ 322):

<i>Quelques amis sont pires que des ennemis.</i>	Some friends are worse than enemies.
<i>J'ai eu quelque difficulté.</i>	I have had some (a little) difficulty.
<i>Il a quelques amis ici.</i>	He has some (a few) friends here.
<i>Voici les quelques francs qui nous restent.</i>	Here are the few francs we have left.

a. *Quelque* has adverbial force, and is invariable, before numerals (not nouns of number) = *about, some*:

A quelque dix milles d'ici. About (some) ten miles from here.

But: Quelques centaines de pas. A few hundred paces.

À cent et quelques pas. At a little more than 100 paces.

b. Similarly before adjectives or adverbs = *however* (cf. § 271, 4, b):

Quelque riches qu'ils soient. However rich they may be.

Quelque bien que vous parliez. However well you may speak.

NOTE. — *However* + adjective is also expressed by *tout... que* (usually with the indicative), *si... (que)* (with the subjunctive), *pour... que* (with the subjunctive), e.g., *Toutes bonnes qu'elles sont*, *However good they are*; *Si bonnes qu'elles soient*, *However good they are*; *Si bonnes vos raisons soient-elles*, *However good your reasons are*; *Pour bonnes qu'elles soient*, *However good they are*.

c. For the use of quelque(s) ... que = *whatever*, see § 407.

405. Use of Pronominal Forms. 1. **Autrui** = *others, other people, our neighbor* (in general), is rarely used except after a preposition:

Il ne faut pas convoiter les biens d'autrui. We must not covet the goods of others.

La rigueur envers autrui. Severity towards others.

NOTE. — *Others* is more usually *les autres, d'autres* (§406, 2, b); regularly so, as subject or direct object.

2. **Chacun** = *each, each one, every one* is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **chaque** (§ 404, 2):

Chacun d'eux a refusé. Each (every) one of them refused.

Donnez à chacun(e) sa part. Give to each his (her) share.

Des poires à deux sous chacune (chaque). Pears at two cents each.

a. The possessive form to **chacun** is regularly **son**:

Mettez-les chacun(e) à sa place. Put them each in his (her, its) place.

b. **Chacun**, in apposition to **nous, vous**, takes, as its possessive, **notre, votre**:

Parlez chacun(e) à votre tour. Speak each in your turn.

c. **Chacun**, in apposition to **ils, elles**, takes the possessive **leur** before the direct object; otherwise **son or leur**:

Elles récitent chacune leur verset They each recite their verse (each (chacune à son or leur tour). in turn).

d. The reflexive to chacun = every one is se (soi):

Chacun pour soi. Every one for himself.

3. **On** = *one, some one, we, you, they, people, etc.*, is used as subject of a verb in the third singular, without specifying any person in particular:

On dit que la reine est malade. They (people) say the queen is ill.

A-t-on allumé mon feu? Has any one lighted my fire?

On ne peut pas mêler l'huile avec l'eau. One (we, you) cannot mix oil with water.

a. The **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

On a attrapé le larron. The thief has been caught.

On croit que la guerre est finie. It is thought the war is over.

On vous demande. You are wanted.

✓b. On may not be replaced by a personal pronoun subject:

On est triste quand on est sans argent. A man is sad when he is without money.

✓c. Since on is subject only, the corresponding direct and indirect objects, when required, are borrowed from vous:

Lorsqu'on presse trop un poisson il vous échappe. When you squeeze a fish too much it escapes you.

✓d. The reflexive to on is se (soi), and the corresponding possessive is son, whatever be the English equivalent:

On se demande. People ask themselves (wonder).

On perdrait son temps. You would lose your time.

e. Although **on** is invariable, a feminine or plural noun or adjective may relate to it, when the sense is clearly feminine or plural:

On est plus jolie à présent. She is prettier now.

On est si proches voisins. We are such near neighbors.

f. On may replace a personal pronoun, often with depreciatory force:

On y pensera. I (we) shall see about it.

On se croit bien fin. You (he, etc.) think yourself very cunning.

4. **Personne** and **rien** along with **ne + a verb**, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *nobody*, *no one*, *not anybody*, etc., and *nothing*, *not anything*, respectively:

Personne n'est venu.

Nobody (no one) has come.

Je n'ai parlé à personne.

I have spoken to nobody (not spoken to anybody).

Ne dites rien.

Say nothing (do not say anything).

Personne ici ! — Personne.

No one here ! — No one.

Qu'a-t-il dit ? — Rien.

What did he say? — Nothing.

✓a. If the context contains or implies negation, **personne**, **rien**, assume affirmative force (= *quelqu'un*, *quelque chose*):

Il n'a rien dit à personne.

He said nothing to any one.

Personne n'a jamais rien dit.

Nobody has ever said anything.

Je vous défends de rien dire.

I forbid you to say anything.

Je crains de parler à personne.

I fear to speak to anybody.

Impossible de rien faire !

Impossible to do anything !

Il cessa de rien donner.

He ceased giving anything.

Où trouverai-je rien de pareil ?

Where shall I find anything like it?

Sans parler à personne.

Without speaking to anybody.

✓b. The above rule does not apply to pleonastic **ne**, nor to double negations:

Je crains qu'il ne fasse mal à quelqu'un.

I fear he will hurt somebody.

Ne revenez pas sans voir quelqu'un.

Do not come back without seeing somebody.

NOTE.— The pronoun **personne** is masculine (sometimes sylleptically feminine like *on*, 3, e, above); the noun **personne** is always feminine (cf. § 303, 1, c).

5. **Quelqu'un(e)** = *somebody*, *some one*, *any one*, etc., with its plural **quelques-un(e)s** = *some*, *some people*, *any*, *a few*, etc., is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **quelque** (§ 404, 5):

Il y a quelqu'un là.

There is somebody there.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un là ?

Is there any one there?

A-t-il quelques-unes des fleurs ?

Has he some (any) of the flowers?

Il en reste quelques-unes.

A few of them remain.

Quelqu'une des dames viendra.

Some one of the ladies will come.

Quelques-uns le croient.

Some (people) believe it.

~~X~~6. Quelque chose = *something, anything*, and is masculine, though formed from the feminine noun chose:

Quelque chose est promis. Something is promised.

A-t-il dit quelque chose? Did he say anything?

A-t-il quelque chose de bon? Has he anything good?

406. Adjectival or Pronominal Forms. 1. Aucun, nul, pas un, along with ne + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *no, not any, not one*, as adjective, and *none, nobody, no one, not one*, as pronoun:

Aucun }
Nul } écrivain ne le dit. No writer says so.
Pas un }

Aucun ne le croit. No one believes it.

Je n'en ai vu aucun(e). I saw none of them.

Pas un de ses amis ne reste. Not one of his friends remains.

A-t-il de l'espoir? — Aucun. Has he any hope? — None.

~~X~~a. Aucun, but not nul or pas un, becomes affirmative (= quelque or quelqu'un) when the context is negative (cf. § 405, 4, a):

Sans aucune cause. Without any cause.

Rien pour aucun de nous. Nothing for any of us.

Gardez-vous de faire aucune faute. Take care not to make any mistake.

b. The plural adjective aucun(e)s may be used, especially before nouns with no singular, or before such as are preferably plural; (d')aucuns = quelques-uns is sometimes found:

Il ne me rend aucun(s) soins. He gives me no care.

(D')aucuns le croiraient. Some would believe it.

2 Autre = *other*, is usually preceded in the singular by un or l':

Une autre fois; d'autres livres. Another time; other books.

En avez-vous un(e) autre? Have you another?

Un autre dit le contraire. Another says the contrary.

Les autres m'aideront. The others will help me.

Entre autres choses. Among other things.

~~X~~a. Distinguish un autre = *another (a different)* from encore un = *another (an additional)*:

Donnez-moi une autre plume. } Give me another pen.
Donnez-moi encore une plume. }

b. *Others, other people*, = les autres or d'autres, sometimes autrui (cf. § 405, 1):

Il se méfie toujours des autres. He always suspects others.

D'autres pensent autrement. Others think otherwise.

Bien d'autres. Many others.

Obs.: The d' of d'autres is a partitive sign (cf. § 325, 1, b).

c. Autres is often added familiarly to nous, vous:

Nous autres peintres. We painters.

Vous autres Français parlez très vite. You Frenchmen speak very fast.

✓d. Observe the following expressions with autre:

Autre part; de part et d'autre. Elsewhere; reciprocally.

C'est un (tout) autre homme. He is a very different man.

Parler de choses et d'autres. To speak of this and that.

L'autre jour. The other day.

Autre est promettre, autre est donner. It is one thing to promise, and another to give.

Tout autre que lui. Any one but him.

De temps à autre. From time to time.

À d'autres (familiar). Tell that to the marines (*familiar*).

e. For l'un . . . l'autre, les uns . . . les autres, see § 406, 7, (2).

3. *Même* varies in meaning and form according to its position and function:

✗ (1) Preceding its noun or as a pronoun, *même* = same, and nearly always has the article:

La (les) même(s) chose(s). The same thing(s).

Les miens sont les mêmes. Mine are the same.

Donnez-moi des mêmes. Give me some of the same.

Une même affaire. One and the same business.

Des plantes de la même espèce. Plants of the same species.

✗ (2) Following the noun or pronoun qualified, *même* = self, very, even, and agrees, but has no article:

Dieu est la bonté même. God is goodness itself.

Moi-même; elles-mêmes. I myself; they themselves.

Cela même; celui-là même. That itself; that man himself.

Les enfants mêmes. The very (even the) children.

a. Même is also used as an adverb (invariable):

Il nous a même insultés. He even insulted us.

Quand même il le dirait. Even if he should say so.

b. Même forms a number of highly idiomatic locutions:

Cela revient au même. That amounts to the same thing.

Etes-vous à même de faire cela? Are you in a position to do that?

Il en est de même de ... It is the same with ...

4. Plusieurs = *several*; it is sometimes used in the sense of **beaucoup** = *many*:

Plusieurs hommes (femmes). Several men (women).

Apporte plusieurs des plumes. Bring several of the pens.

J'en ai plusieurs. I have several of them.

Plusieurs l'ont cru. Many (people) believed it.

X 5. Tel, as adjective, = *such, like*; un tel = *such a; tel*, as pronoun, = *many a one, he, some, etc.*:

Ne crois pas une telle histoire. Do not believe such a story.

Tels sont mes malheurs. Such are my misfortunes.

Il n'y a pas de tels animaux. There are no such animals.

À telles et telles conditions. On such and such conditions.

Telle qu'une tigresse. Like (as) a tigress.

Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (proverb). Some (many a one, he) who laugh(s) on Friday will weep on Sunday.

a. Examples of more idiomatic uses are:

Tel père, tel fils. Like father, like son.

Tel rit, tel pleure. One laughs, another weeps.

Monsieur un tel (Mme une telle). Mr. So-and-so (Mrs. So-and-so).

De la musique telle quelle. Music such as it is.

Votre argent tel quel. Your money intact.

X NOTE.—Such, as adverb, is si or tellement (not tel): Une si belle étoile; Un homme tellement cruel.

X 6. Tout (singular) = *all, every, any, whole, etc.; tous* (plural) = *all*:

Toute ma vie; tous les hommes. All my (my whole) life; all (the) men.

Tout homme; toute créature. Every (any) man; every creature.

Tous (toutes) sont venu(e)s. All have come.

C'est tout; de tous côtés.
Tout m'effraie.

That is all; on all sides.
Everything frightens me.

X a. Tout is often adverb = *quite, wholly, very, very much, etc., and agrees like an adjective, when immediately preceding a feminine adjective with initial consonant or h aspirate, but is elsewhere invariable:*

Elles étaient toutes pâles et tout agitées. They were quite pale and very much excited.

But: Ils étaient tout pâles et tout agités, etc.

NOTE.—So also, in the compound tout-puissant, e.g., Elle est toute-puissante.

b. Observe the following idiomatic expressions:

Tout le monde (cf. le monde entier). Everybody (cf. the whole world).

Tous les mois; pas du tout. Every month; not at all.

Tous les deux jours. Every other (alternate) day.

Tous (les*) deux or les deux.. Both.

Tout à l'heure. Presently (or a little while ago)

Tout beau; tout doux. Gently (slowly); softly.

(Pour) tout de bon. Seriously.

* Tous deux (trois, etc.) — without les — usually denotes 'simultaneity' (= both together, etc.); les is obligatory above ten, and usual from five to ten.

c. For the distinction between tout and chaque see § 404, 2, a; for tout ... que = *however*, see § 404, 5, b, note.

7. Un is used either alone or as correlative to autre:

(1) Un, as adjective, = *a, an* (cf. § 320), *one, a certain*; un, as pronoun, = *one*:

La maison est d'un côté.

The house is on one side.

Un monsieur A. l'a dit.

A (certain) Mr. A. said so.

Une des dames l'a dit.

One of the ladies said so.

Voici un crayon. — J'en ai un.

Here is a pencil. — I have one.

Les uns sont de cet avis, les autres n'en sont pas.

Some are of this opinion, (the) others are not.

a. Un as a pronoun is often preceded by l', especially with a de clause:
L'un des consuls est arrivé. One of the consuls has come.

(2) L'un l'autre, so also the feminine and plural, are combined into various correlative phrases, as follows:

l'un l'autre = *each other, one another; pl. ditto*

l'un et l'autre = *both; pl., both, all*

l'un ou l'autre = *either; pl., ditto*

ni l'un ni l'autre (. . . ne) = *neither; pl., neither, none*

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.

They flatter each other.

Ils parlent les uns des autres.

They speak of one another.

Ils se parlent l'un à l'autre.

They speak to one another.

L'une et l'autre occasion.

Both occasions.

Les uns et les autres parlent.

All of them speak.

Dites ceci aux uns et aux autres.

Say this to all.

Je prends l'un(e) ou l'autre.

I take either.

Parle à l'une ou à l'autre.

Speak to either.

Ni les un(e)s ni les autres ne
sont pour vous.

Neither (none of them) is for
you.

Ni pour l'un(e) ni pour l'autre.

For neither.

407.

Indefinite Relatives

1. Adjectival:

Quelconque, any (whatever, at all)

Quel que (+ subjunctive of être), whatever

Quelque . . . que (+ subjunctive), whatever

a. Quelconque takes -s for the plural, and always follows its noun; quiconque is invariable; the other forms are made up from quel, quelque, qui, quoi, + que:

Un (deux) point(s) quelconque(s).

Any (two) point(s) whatever.

Une raison quelconque.

Any reason whatever (at all).

Quiconque parle sera puni(e).

Whoever speaks will be punished.

Quels que soient (puissent être)
vos desseins.

Whatever be (may be) your designs.

Quelle que fût la loi.

Whatever the law was.

Quelques efforts qu'il fasse.

Whatever efforts he makes.

Qui que tu sois (puisses être).

Whoever you be (may be).

Quoi que vous fassiez.

Whatever you do.

Obs.: For the use of the subjunctive, see § 270, 4:

b. Qui que and quoi que are also used with ce before soit:

Qui que ce soit qui le dise.

Whosoever says it.

Quoi que ce soit qu'il dise.

Whatsoever he says.

THE ADVERB

408. Simple Adverbs. The following list contains the commoner simple adverbs:

ailleurs, elsewhere	encore, still	pas, not
ainsi, thus, so	enfin, at last	peu, little
alors, then	ensemble, together	pis, worse
✓ <u>après, afterwards</u>	ensuite, then	plus, more
assez, enough, rather	environ, about	plutôt, rather
aujourd'hui, to-day	✓ <u>exprès, on purpose</u>	point, not
✓ <u>auparavant, before</u>	✓ <u>fort, very</u>	pourquoi(?) why(?)
aussi, also, too, as	hier, yesterday	pourtant, however
✓ <u>aussitôt, directly</u>	ici, here	près, near (by)
autant, as much	jadis, formerly	presque, almost
autrefois, formerly	jamais, ever, never	✓ <u>proche, near (by)</u>
beaucoup, much	là, there	puis, then, there-
bien, well, very, much	loin, far (off), a long way	upon
bientôt, soon	longtemps, (a) long (while)	quand(?) when(?)
cependant, however	lors, then	que ! how (!)
certes, indeed	maintenant, now	✓ <u>quelquefois, sometimes</u>
combien(?) how much(?)	mal, badly	si, so; yes
comme, as, like	même, even	souvent, often
comment(?) how(?)	mieux, better	surtout, especially
davantage, more	moins, less	tant, so much
dedans, inside	ne . . . , not	✓ <u>tantôt, soon, recently</u>
dehors, outside	néanmoins, nevertheless	tard, late
déjà, already	less	tôt, soon
demain, to-morrow	non, no	toujours, always, still
derrière, behind	où(?) where(?)	tout, quite, entirely
désormais, henceforth	oui, yes	toutefois, however
dessous, under	✓ <u>parfois, sometimes</u>	très, very
dessus, above	partout, everywhere	trop, too (much)
devant, before		vite, quickly
dorénavant, henceforth		volontiers, willingly

409. Adverbs from Adjectives. Most adjectives become adverbs by the addition of *-ment* to the feminine singular:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
pur,	<i>purement, purely</i>	doux,	<i>doucement, sweetly</i>
strict,	<i>strictement, strictly</i>	fou,	<i>follement, madly</i>
actif,	<i>activement, actively</i>	facile,	<i>facilement, easily</i>
sec,	<i>sèchement, dryly</i>	autre,	<i>autrement, otherwise</i>

a. Adjectives ending in a vowel, other than -e, drop the -e of the feminine on adding -ment:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
poli(e),	<i>poliment, politely</i>	décidé(e),	<i>décidément, decidedly</i>
absolu(e),	<i>absolument, absolutely</i>	etc.	<i>etc.</i>

NOTE.—The omitted e is denoted by a circumflex accent in assidûment, continûment, crûment, (in)dûment, gaiment (better, gaiement), nûment.

b. The following adjectives in -e change e to é on adding -ment:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
aveugle,	<i>aveuglément</i>	immense,	<i>immensément</i>
commode,	<i>commodément</i>	incommode,	<i>incommodément</i>
conforme,	<i>conformément</i>	opiniâtre,	<i>opiniâtrément</i>
énorme,	<i>énormément</i>	uniforme,	<i>uniformément</i>

c. The following adjectives change the added -e of the feminine to é:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
commun(e),	<i>communément</i>	obscur(e),	<i>obscurément</i>
confus(e),	<i>confusément</i>	opportun(e),	<i>opportunément</i>
diffus(e),	<i>diffusément</i>	précis(e),	<i>précisément</i>
expresse(e),	<i>expressément</i>	profond(e),	<i>profondément</i>
importun(e),	<i>importunément</i>	profus(e),	<i>profusément</i>

d. Adjectives in -ant, -ent (except *lent, présent, vêtement*) assimilate -nt to m and add -ment to the masculine form:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
constant,	<i>constamment, constantly</i>	prudent,	<i>prudemment, prudently</i>
élégant,	<i>élégamment, elegantly</i>	etc.	<i>etc.</i>
But: <i>Lentement, slowly; présentement, presently; vêtementement, vehemently.</i>			

e. Gentil gives *gentiment, nicely*; the adverb to *bref* is *brièvement* (from a parallel form), *briefly*; the adverb to *impuni* is *impunément* (probably from L. *impune*, cf. b, above), *with impunity*.

f. The adverbs corresponding to *bon, good*, and *mauvais, bad*, are *bien, well*, and *mal, badly*. From *bon* comes regularly *bonnement = simply*.

410. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectival forms are not uncommonly used as adverbs, and, as such, are regularly invariable:

1. A number of adjectives serve as adverbs in certain fixed expressions:

Cette sottise lui coûte *cher*.
Elles parlent *bas* (*haut*).

That folly is costing him dear.
They speak low (loud).

Such expressions are:

coûter bon, <i>cost dear</i>	arrêter court, <i>stop short</i>	coûter gros, <i>cost dear</i>
sentir bon, <i>smell good</i>	filer doux, <i>'sing small'</i>	viser haut, <i>aim high</i>
tenir bon, <i>stand firm</i>	aller droit, <i>go straight</i>	chanter juste, <i>sing in tune</i>
acheter cher, <i>buy dear</i>	viser droit, <i>aim straight</i>	frapper juste, <i>strike straight</i>
coûter cher, <i>cost dear</i>	chanter faux, <i>sing out of tune</i>	sentir mauvais, <i>smell bad</i>
vendre cher, <i>sell dear</i>	tune	écrire serré, <i>write small</i>
voir clair, <i>see clearly</i>	frapper ferme, <i>strike hard</i>	(à) vrai dire, <i>speak truly</i>
prouver clair, <i>prove clearly</i>	parler ferme, <i>speak firmly</i>	etc. etc.

2. An adjective sometimes modifies another adjective:

Des dames *haut* placées.
Un *véritable* grand homme.

Ladies of high rank.
A truly great man.

3. Besides the above, a few adjectival forms serve also as adverbs:

Je l'ai dit *exprès*.
Soudain nous vîmes l'ennemi.

I said it purposely.
Suddenly we saw the enemy.

Such forms are:

bref, <i>in short</i>	même, <i>even</i>	tout beau, <i>not so fast</i>
exprès, <i>purposely</i>	proche, <i>near (by)</i>	tout doux, <i>gently</i>
fort, <i>very, hard, loud</i> , etc.	soudain, <i>suddenly</i>	† vite, <i>quickly</i>
juste, <i>exactly</i> , etc.	* tout, <i>quite, very</i> , etc.	

* For the inflection of *tout* as adverb, see § 406, 6, a.

† The adverb *vitemment* = *quickly*, is familiar.

a. For certain adverbs used adjectivally, see § 358, b.

411. Adverbial Locutions. Phrases with adverbial function are numerous:

Je viendrai tout à l'heure.
Venez de bonne heure.

I shall come presently.
Come early.

Further examples are:

<u>à bon marché, cheap</u>	d'ailleurs, besides	nulle part, nowhere
<u>à côté, near, near by</u>	dès lors, since	plus tôt, sooner
<u>à droite, to the right</u>	d'ordinaire, usually	quelque part, somewhere
<u>à jamais, forever</u>	d'où, whence	tant mieux, so much the better
<u>à la fois, at once</u>	d'où? whence?	tôt ou tard, sooner or later
<u>à l'avenir, in future</u>	du moins, at least	tour à tour, in turn
<u>à peine, hardly</u>	en avant, forward	tout à coup, suddenly
<u>à peu près, nearly</u>	en bas, below, down stairs	tout de suite, at once
<u>au juste, exactly</u>	en effet, in fact	tout d'un coup, all at once
<u>au moins, at least</u>	en haut, above, up stairs	
<u>autre part, elsewhere</u>	là-bas, yonder, out there	
<u>d'abord, at first</u>	là-dessus, thereupon	

412. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. § 345) by the use of **plus, moins, aussi; que = than, as:**

Plus, moins facilement que Jean. More, less easily than John.

Aussi facilement que Jean. As easily as John.

a. Further examples, illustrating § 345, *a, b, c, d*, as applied to adverbs:

Il ne marche pas aussi (si) vite. He does not walk as (so) fast.

Vite comme un éclair. As quick as lightning.

Il marche plus vite que je ne pensais. He walks faster than I thought.

De plus en plus vite. Faster and faster.

Plus je le connais (et) moins je l'estime. The more I know him the less I esteem him.

b. *More than, less than, as adverbs of quantity = plus de, moins de, respectively; they must be carefully distinguished from plus (moins) que = more (less) than in an elliptical sentence;*

J'ai plus (moins) de dix francs. I have more (less) than ten francs.

En moins d'une demi-heure. In less than half an hour.

But: Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux (ne mangent). An elephant eats more than six horses (eat).

2. The following are irregularly compared:

bien, well	mieux, better	beaucoup, much	plus, more
mal, badly, ill	{ pis, worse plus mal, worse	peu, little	moins, less

✓a. Beaucoup = much (many) or very much (many), and is never modified by another adverb, except pas.

3. The superlative is formed by placing *le*, which is invariable, before the comparative of inequality:

Le plus souvent (moins souvent). (The) most frequently (least f.).
Elle parle le plus (mieux, moins). She speaks (the) most (best, least).

413. Position. 1. An adverb regularly stands immediately after its verb, rarely between the subject and the verb:

Charles porte souvent ma canne. Charles often carries my cane.

On devrait lire lentement. One should read slowly.

Se levant tard, se couchant tôt. Rising late, going to bed early.

Ils l'ont bien reçu. They have received him well.

Obs.: Hence the adverb regularly comes between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, except when it is in a stressed position:

Je l'avais rencontré déjà = I had met him already.

✓a. The adverbs aujourd'hui, hier, demain, autrefois, tôt, tard, ici, là, ailleurs, partout, never come between the auxiliary and the participle:

Il est parti hier. He went away yesterday.

Je l'ai cherché partout. I looked for it everywhere.

b. Long adverbs in *-ment* not uncommonly stand after the past participle:

Il a parlé éloquemment. He has spoken eloquently.

c. Most adverbs of quantity, such as peu, beaucoup, trop, etc., and a few short adverbs like bien, mal, mieux, etc., as also adverbs of negation, regularly precede the infinitive:

Tu ne devrais pas trop lire. You should not read too much.

Il ne saurait mieux faire. He cannot do better.

Il parle de ne pas y aller. He speaks of not going (there).

d. Interrogative adverbs head the phrase, as in English; other adverbs are not uncommonly placed first for emphasis (cf. § 237, 3):

Quand allez-vous revenir? When are you going to come back?

Aujourd'hui je vais me reposer. To-day I am going to rest.

Malheureusement tout est perdu. Unfortunately all is lost.

2. Adverbs usually precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases modified by them:

Assez de livres, et assez chers. Books enough, and dear enough.
Bien mal à propos. Very unseasonably.

a. For **combien!** **comme!** **que!** **tant!** and **plus . . . plus,** **moins . . . moins**, with adjectives or adverbs, cf. § 350, a.

3. Adverbial phrases follow the same rules as adverbs, except that only the shorter ones may usually come between the auxiliary and the verb:

Nous étions à peine partis. Hardly had we gone.

NEGATION

414. Negation without Verb. **Non** = *no, not*, apart from a verb; it is often emphasized by **pas, point**:

L'avez-vous dit? — Non.	Did you say it? — No.
Vous viendrez? — Non pas (point).	You will come? — Certainly not.
Non, non, je n'irai pas.	No, no, I shall not go.
Non content de dire cela.	Not satisfied with saying that.
Riche ou non, il ne l'aura pas.	Rich or not, he shall not have it.
A-t-il, oui ou non, du talent?	Has he talent, yes or no?
Des idées non moins vastes.	Ideas not less vast.
Une maison non meublée.	A house not furnished.
Non seulement . . . mais encore.	Not only . . . but also.

a. For the use of **que non**, see § 420, 1, a.

415. Negation with Verb. 1. Along with a verb, a negation consists regularly of two parts, **ne** (**n'**, see § 19) together with some other word or words; the principal correlative expressions of this kind are:

ne . . . pas, not	ne . . . aucunement	} not at	ne . . . rien, nothing
ne . . . point, not	ne . . . nullement	} all	ne . . . ni(. . . ni) neither
ne . . . guère, hardly	ne . . . aucun		... nor
ne . . . jamais, never	ne . . . nul		no, none
ne . . . plus, no more	ne . . . pas un		
ne . . . que, only	ne . . . personne, nobody		

NOTES. — 1. **Point** is usually more emphatic than **pas**, and is less common in ordinary language.

2. Negation is often denoted by **pas**, without **ne** in familiar language: **Ai-je pas dit cela?** (= **N'ai-je pas dit cela?**)

2. Other forms of less frequent use are:

a. **Ne . . . quelconque** = *no . . . whatsoever (at all)*, **ne . . . qui que ce soit** = *nobody whatsoever (at all)*, **ne . . . quoi que ce soit** = *nothing whatsoever (at all)*.

Je n'ai dit quoi que ce soit. I said nothing at all.

b. **Ne . . . brin** (lit. *blade*), or **mie** (lit. *crumb*), or **goutte** (lit. *drop*), or **mot** (lit. *word*) = **ne . . . rien**, in certain phrases:

Il n'y en a brin. There is none of it.

Je n'y entendis goutte. I understand nothing of it.

c. **Ne . . . âme vivante**, or **homme qui vive**, or **âme qui vive**, etc. = **ne . . . personne**:

Il n'y avait âme vivante dans la maison. There was not a living soul in the house.

d. **Ne . . . de** + an expression of time, e.g., **la (ma) vie, de huit jours, etc.**

Je ne l'oublierai de ma vie. I shall not forget it while I live.

416. Position. **Ne** always precedes the verb, and its conjunctive objects, if any; **pas**, **point** and other adverbs immediately follow the verb, and its conjunctive pronouns, if any; indefinites have their usual place.

Je ne le leur ai pas (point) dit. I did not tell them it.

Je n'en ai guère. I have hardly any of it.

Ne les a-t-il jamais vus? Did he never see them?

Je n'y resterai plus. I shall stay there no longer.

Il ne le veut nullement. He does not wish it at all.

Il ne prend aucun soin. He takes no care.

Personne ne peut le dire. Nobody can say (it).

Il n'a pas mal du tout. He has no pain at all.

Je ne l'ai dit à qui que ce soit. I have told it to nobody at all.

a. **Pas**, **point**, usually, and **plus**, often, precede the simple infinitive, and its conjunctive objects; they may precede or follow **avoir**, **être**, either when alone or in a compound infinitive:

Il parle de ne pas vous voir. He speaks of not seeing you.

Être ou ne pas être. To be or not to be.

J'étais fâché de ne vous avoir pas vu (*or de ne pas vous avoir vu,*
or de ne vous pas avoir vu).

I was sorry not to have seen you.

b. *Rien* as object is treated as an adverb; it may also precede an infinitive like an adverb:

Il promet de ne rien dire. He promises to say nothing.

c. The *que* of *ne . . . que* immediately precedes the word it modifies:

Je n'en ai vu *que* trois. I saw only three of them.
Il n'y a pas *qu'eux* qui en aient. It is not they only who have some.

~~d.~~ To denote *neither . . . nor*, *ni* is placed before each coördinate word, and, when verbs are expressed, *ne* stands before the auxiliary or other leading verb. When principal verbs are coördinated, *ne* stands before each of them, while *ni* also must stand with the last, but may not stand with the first, and is optional with others:

Qui le sait? — Ni lui ni moi.	Who knows it? — Neither he nor I.
Il n'a ni parents ni amis.	He has neither relatives nor friends.
Je ne l'ai ni vu ni entendu.	I neither saw nor heard it.
Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.	He can neither read nor write.
Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.	I neither wish him to read nor to write.
<u>Il ne le blâme ni ne le loue.</u>	He neither blames nor praises it.
Je ne pouvais, (ni) ne devais, ni ne voulais céder.	I neither could, nor should, nor would yield.

417. Ellipsis of the Verb. If the verb be omitted, but understood, *ne* is also omitted, and the correlative itself denotes negation:

Est-il venu? — Pas encore (= Il n'est pas encore venu).	Has he come? — Not yet (= He has not yet come).
Qui est là? — Personne.	Who is there? — Nobody.
<u>Plus de larmes; plus de soucis.</u>	No more tears; no more cares.

a. *Pas*, when so used, may not stand alone:

Non (pas); pas encore; pas lui; No; not yet; not he (him); not pas du tout; pas ce soir, etc. at all; not this evening, etc.

418. *Ne* alone as Negative. Negation with verbs is expressed by *ne* alone in certain cases, as follows:

1. After *que* = *pourquoi?* and usually after *que*, *qui* in rhetorical question or exclamation:

Que ne le disiez-vous plus tôt?	Why did you not say so sooner?
Que ne ferais-je pour lui?	What would I not do for him?
Qui ne voit cela?	Who does not see that?

2. After condition expressed by inversion:

N'eût été la pluie.	Had it not been for the rain.
---------------------	-------------------------------

a. Sometimes also in conditions regularly expressed with *si*:

Si je ne me trompe (m'abuse).	If I am not mistaken.
Qui, si ce n'est vous?	Who, if not you?

X 3. In dependent sentences after ~~of~~ negation, either fully expressed or implied:

Je n'ai pas (j'ai peu) d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.	I have no (I have few) friends who are not yours.
Il n'y a rien qu'il ne sache.	There is nothing he does not know.
Non que je ne le craigne.	Not that I do not fear him.
Impossible qu'il ne vienne!	Impossible that he will not come!
Ai-je un ami qui ne soit fidèle? — Non.	Have I one friend who is not faithful? — No.

a. More obscure cases of implied negation are *prendre garde que = take care that not*, etc., and such expressions as *il tient = it depends on*, used interrogatively:

Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.	Take care he does not fall.
Gardez qu'il ne sorte.	Take care he does not go out.
À quoi tient-il qu'on ne fasse cela?	What is the cause of that not being done?

4. Sometimes with *savoir*, *bouger*, and with *pouvoir*, *oser*, *cesser* + an infinitive, expressed or implied:

Je ne sais (pas).	I do not know.
Ne bougez (pas) de là.	Do not stir from there.
Je ne puis (pas) répondre.	I cannot answer.
Il n'oseraut (pas) le dire.	He would not dare to say so.
Elle ne cesse (pas) de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.

a. Always *ne* alone in *je ne saurais* and *je ne sais quoi*:

Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Ne sauriez-vous m'aider?	Can you not help me?
Un je ne sais quoi de terrible.	Something indefinitely terrible.

5. In a few set expressions, such as:

N'importe; n'avoir garde.	It does not matter; not to care.
<u>Ne vous en déplaise.</u>	By your leave.
<u>N'avoir que faire de.</u>	To have no use (whatever) for.
Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort (proverb).	Still waters run deep.

419. Pleonastic *ne*. In a que clause *ne* is often pleonastic, as compared with English; thus, *ne* stands:

1. After **empêcher = prevent, éviter = avoid, à moins que = unless, or que so used:**

Empêchez qu'il <i>ne</i> sorte.	Prevent him from going out.
J'évite qu'on <i>ne</i> me voie.	I avoid being seen.
À moins que je <i>ne</i> sois retenu.	Unless I be detained.

a. This *ne* is often omitted after **empêcher** and **éviter**, after **empêcher** mostly when negative or interrogative.

b. *Ne* may also stand after **avant que**:

Avant qu'il (<i>ne</i>) parte.	Before he goes away.
----------------------------------	----------------------

2. After expressions of fearing, such as **craindre, redouter**, etc., **avoir peur**, etc., when not negative, or when negation is not implied by interrogation expecting negative answer, or by condition:

Je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne.	I fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne?	Do you fear he will come?
But: Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne. Sans craindre qu'il vienne. Craignez-vous qu'il vienne? — Non. Si je craignais qu'il vînt.	

a. What it is, or is not, feared will not happen, has the full negation *ne . . . pas* in the que clause:

Je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne <i>pas</i> .	I fear he will not come.
---	--------------------------

J'en crains pas qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne <i>pas</i> .	I do not fear he will not come.
---	---------------------------------

b. Negation and interrogation or condition neutralize each other, and *ne* stands:

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne?	Do you not fear he will come?
--	-------------------------------

Si je ne craignais (pas) qu'il <i>ne</i> vînt.	If I did not fear he would come.
--	----------------------------------

Quand même je ne craindrais pas qu'il <i>ne</i> vînt.	Even though I did not fear he would come.
---	---

3. With a finite verb in the second member of a compariso-

son of inequality, when the first member is not negative or does not imply negation as above:

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| Il est plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était. | He is richer than he was. |
| Est-il plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était? | Is he richer than he was? |
| Il gagne moins qu'il <i>n'espérait</i> . | He earns less than he hoped. |
| But: Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était; est-il plus riche qu'il l'était? — Non. | |

a. A negative interrogation implies affirmation, and *ne* stands:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| N'est-il pas plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était? | Is he not richer than he was? |
|--|-------------------------------|

~~NOTE.~~ — Autre, autrement, plutôt, plus tôt, similarly take *ne*: Il est tout autre que je *ne* pensais.

4. Usually after expressions of doubt, denial, such as *douter*, *nier*, *disconvenir*, etc., often *désespérer*, when negative, or when negation is implied as above:

- | | |
|--|--|
| Je ne doute pas qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne. | I do not doubt that he will come. |
| Doutez-vous qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne? — Non. | Do you doubt whether he will come? — No. |

But: Je doute qu'il vienne; doutez-vous qu'il vienne? (— question for information).

5. After *il s'en faut* negatively, interrogatively, or with *peu*, *guère*, etc.:

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| Il ne s'en fallut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il <i>ne</i> fut tué. | He came very near being killed. |
| Il s'en faut de peu que ce vase <i>ne</i> soit plein. | This vessel is nearly full. |
| Peu s'en est fallu que je <i>ne</i> vinsse. | I came very near coming. |

6. With compound tenses after *il y a*, *voilà*, *depuis*:

Il y a (voilà) trois jours que je <i>ne</i> l'ai vu.	It is three days since I saw him (I have not seen him for, etc.).
Il avait grandi depuis que je <i>ne</i> l'avais vu.	He had grown since I saw him.
Depuis que je <i>ne</i> vous ai vu.	Since I saw you.

a. In a simple tense (§§ 257, 2; 258, 4) negatively, *ne . . . pas*, etc. must be used:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Voilà un an qu'il <i>ne</i> buvait plus. | He had drunk none for a year. |
|--|-------------------------------|

USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS

420. Distinctions. The following are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Oui, Si.** Yes in affirmation or assent is oui; yes is usually si in contradiction, in correction, in dissent:

L'avez-vous dit? — Oui, monsieur. Did you say it? — Yes, sir.

Venez. — Oui, oui, j'y vais. Come. — Yes, yes, I shall go.

Il ne s'en va pas. — Si, monsieur, He is not going. — Yes, (sir), he is il s'en va. (going).

Il ne s'en va pas? — Mais si. He is not going? — Yes, certainly.

Je n'irai pas. — Si, si, venez. I shall not go. — Yes, yes, come.

NOTE. — The use of si, as also of the intensive si fait, etc., though very common, is classed as familiar by the *Académie*; it is often avoided by pardon, etc., or other expressions: Il ne va pas. — Pardon, monsieur (il va).

a. **Oui, si, and non** are often preceded by que, really with ellipsis of a whole que clause, and are then variously translated by yes, so, no, not, etc., or by a clause:

Je dis que oui (non).

I say yes (no).

Je crois que oui (non).

I think so (not).

Vous ne l'avez pas? — Oh! que si.

You haven't it? — Oh yes!

Le fera-t-il? — Je crois que oui.

Will he do it? — I think he will.

Je dis que non.

I say it is not so.

Peut-être que non.

Perhaps not.

2. **Autant, Tant.** As much (many) = autant; so much (many) = tant:

Je gagne autant que vous.

I earn as much as you.

Il but tant qu'il en mourut.

He drank so much that he died from it.

J'ai tant d'amis; j'en ai autant que vous.

I have so many friends; I have as many as you.

3. **Plus, Davantage.** Plus is used in all senses of more, most (see below); davantage (strengthened sometimes by bien = much, encore = still) = more, is regularly used only absolutely, and usually stands at the end of its clause:

N'en parle pas davantage. }

Say no more about it.

N'en parle plus.

- Ne restez pas davantage. } Do not remain any longer.
 Ne restez plus. }
 Cela me plait encore davantage That pleases me still more.
 (plus).
 Je suis riche; il l'est bien davan- I am rich; he is much more so.
 tage (plus).
 But only: J'en ai plus que lui; il est plus habile; plus de dix francs;
 c'est ce qui le flatte le plus, etc.

✗ 4. Ne . . . que, Seulement. Seulement must be used, (1) when no verb is present, (2) when only refers to the subject, (3) or to the verb, (4) or to a que clause, and (5) it may be used to strengthen a ne . . . que; otherwise only = ne . . . que or seulement:

- Seulement les braves. Only the brave.
 Seulement mon frère le sait. Only my brother knows it.
 Écoutez seulement. Only listen.
 Il dit seulement qu'il viendrait. He only said he should come.
 Il n'a (seulement) qu'à venir. He has only to come.
 But: Nous ne serons que trois (or trois seulement); je ne veux que voir son père (or je veux seulement voir son père), etc.

✓ 6. Only, referring to the subject, may be turned also by il n'y a que, il n'y a pas que:

- Il n'y a que les morts qui ne re- The dead only do not come back.
 viennent pas.
 Il n'y a pas qu'elles qui le sachent. It is not only they who know.

THE NUMERAL

421.

Cardinal Numerals

1 un, une	[œ̃, yn]	8 huit	[ɥit]
2 deux	[dø]	9 neuf	[nœf]
3 trois	[trwø]	10 dix	[dis]
4 quatre	[katr̥]	11 onze	[ɔ̃z]
5 cinq	[sɛ̃k]	12 douze	[du:z]
6 six	[sɪs]	13 treize	[tre:z]
7 sept	[sɛ̃]	14 quatorze	[katorz]

15 quinze	[kē:z]	70 soixante-dix	[swasā:tdis]
16 seize	[sēz]	71 soixante et onze	[swasā:teō:z]
17 dix-sept	[dissēt]	80 quatre-vingts	[katrēvē]
18 dix-huit	[dizuit]	81 quatre-vingt-un	[katrēvēœ]
19 dix-neuf	[diznœf]	90 quatre-vingt-dix	[katrēvēdis]
20 vingt	[vē]	91 quatre-vingt-onze	[katrēvēō:z]
21 vingt et un	[vēteō]	100 cent	[sā]
22 vingt-deux	[vētdø]	101 cent un	[sāœ]
30 trente	[trā:t]	200 deux cents	[døsā]
31 trente et un	[trā:teō]	201 deux cent un	[døsāœ]
40 quarante	[karā:t]	1000 mille	[mil]
50 cinquante	[sēkō:t]	1001 mille un	[milœ]
60 soixante	[swasā:t]	2000 deux mille	[dømil]

NOUNS OF NUMBER: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ miljɔ]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljɔ]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ milja:r].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: **Cinq livres** [sē li:vṛ], but **le cinq mai** [lə sē:k me]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit**, **onze**: **Le huit** [lə uit]; **les huit livres** [le ujt li:vṛ]; **le onze** [la ɔ:z]; **les onze francs** [le ɔ:z frā]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt**, in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, is sounded with the **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un**, **deux cent un**, etc.

a. **Un** (f. **une**) is the only cardinal which varies for gender:

Une (deux, trois, etc.) **plume(s)**. One (two, three, etc.) pen(s).
Vingt et une vaches. **Twenty-one cows.**

b. Cardinals are invariable for number, except that **-s** is added to **quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent**, but only when immediately preceding a noun, or an adjective + a noun, or when they themselves serve as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.

Eighty francs.

Trois cents (bonnes) plumes.

Three hundred (good) pens.

Deux cents millions de francs.

Two hundred million francs.

Trois cents hommes.

Three hundred men.

Les cinq cents.

The five hundreds.

But: *Trois cent un francs; les cent hommes engagés; quatre-vingt-unne plumes; deux cent mille; trois mille milles* (miles), etc.

N.B. — They are not nouns of number in dates (c. below) or when used as ordinals (§ 427): *L'an quatre cent; page deux cent; page quatre-vingt.*

c. The form *mil* (not *mille*) is used in dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999:

En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-onze. In eighteen hundred and ninety-one.

(En) *l'an mil six.* (In) the year 1006.

But: *L'an mille* (sometimes *mil*); *l'an deux mille trois cent; l'an mille cent du monde*, etc.

d. From 1100 onward dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

Onze cent(s); treize cent(s). Eleven hundred; thirteen hundred.

Quinze cent cinquante. Fifteen hundred and fifty.

e. *A (or one) hundred = cent; a (or one) thousand = mille:*

Mille soldats. A (one) thousand soldiers.

NOTE. — *Septante* = 70, *octante* = 80, *nonante* = 90, *six-vingt(s)* = 120, and *quinze-vingt(s)* = 300, are now obsolete in the literary language, although sometimes heard in certain French-speaking regions.

422. Ordinal Numerals. The ordinal numerals denote order or place in a series relatively to the first; they are formed, from 'third' up, by adding *-ième* to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal, *cinq* adding *u*, and *f* of *neuf* becoming *v* before *-ième*:

1st	premier	[prɛ̃mjɛ]	7th	septième	[sɛ̃tjɛm]
2nd	second	[sagɔ̃]	8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm]
	deuxième	[døzjɛm]	9th	neuvième	[nœvjem]
3rd	troisième	[trwazjɛm]	10th	dixième	[dizjem]
4th	quatrième	[katrɔ̃jɛm]	11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjem]
5th	cinquième	[sɛkɔ̃jɛm]	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃teynjɛm]
6th	sixième	[sizjɛm]	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃tdøzjem]

NOTES. — 1. Besides the ordinary forms, *tiers* (f. *tierge*) = *third*, *quart(e)* = *fourth*, are used in a few expressions and in fractions: *Le tiers état, The commoners; En maison tierce, In the house of a third party; Une fièvre quarte, A quartan ague.*

2. *Quint* = *fifth* is used only in *Charles-Quint, Charles V (the Emperor); Sixte-Quint, Sixtus V (the Pope).*

a. Ordinals are like ordinary adjectives in inflection and agreement, and regularly precede the noun:

La (les) première(s) maison(s). The first house(s).
Nous sommes arrivés les premiers. We arrived first.

b. Deuxième instead of second is more usually employed in a series of more than two, and always in compounds:

Le second volume.	The second volume (of two).
Le deuxième volume.	The second volume (of three, etc.).
La cent deuxième fois.	The hundred and second time.

423. Collectives. The following nouns are used with collective force:

un(e) couple, <i>a couple</i> (<i>two</i>)	une quarantaine, <i>about forty</i> , <i>quarantine</i>
une paire, <i>a pair</i>	une cinquantaine, <i>about fifty</i>
une huitaine, <i>about eight</i>	une soixantaine, <i>about sixty</i>
une dixaine, <i>about ten</i>	une centaine, <i>about a hundred</i>
une douzaine, <i>a dozen</i>	un cent, <i>a hundred</i>
une quinzaine, <i>about fifteen</i> , <i>a fortnight</i>	un millier, (<i>about</i>) <i>a thousand</i>
une vingtaine, <i>about twenty</i> , <i>a score</i>	un million, <i>a million</i>
une trentaine, <i>about thirty</i>	un milliard, <i>a billion</i> , etc.

a. They take -s in the plural, and have the construction of ordinary nouns:

Il y a une centaine d'élèves.	There are about 100 pupils.
Il y en a deux cents.	There are two hundred of them.
Des milliers de gens.	Thousands of people.
Deux millions de francs.	Two million(s of) francs.

424. Fractions. The numerator is regularly denoted by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal; half = moitié, f., as a noun, and demi as an adjective or a noun:

$\frac{1}{2}$	{ un demi	$\frac{1}{4}$	un quart	$\frac{1}{12}$	trois seizièmes
	une moitié	$\frac{3}{4}$	trois quarts	$\frac{7}{100}$	sept centièmes
$\frac{2}{2}$	deux demis	$\frac{1}{5}$	un cinquième	$\frac{10}{100}$	dix cent unièmes
$\frac{1}{3}$	un tiers	$\frac{1}{7}$	un septième	$\frac{11}{100}$	onze millièmes
$\frac{2}{3}$	deux tiers	$\frac{1}{11}$	un onzième		etc.

a. Demi, before its noun, is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere; as a noun, demi is hardly used, except in arithmetical calculations; see also § 429:

<u>Une demi-heure; une heure et demie.</u>	Half an hour; an hour and a half or half past one.
<u>Trois quarts d'heure.</u>	Three quarters of an hour.
<u>Quatre demis = deux.</u>	Four halves = two.
<u>La moitié de la somme.</u>	Half the sum.

b. The definite article is required before fractions followed by de + a noun when the noun is determined by the definite article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, and similarly for pronominal substitutes for such constructions:

<u>La moitié du temps.</u>	Half the time.
<u>Les trois quarts de ces (ses) biens.</u>	Three-fourths of those (his) goods.
<u>J'en prends les cinq sixièmes.</u>	I take five-sixths of them.

425. Multiplicatives. 1. The following are used as adjectives, or absolutely as nouns:

<u>double, double</u>	septuple, <i>sevenfold</i>
<u>triple, triple</u>	octuple, <i>eightfold</i>
<u>quadruple, quadruple</u>	nonuple, <i>ninefold</i>
<u>quintuple, fivefold</u>	décuple, <i>tenfold</i>
<u>sextuple, sixfold</u>	centuple, <i>hundredfold</i>

As nouns, le double, the double, etc.:

<u>La triple alliance.</u>	The triple alliance.
<u>Payer le double.</u>	To pay twice as much.

a. Double is sometimes adverb:

<u>Il voit double.</u>	He sees double.
------------------------	-----------------

2. Once, twice, three times, etc. = une fois, deux fois, trois fois, etc.:

<u>Dix fois dix font cent.</u>	Ten times ten make a hundred.
<u>Deux fois autant (plus).</u>	Twice as much.

426. Numeral Adverbs. They are formed from the ordinals by -ment, according to rule (cf. § 409):

<u>premièrement, first, firstly</u>	<u>troisièmement, thirdly</u>
<u>secondement</u>	<u>etc. etc.</u>
<u>deuxièmement</u>	

a. Substitutes for them, of very frequent use, are: d'abord = at first, puis = then, after that, ensuite = then, next, en premier lieu = in the first place, en second lieu, etc. = in the second place, etc.; or the Latin adverb forms primo, secundo, tertio, etc., abbreviated to 1°, 2°, 3°, are used.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF NUMERALS

427. Cardinals and Ordinals. 1. *Premier* = *first* is the only ordinal used to denote the day of the month or the numerical title of a ruler; otherwise, cardinals are employed:

Le premier (deux, dix) mai.

Le onze de ce mois.

Napoléon (Grégoire) premier.

Henri (Catherine) deux.

The first (second, tenth) of May.

The eleventh of this month.

Napoleon (Gregory) the First.

Henry (Catherine) the Second

2. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?

Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?

Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?

C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.

✓ Ce sera demain le seize.

Le six janvier.

Ils sont arrivés lundi.

✓ D'aujourd'hui en huit.

Il y a quinze jours.

What day of the month is this?

To-day is the fifteenth.

To-morrow will be the sixteenth.

On the sixth of January.

They came on Monday.

A week from to-day (*future*).

A fortnight ago.

3. Other numerical titles, book, chapter, scene, page, etc., are expressed as in English, ordinals being used before nouns, and either cardinals or ordinals after nouns:

Tome troisième (trois).

Volume third (three).

La dixième scène du second acte.

The tenth scene of the second act.

a. The first of two ordinals joined by et or ou is not uncommonly replaced by a cardinal:

La quatre ou cinquième page.

The fourth or fifth page.

b. Cardinals must precede ordinals in French:

Les deux premières scènes.

The first two scenes.

428. Dimension. The various methods of indicating dimension may be seen from the following:

- (1) Une table longue de deux mètres.
 (2) Une table de 2 m. de longueur.
 (3) Une table de 2 m. de long.
 (4) Une table d'une longueur de 2 m.
 (5) La table est longue de 2 m.
 (6) La table a 2 m. de longueur.
 (7) La table a 2 m. de long.
 (8) La table a une longueur de 2 m.
- A table two meters long.
 The table is two meters long.

- Obs.:* 1. Dimension after an adjective is denoted by de, cf. (1), (5).
 2. Substitutes for the adjectival construction of (1) are seen in (2), (3), (4).
 3. The verb to be is être, as in (5), or avoir, as in (6), (7), (8).
 4. Haut, large, long (but not épais, profond) may be used as nouns instead of hauteur, largeur, longueur, cf. (3), (7).

a. By, of relative dimension = sur; by, after a comparative = de:
Cette table a deux mètres de longueur sur un de largeur. This table is two meters long by one wide.
Plus grand de cinq centimètres. Taller by 5 cm. (= 2 inches).

X429. Time of Day. The method of indicating the time of day may be seen from the following:

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est une (deux) heure(s).	It is one (two) o'clock.
Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures trois quarts.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Six heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to six.
Cinq heures cinquante-cinq.	Five fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit (et) un quart.	It is a quarter past twelve (night).
À huit heures du soir.	At eight o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what o'clock?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	Towards (at about) three o'clock.

- Obs.:* 1. It is (was, etc.) = il est (était, etc.).

2. Heure(s) is never omitted, i.e. il est une heure.
3. Et is essential only at the half hour.

4. Demi(e) agrees with heure (f.) or with midi (m.), minuit (m.).
5. Minutes is often omitted.
6. *A quarter to, minutes to* is moins before the following hour.
7. Twelve o'clock is never douze heures.

430. Age. Idiomatic expressions denoting age are:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Je suis âgé de vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fillette de six ans.	A little girl of six.
Plus âgé de deux ans.	Older by two years.

- Obs.:* 1. The construction with avoir is the more common.
 2. An(s) may be omitted in specifying age.
 3. By = de, after a comparison.

THE PREPOSITION

431. Simple Prepositions. The following list contains the commoner simple prepositions:

à, to, at, in, on, etc.	durant, during	parmi, among
après, after, next to	en, in, to	pendant, during
avant, before	entre, between, among	pour, for
avec, with	envers, towards	sans, without
chez, with, at —'s	hormis, except	sauf, save, except
contre, against	jusque, till, until	selon, according to
dans, in(to)	malgré, in spite of	sous, under
de, of, from, with, etc.	moyennant, by means of	suivant, according to
depuis, since, from	nonobstant, notwithstanding	sur, on, upon
derrière, behind	outre, besides	vers, towards
dès, from, as early as	par, by, through	voici, here is (are)
devant, before		voilà, there is (are)

432. Prepositional Locutions. Phrases with prepositional function, mostly ending in de or à, are numerous:

À côté de l'église.	Beside the church.
Jusqu'à la semaine prochaine.	Until next week.
À travers la forêt.	Through the forest.

Such locutions are:

<u>à cause de</u> , <u>on account of</u>	<u>au-dessus de</u> , <u>above</u>	<u>faute de</u> , <u>for want of</u>
<u>à côté de</u> , <u>by the side of</u>	<u>au lieu de</u> , <u>instead of</u>	<u>jusqu'à</u> , <u>as far as, until</u>
<u>à force de</u> , <u>by dint of</u>	<u>autour de</u> , <u>around</u>	<u>par delà</u> , <u>beyond</u>
<u>à l'égard de</u> , <u>with regard to</u>	<u>au moyen de</u> , <u>by means of</u>	<u>par-dessous</u> , <u>under</u>
<u>à l'exception de</u> , <u>except</u>	<u>àuprès de</u> , <u>near by</u>	<u>par-dessus</u> , <u>over</u>
<u>à l'insu de</u> , <u>unknown to</u>	<u>au travers de</u> , <u>across, through</u>	<u>près de</u> , <u>near</u>
<u>à travers</u> , <u>across, through</u>	<u>d'après</u> , <u>according to</u>	<u>quant à</u> , <u>as for</u>
<u>au delà de</u> , <u>beyond</u>	<u>en dedà de</u> , <u>on this side (of)</u>	<u>vis-à-vis de</u> , <u>opposite</u>
<u>au-dessous de</u> , <u>under</u>	<u>en dépit de</u> , <u>in spite of</u>	etc., etc.

433. Position. Prepositions regularly precede the governed word, as in English:

Je parle de Jean (de lui). I speak of John (of him).

a. Conjunctive personal pronouns governed by voici, voilà, precede:
 Me voici; les voilà. Here I am; there they are.
 En voici quelques-uns. Here are some of them.

b. Durant is sometimes placed after its noun:
 Durant sa vie (or sa vie durant). During his life.

434. Repetition. The prepositions à, de, en, are regularly repeated before each governed substantive; the repetition of other prepositions is regular in contrasts, but is elsewhere optional, as in English:

Il aime à lire et à écrire.	He likes to read and write.
Le père de Jean et de Marie.	The father of John and Mary.
En France ou en Italie.	In France or Italy.
Sur terre et sur mer.	By land and sea.
Par la persuasion ou par la force.	By persuasion or force.
But: Pour lui et (pour) son frère, etc.	

IDIOMATIC DISTINCTIONS

435. Prepositions vary greatly as to idiomatic force in different languages. In the following sections are given some of the various French equivalents of the commoner English prepositions.

436.

About

1. In the sense of *around* = *autour de*:

Regardez autour de vous. Look about you.
Autour de la place. About the square.

2. In the sense of *concerning, of* = *de, à*:

De quoi parlez-vous? What are you talking about?
À quoi pensez-vous? What are you thinking about?

3. In the sense of *with, about (the person)* = *sur*:

Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous? Have you any money about you?

4. Denoting approximation = *environ, près de, à peu près, vers*:
Environ (près de, à peu près) About two thousand francs; about
deux mille francs; vers (sur ten o'clock; about 1830.
les) dix heures; vers 1830.

437.

After

1. Denoting time, rank, order, position = *après*:

Après dîner; le premier après le roi; on met l'adjectif après le nom; courez après lui. After dinner; the first after the king; the adjective is placed after the noun; run after him.

2. In the sense of *at the end of* = *au bout de*:

Au bout de trois siècles. After three centuries.

3. Unclassified:

De jour en jour; dessiné d'après Raphaël; le lendemain de son retour; il tient de sa mère. Day after day; drawn after Raphael; the day after his return; he takes after his mother.

438.

Among

1. In the sense of *in the midst of, surrounded by* = *parmi*, sometimes *entre*:

Une brebis parmi les loups. A sheep among wolves.
Il fut trouvé entre les morts. He was found among the dead.

2. *Among (distributively or reciprocally)* = *entre*:

Il le partagea entre ses amis. He divided it among his friends.
Ils parlaient entre eux. They spoke among themselves.

3. Unclassified:

C'était ainsi chez les Grecs. It was so among the Greeks.

439.

At

1. Denoting place, time, = à, sometimes en:

À l'école; à Douvres; à table; à cinq heures; à l'âge de; en tête de; en (au) même temps; à la fin (enfin).

At school; at Dover; at table; at five o'clock; at the age of; at the head of; at the same time; at last.

2. In the sense of *at the house*, etc., of, at —'s = chez:

J'ai été chez vous; il est chez Monsieur Ribot.

I was at your house; he is at Mr. Ribot's.

3. Unclassified:

À mes dépens; à tout prix; d'abord; sous la main; entrer par la fenêtre; en haut (bas); au moins; sur mer; en guerre.

At my expense; at any price; at first; at hand; come (go) in at the window; at the top (bottom); at least; at sea; at war.

440.

Before

1. Denoting place, in the sense of *in front of*, *in the presence of* = devant:

Mettez cela devant le feu; le jardin est devant la maison; il prêcha devant le roi.

Put that before the fire; the garden is before the house; he preached before the king.

2. Denoting time, order = avant:

Avant midi; je l'ai vu avant vous; mettez l'article avant le nom.

Before noon; I saw him before you; put the article before the noun.

3. Unclassified:

Sous mes yeux; la veille de la bataille; comparaître par-devant le juge.

Before my eyes; the day before the battle; to appear before the judge.

441.

By

1. Denoting the agent after the passive = par, de (cf. § 240):

Elle fut saisie par le voleur; ils sont aimés de tous.

She was seized by the robber; they are loved by all.

2. Denoting means, way, etc. = par (usually):

Par la poste; par chemin de fer; par ce moyen; par un ami.

By post; by railway; by this means; by a friend.

3. Denoting measure = *de*; relative dimension = *sur*:

Plus grand de la tête; plus âgé de dix ans (de beaucoup); plus lourd d'une livre; moins de la moitié; dix mètres sur six.

Taller by a head; older by ten years (by far); heavier by a pound; less by half; ten meters by six.

4. Unclassified:

De jour (nuit); à l'année; goutte à goutte; il est midi à ma montre; connaître de vue; de vive voix; un tailleur de son état; vendre au poids; fait à la main.

By day (night); by the year; drop by drop; it is noon by my watch; to know by sight; by word of mouth; a tailor by trade; to sell by weight; made by hand.

442.

For

1. In the sense of *for the sake of, instead of, (in exchange) for* = *pour*:

Mourir pour la patrie; je le fais pour vous; donnez-moi ceci pour cela.

To die for one's country; I do it for you; give me this for that.

2. Denoting destination:

Je pars pour la France; une lettre pour vous.

I leave for France; a letter for you.

3. Denoting a period of time (future) = *pour*:

Je resterai (pour) huit jours; j'en ai pour dix ans.

I shall stay (for) a week; I have enough of it for ten years.

NOTE. — *For*, of time not future, is variously rendered: *J'étais absent* or *J'étais absent pendant huit jours*, *I was absent for a week*; *Il y a (voici, voilà) deux heures que je lis* or *Je lis depuis deux heures*, *I have been reading for two hours*.

4. Unclassified:

Mot à mot or mot pour mot; un remède contre (pour); trembler de crainte; par exemple; quant à moi; vendre dix francs or laisser (donner) pour dix francs; remercier (punir) de; changer pour (contre); c'est à vous de dire; malgré tout cela.

Word for word; a remedy for; to tremble for fear; for example; as for me; to sell for ten francs or to give for ten francs; to thank (punish) for; to change for; it is for you to say; for all that.

443.

From

1. Usually = de:

Il vient de Paris; de trois à quatre heures; je l'ai appris de lui. He comes from Paris; from three to four o'clock; I heard it from him.

2. In the sense of *because of, out of, through* = par:

Cela arriva par négligence; par expérience (amitié). That happened from carelessness; from experience (friendship).

✗3. In the sense of *dating from* = dès, depuis, à partir de:

Dès (depuis, à partir de) ce jour; à partir de 1820. From that day; from 1820 (on).

4. Unclassified:

D'aujourd'hui en huit; dessiné d'après nature; boire dans un verre; ôtez cela à l'enfant.

A week from to-day; drawn from nature; to drink from a glass; take that from the child.

444.

In, into

1. Denoting place or time specifically, i.e., in the sense of *within, inside of, in(to) the interior of* = dans (cf. § 333, 3):

Dans ce paquet (champ); dans la maison; dans l'Afrique australe; dans toute la ville; dans la même année.

In this parcel (field); in(to) the house; in South Africa; in the whole city; in the same year.

NOTE. — The governed noun usually has the definite article.

2. Denoting place or time generally = en, à (cf. § 333, 2, 3):

En Afrique; à la maison; aux champs; au Canada; à Londres; à la campagne (ville); en hiver; au printemps; en paix.

In Africa; in the house (at home); in the fields; in Canada; in London; in the country (city); in winter; in spring; in peace.

✗ NOTE. — The governed word after en has but rarely the definite article (mostly in fixed expressions before initial vowel sound): En l'air; En l'honneur de, etc.

✗3. In the sense of *at the end of (time)* = dans; in the course of (time) = en:

Le train part dans une heure; on peut aller à L. en une heure.

The train leaves in an hour; one can go to L. in an hour.

4. Denoting place, after a superlative = de:

La plus grande ville du monde. The largest city in the world.

5. Unclassified:

Par la pluie; le matin; de nos jours; par le passé; à l'avenir; d'avance; entre les mains de; à mon avis; sous le règne de; sous presse; de cette manière; un sur dix.

In the rain; in the morning; in our day(s); in the past; in the future; in advance; in the hands of; in my opinion; in the reign of; in (the) press; in this way; one in ten.

445.

Of

1. Usually = de:

Le toit de la maison; la ville de Paris; un homme d'influence; une livre de thé; digne d'honneur; il parle d'aller à Paris.

The roof of the house; the city of Paris; a man of influence; a pound of tea; worthy of honor; he speaks of going to Paris

2. Denoting material = en:

Un pont en bois (fer); les pièces de dix francs sont en or.

A bridge of wood (iron); ten-franc pieces are (made) of gold.

3. Unclassified:

C'est aimable à vous; sur 100 personnes 50 sont échappées; docteur en médecine; un de mes amis; majeur.

It is kind of you; of 100 persons 50 escaped; doctor of medicine; one of my friends; of age.

446.

On, upon

1. Usually = sur:

Le livre est (je mets le livre) sur la table.

The book is (I put the book) on the table.

2. Is omitted in dates before specified days:

Le dix mai; je viendrai mardi; il arriva le lendemain.

On the tenth of May; I shall come on Tuesday; he arrived on the morrow.

3. Unclassified:

Par une belle journée d'été; mettre au feu; pendre contre le mur; dans la rue; dans l'île; dans l'escalier; en (dans un) voyage; en visite (congé); en chemin (route); d'un côté; tomber par terre; à genoux; dans cette occasion; à cheval (pied); à droite (gauche); à son arrivée; au contraire; pour affaires.

On a fine summer day; to put on the fire; to hang on the wall; on the street; on the island; on the stairs; on a journey; on a visit (a holiday); on the way (the road); on one side; to fall on the ground; on one's knees; on that occasion; on horseback (foot); on the right (the left); on his arrival; on the contrary; on business.

447.

Out of

1. Unclassified:

Boire dans un verre; copier dans un livre; regarder par la fenêtre; un sur dix.

To drink out of a glass; to copy out of a book; to look out of the window; one out of ten.

448.

Over

1. In the sense of above = au-dessus de:

Au-dessus de la porte étaient écrits ces mots; les nombres au-dessus de mille.

Over the door were written these words; the numbers over one thousand.

2. Denoting motion above = sur, par, par-dessus:

Passez la main sur ce drap; par monts et par vaux; il sauta par-dessus la haie.

Pass your hand over this cloth; over hill and dale; he leaped over the hedge.

3. Unclassified:

Au delà de la rivière; l'emporter sur (triompher de); se réjouir de; veiller sur.

Over the river; to triumph over; to rejoice over; to watch over.

449.

Through

1. Denoting motion across = à travers (au travers de), par:

Je passai à travers (au travers de) la forêt; passer par Paris.

I passed through the forest; to pass through Paris.

2. In the sense of *because of, owing to* = **par**:

Par négligence. Through carelessness.

450. Till, until

1. Unclassified:

Jusqu'à demain; pas avant l'an-
née prochaine; jusqu'ici; du
matin au soir.

Till to-morrow; not till next year;
till now; from morning till
night, from rising to retiring.

451. To

1. Denoting the indirect object = **à** (cf. § 362, 2):

Je l'ai donné à un ami. I gave it to a friend.

2. Denoting motion to = **à, en** (cf. § 333, 2, 3); in the sense of *to the house, etc., of, to —'s* = **chez**:

Il va à Paris (à l'école; au Japon; à un bal; en France; en Portugal; chez eux; chez mon ami).

He goes to Paris (to school; to Japan; to a ball; to France; to Portugal; to their house, etc.; to my friend's).

3. In the sense of towards = **vers** (physical tendency), **envers** (moral tendency):

Levez les yeux vers le ciel; il est juste envers tous.

Raise your eyes to heaven; he is just to all.

4. In the sense of as far as = **jusqu'à**:

Venez jusqu'au bout de la rue. Come to the end of the street.

5. Unclassified:

Le voyage (train) de Montréal; écrire sous dictée; dans ce but.

The journey (train) to Montreal; to write to dictation; to this end.

452. Towards

See § 451, 3.

453. Under, underneath

1. Usually = **sous**:

Sous la table; sous la loi; sous peine de mort.

Under the table; under the law; under (on) pain of death.

2. Denoting *lower than, less than* = *au-dessous de*:

Au-dessous du coude; vendre une chose au-dessous de sa valeur.

Under the elbow; to sell a thing under its value.

3. Unclassified:

Fouler aux pieds; à cette condition; dans les circonstances; dans la nécessité de; mineur.

To tread under foot; under this condition; under the circumstances; under the necessity of; under age.

454.

With

1. In the sense of *along with, in company with* = *avec*:

Dînez avec moi à l'hôtel; un officier avec des soldats.

Dine with me at the hotel; an officer with some soldiers.

2. In the sense of *at the house, etc., of* = *chez*:

Il demeure chez nous.

He lives with us.

3. Denoting instrument, manner = *avec* (usually):

Frapper avec un marteau; écrire avec une plume; avec courage (force).

To strike with a hammer; to write with a pen; with courage (force).

4. Denoting a characteristic = *à*:

Un homme à la barbe noire.

A man with a black beard.

5. With of accessory circumstance is usually turned by an absolute construction:

Il parla les yeux baissés.

He spoke with downcast eyes.

6. In the sense of *from, on account of, and after many verbs and adjectives* = *de*:

Elle pleura de colère; couvrir de; content de.

She wept with anger; to cover with; satisfied with.

7. Unclassified:

À l'exception de; à haute voix; à bras ouverts; de bon appétit; à l'œil nu; de tout mon cœur.

With the exception of; with a loud voice; with open arms; with a good appetite; with the naked eye; with all my heart.

THE CONJUNCTION

455. Conjunctions. The following table contains most of the conjunctions and conjunctive locutions in use:

†à (la) condition que, ³ <i>on condition that</i>	†en sorte que, ² <i>so that</i>
*afin que, ² <i>in order that, so that</i>	*en supposant que, ³ <i>supposing that</i>
ainsi, therefore, hence	et, and
ainsi que, <i>as well as, as</i>	et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i>
alors que, <i>when</i>	excepté que, <i>except that</i>
à mesure que, <i>as, just as</i>	†jusqu'à ce que, ¹ <i>until</i>
*à moins que . . . ne, ³ <i>unless</i>	*loin que, ⁵ <i>far from</i>
après que, <i>after</i>	lorsque, <i>when</i>
à proportion que, <i>in proportion as</i>	mais, <i>but</i>
attendu que, <i>considering that</i>	*malgré que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>
†au cas où, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	néanmoins, <i>nevertheless</i>
*au cas que, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	ni, <i>nor</i>
aussi, <i>hence, therefore</i>	ni . . . ni . . . (. . . ne), <i>neither . . . nor</i>
aussitôt que, <i>as soon as</i>	*nonobstant que, ⁴ <i>notwithstanding that</i>
*avant que, ¹ <i>before</i>	*non (pas) que, ⁵ <i>not that</i>
*bien que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>	non seulement . . . mais encore, <i>not only . . . but also</i>
car, <i>for</i>	or, <i>now</i>
*ce n'est pas que, ⁵ <i>not that</i>	ou, <i>or</i>
cependant, <i>however, yet</i>	ou . . . ou, <i>either . . . or</i>
comme, <i>as</i>	outre que, <i>Besides that</i>
†dans le cas où, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	parce que, <i>because</i>
*de crainte que . . . ne, ² <i>for fear that</i>	partant, <i>therefore, hence</i>
†de façon que, ² <i>so that</i>	pendant que, <i>while, whilst</i>
†de manière que, ² <i>so that</i>	*pour peu que, ⁴ <i>if ever so little</i>
de même que, <i>as well as</i>	*pour que, ² <i>in order that</i>
*de peur que . . . ne, ² <i>for fear that</i>	pourtant, <i>yet, however</i>
depuis que, <i>since</i>	*pourvu que, ³ <i>provided that</i>
†de (telle) sorte que, ² <i>so that</i>	puisque, <i>since</i>
dès que, <i>as soon as, when, since</i>	quand, <i>when</i>
donc, <i>now, then, therefore</i>	†quand même, ⁴ <i>though, even if</i>
*en attendant que, ¹ <i>until</i>	†que, ⁶ <i>that, than, as</i>
*en cas que, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	*quoique, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>
encore, <i>yet, still</i>	*sans que, ⁵ <i>without</i>
*encore que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>	

selon que, *according as*
 †*si*,³ *if* (§ 271, 3, a)
 †*si* bien que,² *so that*
 †*si* peu que,⁴ *however little*
 sinon, *if not, or else*
 sitôt que, *as soon as*
 soit . . . soit, *whether . . . or*
 soit . . . ou, *whether . . . or*
 *soit que . . . soit que,⁴ *whether*
 . . . or

*soit que . . . ou que,⁴ *whether . . . or*
 suivant que, *according as*
 *supposé que,³ *suppose that*
 tandis que, *whilst, whereas*
 tant . . . que, *both . . . and*
 tant que, *as long as*
 †tellement . . . que,² *so . . . that*
 toutefois, *yet, nevertheless*
 une fois que, *as soon as*
 vu que, *seeing that*

* Followed by the subjunctive.

† Followed by the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B.—Conjunctions without * or † in the table are followed by the indicative.

¹ See § 271, 1 (time before which or up to which).

² See § 271, 2 (purpose or result).

³ See § 271, 3 (condition).

⁴ See § 271, 4 (concession).

⁵ See § 271, 5 (negation).

⁶ See § 269, § 271, 6, and § 458.

USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

✗ 456. Et. 1. When repeated, et usually denotes both . . . and; otherwise it stands with the last only of two or more clauses:

Je connais et le père et le fils.	I know both the father and son.
Les femmes pleuraient, criaient et gesticulaient.	The women wept, (and) screamed, and gesticulated.

2. And after a verb of motion is usually untranslated:

Allez leur parler.	Go and speak to them.
--------------------	-----------------------

✗ 457. Ni. 1. A finite verb with ni or ni . . . ni must be preceded by ne:

Il n'a ni or ni argent.	He has neither gold nor silver.
Il ne mange ni ne boit.	He neither eats nor drinks.
a. For the position of ni . . . ni . . . ne, see § 416, d.	

2. In sentences of negative force, *and*, *or*, are rendered by *ni*:

Honneurs ni richesses ne font le bonheur. Honors and wealth do not constitute happiness.

3. Observe the following equivalents of *neither, not either, nor either, nor*, when not correlative:

Je ne le ferai pas. — (Ni) moi I shall not do it. — Nor I either non plus. (or Neither shall I.)

Il ne le fera pas non plus. He will not do it either.

Il ne l'a pas fait, et il ne le fera pas. He has not done it, nor will he do it.

458. Que. 1. *Que = that* is followed by the indicative or subjunctive according to the context:

Je dis que vous avez raison. I say that you are right.

Je suis fâché que vous ayez raison. I am sorry that you are right.

2. *Que* often replaces another conjunction; when so used, it takes the same construction as the conjunction for which it stands, except that que instead of si = if always requires the subjunctive:

Quand vous aurez fini, et que vous aurez le temps. When you have finished, and (when you) have time.

Venez que (= afin que, pour que) je vous voie. Come that I may see you.

Si vous venez demain, et que vous ayez le temps. If you come to-morrow, and (if you) have time.

3. *Que* may not be omitted before a finite verb, as *that* often is in English:

Je crois qu'il viendra et qu'il restera. I think (that) he will come and (that he will) stay.

459. Distinctions. The following conjunctions are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. Quand, Lorsque. They are equivalents in the sense of *when*, but *quand* (*not lorsque*) serves also as an interrogative adverb in direct or indirect questions:

Quand est-il arrivé?	When did he come?
Dis-moi quand il est arrivé.	Tell me when he came.
Quand (<i>or lorsque</i>) je l'ai vu.	When I saw him.
Nous partirons lorsque (<i>or quand</i>) la lettre arrivera.	We shall leave when the letter comes.

2. Pendant que, Tandis que. Pendant que = *while, whilst, during the time that; tandis que* = *while, whilst, during the time that, and also, whilst, on the contrary, whereas:*

Lisez le journal pendant que j'écris ce billet.	Read the newspaper while I write this note.
Pendant (<i>Tandis</i>) que vous êtes ici.	Whilst you are here.
Le père travaille, tandis que le fils ne fait rien.	The father works, while the son does nothing.

3. Depuis que, Puisque. Depuis que denotes time; puisque denotes cause assigned:

Je suis bien seul depuis que mon frère est parti.	I am very lonely since my brother went away.
Il me faut rester, puisqu'il n'y a pas de train ce soir.	I must remain, since there is no train this evening.

THE INTERJECTION

460. **Interjections.** The commoner interjections and expressions used as such are:

1. Joy, admiration, approval:

ah! ah!	à la bonne heure! <i>well done!</i> <i>that's right!</i>
ha, ha! or hi, hi! (<i>to denote laughter</i>)	bis! <i>encore!</i>
bon! <i>good!</i>	bravo! or bravissimo! <i>well done!</i> <i>bravo!</i>
bien! <i>good!</i>	hourra! or vivat! <i>hurrah!</i>
à merveille! <i>capital!</i> <i>Cap. [in]!</i>	

2. Disgust, disapproval, indifference:

fi! fie!	foin de! <i>a plague upon!</i>
fi donc! <i>for shame!</i>	pouah! <i>disgusting!</i> <i>saugh!</i>
fie de! <i>fie on!</i>	oh! oh!

bah! or ah! bah! nonsense! pooh-
pooh!
baste! enough! pooh! nonsense!

par exemple! dear me!
zest! pshaw!
zut! pshaw!

3. Grief, fear, pain:

ah! ah!
oh! oh!
hélas! alas!
aie! oh! oh dear!

miséricorde! mercy!
ouf! (to express suffocation, or relief
and exhaustion)

4. Surprise:

ah! ah!
oh! oh!
eh! ah!
ha! ha!
comment! what!

quoi! what!
vraiment! indeed!
tiens! indeed! hallo!
par exemple! you don't say so!
miséricorde! mercy!

5. Encouragement, reproof:

allons! come!
courage! cheer up!
voyons! come now!
ça! or or ça! or sus! or or sus!
now then!

en avant! forward!
ferme! steady!
preste! quick!

6. Warning:

gare! look out! take care!

attention! look out! take care!

7. Calling:

hé! or ohé! or holà! ho! hoy!
halloo!
hem! ahem!

st! hi there!
qui vive! who goes there!

8. Calling for aid:

à moi! or au secours! help!
à l'assassin or au meurtre! murder!

au voleur! stop thief!
au feu! fire!

9. Silencing, stopping:

chut! or st! hush!
silence! silence!
motus! [moty:s] not a word!

tout doux or tout beau! gently!
not so fast!
halte-là! stop there!

NOTE. — Akin to interjections are imitations of sounds: Cric crac! break-ing; drelin, drelin! or drelin, din, din! ringing; pan pan! bang; pif paf! gunshots; boum! cannonading; rataplan! drum; dare dare! quick move-ment; cahin-caha, jogging along; clopin-clopant, hobbling; tic tac, ticking, etc.

ABBREVIATIONS

461. French Abbreviations. The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French:

c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, <i>that is</i>	M ^{me} (pl. M ^{mes}) = Madame, <i>Mrs.</i>
C ^{ie} or C ^e = compagnie, <i>company</i>	M ⁿ = maison, <i>house, firm</i>
etc. = et cætera	ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, <i>manuscript</i>
fr. or f. = francs, <i>francs</i>	N.-D. = Notre-Dame, <i>Our Lady</i>
h. = heure, <i>hour</i>	N.-S. = Notre-Seigneur, <i>Our Lord</i>
in-f ^o = in-folio, <i>folio</i>	n ^o = numéro, <i>number</i>
J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, <i>Jesus Christ</i>	R.S.V.P. = Répondez s'il vous plaît, <i>an answer is requested</i>
M. = Monsieur, <i>Mr.</i>	S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, <i>His Royal Highness</i>
MM. = Messieurs, <i>Messrs.</i>	s.-ent. = sous-entendu, <i>understood</i>
M. R. or M. R . . . = Monsieur R. or Monsieur R * * *, <i>Mr. R.</i> or <i>Mr. R—</i> .	S. Exc. = Son Excellence, <i>His Excellency</i>
M ^d = marchand, <i>merchant</i>	S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté, <i>His (Her) Majesty</i>
M ^e (pl. M ^{es}) = maître, <i>is used with names of lawyers instead of monsieur</i>	S. S. = Sa Sainteté, <i>His Holiness</i>
Mgr (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur, <i>my lord</i>	s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, <i>if you please</i>
M ^{lle} (pl. M ^{illes}) = Mademoiselle, <i>Miss</i>	V ^e = veuve, <i>widow</i>

I^{er} (in titles) = premier, *the First*
II (in titles) = deux, *the Second*
Le XV^e siècle, etc. = le quinzième siècle, *the 15th century*

1^{er} (fem. 1^{re}) = premier, *first*
2^e = deuxième, *second*
1^o = primo, *firstly*
7^{bre} = septembre, *September. Etc.*

EXERCISES

[The references at the head of the exercises are to the sections in the Grammar on which they are based.]

I a (§§ 156–161)

Complete the following: appelle-les, je l'envoie, je l'amène.

1. What are you eating?
2. We are eating apples.
3. It was necessary that they should eat.
4. Who is calling?
5. We are calling.
6. The general leads his army.
7. We shall lead the horses.
8. Who is throwing stones?
9. It will freeze.
10. He is buying a coat.
11. We never yield.
12. They will never yield.
13. The servant is peeling apples.
14. When will he pay?
15. They never pay.
16. The servant is cleaning the kitchen.
17. We shall clean our gun.
18. The little girl wipes the dishes.
19. The farmer sows the seed.
20. It is freezing.
21. We are going to school.
22. We went home.
23. They used to go to market on Saturdays.
24. He will send it.

I b

1. The servant is bringing the horses.
2. I send him there.
3. I shall go to school.
4. Let them go to the city.
5. It was necessary that you should go there.
6. They will buy a box.
7. Let us bring the children.
8. Bring the children.
9. Let him not throw stones.
10. We have led the horses to the stable.
11. Let us trace a line.
12. We are advancing.
13. They were eating.
14. We ate.
15. They will eat.
16. Let us advance.
17. Let us never yield.
18. Let us call the children.
19. Let us not go there.
20. The queen has been reigning a long time.
21. The children were throwing stones.
22. He led the horse to the stable.
23. He paid the money.
24. The servant wiped the dishes.
25. The child traced a line.

II a (§§ 162–166)

Complete the following: je les accueille, je pars, je courrai.

1. He is running.
2. Shall we run?
3. Run fast, my little boy.
4. He is acquiring a fortune.
5. It was necessary that

we should run. 6. They will conquer that city. 7. The general has acquired glory. 8. He gives him consecrated bread. 9. They acquire knowledge. 10. We shall acquire property. 11. There is holy water. 12. Let us not run. 13. Let them acquire it. 14. We are gathering apples. 15. It was necessary that they should gather flowers. 16. He welcomed me. 17. We shall gather them. 18. Let us not start with (*de*) fear. 19. He will assail his enemy. 20. He is sleeping. 21. Let us not sleep. 22. He must sleep. 23. We shall soon sleep. 24. They fall asleep.

II b

1. He is leaving for France. 2. He left yesterday. 3. If he were asleep, I should call him. 4. He will go out. 5. Let him not go out. 6. The water boils. 7. The water was boiling. 8. When he speaks, he lies. 9. He makes use of it. 10. He will feel it. 11. If he were here, we should not sleep. 12. The water will soon boil. 13. He has run. 14. It was necessary that we should sleep. 15. I have not slept. 16. He never lies. 17. The horses would run if they were not tired. 18. They ran. 19. We acquired it. 20. The horses run over the field. 21. He does not consent to it. 22. He will never consent to it. 23. Let him not make use of it. 24. We were running. 25. We fell asleep.

III a (§§ 167-179)

Give principal parts of: fuir, mourir, tenir.

1. He failed on (*en*) that occasion. 2. It is a prosperous country. 3. He flees. 4. Let us not flee. 5. They fled. 6. He will not flee. 7. Here lies a hero. 8. Here lie the remains of the great Napoleon. 9. I hate evil. 10. Men hate their enemies. 11. Let us not hate our enemies. 12. He hates his father. 13. Let him not hate his father. 14. Was it necessary that he should hate his father? 15. She dies. 16. They will die. 17. Let us not die. 18. It was necessary that he should die. 19. He died. 20. She will die. 21. Let him not die. 22. If they died, we should be sorry for it. 23. That tree is dying away. 24. Open the door.

III b

1. We have opened the box.
2. He offers me his book.
3. She used to suffer a great deal.
4. If we had any, we should offer you some.
5. Columbus discovered America.
6. We held it.
7. Let him not hold it.
8. I hold it.
9. Let us hold it.
10. We are coming.
11. We shall come.
12. We should come if you would come.
13. If I should come, I should find it.
14. They are coming back.
15. It is necessary that he come.
16. It was necessary that he should come.
17. Hold it.
18. He has held it.
19. The purse contains money.
20. If he comes, we shall be glad (of it).
21. They will come back.
22. He is ill clad.
23. He clothes himself well.
24. He will clothe his child.
25. It is necessary that he clothe his child.

IV a (§§ 180–188)

Give principal parts of: reproduire, méconnaître.

1. We beat the horse.
2. He fells the tree.
3. It is necessary that he fight the enemy.
4. We drink water.
5. They drink milk.
6. They were drinking wine.
7. We shall drink water.
8. Let him drink milk.
9. He has drunk the wine.
10. It was necessary that we should drink wine.
11. We shall not drink wine.
12. He incloses his garden.
13. He will close the bargain.
14. Those flowers will soon open.
15. He is concluding his argument.
16. Let us conclude the bargain.
17. The bread is baking well.
18. If he were there, he would conclude the affair.
19. He drives the cows to the field.
20. They destroyed their books.
21. They will construct houses.
22. Let us translate this phrase.
23. It was necessary that we should translate that book.
24. He led his horse to the stable.

IV b

1. We were translating our exercise.
2. We constructed a house.
3. Let him translate his lesson.
4. I have translated a book.
5. I translated a book.
6. She was preserving plums.
7. We are preserving cherries.
8. That suffices.

9. That will be sufficient. 10. Let that suffice. 11. Five francs a day are sufficient for him. 12. I know that gentleman. 13. It is necessary that we should know him. 14. Let him appear. 15. The cows eat the grass. 16. It was necessary that we should know him. 17. It was necessary that he should appear. 18. He will not disappear. 19. We used to know him. 20. When he appears, we shall conclude the affair. 21. Let him recognize them. 22. You know him, do you not? 23. You will know him. 24. He reappeared

V a (§§ 189-193)

Complete the following: je l'ai cousu, n'y crois pas.

1. The little girl is sewing. 2. We were sewing. 3. They will sew. 4. She sewed. 5. They had sewed. 6. Let us sew. 7. Let her not sew. 8. Let us not fear. 9. They fear. 10. Let him not be afraid. 11. We shall not fear. 12. Men fear death. 13. They pity us. 14. He was painting a picture. 15. Put out the fire. 16. Let him put out the lamp. 17. It was necessary that we should rejoin our friends. 18. I feared the rain. 19. I believe you. 20. We shall not believe it. 21. Let us believe it. 22. I used to believe it. 23. It is necessary that he should believe it. 24. He did not believe it.

V b

1. It was necessary that he should believe it. 2. We did not believe it. 3. Do not believe it. 4. The flowers are growing. 5. The tree grows. 6. That tree will grow fast. 7. We grew. 8. It was necessary that we should grow. 9. The trees were growing fast. 10. Let it grow. 11. He has believed. 12. The tree has grown. 13. Do not say so (*le*). 14. We say so. 15. We should not say so if we did not believe it. 16. Is it necessary that he should say so? 17. They used to say so. 18. Let him not say so. 19. Was it necessary that we should say so? 20. Do not say so again. 21. Do not slander. 22. They do not say so. 23. Cain was cursed by (*de*) God. 24. We do not curse our enemies. 25. If I should say so, would you believe me?

VI a (§§ 194-200)

Complete the following: je ne l'admet pas, je le décris.

1. I was writing when he came.
2. Let us write our exercise.
3. We wrote a letter.
4. Write your lesson.
5. Let him write.
6. We shall write our letter.
7. It was necessary that you should write.
8. He has described his travels.
9. They are writing.
10. Would you write if I should write?
11. Do what I say.
12. He did not do it.
13. He has not done his work.
14. Let us do our work.
15. Let him do what I said.
16. It was necessary that you should do so.
17. I shall do so when you come.
18. If you do that, we shall do this.
19. If you should say so, we should do it.
20. I was doing my work when he came.
21. It is necessary that we do that.
22. If I do this, will you do that?
23. I was reading when he came.
24. He will never read that book.

VI b

1. Read that letter.
2. They are reading their book.
3. Did you not read the newspaper?
4. If I should read this book, would you read that one?
5. Is he reading the newspaper?
6. Let him not read that book.
7. Did they not read this book?
8. I placed the book on the table.
9. Do not commit that crime.
10. It is necessary that he put on his coat.
11. We shall put on our clothes.
12. They have placed their books on the table.
13. We shall not permit it.
14. Does he permit it?
15. It was necessary that he should not permit it.
16. What would you say if we should permit it?
17. The miller grinds the wheat.
18. We are grinding wheat.
19. We ground the wheat.
20. Let him grind the wheat.
21. The prophet said that a child would be born.
22. We are born weak.
23. We were born [on] the same day.
24. Let a young nation arise!
25. Was it necessary that hatred should arise between them?

VII a (§§ 201-211)

Complete the following: je l'apprends, je le suivais.

1. That does not please him (*lui*).
2. You please me.
3. Come when it pleases you.
4. Do so if you please.
5. May

it please you. 6. Take your places. 7. He takes his hat from (*sur*) the table. 8. If I should take it, what would you do? 9. Let him take his book. 10. It is necessary that I should please him. 11. We took our places. 12. Have you learnt your lesson? 13. He will not undertake that. 14. Fire resolves wood into (*en*) smoke. 15. We have resolved to (*de*) do it. 16. He solved the difficulty. 17. He will solve the difficulty. 18. Let us not laugh at (*de*) him. 19. Why is he laughing? 20. If I should laugh, what would you say? 21. Was it necessary that he should laugh? 22. We laugh at them. 23. Follow me. 24. The dog follows his master.

VII b

1. Let him follow us. 2. It is necessary that we should follow you. 3. We followed him. 4. If I should follow him, it would please him. 5. We shall never follow him. 6. Is he not milking the cow? 7. When we were in the country, we used to milk the cows. 8. Let him milk the cow. 9. That distracts him from his work. 10. The general conquers his enemies. 11. We conquer our passions. 12. If you were to conquer your passions, you would be happy. 13. Our army will conquer. 14. We have conquered our enemies. 15. Let him conquer his passions. 16. He is not selling his house. 17. He will never sell it. 18. Horses live on (*de*) hay. 19. He lives only for himself. 20. Let us live in (*en*) peace. 21. He will live yet [a] long time. 22. Louis XIV lived in the 17th century. 23. Long live the King! 24. Hurrah for liberty!

VIII a (§§ 212-222)

Give principal parts of: recevoir, mouvoir, pouvoir.

1. We receive our friends. 2. He has received the letter. 3. Let us not receive the money. 4. If they should receive us, we should be glad. 5. We owe him (*lui*) money. 6. We shall owe him something. 7. If they receive it, we shall tell (it to) you. 8. Let him not receive it. 9. We received the money. 10. Sit down. 11. He sits down. 12. They will

sit down. 13. Let us sit down. 14. It was necessary that we should sit down. 15. If we should sit down, would you tell (*raconter*) us a story? 16. Let them not sit down. 17. That does not become him (*lui*). 18. That will not become us. 19. We sit down. 20. The payment falls due. 21. It will be necessary to do it. 22. It is necessary to be there. 23. Passion moves men. 24. Steam and water drive (*mouvoir*) machines.

VIII b

1. His story moved (*émouvoir*) the audience. 2. Such a story must move men. 3. We shall go out if it does not rain. 4. It was raining when we came. 5. It will rain. 6. I did not think it would rain. 7. It has rained. 8. I shall come if I can. 9. I shall come when I can. 10. They cannot go away. 11. I should do so if I could. 12. I wish that he may not be able to do so. 13. I could do that if I were rich. 14. You may do so if you desire. 15. Could (condl.) you not give me some? 16. We know our lesson. 17. Do you know how to do that? 18. That child cannot write; he is too young. 19. I cannot write; I have a sore finger. 20. Do you know that gentleman? 21. I used to know how to swim. 22. Your father must not know that. 23. We knew it. 24. We shall know it to-morrow.

IX a (§§ 223-225)

1. That horse is worth one hundred dollars. 2. Virtue is worth more (*mieux*) than riches. 3. Those houses are worth more (*plus*) than these. 4. That was worth more last year. 5. That will be worth more next year. 6. If that were worth more, I should take it. 7. He has nothing (which is) of value (subj.). 8. We shall not see him again. 9. Do you see him? 10. I saw him. 11. We saw him. 12. If we should see him, we should tell (it to) him. 13. When we see him, we shall speak to him about it. 14. We must see our parents. 15. It was necessary that we should see our children. 16. I have seen him. 17. If we wished to do it, we could do it. 18. You may come when you wish. 19. He will be willing to do

that when he can. 20. Be so good as to sit down. 21. If you will sell your house, I shall buy it. 22. Will you be so kind as to give me some? 23. We do not wish to do that. 24. Should you like to see him? 25. I should like to see him if I could. 26. I could do this if I wished. 27. If it rains, we cannot go out. 28. If they were willing, they could do it. 29. If they are not willing to tell (it to) you, you will not know how to do it.

X a (§§ 227–229)

Qu'est devenu son frère?	What has become of his brother?
Je sais ce qu'il est devenu.	I know what has become of him.
Elle est née.	She was born.
Elle est morte.	She died.
Elle est montée.	She has gone up (<i>or</i> up stairs).

1. Your mother has come, has she not? 2. No, madam, she has not yet come; she will come to-morrow. 3. Our friends have gone to church; let us go (there) too. 4. The old gentleman who lived in that house died last night. 5. (The) Queen Victoria was born (past def.) on the twenty-fourth of May. 6. My little sister was born (past indef.) [on] the tenth of March. 7. How old is your father? 8. He is seventy; he was born before the death of Napoleon. 9. What has become of your brother? 10. He has gone to (*partir pour*) France. 11. When did he go? 12. He went yesterday morning. 13. Is your father out? 14. No, sir, he is in. 15. When did your father return? 16. He has not yet returned; he will return next week. 17. The servant has brought down the trunk. 18. Where is your sister? 19. She has gone down for (art.) breakfast. 20. Where are the children? 21. They have gone up stairs. 22. Why did they not come down when I was there? 23. What is the matter, my child? 24. It was slippery, and I fell. 25. My father has gone into the house. 26. Although he was born rich, he is now poor. 27. He died poor, although he was once rich. 28. I have not seen him to-day; what has become of him? 29. I don't know what has become of him. 30. Have you taken up the gentleman's trunks? 31. Not yet, but I shall take them up immediately.

32. At what time did your sister go out this morning?
 33. She went out at half-past nine. 34. Where is my sister?
 35. She has gone up stairs; she has gone to get her books.

XI a (§ 230)

Si vous vouliez bien me le dire. If you would kindly tell me.
Faites-les entrer. Show them in.

1. We do not wish to leave this country; we should like to remain here, but if we cannot, we shall go away.
2. You ought to go home, (my) children; it is late.
3. We cannot go home; it is dark, and our father told us to (*de*) wait for him.
4. We cannot go away before six o'clock; we are to wait here till our friends come.
5. We could have written the letter if we had known that you desired it.
6. That beggar could have had work if he had wanted it, but he was too lazy; he would not work, and now he must beg.
7. Those children cannot read yet; they are too young.
8. If they had been able to read, they would not have believed all that was said to them.
9. You ought to let them go away, for their father told them that they were to leave before (the) night.
10. You might have seen them if you had been willing to come with me.
11. Our teacher told us that we were to write this exercise.
12. We are to have a house built next year.
13. Their teacher made them write their exercise.
14. We should have a house built if we were rich enough.
15. We said to the innkeeper, "Will you be so kind as to have our horses saddled? We are going to start."
16. Opium makes [us] sleep.
17. It is very warm; if this great heat continues, it will kill the crops.

XII a (§ 230 *continued*)

1. Those children make a great deal of noise; they talk too much; make them be silent.
2. That (little) girl could write if she wished (it).
3. If you would kindly tell me where the doctor lives, I should send for him.
4. Do you know Daudet's *La Belle-Nivernaise*?
5. Oh, yes, it is a charming book; I liked it so much that I had my pupils read it.
6. That is a beautiful picture.
7. Yes, I have just been showing it to your

mother and sister. 8. When did you see my father? 9. I had just been speaking with him when you came. 10. What are you going to do to-morrow? 11. To-morrow we are going to see the *Invalides* and the *Arc de Triomphe*, and the day after to-morrow we are to see *Notre-Dame* and the *Louvre* (m.). 12. We ought to have visited the *Louvre* when you were with us; you could have shown us the fine pictures. 13. May I go with you when you visit (fut.) the *Louvre* next time? I should like to have explained to me some of the beauties of the finest pictures. 14. That gentleman must have been in Paris, for he speaks French like a Parisian. 15. Why did you not make those ladies sit down (§ 245, 2) when they were here? 16. They said they would not stay, because you were out. 17. There are ladies at the door. 18. Very well, show them in. 19. Your son ought to write his exercises. 20. Very well, make him write them. 21. If I had made him study his lessons when he was at school, he would have become a better man.

XIII a (§§ 231–234)

L'un et l'autre viendront. Both will come.

1. The French people are brave and gay; they (*il*) have their (*ses*) defects, but also their good qualities. 2. Few people believe that the earth is not round. 3. Most people believe that the earth will be destroyed. 4. The greater part of his friends abandoned him. 5. Many think that our friends will not succeed. 6. A great number of men were killed. 7. The Swiss people are brave, they (*il*) will always be free. 8. More than one house was burnt. 9. Is it your friends who live in the house on the hill? 10. Yes, it is they; they have lived (§ 257, 2) there for two years. 11. You and he were there, were you not? 12. Yes, he and I were there, and your brother too. 13. Will you and your brother come and see us when you are in London? 14. We shall be very happy to (*de*) visit you. 15. Do you see those two children? Both were born [*on*] the same day. 16. You or I (add: *nous*) shall speak. 17. There happen many misfortunes here below. 18. There arose a great quarrel between them. 19. Who went

for the doctor? 20. It was (pres.) I who went for him. 21. Do you see those two gentlemen? Both have had houses built this year. 22. Religion, truth, honor, all was abandoned. 23. Many think that you will never be able to build your house. 24. If there happened such misfortunes to me, I should leave the country. 25. Were it only a few lines, I should like you to write to me. 26. If you and I were young, fine things would be done (reflex. impers.). 27. Who can have done that, if not our friends? 28. Neither he nor his brother can go away; both must stay.

XIV a (§§ 235–238)

Je voudrais qu'il fût (soit) ici. I wish he were here.

1. Is that book yours (*à vous*) or your brother's?
2. How much did these books cost?
3. I do not know how much they cost.
4. Does that merchant provide you cheap with what you need?
5. What is the matter with that boy this morning?
6. I do not know what is the matter with him.
7. Do I say, or can I say, the half of what he has done?
8. Whatever (§ 407, 1, a) men may do, they cannot escape (*à*) death.
9. What books did your father buy when he was in the city?
10. Your father told me what your brother had done.
11. Your brother told me what he had done.
12. Will you tell me where those men were when you saw them?
13. I cannot tell you where they were.
14. We have more books than that gentleman has.
15. We have more books than you have.
16. Virtue is a beautiful thing, hence we love it.
17. My father is here; perhaps he will come to see you.
18. However good men may be, they are sometimes poor.
19. Such are my reasons for doing so.
20. You have told me that my friend has gone; I did not know (impf.) it, but perhaps you are right.
21. I wish you were here, were it only to encourage us.
22. That man does not respect himself, hence he cannot be good.
23. "Come and see us," said he, "as soon as you can" (fut.).
24. "If I do this," thought he, "I shall be punished; hence I shall not do it."
25. I do not know where that man died.
26. To whom did your friend give his gold watch?
27. I do not

know; perhaps he gave it to his brother. 28. I cannot do (*de*) such things; am I not [an] Englishman? 29. Do I not tell you that I shall be there, and that I shall see you?

XV a (§§ 239–241)

On lui obéit.
Il est obéi.

On me l'a pardonné.

He is obeyed.

I have been pardoned (for) it.

1. America was discovered by Christopher Columbus.
2. The first steamboat was built by Fulton.
3. We have been deceived by that scoundrel.
4. We have been deceived.
5. That gentleman has been mistaken in that affair.
6. Where is that said?
7. Oh, that is said everywhere.
8. Who committed that crime?
9. It was our neighbor's brother.
10. Will he not be punished?
11. No, he has been pardoned for it.
12. I have often seen it done.
13. I have been told that you had it done.
14. Is that not done everywhere?
15. Oh, no, that is never done amongst respectable people.
16. How unfortunate he is! He is a good fellow, but he is deceived and suspected everywhere.
17. How little it is! It can hardly be seen.
18. That man is not a good teacher; he is not obeyed by his pupils.
19. There is a house to be sold.
20. There is an exercise to be done.
21. That beggar was given bread and milk.
22. We were made to read our lesson.
23. That is a man to be feared.
24. They were told that you were not here.
25. Why were we not told that our friends had gone away?

XVI a (§§ 242–247)

- *Elle s'est rappelé ce que j'ai dit.
*Elle s'est souvenue de ce que j'ai dit.
- Je me le rappelle.
Je m'en souviens.
- Je me le rappelle.
Je me souviens de lui.
- Ils se souviennent de moi.
Je m'en sers.
- She remembered what I said.
I remember it.
I remember him.
They remember me.
I use it (I make use of it).

* In *se rappeler*, *se* is indirect, in *se souvenir*, *se* is direct.

Je me passe de vin.

Il s'en passe.

Elle s'est fait mal à la main.

Elle s'est cassé le bras.

Elle s'est tue.

I do without wine.

He does without it.

She (has) hurt her hand.

She has broken her arm.

She became silent.

1. They have not yet gone away; they will remain here till to-morrow.
2. When you are (fut.) in front of Mr. Jackson's (house), be good enough to stop.
3. How have you been this long time?
4. I am always well.
5. How has your mother been since she has been living in Boston?
6. "How unfortunate I am!" she exclaimed, "my friends remember me no longer."
7. When the door opens, we can go in.
8. Where is my book? I cannot do without it.
9. Why do you not make use of that pen?
10. It is not a good pen; I cannot use it.
11. There are some ladies in the parlor; very well, have them sit down, and ask them to wait a little.
12. Why are you crying, my little girl?
13. I have fallen and hurt myself.
14. Did you hurt yourself?
15. I hurt my hand.
16. Why did those ladies not sit down?
17. They would not sit down, because they could not stay.
18. If you wish to use ink and paper, I shall give you some.

XVI b

1. It was very slippery this morning, and my mother, in going down the street, fell and broke her arm.
2. If you cannot do without this book, I shall lend it to you.
3. I can do without it now, but I shall need it next week.
4. Do you remember what was told you last evening?
5. No, I do not remember (it).
6. Did that little girl hurt herself badly when she fell?
7. Yes, she hurt herself very badly; she broke her arm.
8. Have those young ladies written letters to each other?
9. They have written many; they have been writing to each other for two years.
10. I am not well this morning; I hurt my head.
11. Are you using your pen now?
12. No, I am not using it; you may have it if you need it.
13. Do you remember the gentleman who lived in that large house on the hill?
14. Yes, I remember him very well.
15. One cannot

do without money; it is useful everywhere. 16. I remembered what he had said, as soon as I saw him. 17. Be silent, (my) children, you are speaking too loud. 18. As soon as I came, he became silent.

XVII a (§§ 242-247 *continued*)

Comment vous appelez-vous ?	{ What are you called ? What is your name ?
Je m'appelle Jean.	I am called John (my name is John).
Se promener à pied (à cheval).	To take a walk (a ride).
Se promener en voiture (automobile).	To take a drive.
Se promener en bateau (canot).	To take a row <i>or</i> sail.
Elle s'est couchée à dix heures.	She went to bed at ten.
Elle s'est levée à six heures.	She rose at six.
Attendez-moi.	Wait for me.
Elle ne s'y est pas attendue.	She did not expect it.
Le prêtre les a mariés.	The priest (has) married them.
Elle a épousé mon cousin.	
Elle s'est mariée à (<i>or</i> avec) mon cousin.	She (has) married my cousin.
Elle s'est mariée hier.	She was married yesterday.
Il est allé se promener en bateau.	He has gone for a row (<i>or</i> sail).
Allons nous promener.	Let us go for a walk.
Elle s'est endormie.	She fell asleep.
Se connaît-il en tableaux ?	Is he a good judge of pictures ?
Il s'y connaît assez bien.	He is a pretty good judge of them.
Vous ennuyez-vous ici ?	Are you tired of being here ?

1. What is that little boy's name ? 2. His name is Henry.
3. What are you going to do to-day ? 4. We are going to go for a drive.
5. We are not going for a drive; we prefer to go for a walk.
6. Let us go to bed now, and then we shall get up early.
7. Is your brother out ? 8. Yes, he has gone for a drive.
9. While we were out for a drive, we met your brother on horseback.
10. While they were out for a ride, they met us on foot.
11. Let us go for a walk in that beautiful forest.
12. Has he gone for a ride or a walk ? 13. He has gone for a sail.
14. The children went to bed at eight o'clock, and they will get up at six.
15. We shall wait for

him here; he has gone for a walk. 16. That does not surprise me; I was expecting it. 17. I was not expecting to see him there.

XVII b

1. M. Jonnart has married his eldest daughter to a very rich man. 2. Who married them? 3. It was the priest who lived in the little village. 4. My cousin was married yesterday. 5. To whom was she married? 6. She was married to the gentleman who lived here last year. 7. When are you going to get married? 8. I shall never get married. 9. What is the name of the gentleman who married your cousin? 10. If the children had not gone early to bed last night, they would not be able to rise early this morning. 11. That surprises my mother; she was not expecting it. 12. We went to bed, and (we) fell asleep immediately. 13. Are you not a pretty good judge of books? 14. Yes, I am a pretty good judge of them. 15. Is your mother not tired of being here? 16. I think so; I shall ask her to go for a walk with us. 17. Do you ever get tired (of being) in the country? 18. No, I never tire of being there; I love the fields and trees.

XVIII a (§§ 248–253)

Il fait obscur.	}	It is dark.
Il fait noir.		
Il fait nuit.		It is night.
Il se fait tard.		It is getting late.
Il fait jour.		It is day (daylight).
Il fait du soleil.		The sun is shining.
Il fait du brouillard.		It is foggy.
Il fait bon.	}	It is comfortable (pleasant)
On est bien.		
Il tombe de la neige.		It is snowing.
Il fait doux.		It is mild.

1. If the weather is fine, we shall go for a row this afternoon.
2. It was raining this morning, but now the sun is shining.
3. It is not comfortable here; let us go out for a walk.
4. It is getting late; let us go home.
5. It was raining last evening, then it froze, and now it is (*faire* or *être*)

slippery. 6. It is not comfortable in those countries where it is very (*faire beaucoup de*) foggy. 7. It is too windy; we shall not go for a row. 8. It is getting late; the children will have to go to bed. 9. What time is it? 10. I do not know, but it is already daylight. 11. Is it? Well then, we shall have to get up immediately. 12. It had been snowing (§ 258, 4) for two days, and we couldn't go for a drive. 13. It has been raining since yesterday morning, and it will be better to remain here. 14. My sister is very ill; her life is at stake (§ 368, a).

XVIII b

1. We did not enjoy ourselves at all; it was raining all day.
2. If it is very dark this evening, we shall not go to see our friends.
3. Yes, it will be better to stay at home; we can easily amuse ourselves.
4. How long have you been in this city?
5. I came here three years ago.
6. What sort of weather will it be to-morrow?
7. I do not know; I am not a good judge of such things.
8. It has been raining for two days; we are tired of being here.
9. In winter it is generally mild in Italy, but it is often cold in the United States.
10. Those two men are disputing; what is the matter?
11. It is about (*s'agir de*) the price of a horse which one sold to the other.
12. It was very warm yesterday, but it rained in the night, and now it is very comfortable.
13. I think (that) it will rain, but it may be that I am mistaken.
14. We need another house; this one is too small.
15. Their number is far from being complete (§ 251, 5).
16. Letters have come which tell us that there has been a great storm in Canada.
17. How far is it from Paris to Marseilles?
18. People say that it is 863 kilometers.

XIX a (§§ 254–267)

C'est à peine s'il sort à présent.

He hardly ever goes out now.

À peine le soleil fut-il (était-il) levé, qu'on aperçut l'ennemi.

Hardly was the sun up, when the enemy was seen.

Il fait bon marcher.

{ The walking is good.
It is good walking.

1. When that man is working, he will often stop to (*pour*) speak with his companions. 2. How long have you been reading? 3. I have been reading for an hour. 4. It was at your house that we met those gentlemen. 5. We shall be glad if you are there. 6. We shall be glad when you are there. 7. We often used to go for a walk when we lived at your house, but here it is not good walking, so we hardly ever go out now. 8. When we were young, our mother would often tell us fairy stories which interested us very much. 9. We remember them yet, and we hope (that) we shall never forget them. 10. I had been there ten days when he came. 11. He had been reading an hour before his sister rose. 12. He asked me where I came from, and where I was going. 13. I answered him that I came from Montreal, and (that I) was going to Boston. 14. He wrote me a letter saying that he wished to see me. 15. He said in his letter that he had been ill, but that he was better now. 16. When he lived with us, we would often go out for a walk before (art.) breakfast. 17. The eldest of the miller's sons received (§ 260, *a*) the mill, but the youngest received only the cat.

XIX b

1. As soon as he learned that I was to go out for a walk, he wished to go also. 2. If he had seen it, he would have told me (it). 3. When I had finished my lessons, I would always go out for a walk. 4. When he had finished his dinner to-day, he went out. 5. Hardly had he finished his work when his friend came. 6. We do not know whether our friends will come. 7. Our father did not know whether he would come. 8. Why is that work not done? 9. I told my brother to (*de*) do it, but he will not do it. 10. Will you buy my horse? 11. No, I shall not buy him; I do not need him. 12. Good morning, gentlemen, will you walk in? 13. No thank you, we shall not go in. 14. As long as we live, we shall not forget your kindness. 15. As soon as he comes, I shall tell him. 16. We shall do as we please. 17. You may start when you will. 18. He may come when he likes.

XX a (§§ 254-267 *continued*)

1. We shall soon have finished our work. 2. When you have finished your lesson, you may go out for a walk. 3. Everybody should learn the ten commandments. 4. They tell us: Thou shalt not (*point*) have any other gods. 5. Thou shalt not take the name of thy God in vain. 6. Thou shalt not steal (*dérober*). 7. That poor child is very weak; it can hardly walk; it must have been ill. 8. My brother told me that you were not well. 9. You must have made a mistake, for I am very well; I never was better in (*de*) my life. 10. We should be sorry if you should do so. 11. You should be virtuous if you wish to be happy. 12. I told him (*that*) he ought to obey his teacher, but he would not listen to me. 13. Men should love their enemies, but generally they do not. 14. The little boy must have broken that stick; I saw him there. 15. I often used to go to see him when he lived in our city. 16. He says (*that*) it will rain. 17. He said (*that*) it would rain. 18. We cannot go away; it is raining. 19. No matter; I do not fear the rain. 20. How did you enjoy yourself yesterday?

XX b

1. Can it be possible that my father's watch is stolen (use: *en*)? 2. I could do that if I wished. 3. I could do that when I was young. 4. Could you tell me where *le Boulevard des Italiens* is? 5. I could not tell you (*it*); I have not been long in Paris. 6. Can it be true that he has done that? 7. One would say that you are [a] Parisian, you speak French so well. 8. Even if that were true, I should not go. 9. Even if it should not rain, I shall not go for a drive. 10. According to the newspapers, a great quantity of money was stolen (use: *on*). 11. By what he says, his neighbors are poor. 12. When I was in Europe, I saw a horse as big as an elephant. 13. Nonsense! You are joking. 14. Come! Come! (*my*) children, you are making too much noise. 15. Let us go away. 16. Go away. 17. I did not think he would know it. 18. If you will not do it, we shall not do it.

XXI a (§§ 254-267 *continued*)

The two kings *met* (each other) on the 13th of July in a vast plain between Warsaw (*Varsovie*) and Cracow (*Cracovie*). Augustus *had* nearly twenty-four thousand men; Charles *had* only ten thousand. At the first volley, the Duke of Holstein, who *commanded* the Swedish cavalry, *received* a cannon-shot in the back. The king *asked* if he *was* dead; he *was told* (use *on*) that he *was* (*que oui*); he *made* no reply; (some) tears *fell* from his eyes; he (*se*) *hid* his (*le*) face [*for*] a moment with his (*les*) hands; then he *rushed* into the midst of the enemy at the head of his guards.

The king of Poland *did* all that one *should* expect from a prince who *was fighting* for his crown; he himself *brought back* his troops three times to the charge; but he *fought* with his Saxons only; the Poles, who *formed* his right wing, *fled* at the beginning of the battle. Charles *won* a complete victory. He *did not stay* on the field of battle, but (*et*) *marched* direct to Cracow, pursuing the king of Poland, who *kept fleeing* before him.

XXII a (§§ 268-273*)

Je tiens à ce que vous appreniez le latin.	I am (most) anxious that you shall learn Latin.
Nous n'aimerions pas qu'on se moquât de nous.	We should not like to be made sport of.
Il me tarde que cela soit fait.	I am longing for that to be done.
Je voudrais bien que vous le fassiez.	{ I wish you would do it. I should like you to do it.

1. Our teacher said that he wished us to write our exercise.
2. If you wish to go to the city, you may (*pouvoir*) go (there), but if you wish us to go (there), we tell you plainly that we cannot.
3. I wish you to do your work before (the) breakfast.
4. Our friends wish us to stay with them this week.
5. My father is most anxious that I should learn Latin, but I don't like it.
6. Would you prefer that I should go to church this morning?
7. We should not like our friends to be made sport

* The impf. subj. is of limited use in the language of everyday life.

of. 8. You say that you are going to buy a house from (à) that man; take care lest he deceive you. 9. I am longing for my house to be finished. 10. I am anxious that he should come to see us when he visits Boston. 11. My teacher told me that I should write my exercise. 12. My father told me that he had seen you. 13. The law forbids that to be done. 14. These children must stay in; their parents have forbidden them to go out. 15. I shall give orders not to admit them (use *on*). 16. I did not ask that I should be answered (use *on*) before the others. 17. I shall avoid her speaking to me about it.

XXII b

1. The doctor ordered that he should be given no wine. 2. We do not ask that you should pay the money. 3. The rain hinders people (*on*) from going out to-day. 4. I wish you to know that he is my friend. 5. You approve of my coming back, do you not? 6. Yes, I did not wish you to go away. 7. It is better for the children to go to school. 8. What shall I say to that man? He has insulted me. 9. That makes no difference, he is not worthy of being answered (use *on*). 10. The doctor gave orders that my father should go out for a drive every day. 11. He has torn his book; he deserves to be punished (use *on*). 12. I should like you to go for a walk with me. 13. Weakness often hinders good intentions from being fulfilled. 14. I long for his return. 15. There is no more bread; I should like you to go and get some. 16. That man is most anxious that his children should go to school, but he is too poor to (*pour*) buy them books. 17. Take care that the dog does not bite you; he is very cross. 18. That young man is not very amiable; we should not like him to treat us as he has treated his father.

XXIII a (§§ 268-273 *continued*)

1. It is fitting that children should obey their parents. 2. It is good that men should sometimes undergo misfortunes. 3. It may be that he has returned, but I have not seen him. 4. It is natural that we should hate our enemies. 5. It is

getting late; it is time that we should go home. 6. He had to learn French, for he lived in France. 7. We are very glad that you have come. 8. We are very sorry that you did not come. 9. I am surprised that he said so, because he told me that he would not say so. 10. It is a pity that we cannot always be happy. 11. It is a shame for those young men to be so ignorant. 12. It is sad that a man like him should be so poor. 13. I fear he will commit some crime. 14. I am glad you are so well. 15. I am afraid my father is not well enough to (*pour*) go with us. 16. I wonder he did not come last night. 17. I know why he did not come; he was afraid it would rain.

XXIII b

1. -He was not afraid it would rain; he was afraid a certain person would be there whom he did not wish to see. 2. I do not fear he will not go. 3. Are you not afraid he will be able to prevent your intentions from being fulfilled? 4. I doubt whether he will be able to come. 5. I do not deny that I am glad of your ill-fortune. 6. Do you doubt that he is an honest man? 7. Not at all; I know that he is an honest man; I have known him for twenty years. 8. I do not doubt that you will be able to fulfill all your intentions. 9. It seems he has not received [any] of my letters. 10. It cannot be that you are ignorant of his intentions. 11. How is your father? 12. He is very well; he is rarely ill. 13. It seems to me it will be dangerous if we do not follow his advice. 14. That child is afraid you will hurt him. 15. I am glad you did not hurt yourself when you fell. 16. We regret very much that we did not see you when you were in Paris. 17. Are you not afraid that you will tire of being in the country? 18. I am not afraid that I shall tire of being in the country.

XXIV a (§§ 268-273 *continued*)

1. Our neighbor is an honest man; I hope he will succeed.
2. I do not think he will succeed; he has not much ability.
3. We thought he would come to-day.
4. You told me that

you did not think he would go away, did you not? 5. Do you think we must believe what he says? 6. It is probable that we shall go away to-morrow. 7. It is not certain that our friends will come to-morrow. 8. Is it probable that you will go away to-day? 9. We are sure that we saw them yesterday. 10. Are you not sure that you saw them yesterday? 11. Do you think your father will go to France this summer? 12. It is probable he will go there. 13. It is certain that all men will die. 14. Is it certain that our friends will be there this evening? 15. Is it not certain that your neighbor will buy your house? 16. Does he imagine we shall do that merely to (*pour*) please him? 17. We are not sure that will please him.

XXIV b

1. Do you think you will go for a walk this evening? 2. Yes, I think I shall go out with my brother. 3. Give me the book which contains that beautiful story of which you were speaking. 4. Give me a book which contains some beautiful stories. 5. I should like to buy a house which would suit me better than this one. 6. I am looking for a grammar in which I can find better exercises. 7. I have a grammar which has better exercises. 8. Send me some clothes which I can wear in the house. 9. Has he a single friend who is true to him? 10. He has not a single friend who is true to him. 11. There is nobody here who can speak French. 12. I have nothing which is of value. 13. There are no houses here which are as large as those in the city. 14. There are few people here who have learned French. 15. It is the finest thing one can see. 16. That is the largest ship I have ever seen. 17. Whatever you do, you will not be able to persuade me that you are right. 18. Whoever you are, you will have to obey the law, as long as you are in this country.

XXV a (§§ 268-273 *continued*)

Que veut-il dire?

On se fie à lui.

What does he mean?
 { Men trust him.
 He is trusted.

Faites-moi savoir.	Send me word (let me know).
Je ne reçois plus de ses nouvelles.	I never hear from him now.
Il est très occupé.	He is very busy.
Il s'occupe de cela.	He takes an interest in that.

1. I have told him nothing which could influence him. 2. I know no book which pleases me better. 3. I want a house which will suit me better. 4. M. Jonnart is the richest man I know. 5. However good men may be, they do not escape (*à*) misfortune. 6. Let us go out for a walk before your father returns. 7. We rose this morning before the sun rose. 8. Will you not stay here until the weather is warm? 9. Oh, no; we must leave before it begins to be warm. 10. We are going to work until we go to bed. 11. You must always act so that men may respect you. 12. Tell the truth always, so that men may trust you. 13. He insulted me so that I put him out of doors. 14. That gentleman made a speech, but he spoke in such a way that one could not understand him. 15. I did not trust him, for fear that he might deceive me. 16. He passed our house before we had finished our breakfast. 17. I explained it to him, for fear he might not know what you meant.

XXV b

1. I cannot trust you, unless you explain to me what you mean. 2. In case you cannot come, will you be kind enough to send me word. 3. We shall send you our carriage, in case you need it. 4. In case what he says is true, we shall send you word. 5. Although the children have gone to bed, they have not yet gone to sleep. 6. Although you may not like that man, you must confess that he is an honest man. 7. Although we used to be good friends, I never hear from him now. 8. Not that he has forgotten me, but he is so much occupied with his business. 9. Far from his saying that he hates you, I assure you that he will say he loves you. 10. He gave her the money without my knowing it. 11. Even if he had told me that he liked me, I should not have believed it. 12. I cannot go out, without my dog following me. 13. If we are there and see him, we shall tell him what you say. 14. Although he is far

away, I hear from him occasionally. 15. Not that we take no interest in your enterprise, but we are so busy with our own work that we can't think of anything else. 16. We are at the wrong door; would you be kind enough to tell us where we are, so that we can find where our friends live? 17. We shall rise early to-morrow morning, so as to be at the station before our friends start.

XXVI a (§§ 268-273 *continued*)

1. Would to God he were here! 2. Let her be silent if she cannot explain what she wishes. 3. The Frenchmen shout "Hurrah for France!" 4. He doubted whether there is a God. 5. I should like you to write me a letter when you are absent. 6. If his father should say so, he would have to do it. 7. I was most anxious that he should succeed in his enterprise. 8. We were not willing that you should go away without our seeing you. 9. His father gave orders that he should be taken to school. 10. The doctor forbade that the patient should go for a walk. 11. I was longing for that to be done. 12. He would not permit it to be done. 13. The rain hindered us all day from going out. 14. It was necessary that we should go away before the others came. 15. It was better that we should be here without their knowing it. 16. I was afraid that he had said too much. 17. I doubted whether he would be able to pay that price. 18. I was very sorry that we had not been able to go for a walk together; I am sure we should have enjoyed ourselves.

XXVI b

1. Our friends were glad that you had visited them before they left for France. 2. He told me he would go away unless he succeeded better. 3. We did not say you should write the letter; you may do as you wish. 4. Did you fear he would go away without coming to see you? 5. My father thought you would come, but my mother thought you would not come. 6. It was impossible that he should not be mistaken; he trusts those who are not worthy of confidence. 7. We are not sure

they will come. 8. We waited until they came. 9. We have taken care that they should not see us. 10. No man has ever lived who could equal him in prudence. 11. He was the noblest man I have ever known. 12. I left Russia when I was a boy; I sought a country where I might be more free. 13. Did he ever have a friend who was faithful to him? 14. Show me a house which will suit me better than this one. 15. I have never seen anything which suited me better. 16. Why did your father come? 17. He came in case I should be ill. 18. Although he was very ill, he would not go home.

XXVII a (§§ 274-275)

Je lui ai dit son fait.

I (have) told him what I thought of him.

Nous nous plaisons à la ville.

We like it (like to be) in the city.

Il se plaît à la campagne.

He likes it (likes to be) in the country.

Qu'il fasse beau, ou qu'il pleuve. } Whether it is fine, or whether it
S'il fait beau, ou qu'il pleuve. } rains.

Quand même ce serait vrai.

{ Even if it were true.
 Even were it true.

Il s'en plaint.

He complains of it.

1. If it does not rain, will you go for a walk to-morrow morning?
2. No, even if it should not rain, I must go down town to-morrow morning on business.
3. If it were to rain to-day, we should not go down town.
4. If I had known that you were in town, I should have gone to see you.
5. Had it not been so warm to-day, I should have gone away.
6. If the Germans had not taken Alsace, the French would not have hated them so much.
7. If I come here next year, I shall bring my brother with me.
8. If I were you, I should tell him what I think of him.
9. If I am present when he arrives, I shall tell him what I told you.
10. If it is cold in winter, we go to (*en*) Florida; if it is mild, we remain in (*dans*) the north.
11. If my father likes it in the country, he will stay there till (*the*) autumn.
12. If I should like it in the city, I shall stay there always.
13. I can never trust that boy; if he should tell me anything, I should not believe him.

14. Whether it rains or is fine, we shall come. 15. He is a good (*brave*) man, if there ever was one. 16. If that man were as rich as Crœsus, he would not be satisfied. 17. See what that man has done to me! He is a scoundrel, if there ever was one.

XXVII b

1. If I should go to sleep before you come, be good enough to wake me. 2. Will you not go down town with me? 3. I cannot go, I am not well; if I were better, I should go willingly. 4. If he had risen at six o'clock, he would not have missed the train. 5. Yes, he would (*si! si!*). He would have been late, even if he had risen at half-past five, for the train left at a quarter past five. 6. I have been told that your friend has offended you; is it true? 7. No, but even if it were true, I should pardon (it to) him. 8. Did our friend tell you last evening whether he was coming to-morrow? 9. Yes, he told me that he would come. 10. That man told me that he had a thousand dollars. 11. Were he to swear it on his honor, I should not believe it. 12. If you meet him, and he should ask you where I am, do not tell (it to) him. 13. Whether he comes or not, (that) makes no difference to me. 14. If I were he, I should tell that scoundrel what I thought of him. 15. If we liked it in the country, we should stay there. 16. If he had insulted me like that, I should have kicked him out. 17. Even were you to hate me, I should not complain (of it). 18. I should have liked it in the country if it had not rained without cease (*sans cesse*).

XXVIII a (§§ 276-285)

<i>Je vais faire</i>	{ <i>une promenade.</i> <i>un tour de promenade.</i> } I am going for a walk.
<i>Je voudrais le faire.</i>	I should like to do it.
<i>Je voudrais qu'il le fasse (fit).</i>	{ I should like him to do it. I wish him to do it.
<i>Il fait beau marcher (se promener).</i>	The walking is good. It is good walking.
<i>Vous avez beau dire (parler).</i>	{ It is useless for you to speak. You may say what you like.

J'ai cru voir passer quelqu'un.	I thought I saw some one go by.
Je les ai écoutés chanter.	I listened to them sing(ing).
Il a pensé mourir.	He was near dying.
Je pense (songe) à le faire.	I am thinking about doing it.
Il ne fait que de venir (arriver).	He has just come.
Il veut faire à sa tête.	He will have his own way.
J'aimerais autant m'en aller.	I would as soon go.
Faites-le monter.	Send (show) him up (stairs).

1. Let us go for a walk this morning; the walking is good, and it is cool. 2. Living is always dear in Paris. 3. Are the children coming? 4. Yes, I saw them coming when I was on the hill. 5. I should like to speak to the doctor when he comes. 6. I should like you to speak to my father when you see him. 7. When do you expect to be there? 8. I expect to be there in a fortnight. 9. He might say what he liked, nobody would believe him. 10. It was useless for us to speak, nobody would listen to us. 11. I like better to live in the country than in the city. 12. My friends have left me, and I know not what to do. 13. I think it is going to be warm to-day. 14. My father thought he heard some one go by, but I think he was mistaken. 15. My father was very ill last year; he was near dying. 16. My brother's little boy fell into the water, and was near being drowned. 17. I was thinking about going to see you.

XXVIII b

1. I hope I shall see you when you come. 2. I hope he will come to see me when he is here. 3. Did you see my sister at the ball? 4. I thought I saw her, but I am not sure (of it). 5. I am thinking about writing him a letter, but I do not like writing letters, and so I delay (it) from week to week. 6. I should like better to go than to stay. 7. It would be better to go than to stay. 8. Come and see us whenever you wish. 9. My master has just come; after he has dined I shall tell him that you are here. 10. I hope I shall be able to go for a walk with you to-morrow. 11. I hope you will not go away before I have seen you. 12. We ought to go and see your father before he leaves. 13. It is useless for you to say any-

thing; he will have his own way. 14. You may say what you like; young people will have their own way. 15. I would as soon go as stay. 16. I am not very well this morning; I am going to send for the doctor. 17. The doctor has just come; shall I send him up? 18. We thought we heard some one go by, but we must have been mistaken.

XXIX a (§§ 276-285 *continued*)

Il est à travailler.	He is busy working.
J'y suis accoutumé.	I am used to it.
Il finira mal.	He will come to a bad end.
Se plaît à mal faire.	To delight in evil- (wrong-) doing.
Il tarde à venir.	He is long in coming.
Tenez-vous (beaucoup) à y aller?	Are you (very) anxious to go there?
Je n'y tiens pas.	I am not anxious (for it).

1. Continue reading until you are called.
2. We are busy writing our exercises.
3. I have my work to do.
4. Our teacher taught us to do that.
5. Will you help me to do my work?
6. I should like to help you, but I have work to do also.
7. I have difficulty in believing that he has done that.
8. How old is that child?
9. He is two years old; he is beginning to talk.
10. The servant is busy washing dishes in the kitchen.
11. We are occupied to-day in writing to our friends.
12. He spends his time in reading novels.
13. He is not lazy; he sets about writing his lesson as soon as his teacher tells (it to) him.
14. Do you not get tired (in) reading those difficult works?
15. A little, but I am rather used to it.
16. He lost a great deal in selling his house.
17. That boy persists in reading bad books; he will come to a bad end.
18. The wicked delight in evil-doing.

XXIX b

1. Our friends invited us to stay with them.
2. I should like to know where my mother is; she is long in coming.
3. I wish she would come; I long to see her.
4. Are you anxious to have it to-day?
5. Oh no, I am not anxious for that; but I must have it to-morrow.
6. Are those apples good to eat?

7. We are looking for a maid of all work. 8. That young lady sings and dances charmingly. 9. There are five bedrooms in that house. 10. That poor little girl has hurt her hand; she is crying pitifully. 11. Our neighbor has died; his family is to be pitied. 12. That young man seems to delight in wrong-doing. 13. Are you not very anxious to see your friends? 14. Yes, I should like to see them; I have not seen them for a long time. 15. That is very difficult to do; I should like you to help me. 16. I am always ready to help you. 17. I am glad to know that you are not the only one to say so. 18. That scoundrel did not succeed in deceiving us.

XXX a (§§ 276-285 *continued*)

Il fait semblant de dormir.	He pretends to be asleep.
Bien faire, mal faire.	To do well, to do evil (wrong).
Faire le bien, faire le mal.	
Attention!	Look out! Be careful!

1. Our teacher tells us that it is easy to read that book. 2. I am ashamed to say that we are mistaken. 3. He pretends to be asleep. 4. She pretends to be reading. 5. It is difficult to say whether we are right or wrong. 6. He is wrong to believe that we are his enemies. 7. Will you permit me to go to bed? 8. Promise us not to go away without telling us (it). 9. I am very glad to say that I shall be able to come and see you at once. 10. We are sorry to tell you that we cannot come. 11. Cease to do evil; learn to do well. 12. Hasten to finish your work before leaving. 13. Let us hasten to leave, or we shall be late. 14. I am afraid to speak, although I know it is my place to tell them that they have done wrong. 15. He commenced by telling me that he was a rich man's son, and he finished by asking me to lend him five dollars. 16. Be careful! Don't fall! 17. If you should happen to see him, tell him that I shall not go away before seeing him. 18. I have just seen him, and he told me to tell you that he would come to-morrow. 19. Although he promised me to stop reading such books, he only deceived me. 20. He pretends to be good, but he knows (that) he is not (it).

XXX b

1. We (*on*) should not live to eat.
2. It is too cold to go for a walk.
3. It is not cool enough to go for a walk.
4. I rose early this morning in order to be able to do my work before going down town.
5. We learn French in order to be able to read French books.
6. After writing our exercises we went for a walk.
7. That little boy was punished for having lied.
8. That young girl is much to be pitied; her father and mother are dead.
9. Before going we should like to see you.
10. We should like to see you before you go.
11. We saw those houses being built.
12. He did that without telling us (*it*).
13. We went away without his seeing us.
14. It was very windy, and we would not go out for a sail for fear of being drowned.
15. Although he made me many compliments at first, he finally insulted me.
16. Your father has just come; shall I tell him to wait here, or should you like to see him at once?
17. I have not time to see him now; I shall try to see him to-morrow.
18. We cannot hinder him from doing so.

XXXI a (§§ 286-287)

<i>Cette femme me fait pitié.</i>	I am sorry for that woman.
<i>Il s'est fâché contre moi.</i>	He got angry with me.
<i>Être bien portant.</i>	To be well.

1. Knowing so many things, those gentlemen must be very learned.
2. The field of battle was covered with the dead and dying.
3. I am sorry for that poor woman; she is always ill.
4. In neglecting her duties, she shows herself careless.
5. Their misfortunes went on increasing from day to day.
6. Don't you see them coming?
7. Yes; there they come!
8. Man is the only speaking creature.
9. Frenchmen will say (pres.) that, generally speaking, Frenchmen are better than Englishmen.
10. How happy those peasants are! They are always singing their beautiful songs as they work.
11. One's appetite comes while eating; "but," said the Gascon, "I have been eating two hours, and it has not come yet."
12. I like reading, but I prefer hunting and fishing.
13. Where are the children?

14. There they are, playing under the trees. 15. Our neighbor's son has made astonishing progress at (the) college. 16. The sewing-machine is an American invention, but there are many of them in Europe now. 17. Our friends were very much astonished at our coming; they thought we were in Europe.

XXXI b

1. As we were taking a walk this morning, we met the old gentleman who used to live next door. 2. Our neighbors are speaking of going away, but I do not think they will. 3. That young man went away without saying good-bye; he must have got angry with me. 4. That prince has powerful enemies. 5. That lady, being ill, has not come to-day. 6. Those children, having finished their work, have gone out. 7. Those so-called learned men, who really know nothing, are very tiresome. 8. Who is that man going past? 9. That is the would-be nobleman. 10. That country has the most powerful fleet in the world. 11. That little girl, having been ill, cannot go to school. 12. Our friends, being tired, have gone to bed. 13. Seriously speaking, that young man is not worthy of being respected. 14. Those children appear to be well. 15. If the population of the towns goes on increasing, and that of the country diminishing, we shall probably have great misfortunes. 16. I saw him coming down the street before I met you. 17. While traveling, I saw many astonishing things. 18. Did you not see my brothers going out?

XXXII a (§§ 288-292)

Elle s'y est plu.	She liked it there.
Vous êtes-vous bien amusé?	Did you have a good time?
Elles se sont donné la main.	They have shaken hands.
Elles se sont brouillées.	They have fallen out.
Les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait.	The great heat that there has been.

1. That is the old lady whom I saw fall in the street yesterday. 2. She fell in front of Mr. Simon's, but she did not hurt herself much. 3. Our friends have gone away, but they will

come back to-morrow. 4. Your mother has been in the country; did she like it there? 5. She enjoyed herself (there) very much; she intends to go back again soon. 6. Your sister and mother have come. 7. You will find inclosed [a] copy of the contract which we have signed. 8. The ten hours that he has slept have not been enough to rest him. 9. The children had a good time to-day at the picnic. 10. Where is the servant? 11. I have let her go to see her friends. 12. Those are the three miles that I ran to (*pour*) fetch the doctor. 13. Those are the dangers we have incurred to save our country. 14. She remembered the dangers I had incurred. 15. Did those two ladies shake hands? 16. No; they did not even look at each other. 17. Those ladies have written each other many letters. 18. There are the letters I wrote.

XXXII b

1. Those young ladies have fallen out, and have burnt the letters they wrote to each other. 2. They have said good-bye to each other. 3. They have lost what they have given each other. 4. The great heat that there has been has killed the crops. 5. The person I asked (*prier*) to sing will not sing. 6. What difficulty we have had to remember what you told us! 7. The crops are poor this year; the great heat has killed them. 8. That is the house which we had built. 9. How many houses they have built! 10. How many beautiful houses they have had built! 11. That is the lady we heard sing at the concert last evening. 12. Those are the children we saw playing this morning. 13. Those are the beautiful songs we heard sung at the concert. 14. Do you remember the houses we saw being built last year? 15. There is a letter which I forgot to put in the post. 16. He has read all the books he could. 17. There are the books we sent for. 18. We have told them to go out. 19. Those are the books which I thought he would read. 20. The doors were kept closed while the festivities were held. 21. What a fine day it was! 22. The more people arrived, the better the king enjoyed himself. 23. The generals (that) he sent for were all there.

XXXIII a (§§ 293-299)

Il se croit honnête homme.	He thinks he is an honest man.
Il ne s'en est pas aperçu.	He did not notice it.
Ce chapeau ne lui va pas.	That hat does not fit him.
Il n' (ne nous) est pas permis de ...	We are not permitted to ...
Je le lui ai payé.	I paid him for it.
Je l'en ai remercié.	I thanked him for it.
Je pense à vous.	I am thinking of you.
Que pensez-vous de cela ?	What do you think of that ?

1. We shall make them do their work. 2. They (*on*) have made her suffer great ills. 3. Show them upstairs when they come. 4. I have seen the children play. 5. We have seen him play that part. 6. He was born [a] poet. 7. He has become [a] soldier. 8. What will become of us ! 9. I believe he is an honest man. 10. He thinks he is [a] scholar. 11. I know he is [a] scholar. 12. We should not slander our neighbors. 13. I perceived their dejection as soon as I came in. 14. I did not notice it. 15. We cannot do without our books; we are going to use them to-morrow. 16. I remember the sorrows you made me undergo. 17. These gloves do not fit me. 18. That young lady's gloves do not fit her. 19. I shall look for a house which suits me better (see § 270, 1). 20. That house does not suit our friends. 21. I cannot trust him; he often lies. 22. The son resembles his father. 23. We are not permitted to leave the city. 24. The law does not permit children to marry. 25. The king pardons him his crime.

XXXIII b

1. Did you pay the tailor for your coat ? 2. I have not paid him for it yet. 3. What are you looking at ? 4. I am looking at those men working in the field. 5. Wait for me till I come. 6. I think of my friends who have gone away. 7. Do you think of the money you have lost ? 8. I do not. 9. Shall you be at the ball this evening ? 10. I do not know; that depends on you. 11. Did you thank him for having lent you his book ? 12. I did. 13. He stole that watch from his father; what do you think of that ? 14. He is laughing at us.

15. Those men were playing cards. 16. Those young ladies play on the violin. 17. You believe me, do you not? 18. Yes, I believe you. 19. That old lady believes in ghosts. 20. He loves and obeys his parents. 21. He missed the train, did he not? 22. I am short of money this morning; I cannot pay you. 23. He fails in his duty when he does not pay his debts. 24. Have you asked your father for money? 25. I have not asked him for any.

XXXIV a (§§ 300-306)

1. Tell the servant to put the frying-pan on the stove.
2. That man is a regular dupe.
3. He is not a friend; he is a mere acquaintance.
4. He was received with all the honors.
5. That poet is always singing of his first love.
6. The errors of men are numerous.
7. The old man has (*faire*) a nap after dinner.
8. He paid me a large sum of money.
9. My memory is not good; give me a memorandum of that affair.
10. Steam makes the steamer go.
11. That man and his wife make a happy couple.
12. I have Hugo's works at home.
13. The works of the sculptor Barye were exhibited in Paris in 1889.
14. Old people are generally less thoughtless than young people.
15. Those people are not all good.
16. All those people were present.
17. All good people are worthy of respect.
18. All the clever people in (*de*) the town were present at the ball.
19. Happy [are] the people who do not love vice.
20. All the young men of the village were present at the celebration.

XXXV a (§§ 307-314)

Tomber à genoux.	To fall on one's knees.
Cela ne vaut rien.	That is useless.
Le petit bonhomme.	The brave little fellow.

1. That man has broken his two arms.
2. The 'ifs' and the 'buts' are often convenient words.
3. The criminal fell on his knees before the king.
4. That little boy likes to pick up pebbles.
5. The generals have good horses.
6. We read the newspapers before going down town [in] the morning.

7. Frenchmen like carnivals and balls. 8. Our neighbor has some beautiful corals at home. 9. The Minister of Public Works ordered railways to be constructed. 10. His grandfathers are dead. 11. Our ancestors were great men who left [behind them] many noble works. 12. The poor boy had tears in his (*aux*) eyes when he was told that his bird was dead. 13. That painter makes beautiful skies. 14. Several Te Deums were sung this year in that church. 15. Give me two postage stamps, if you please. 16. We had some delightful private interviews. 17. Those corkscrews are useless. 18. Those lamp shades are very pretty. 19. Give me a toothpick, if you please. 20. Do not condemn me on rumors. 21. The two Corneilles were dramatic authors. 22. All the Ribots were present. 23. I have two Molières at home. 24. The Bourbons have been very unfortunate; I pity them. 25. I saw the school-boys marching yesterday; the brave little fellows were really fine-looking. 26. The noblemen of France have suffered much during this century. 27. There are two gentlemen and two ladies waiting for you. 28. Good morning, ladies; how do you do? 29. I have visited all the county towns of that part of France. 30. Many of Molière's works are masterpieces.

XXXVI a (§§ 315–335)

1. He showed remarkable courage in struggling with his difficulties. 2. We used to enjoy good health when we lived in France. 3. Do you not like music? 4. I do, when it is good. 5. Gold and silver are abundant in that country. 6. The rich have much gold and silver. 7. Does that young lady know Greek? 8. She does not, but she knows French and German well. 9. Does your mother speak French? 10. Yes, she speaks French and German well. 11. We have French and German books in our library. 12. Have you any good sugar for sale, sir? 13. Have you any of my books in your library? 14. Have you any of the good wine you bought last year? 15. We have no pens and no paper. 16. They have no more money, and so they must stay at home. 17. That is not wine; it is water. 18. It is not

money I ask you for, but friendship. 19. Why do you complain; have you not friends? 20. I should like to buy a pound of tea; have you any of the good tea which you ordered from China?

XXXVI b

1. I shall give you something good if you come to see me.
2. He promised me something very beautiful, but he never gave it to me.
3. Many people believe that he will come to a bad end.
4. Many others believe that he will succeed well.
5. Most people are ignorant of their true interests.
6. We were absent most of the time.
7. Silk dresses and gold watches are not always necessary.
8. Horses are animals which are useful to men.
9. Queen Victoria had then been reigning a long time.
10. The President of the French Republic has signed the treaty.
11. King Louis XIV is often called the Great.
12. That old man has a long beard.
13. Give me your hand, and I shall help you to rise.
14. We shook hands before we parted.
15. She has not taken off her hat and gloves; she says she cannot stay.
16. I have toothache and earache, so I cannot go out.
17. That little girl has blue eyes and blond hair.
18. I had my hair cut before starting.
19. What is the matter with you, my little boy?
20. My hands and feet are cold.

XXXVII a (§§ 315-335 *continued*)

Combien les avez-vous payés?	How much did you pay for them?
Je les ai payés dix francs la douzaine.	I paid ten francs a dozen for them.
Il part pour la France.	He is starting for France.
Dans le nord de la France.	In the north of France.

1. You have some very fine pears; how much did you pay for them?
2. I paid two cents apiece for them.
3. That is not dear; I thought that pears would not sell so cheap this year.
4. Carpenters are earning fifteen francs a day at present.
5. We do not go to school on Thursdays.
6. He will come on Saturday.
7. You were wrong to come on Wednesday; you

should always come on Thursday. 8. Did I step on your toe? I ask your pardon. 9. Are you going on horseback or on foot? 10. How we love spring! 11. In spring nature awakes from its long repose. 12. In winter there is sometimes much snow in France. 13. Those gentlemen are Frenchmen. 14. Our neighbor is a carpenter. 15. His son has become a distinguished physician. 16. Charles the First, King of England, was beheaded. 17. She was born at Marseilles, a city of Southern France.

XXXVII b

1. We were without friends and money. 2. Those children have neither father nor mother. 3. He will come home at Michaelmas. 4. Those ladies dress in French style. 5. Have you ever read Tasso's great poem? 6. Yes, and Ariosto's also. 7. We are to start for Europe to-morrow. 8. Normandy is a province of France.. 9. Did you ever live in Paris? 10. Yes, I lived a long time in France, and in England too. 11. My brother has lived in China, but he is living now in Japan. 12. The United States is the most important country in North America. 13. Havre is an important seaport of the north of France. 14. New Orleans is a large city of the United States. 15. French wines are celebrated in all parts of the world. 16. That traveler comes from Africa, and is going to South America. 17. My cousin is in (*à*) Madagascar. 18. Ladies, you are welcome; we are always glad to receive you. 19. Our neighbor goes to the city every other day.

XXXVIII a (§§ 336-358)

1. That little boy's grandmother has given him a knife. 2. That little girl is very foolish. 3. I know those old ladies well; they are our old neighbors. 4. What a fine-looking man! Do you know him? 5. There are some beautiful trees! 6. The prince addressed him most flattering words. 7. That statesman is celebrated for (*par*) his liberal principles. 8. There are, according to Catholic doctrine, seven capital sins. 9. The man and his wife were both old. 10. The

French and Italian nations are often called Latin nations.
 11. Those flowers smell sweet, do they not? 12. That large building is the school for (*de*) deaf-mutes. 13. He left the door wide open when he went out this morning. 14. The newly married couple had just left the church. 15. My mother had blue eyes and light auburn hair. 16. When I was young, I used to go barefoot to school.

XXXVIII b

1. That lady looks kind. 2. A pound sterling is worth twenty-five francs. 3. He is getting richer and richer. 4. He is richer than people (*on*) believe. 5. The older one is, the wiser one should be. 6. My brother is older than I by (*de*) four years. 7. The richer one part of the population becomes, the poorer the rest often become. 8. Your house is small, but ours is smaller still. 9. That man is bad, but his brother is still worse. 10. The dearer, those articles are, the less of them we shall be able to buy. 11. Our house is good, but yours is better. 12. His most intimate friends knew nothing of his good fortune. 13. Men are often the most unhappy when they ought to be the most happy. 14. Is that not a splendid sight? 15. Yes, it is most beautiful! 16. The richest men in the world are not always the happiest. 17. She is shorter than I by three inches.

XXXIX a (§§ 336-358 *continued*)

1. You are all welcome, ladies; how kind you are to (*de*) come to see me! 2. What a pretty little girl! What is her name? 3. There were black horses and white ones in the procession. 4. Will you give me some cold water to (*pour*) drink? 5. Whose is that broken cane? 6. Our neighbor is not an educated man. 7. Our friends live in a beautiful white house behind the town. 8. The English language is spoken in all parts of the world. 9. I have just seen that pretended nobleman go by. 10. We have just been at a political meeting, where we listened to a very long speech. 11. My dear child, you are too young to (§ 282, 2) wear dear

dresses ! 12. I love that gentleman; he is so kind to children. 13. Are you not ready to start ? You are very slow in dressing. 14. I am very glad to see you; when are you coming to see me ? 15. I am very sorry to say that I have no time to visit you before I go away. 16. We are charmed with the beautiful present you gave (*faire*) us. 17. You are not angry with me, are you ? 18. I do not like that man; he is too severe with his children. 19. That is a nice little girl; she is so polite to everybody. 20. That little boy is very clever at history and arithmetic. 21. That army is weak in numbers (*en nombre*). 22. We must be charitable to everybody. 23. Living languages are more useful than dead languages. 24. We must not confound the verbal adjectives with the present participles. 25. That young man is the living image of his father. 26. The more learned that man becomes, the less generous he becomes.

XL a (§§ 359-373)

1. Are there any good pens in the box ? 2. There are none.
3. Do you know that old man ? 4. I know him and his brother.
5. Do you know that man and his wife ? 6. We know both him and her.
7. We know him only. 8. Did you see my father and mother ? 9. We saw her only.
10. Are you going to give them some money ? 11. I have already given them some.
12. Will you give me some apples ? 13. I shall give you and him some.
14. Have you spoken to my cousin of your plan ? 15. I have spoken of it to her and her mother.
16. Will you have the goodness to introduce us to your mother ? 17. I shall have great pleasure in introducing you to her.
18. I was thinking of you when you came in.
19. Do you think of me when I am far away ? 20. Yes, I always think of you.
21. Whose is that house ? 22. It is mine.
23. As soon as the child saw his mother, he ran to her.
24. Are you that young man's sister ? 25. I am.

XL b

1. Are you satisfied, madam ? 2. I am.
3. Are you an American, sir ? 4. I am.
5. Are you the gentlemen we met

yesterday? 6. We are. 7. I shall go for the doctor if you wish. 8. I shall do the work if it is necessary. 9. That man is richer than we are. 10. Why do you tell me to be brave? I am so already. 11. He carried the day over all his rivals. 12. Tell me where he lives, if you know. 13. He is a Frenchman, and I am one (*le*) too. 14. Do you know the Robinsons? 15. Yes, they are very fastidious people, and I do not like to have [anything] to do with them. 16. There is the box; put the pens into it. 17. Go there, my child; do not stay here. 18. Do not go there, my daughter; you will hurt yourself. 19. Give them some, my little boy. 20. He is a bad man; I cannot trust him. 21. The earth about those flowers is dry; throw some water there, my daughter. 22. Let us not go away; let them laugh at us, if they will. 23. The children wish to go to the celebration; let us take them there. 24. That boy has apples and pears; let us ask him for some. 25. The boy has your knife; take it away from him.

XLI a (§§ 359–373 *continued*)

1. My father did not hurt himself, but he had a narrow escape. 2. Every one for himself is too often the maxim of men. 3. One should not always be thinking of oneself. 4. The selfish live only for themselves. 5. Do you need money? 6. I do. 7. Do you come from London? 8. We do. 9. I cannot understand why he has a grudge against me. 10. However that may be, it is all over with him. 11. Have you any money? 12. I have, but I should like to have more. 13. How many apples have you? 14. I have six. 15. Here are some fine pears; do you wish any? 16. Yes, I should like some, for I have none. 17. Switzerland is my country; I love its blue sky and free institutions. 18. I planted this apple tree; I hope I shall eat its fruit. 19. Do you ever think of your country when you are in foreign countries? 20. When I am far away, I always think of it. 21. My brother has gone home, and I am going too. 22. I see a crowd of people in the street; what is the matter? 23. Were you ever in Europe? 24. I never was.

XLI b

1. The doctor is at home; shall I send for him? 2. There they are; go and get them.
3. There is some water; give us some, for we are thirsty.
4. Do not give them any; they do not need any.
5. Where are the children?
6. They are coming up the street.
7. Do not listen to them; they are making sport of you.
8. There is my hat; give it to me, if you please.
9. That is my hat; do not give it to him.
10. Let us go away; it is getting late.
11. If you have any money, give me some.
12. He gives himself some, but he will not give us any.
13. Take us there.
14. Give it to us; do not give it to them.
15. You bother me, naughty dog. Go away.
16. I saw him, and gave him the money.
17. They are worthy people; I love and admire them.
18. Our duty to our parents is to love and obey them.
19. It is I who was there.
20. My father and I were not there.
21. What were you and he doing?
22. He was writing, and I was reading.
23. He has a house of his own.
24. You and he were there, were you not?
25. There is the box; I should like to know whether there is anything in it.

XLII a (§§ 374-377)

On lui a coupé un bras.	They cut off one of his arms.
Se couper à la main.	To cut one's hand.
Elle lui a fermé la porte au nez.	She shut the door in his face.
Cela lui a fait venir l'eau à la bouche.	That made his mouth water.
Cette nuit; de toute la nuit.	Last night; all night.

1. My father and yours will soon be here.
2. I have your books and my own.
3. Our friends are coming by the railway; yours are coming by the steamer.
4. My brother and sister have gone away; they will not be back till (*avant*) Wednesday next.
5. One should not fail to (*de*) pay one's debts.
6. I had my hair cut this morning; I am afraid I shall catch a cold.
7. The duke was presented to the queen, and he kissed her hand.
8. She has cut her finger.
9. I shall love him as long as my heart beats.
10. It was so warm that I

could not close my eyes (*de*) all night. 11. Close your eyes, and open your mouth. 12. He shuts his eyes to the light. 13. He was walking [with] his eyes closed; he fell and broke his arm. 14. I have my hands full; I cannot help you. 15. I went to see him, but he shut the door in my face. 16. It is a very cold morning; will you not warm your hands? 17. Thank you; my hands are not cold. 18. That clumsy fellow stepped on my toe, and he hurt me very much.

XLII b

1. My head aches this morning; I did not close my eyes last night. 2. The sight of those beautiful apples made my mouth water. 3. He stood there [with] his arms folded, awaiting his fate like a brave soldier. 4. As long as my heart beats, I shall never forget you. 5. If they come here, we shall shut the door in their face. 6. Did you see those poor children? Those beautiful pears made their mouths water. 7. Let us hope that the law has not lost its force in this country. 8. He has a watch of his own. 9. Whom do you mean; his father or her father? 10. I mean *her* father. 11. This house is his, not yours. 12. They lost their lives fighting for their (*la*) country. 13. Negroes have dark skins and large mouths. 14. One of my friends who is a doctor told me the following story. 15. I am going to take away these books of yours. 16. The difference between mine and thine is not always easy to determine. 17. I love very much these books of mine. 18. They cut off my finger.

XLIII a (§§ 378–388)

1. I have never read that book, but I have read this one, and I like it very much. 2. These houses are not so fine as those. 3. You should not eat in that way. 4. Have patience, I shall be (pres.) there this moment. 5. Those who do wrong will be punished. 6. He of whom you were speaking yesterday has arrived. 7. Which (*Lequel*) of those horses do you like best? 8. I like the one you bought better than your brother's, but I like my own best. 9. This house and the one

in which our neighbors live will be sold to-morrow. 10. Our house and our neighbor's are both (*en*) brick [houses]. 11. These facts, and those discovered since that time, prove that, although he was a great scholar, he was wrong. 12. I saw the man (*celui*) last evening who wanted to buy my horse. 13. Who are those two gentlemen? 14. This is Mr. Perrichon, and that is Mr. Poirier. 15. You are looking for apples; very well, will you take these or those? 16. I will take these; those are too small. 17. How (*Combien*) is butter selling to-day?

XLIII b

1. That sells at two francs a pound, and this, which is finer, at two francs fifty centimes.
2. Gambetta and Hugo were distinguished men; the former was an orator, the latter a poet.
3. That is a fine horse! How much is he worth?
4. Why do these people not reply when we speak to them?
5. They are Russians; they do not understand you.
6. Who did that?
7. It was John who did it.
8. What time is it?
9. It is half-past ten.
10. What day of the month is it?
11. To-day is the tenth.
12. Is that the house of which you spoke to me?
13. No, it is the next one.
14. Who is that lady?
15. She is the lady who lives next door.
16. What I fear is that he will never come back.
17. It is not that he is losing (§ 271, 5) his money, but he is destroying his health also.
18. It is time to go home.

XLIV a (§§ 378-388 *continued*)

C'est une belle chose que de protéger les faibles. It is a fine thing to protect the weak.

Ce sont des qualités nécessaires pour régner que la douceur et la fermeté. Mildness and firmness are necessary qualities for ruling.

Il a cela de bon. He has this good thing about him.

1. It is they who have done it.
2. It was kind of you to help (*secourir*) those poor people.
3. You can do it; it is easy.
4. That was not kind of you; you should have allowed me to do it.
5. You are rich; it is easy for you to say so.

6. It is a pity that we did not know it sooner. 7. It is unfortunate that he did not come yesterday. 8. My father told me you were here; that is why I came. 9. It is to be feared that the traveler has died of hunger. 10. It is to be desired that those misfortunes will never happen. 11. What we were speaking of has happened. 12. What I am thinking of is the way of preventing that misfortune. 13. What he says is true. 14. It's a fine thing, (is) money! 15. It is not to you that I speak. 16. He has lost all his money, which is sad.

XLIV b

1. What a beautiful thing is virtue! 2. It is money that he wishes. 3. He is a fine (*brave*) young man (is) John! 4. It would be a good thing to go away. 5. It is a fine thing to love virtue. 6. Health and good sense are qualities necessary for succeeding in the world. 7. You are the one who did that. 8. Love is the strongest of all passions. 9. This does not belong to me, but that does. 10. Give me this; keep that for yourself. 11. He has this good thing about him, that he always tells the truth. 12. What a lazy beast; and yet he thinks that he works! 13. Did he give you back your pencil? 14. No, but that does not matter; I have another here. 15. It is difficult to translate the word 'that' into French. 16. I am sure that that 'that' that that man uses is superfluous.

XLV a (§§ 389–402)

1. Whom did you see yesterday? 2. I saw him who was with you the day before yesterday. 3. I told you already what my reasons are. 4. What sort of weather is it this morning? 5. I think it will be fine. 6. I do not know to which of those men we were speaking. 7. What fine weather! I hope it will continue until we leave. 8. Who is that? 9. It is the man I sold my house to. 10. What was the matter this morning? I heard a great noise in the street. 11. What were you speaking of to that man you met? 12. I was speaking to him of what we were discussing yesterday. 13. Scoundrel

that you are, if I catch you, I'll give you what you deserve.
14. What I complain of is that you make no progress in your studies. 15. I do not understand you; will you explain to me clearly what you mean? 16. What has become of that young gentleman with whom I saw you? 17. I don't know what has become of him; I have not seen him lately. 18. Which of those ladies did you see? 19. I saw the one that was here yesterday. 20. What are you thinking of? 21. I am thinking of what we are going to do to-morrow. 22. What did your father ask you to do? 23. I have done what he asked me to do.

XLV b

1. The gentleman whose son was visiting us last year will come himself next year.
2. The lady whose daughter has just been married will spend some weeks with us next summer.
3. The people of whom I speak would never do such a thing.
4. I who am your friend tell you so, and you ought to believe it.
5. It was we who gave them their liberty, and yet to-day they are our enemies.
6. He has gone away and, what is worse, he has not paid his debts.
7. That is very strange! I sent him a letter, and yet he says he never received it.
8. To whom are you speaking, sir?
9. It is to you I am speaking, and I want (*voudrais*) you to pay attention to what I say.
10. The house they are coming out of belongs to my father.
11. The people of the village from which he came were very glad to be rid of him.
12. The gentleman for whose house I offered such a high price has bought another.
13. The cause for which those soldiers fought was the deliverance of their country.
14. The man in whom I trust will not deceive me.
15. That child is deaf and dumb, which is a great pity, for he seems very intelligent.
16. I thank you very much.
17. Don't mention it.
18. What I was expecting was that he would pay me.
19. That is not a poor man; he is well off.
20. Where is the pen I made use of yesterday?
21. Take what you need; there will be enough for all.
22. Which way did you come this morning?
23. I came the way you came yesterday.

XLVI a (§§ 403–407)

1. Certain people say the criminal has escaped. 2. Each day brings (*amener*) its labor. 3. We rise every morning at six o'clock. 4. I have seen him many a time. 5. I have no apples, but I have some pears and peaches. 6. However great and rich we may be, we must die. 7. Whatever your intentions were, your actions were not good. 8. However good your intentions were, you did not succeed in doing us good. 9. We should respect the rights of others. 10. Every one for himself is, happily, not a maxim which everybody practises. 11. If we do not love others, others will not love us. 12. Those children will receive, each one at his majority, their portion of their father's estate. 13. Mother, will you come down? You are wanted. 14. It is said that the robber has been caught. 15. It is not known whether the ship was wrecked or not. 16. When one is pretty (§ 405, 3, e), one is rarely ignorant of it. 17. People wonder why that young man associates with (*fréquenter*) those scoundrels. 18. When one sees a noble action, it (*cela*) always gives one pleasure. 19. I have never seen any one who had so many noble qualities. 20. I am afraid to say anything about it to any one. 21. No one has ever done anything like that. 22. What a beautiful view! Did you ever see anything like it? 23. He went away without visiting any one. 24. Did you find anything where you were looking yesterday? 25. I do not know any one of his friends. 26. I doubt whether any one of you will do so.

XLVI b

1. If I can do it without any expense, I shall do it willingly. 2. I do not like this book; give me another. 3. That little boy has had one apple, and now he wants another. 4. Frenchmen often laugh at us (others), because we are less gay than they. 5. This man I have seen elsewhere, but that one I never saw anywhere. 6. These are the same people that were here yesterday morning. 7. That lady is goodness itself. 8. Even if you were to say so, I should not believe it. 9. That is a young man in whom I have confidence; I shall put him in

a position to make his fortune. 10. Were there any children at the meeting? 11. Yes, there were several. 12. I shall never accept such conditions. 13. I never saw such a foolish man. 14. If he were to say such a thing to me, I should put him out of doors. 15. He spent his whole life in doing good. 16. Our neighbor's daughters have become quite tall. 17. He comes to town every other week. 18. Where are the children? Both were here a little while ago. 19. I found two apples in the basket, but neither is good. 20. Any line being given, draw a straight line which shall be equal to it. 21. There is no reason whatever which can persuade me. 22. Whoever has stolen that poor woman's money ought to be punished. 23. Whoever he is who told you that, he is mistaken. 24. Whatever that man may do, he will never succeed. 25. Whatever the reason may be, he never comes to see us.

XLVII a (§§ 408-420)

1. I will not sell it, cheap or dear.
2. You did it on purpose, did you not?
3. Not at all, it was quite accidental.
4. A Christian ought to love not only his friends, but even his enemies.
5. Those poor people had scarcely any bread to eat when we found them.
6. We have said nothing at all about it.
7. That is a very complicated affair; I can understand nothing of it.
8. We did not see a living soul in the street when we rose that morning.
9. Whom did you see? I saw nobody at all.
10. I shall be silent, so as not to hinder you from working.
11. He told me to do nothing until he returned.
12. I went away so as not to be punished.
13. What is the matter with that little boy?
14. I do not know, sir; I neither did nor said anything to him.
15. Would you not be glad to see our old friend?
16. No, I wish neither to see him nor to speak to him.
17. I have a headache this evening; I can neither sing nor play.
18. Neither he nor his father was there.
19. I saw neither him nor his brother.
20. I have neither friend nor money, but I have strong arms and courage.
21. No more regrets; take courage, and forget the past.
22. Why did he not tell me so before leading me

into this peril? 23. There is nobody here he does not know. 24. Take care that you are not deceived. 25. There is nothing which does not please me better than that.

XLVII b

1. Not one of those we invited has come.
2. Do you know where Dr. B. lives?
3. I cannot tell you.
4. If you have no use for this book, lend it to me.
5. Unless you do what you said, I shall not pay you.
6. Do you not fear he will go away?
7. I do not fear he will go away.
8. I am afraid our friends will not be there.
9. If I were afraid he would do it, I should do something to hinder him (from it).
10. If I were not afraid he would hurt himself with the knife, I should let him have it.
11. That man writes better than he speaks.
12. We do not wish more money than we have now.
13. I do not doubt that that is true.
14. Not much is lacking for the number to be complete.
15. We have not seen each other for three years.
16. It is more than three years since we were there.
17. I cannot go with you; I have no time.
18. Yes, you have, you are not so busy.
19. You have stolen my apples.
20. I tell you I have not.
21. But I say yes, for I saw you.
22. He has as much money as you have, but he has not as much as I have.
23. Let us say no more about it.
24. We are in a hurry; let us not stay any longer.
25. I have more than fifty francs, but he has more than I, and his brother has still more.

XLVIII a (§§ 421–430)

Il a une vingtaine d'années. He is about twenty (years old).

Il a une trentaine de mille francs. He has about thirty thousand francs.

1. Columbus discovered America in the year 1492.
2. The French national *fête* is celebrated on the fourteenth of July, because [on] that day the Bastille was taken.
3. My father left England on the first of May, 1824.
4. Napoleon the First was a greater man than Napoleon the Third.
5. Charles the First of England and Louis the Sixteenth of France were

both beheaded. 6. The first train leaves at a quarter to five in the morning, and the second at twenty minutes past two in the afternoon. 7. We went to bed last night at half-past twelve. 8. The first two houses in (*de*) the street belong to us. 9. We have only the last two chapters in the book to read. 10. The carriage arrived at half-past one in the morning. 11. The father gave his son a fifth of his property when the son was twenty-one. 12. How old would you say (What age would you give) that man is? 13. I should say he is about forty. 14. It is twenty years since I saw him. 15. That man is well off; he has an income of about twenty thousand francs a year. 16. The first volume of his works contains poetry, and the fourth two novels.

XLVIII b

1. This house cost three times as much as that one. 2. Ten times ten make a hundred. 3. We paid (Ex. XXXIII a) a hundred and twenty dollars for that horse. 4. That carriage cost one thousand one hundred dollars. 5. That old man is eighty-five years old. 6. [On] what day of the month did that happen? 7. It happened on the twelfth. 8. That table is two meters long by one meter wide. 9. We are going to have a house built twenty meters long by ten wide. 10. What time is it? 11. It is just noon. 12. A boy ten years old was killed last evening by a carriage in the *Boulevard des Italiens*. 13. That girl is older than her brother by two years. 14. I am taller than my brother by two inches. 15. Will you come at two o'clock or at three? 16. I shall be there precisely at three. 17. Is that boy ten years old or eleven? 18. He is eleven.

XLIX a (§§ 431-454)

1. I was thinking of what you were talking about this morning. 2. He paid about twenty francs for that hat. 3. He will be here about six o'clock in the evening. 4. The day after our arrival we went to see the museum. 5. That child has black eyes; he takes after his father. 6. The money was divided amongst the children. 7. Amongst all those people

there is not one sensible person. 8. Art arrived at (*la*) perfection among the Greeks. 9. He was at my house when I was at his. 10. They all laughed at my expense. 11. We all laughed at him. 12. The thief will have to appear before the court. 13. He will be here before a quarter past three. 14. That is greater by half than what we expected. 15. That box is six feet long by two wide. 16. It is a quarter to four by my watch. 17. I know that man by sight only. 18. He will leave for France in a week. 19. We lived in that city for twenty years. 20. I have been here for two years. 21. I traded my black horse for this white one. 22. I thanked him for his kindness. 23. From the fifteenth of May I shall live in that house. 24. They drank their wine from golden cups. 25. That picture is painted from nature.

XLIX b

1. In spring the weather is warm and the flowers open.
2. There is not so much misery in the United States as in Russia.
3. Let us live in peace with everybody.
4. There are several nations in North America.
5. Not one in a hundred was good.
6. Is your house (in) brick or stone?
7. It was kind of you to aid me in my misfortune.
8. In rainy weather we stay at home.
9. We shall go away on Saturday.
10. He is now on the road for England.
11. Our house is on this side of the street, and his is on that side.
12. When you come to the next street, turn to the right.
13. Instead of studying he is always looking out of the window.
14. His gun was hanging above the chimney.
15. The dog jumped over the fence.
16. He watched over my interests.
17. In passing through the forest we saw many rare plants.
18. We work from morning till night.
19. We are going to our friends' house.
20. The train for Paris will be here immediately.
21. They sold those goods under their value.
22. Wicked men tread God's laws under foot.
23. If you will live with us, we shall treat you well.
24. Do you remember the man with the big nose whom we saw yesterday?
25. She told us her story with tears in her eyes.

L a (§§ 455-459)

1. For fear it should rain, we shall not go away to-day.
2. He did his work so that all were pleased with him. 3. Unless you come to-morrow, we shall not wait for you. 4. Both he and his brother were there. 5. Go and get us some bread.
6. She neither laughs nor cries. 7. Those poor people are without bread or meat. 8. He does not believe what you say, nor I either. 9. We shall not be there, nor he either. 10. We have not gone away, nor shall we. 11. As soon as you are there and have the time, will you go and visit my brother?
12. If he is there and we see him, we shall tell him what you say. 13. When bread is dear and the weather is cold, the poor suffer. 14. I think we shall go away the day after to-morrow. 15. If your friend comes to the meeting and I am there, I shall speak to him. 16. Since you went away, I have been writing letters. 17. Since you cannot do it, you must let me try. 18. Since you went away yesterday, he has done nothing but play. 19. Since every action brings its recompense [with it], we must pay attention to what we do.
20. While I was doing my exercise, she was writing her letters. 21. The good shall be rewarded, whilst the bad shall be punished. 22. When I saw him, he was busy working in his field. 23. As long as the world lasts, justice shall prevail over injustice. 24. He did his work so that he was praised by all. 25. He was kind to the poor so that he might be praised by all.

LI a

The largest clock in the world will be the one¹ which soon² will adorn the city hall of P. The dial of this colossal clock will be³ ten meters in diameter, and will be placed and illuminated so as to be visible night and day (*de*) everywhere in the city. The hands will be, one⁴ four meters and the other three meters long; the bell of the striking part will weigh forty-six thousand pounds, and in order to wind the clock, a steam engine placed in the tower will be used daily (= one will use daily a steam-engine, etc.).

¹ § 381.² § 413.³ § 428, obs. 3.⁴ § 406, 7 (1), a.

LII a

Horses,¹ birds,¹ and animals¹ of all (the) sorts speak a language as well as men.¹ We cannot understand all (= all that which) they say, but we understand enough of it to² know that they have thoughts³ and feelings.³ They are sad when they lose a companion, or when they are driven away⁴ from home. They are pleased when they are well treated,⁴ and angry when they are ill treated.⁴ They have, so to speak, a conscience; they feel ashamed when they do what displeases us, and are very glad when they merit our approbation. Kindness¹ on our part towards them is as reasonable as love¹ and kindness¹ between brothers.³

¹ § 321.² § 282, 2.³ § 322.⁴ § 241, 2, a.

LIII a

A rich¹ man, it is said,² once³ asked⁴ a learned man what was⁵ the reason that scientific men were⁵ so often³ seen at the doors of the rich, while⁶ the rich were⁵ very rarely seen² at the doors of the learned. "It is," replied⁴ the scholar, "because the man of science knows the value of riches,⁷ but the rich man does not always know the value of science."⁷

¹ § 351.³ § 413.⁵ § 258, 5.⁷ § 321.² § 241, 2, a.⁴ § 260.⁶ § 459, 2.

LIV a

Molière, the great French¹ author, was born² in Paris in the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-two.³ His father was the king's upholsterer, and was probably a rather rich⁴ man. The son received⁵ a good education, but not much is known⁵ of his youth. When he was about twenty years old,⁷ he organized⁵ a company of actors, which was⁵ called *L'illustre Théâtre*. But in this enterprise he did not succeed⁵ very well. He soon⁸ lost⁵ all his money, and with his *troupe* was⁵ forced to⁹ leave Paris and (to) make a tour in [the] province[s]. This tour lasted⁵ from sixteen hundred and forty-six to sixteen hundred and fifty-eight. During these years he traveled⁵

over nearly the whole of France, and played⁵ in many of the large cities. After his return to Paris he became⁵ the king's favorite, and produced⁶ the masterpieces which have rendered him so celebrated. At last, after fifteen years of great success, he died⁵ in sixteen hundred and seventy-three at the age of fifty-one.

¹ § 352, 1 (2). ³ § 421, c. ⁵ § 260. ⁷ § 430. ⁹ § 280, 6.
² Past Def. ⁴ § 351. ⁶ § 241, 2, a. ⁸ § 413.

LV a

Speaking of the small world in which even the greatest live,¹ Lord Beaconsfield used to tell² that Napoleon I, a year after his accession to the throne, determined to³ find out if there was⁴ anybody in the world who had never heard of him. Within a fortnight the police of Paris had⁵ discovered a wood-chopper at Montmartre, in Paris itself, who had never heard of the Revolution, nor of the death of Louis XVI, nor of the Emperor Napoleon.

¹ § 237, 6. ² § 258, 2. ³ § 280, 6. ⁴ § 258, 5. ⁶ § 232, 1.

LVI a

Napoleon, the greatest general of modern times,¹ was born² at Ajaccio on the 15th of August, 1769. At the age of ten³ he was sent to the military⁴ school at Brienne, where he remained more than⁵ five years. Then entering the French⁴ army, he was, in 1796, appointed general of the army of Italy,⁶ and soon succeeded in conquering⁷ that country. He used so well the opportunities which were offered him by the weakness of the Republic that in less than ten years he was elected Emperor. The ten years' struggle, in which he engaged with the purpose of subduing⁸ Europe,⁹ ended with the battle of Waterloo in 1815. Banished to (*à*) St. Helena (no art.) he died¹⁰ there on the 5th of May, 1821. Twenty years after his death, his remains were brought back to (*en*) France, and interred in the *Hôtel des Invalides*.

¹ § 321. ³ § 430, obs. 2. ⁶ § 412, 1, b. ⁷ § 279, 2. ⁹ § 333, 1.

² Past Def. ⁴ § 352, 1 (2). ⁸ § 333, 2, note. ¹⁰ *mourut or est mort.*

LVII a

Great Britain¹ and Ireland¹ are two large islands in (*à*) the west of Europe.¹ Great Britain is the larger of the two and comprises England,¹ Scotland,¹ and Wales.¹ The monarch of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland² for (*pendant*) many years was Queen Victoria³ who was born⁴ on the 24th of May, 1819. She was the daughter of the Duke of Kent, son of George III. She ascended the throne on (*à*) the death of William IV in 1837. When she appeared before (*le*) parliament at Westminster for the first time, she declared that she would place her trust in the wisdom of her parliament and the love of her people, and she did not fail to (*de*) keep this promise. Having thus early won the hearts of all her subjects, she retained their affection during a long reign of more than sixty years. Queen Victoria married Prince³ Albert in 1840. He died in 1861. She died forty years afterwards, on January 22nd, 1901. Her son Edward VII succeeded her (*lui*) and died in 1910. The present king, son⁵ of Edward VII, is called George V.

¹ § 333, 1. ² § 333, 2, *a*, note. ³ § 327. ⁴ § 260. ⁵ § 330, 4.

LVIII a

There was,¹ in the city of Mâcon, a parrot which had learned to² say continually: "Who is there? Who is there?" This parrot escaped one day from its cage in the garden, and soon³ flew into a wood near by, where a peasant saw it, and began to² chase it. The peasant had never seen a parrot in (*de*) all his life. He approached⁴ the tree where the bird was, and was going to⁵ kill the poor bird with his gun. At that moment the parrot began to² repeat the usual question: "Who is there? Who is there?" The peasant, terrified at these words, let his gun fall⁶ from his hands. Then taking his hat off, he said, very respectfully: "My dear sir, I pray you to⁷ excuse me, I thought that it was a bird."

¹ § 250. ³ § 413. ⁵ § 278, 6. ⁶ § 230, 6, *a*, and 7. ⁷ § 280, 6.
² § 279, 6. ⁴ § 296, 1.

LIX a

The unknown¹ author of *Beowulf* was not a² native of England, and so the first of the long line of English³ poets is really Cædmon. Bæda tells us a pretty story of the way in which⁴ Cædmon became a² poet. He was already almost an² old man before he knew anything⁵ of the art of poetry. At the feasts, in those days, everybody used to sing⁶ in turn to⁷ amuse the company, but Cædmon used to leave⁶ the table before the harp was given⁸ to him. One evening, when he had done thus, he went to the stable and lay down, after having⁹ cared for the cattle, because, you must know, he was only a farm servant in the monastery at Whitby. As he slept,¹⁰ some one appeared to him, and said, "Cædmon, sing a song to me." "I cannot¹¹ sing," he replied, "and that is why I left the feast." "Nevertheless," was the answer, "you must sing to me." "Well, then," asked Cædmon, "what shall I sing?" The other replied, "Sing the beginning of created things."¹² Thereupon he made some verses, which he still remembered when he awoke. The Abbess Hilda, hearing of his dream, believed (that) the grace of God had been given him, and made him a² monk.

¹ § 352, 1 (3). ⁴ § 398. ⁷ § 282, 2. ⁹ § 282, 4. ¹¹ § 230, 4.
² § 330, 3. ⁵ § 405, 4, a. ⁸ § 241, 2, a. ¹⁰ § 258, 1. ¹² § 321.
³ § 352, 1 (2). ⁶ § 258, 2.

LX a

A miser went¹ one day to market,² and bought¹ some³ fine apples. He carried¹ them home, arranged¹ them carefully in his cupboard, and used to go⁴ and look at them almost every day, but would⁵ not eat any until they began to spoil. Every time he did eat one he regretted it. But he had a son, a young school-boy, who liked apples; and one day, with a comrade, he found the miser's treasure. I do not know how he found the key of the cupboard; but he did,⁶ and you may imagine how many apples they ate. When they had⁷ finished the apples, the old father came and caught them. How angry⁸ he was! How he shouted at them! "Wretches! where are my beauti-

ful apples? You shall both be hanged! You have eaten them all!" His son replied: "Do not be angry, father!⁹ You only eat the bad apples; we have not touched (*à*) those; we have eaten the good ones, and left you yours."

¹ § 260. ³ § 324, 1. ⁵ § 265, 1, b. ⁷ § 262, 3. ⁹ § 376, 4.

² § 331, ex. 4. ⁴ § 258, 2. ⁶ § 256. ⁸ § 350, a.

LXI a

A hungry¹ fox was one day looking for² a poultry yard. It was late in the afternoon, and, as he was passing³ a farmhouse, he saw⁴ a cock and some hens which had⁵ gone up into a tree for the night. He drew near,⁴ and invited⁴ them to⁶ come down and⁷ rejoice with him on account of a new treaty of peace which had been formed between the animals. The cock said he was⁸ very glad of it, but that he did not intend⁸ to⁹ come down before the next morning. "But," said he, "I see two dogs coming;¹⁰ I have no doubt they will be¹¹ glad to¹² celebrate the peace with you." Just then the fox remembered that he had business¹³ elsewhere, and, bidding the cock good-bye, began⁴ to run. "Why do you run?" said the cock, "if the animals have made a peace, the dogs won't hurt you. I know them, they are good, loyal¹⁴ dogs, and would not harm any one." "Ah," said the fox, "I am afraid they have¹⁵ not yet heard the news."

¹ § 352, 1 (3). ⁴ § 260. ⁷ § 456, 2. ¹⁰ § 287, 3. ¹³ § 323.

² § 258, 1; § 296, 3. ⁵ § 229; § 262, 2. ⁸ § 258, 5. ¹¹ § 269, 5. ¹⁴ § 352.

³ § 258, 1. ⁶ § 279, 6. ⁹ § 280, 2, a. ¹² § 356. ¹⁵ § 269, 4, a.

LXII a

A woodman, who was cutting¹ wood on the bank of a river, let² his ax fall³ into the water. He at once⁴ began² to⁵ pray [to] the gods to⁶ find it for him. Mercury appeared² and asked² him what was⁷ the matter. "I have lost my ax," said² he. Having heard this, Mercury dived² into the water, and brought² up a golden ax. "Is this⁸ yours?" "No," said the man. Next time Mercury brought up a silver one. "Is this one yours?" "No," said² the chopper again. The

third time Mercury brought up an iron one, which the man recognized, as soon as he saw² it. "It is yours," said the god, "and for your honesty I shall give you the other two also."

¹ § 258, 1. ³ § 230, 6, *a*, and 7. ⁵ § 279, 6. ⁷ § 258, 5. ⁶ § 236, 2
² § 260. ⁴ § 413. ⁸ § 280, 6.

LXIII a

Two men were traveling¹ together, when they saw² a bear coming out³ of the forest. The one climbed into a tree, and tried to⁴ conceal himself in the branches. The other, when he saw that the bear would (= was going to) attack him, threw himself upon the ground, and, when the bear came up, he ceased to⁴ breathe, for it is said⁵ that a bear will not touch⁶ a dead⁷ body. When the bear had⁸ gone, his companion came down, and asked: "What was it that the bear was saying to you?" His friend replied: "He advised me not⁹ to travel with a friend who runs away at the approach of danger."¹⁰

¹ § 258, 1. ³ § 287, 3. ⁵ § 241, 2, *a*. ⁷ § 352, 1 (3). ⁹ § 416, *a*.
² § 260. ⁴ § 280, 6. ⁶ § 296, 5. ⁸ § 262, 3. ¹⁰ § 321.

LXIV a

A well-known¹ English² actor, traveling to Birmingham by the Great Western³ railway the other day, on approaching⁴ Banbury, began to feel hungry, and determined to have one of the buns for (*par*) which the town is famous.

The train having stopped, he called a boy, gave him six-pence, and asked him to get "two Banburys," promising him one of the two for his trouble.

Just as the train was about to start, the boy rushed up to the carriage in which the impatient actor was seated, and offering him three pence, exclaimed:

"Here's your change, sir."

"Bother the change; where's the bun?" roared the hungry actor.

"There was only one left," replied the boy, "and I'm eating that!"

¹ § 352, 1 (3). ² § 352, 1 (2). ³ § 330, 4, *c*, note. ⁴ § 296, 1.

LXV a

Under a magnificent walnut tree near the village, two little boys found a walnut. "It belongs to me," said the one, "for it was ¹ I ² who was the first to see it (= who have seen it the first)." "No, it belongs to me," exclaimed the other, "for it was ¹ I ² who picked it up." Thereupon there ³ arose between them a violent quarrel. "I am going to make peace ⁴ between you," said to them a third boy, who was passing at that moment. The latter placed himself between the two claimants, opened the walnut, and pronounced this sentence: "One of the shells belongs to him ⁵ who was the first to see the walnut; the other to him ⁵ who picked it up; as to the kernel, I keep it for the costs of the court. That's how lawsuits ⁴ generally end," added he, laughing.

¹ § 257, 3, b.² § 372, 3.³ § 252, 2.⁴ § 321.⁵ § 381.

LXVI a

Many years ago ¹ a celebrated ² physician who was very fond of animals lived in the city of Paris. One day a friend of his ³ brought to his house a favorite ² dog, whose leg had been broken, and asked him if he could do anything for the poor creature. The kind doctor examined the wounded ⁴ animal, and, prescribing a treatment for him, soon cured him, and received the warm thanks of his friend, who set a very high value upon his dog. Not very long afterwards, the doctor was in his room busy studying. ⁵ He thought ⁶ he heard a noise at the door, as if some animal was scratching in order to be let ⁷ in. For some time he paid no attention to the noise, but continued studying. ⁸ At last, however, he rose and opened the door. To his great astonishment he saw enter the dog which he had cured, and with him another dog. The latter also had a broken ⁴ leg, and was able to move only with much difficulty. The dog which the surgeon had cured had brought his friend to his benefactor, in order that he, too, might be ⁹ healed; and he made the doctor ¹⁰ understand that this was what he wanted.

¹ § 250, 4. ³ § 377, 3.⁵ § 279, 2. ⁷ § 241, 2, a.⁹ § 271, 2.² § 351. ⁴ § 352, 1 (3).⁶ § 283, 1.¹⁰ § 230, 6, b.

LXVII a

There was once a cat who was a¹ great enemy of the rats. He had eaten a great many,² and they were much afraid of him. So the chiefs of the rats called a meeting to³ discuss what they should do to³ rid themselves of him. A great many plans were proposed, but after a little discussion they were all abandoned. At last a young rat, who thought himself very clever, rose and said: "Do not despair, my friends, I have not yet proposed a plan. A splendid idea occurs to me; I know what we can do. We can, if we are economical, soon save enough money to³ buy a little bell. This we can attach to the neck of our old enemy, and, if he approaches, we can⁴ flee to (*dans*) a place of safety."

The young rats all applauded the idea, but one of the old [ones], who up to this time had said nothing, gravely⁵ asked the one who had made the speech if he would promise to put the bell on the cat. The young rat blushed, and said he would think of it.⁶

The meeting broke up shortly after, and the rats dispersed without doing anything.⁷

¹ § 330, 3. ² § 282, 2. ³ § 413. ⁴ § 368. ⁵ § 405, 4, a.
⁶ § 367, 2 (1). ⁷ § 263, 2.

LXVIII a

Long ago¹ the frogs, tired of having² a republic, resolved to³ ask Jupiter to send them a king. Jupiter did not receive their petition with much favor but, as they seemed really to⁴ desire one, he thought (that) it would be better to please⁵ them. So, one fine day, when they were all expecting⁶ their king, a great log fell from the sky into the pond where they were.⁶ They were very much afraid of the noise⁷ it made, and they took refuge in holes and in the mud at the bottom of the pond. Little by little, however, they approached⁸ their king to⁹ get a good look at him, and, seeing that he was so quiet, they became more bold, and finally leaped on him, and treated him with great familiarity (= very familiarly). Then they complained again to Jupiter saying that the king he had

sent was not worthy of their respect, and that they desired another, who would show¹⁰ more vigor. In order to please them, Jupiter sent them this time a stork, who immediately began to devour them with much avidity. They complained again, but Jupiter told them that, since¹¹ they had desired a king, they would be forced to submit quietly to the one¹² he had sent.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| ¹ § 250, 4. | ⁴ § 278, 6. | ⁷ § 402, 1. | ⁹ § 282, 2. | ¹¹ § 459, 3. |
| ² § 280, 2. | ⁵ § 296, 2. | ⁸ § 296, 1. | ¹⁰ § 270, 1. | ¹² § 381; 402, 1. |
| ³ § 280, 6. | ⁶ § 258, 1. | | | |

LXIX a

The two youngest of my children were already in bed and asleep, the third had¹ gone out, but at my return I found him sitting beside my gate, weeping² very sore. I asked him the reason. "Father,"³ said he, "I took this morning from⁴ my mother, without her knowing⁵ it, one of those three apples you brought her, and I kept⁶ it a long while; but, as I was playing some time ago⁷ with my little brother in the street, a slave that went⁸ by snatched it out of my hands, and carried it off; I ran after him asking for it, and, besides, told him that it belonged to my mother, who was ill, and that you had taken a fortnight's journey to fetch it; but all in vain, he would⁹ not give it back. And because I still followed him, crying out, he stopped and beat me, and then ran away as fast as he could, from one street to another, till at length I lost sight of him. I have since then been walking outside the town, expecting your return, to pray you, dear father, not to tell my mother [of] it, lest it (*cela*) should make her worse." And when he had¹⁰ said these words, he began weeping again more bitterly than ever.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ¹ § 229. | ³ § 376, 4. | ⁵ § 271, 5. | ⁷ § 250, 4. | ⁹ § 265, 1, b. |
| ² § 286, 2. | ⁴ § 296, 4. | ⁶ § 259, 2. | ⁸ § 258, 1. | ¹⁰ § 262, 3. |

LXX a

A celebrated Italian¹ painter had told his pupils to² ask the name of any (*tout*) person who might come³ to his house

during his absence in the city. One day three gentlemen came to⁴ see the painter, and the latter was not at home. One of the pupils, whose name was John, opened the door for them,⁵ said that his master was not in, and let them depart without asking their names. When the master returned and⁶ heard of the three gentlemen, he asked⁷ John who they were. John could say nothing but, "I do not know, sir." The painter got angry, but John, with a few strokes of his pencil, drew (*faire*) the portrait of the three, and gave it to his master, who immediately⁸ recognized them. The artist admired the skill of the young man so much that he took the drawing, and kept it afterwards among his most precious possessions. It is needless to⁹ add that he pardoned the pupil. (*Il est* may be omitted.)

¹ § 352, 1 (2). ³ § 270, 1. ⁵ § 362, 2. ⁷ § 296, 2. ⁹ § 384, 1, a.

² § 280, 6. ⁴ § 278, 6. ⁶ § 458, 2. ⁸ § 413.

LXXI a

A man (*celui*) who would¹ have friends must show himself friendly. A man (*homme*) was passing the night at (*dans*) an inn. He had just left a town where he had spent several years. The landlord asked² him why he had left the (*cet*) place. He replied, "Because my neighbors were so disagreeable and obliging that one could not live with them." The landlord replied, "You will find exactly the same sort of neighbors where you are going." The following day, another traveler came from the same place. He told the landlord that he was obliged to leave the place where he had been living, and that it caused him great pain to part with his neighbors, who had been so kind and obliging. The landlord encouraged him by telling³ him that he would find exactly the same sort of neighbors where he was going.

¹ § 230, 1.

² § 296, 2.

³ § 286, 3.

LXXII a

When I was¹ at school, I was¹ often very idle. Even in [the] class I used to play¹ with boys as idle as myself. We

used to try¹ to hide this from² our master, but one day he caught³ us cleverly.

"You must not be idle," said he. "You must not raise your⁴ eyes from your books. You do not know what you lose by idleness.⁵ Study while you are young; you will not be able to study when you are⁶ old. If any one sees another boy who is not studying, let him tell me."⁷

"Now," said I to myself, "there is Fred Smith; I do not like him. If I see that he is not studying, I shall tell."⁷

Soon after, I saw Fred Smith looking⁸ out of the window, and I told the master what I had seen. "Indeed!" said he, "how do you know he was idle?" "If you please, sir," said I, "I saw⁹ him." "O you saw⁹ him, and where were your eyes when you saw⁹ him?"

I saw the other boys laugh,⁸ and I was ashamed, for the master smiled, and said it was a good lesson for me.

¹ § 258.

³ § 260.

⁶ § 321.

⁷ § 365.

⁸ § 259, 2.

² § 296, 4.

⁴ § 328.

⁶ § 263, 2.

⁸ § 287, 3.

LXXIII a

The princes of Europe¹ have found out a manner of rewarding² their subjects who have behaved well, by presenting³ them [with] about two yards of blue⁴ ribbon, which is worn⁵ on the shoulder. Those who are honored with this mark of distinction are called knights, and the king himself is always at the head of the order. This is a cheap method of recompensing² the most important services; and it is very fortunate for kings⁶ that their subjects are⁷ satisfied with such⁸ trifling rewards. Should⁹ a nobleman lose his leg in a battle, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, and he is recompensed for the loss of his leg. Should⁹ an ambassador spend all his fortune in¹⁰ supporting the honor of his country abroad, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, which is considered⁵ the equivalent of his estate. In short, as long as a European king has a yard or two of blue or green ribbon, he will not lack statesmen, generals, and soldiers.

¹ § 333, 2. ³ § 286, 3. ⁵ § 241, 2. ⁷ § 269, 4. ⁹ § 275.

² § 280, 2. ⁴ § 352, 1 (1). ⁶ § 321. ⁸ § 406, 5, a, note. ¹⁰ § 279, 2.

LXXIV a

At a time when ancient art was attracting so much attention in Italy that modern art¹ was being neglected,² Michael Angelo had resort to a stratagem in order to teach the critics the folly of judging such things according to fashion¹ or reputation.¹ He made a statue which represented³ a beautiful girl (*jeune fille*) asleep,⁴ and, breaking off an arm, buried the statue in a place where excavations were being made.² It was soon found, and was lauded by critics¹ and by the public as a valuable relic of antiquity.¹ When Michael Angelo thought the time opportune, he produced the broken arm, and, to the great mortification of the critics, revealed himself as the sculptor.

¹ § 321.² § 241, 2.³ § 258, 3.⁴ § 352, 1 (3).

LXXV a

Had you seen us, Mr. Harley, when we were turned out of South-hill, I am sure you would have wept at that sight. You remember old Trusty, my dog; I shall never forget it while I live (fut.); the poor creature (*bête*) was old and almost blind, and could scarce crawl after us to the door; he went, however, as far as the gooseberry-bush, which, as you may remember, stood on the left side of the yard; he was wont to bask in the sun there; when he had reached that spot, he stopped; we went on (*continuer notre chemin*); I called him; he wagged his tail, but did not stir; I called again; he lay down; I whistled, and cried "Trusty"; he gave a howl, and died! I could have lain down and died (= should have liked to lie down and die) too; but God gave me¹ strength to (*de*) live for my children.

¹ § 321.

VOCABULARY

FRENCH-ENGLISH

A

a [a] 3 sg. pres. indic. avoir
 à [a] to, towards, at, for, in, into, around, by, with, from; — votre montre by your watch; — demain good-bye till tomorrow
 abondant [abɔ̃dɑ̃] abundant
 abord: d'— [dabɔ̃:r] at first, first (of all), at the outset
 abreuver [abʁœve] to water, fill, soak
 accent [aksā] m. accent, tone
 accepter [aksept̪e] to accept
 accident [aksidā] m. accident, incident
 accompagner [akɔ̃pagn̪e] to accompany, go with
 accord [akɔ̃:r] m. agreement; être d'— to agree
 accourir [akuri:r] § 164 to run or hasten up; run or hasten to one's aid
 accourut [akury] 3 sg. past def. accourir
 accueil [akœ:j] m. welcome
 achat [aʃa] m. purchase
 acheter [aʃte] § 158 to buy, purchase
 actif [aktif] —ve active, energetic
 action [aksjɔ̃] f. action
 actuellement [aktɥelmā] now, at this very time
 Adèle [adɛl] f. Adèle
 adieu [adjø] m. good-bye, farewell

admettre [admetr] § 198 to admit
 affectueux [afektyø] —se affectionate, kindly
 afin de [aféðə] + infin. in order to
 afin que [afékə] in order that, that (takes subjunctive)
 Afrique [afrik] f. Africa
 âge [a:ʒ] m. age, century, time; en — de of an age to; quel — a-t-il? how old is he?
 âgé [a:ʒe] aged, old
 agent [aʒã] m. agent; — de police policeman
 agir [aʒi:r] to act, operate, work, move, manage; il s'agit de it is a question of
 agréable [agreabl] agreeable, pleasant
 agricole [agrikɔ̃l] agricultural
 ai [e] 1 sg. pres. ind. avoir
 aider [ede] to aid, help, assist
 aie [ɛ] 1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impv. avoir
 ailleurs [ajœ:r] elsewhere; d'— moreover, besides, furthermore
 aimable [amabl] kind, amiable, nice
 aimer [eme] to love, like; — mieux to prefer
 ainsi [ɛsi] thus, so; — que as, just as; pour — dire so to say
 air [ɛ:r] m. air, atmosphere; air, look, appearance; à l'—, en l'— in the air; le grand — the open air; en plein — in the open air; avoir l'— de to seem to

- aise [ɛ:z] *f.* gladness; ease, convenience; à ton — comfortably, at your ease, just as you like, suit yourself
- aisément [ɛzemā] easily
- ait [ɛ] *3 sg. pres. subj.* avoir
- ajouter [azute] to add
- algèbre [alʒe:br] *f.* algebra
- Allah [allo] *m.* Allah
- Allemagne [almapn] *f.* Germany
- allemand [almā] *adj.* German; l'— *m.* German (language); un Allemand a German
- aller [ale] § 160 to go, be (*of health*); — + *infin.* to go to, go and; y — de bon cœur to go at (a thing) with spirit; s'en — to go away, depart, set out; allez-vous-en! go away! qu'elle s'en aille! let her go (away)! allons! come! courage! up! arise! — à la rencontre de to go to meet; — chercher to go for, go and get; — trouver to go and find, go to (meet); — to fit (*of garments*)
- alors [alo:r] then, so
- Alpes [alp] *f. pl.* Alps
- Alsace [alzas] *f.* Alsace
- ambition [əbisjɔ̃] *f.* ambition
- âme [a:m] *f.* soul, heart
- amener [amne] § 158 to bring, lead
- américain [amerikɛ] American; un Américain an American
- Amérique [amerik] *f.* America
- ami [ami] *m.* friend; mon — my good fellow, my boy
- amie [ami] *f.* friend, loved one
- amour [amu:r] *m. in sing. and f. in pl.* love, affection; un — de petite chèvre a dear little goat
- amusant [amyzā] amusing
- amuser [amyze] to amuse; s' — to amuse or enjoy oneself, play, have a good time
- an [ā] *m.* year; avoir quarante —s to be forty years old or forty years of age; le jour de l'an New Year's day
- ancien [āsjē] ancient, old; former; un — an ancient
- âne [ān] *m.* ass, donkey
- anecdote [anegdōt] *f.* anecdote
- anglais [āgle] *adj.* English; l'— *m.* English (*language*); un Anglais an Englishman
- Angleterre [āglētē:r] *f.* England
- animal [animal] *m.* animal, beast
- année [ane] *f.* year, twelvemonth; l'— dernière last year
- anniversaire [anivērse:r] *m.* anniversary, birthday
- antichambre [ātiʃā:br] *f.* antechamber
- aout [u] *m.* August
- apercevoir [apersøvwa:r] § 213 to perceive, see, observe, notice; s' — to perceive, observe
- aperçoit [aperswa] *3 sg. pres. indic.* apercevoir
- aperçu [apersy] *p. part.* apercevoir
- aperçut [apersy] *3 sg. p. def.* apercevoir
- appel [apel] *m.* call
- appeler [aple] § 158 to call; call in, summon; name; faire — to send for; s' — to be called or named; comment s'appelle-t-il? what is his name? il s'appelle Jean Bart his name is Jean Bart
- appétit [apeti] *m.* appetite; bon — I wish you a good appetite
- apporter [apɔ̃te] to bring (to, à)
- apprendre [aprū:dr] § 202 to learn; teach
- apprêter [aprete] to prepare; s' — to prepare, get ready
- approche [aproʃ] *f.* approach
- approcher [aproʃe] *tr. and intr.* to approach, draw near, bring up;

- de to approach, draw near; s'— to approach, draw near (to, de)
- après [apre] *prep.* after, next (to); *adv.* afterwards, after
- après-demain [apredmē] the day after to-morrow
- après-midi [apremidi] *m. or f.* afternoon
- arabe [arab] Arabian; un Arabe (an) Arabian, Arab
- Arabie [arabi] *f.* Arabia
- arbre [arbr] *m.* tree
- arc [ark] *m.* arch, bow
- Arc de Triomphe [arkdetriō:f]
name of an arch in Paris
- architecture [arşitekty:r] *f.* architecture
- argent [arşā] *m.* silver, money
- argument [argymā] *m.* argument
- arithmétique [aritmetik] *f.* arithmetic
- Arles [arl] *f. city in the south of France, famous for Roman remains*
- arrêter [arete] to stop, delay, stay, check, arrest; s'— to stop, pause, give heed (to, à); du monde arrêté people standing
- arrivée [arive] *f.* arrival
- arriver [arive] to arrive (at, à, dans, sur); come, come to, come up; happen, occur; les voilà qui arrivent see them coming (there)
- articuler [artikyle] to articulate, utter
- as [a] *2 sg. pres. indic. avoir*
- Asie [azi] *f.* Asia
- assassiner [asasine] to assassinate, murder
- asseoir [aswa:r] § 215 to seat; s'— to sit down, seat oneself, be seated
- assez [ase] enough, sufficiently; pretty, rather, quite, very; — bon good enough
- assiette [asjet] *f.* plate
- assis [asi] *p. part.* s'asseoir seated, sitting
- associé [asosje] *m.* partner
- assurer [asyre] to assure
- attendre [atā:dr] § 210 to wait; wait for, expect; s'— à to expect
- attenti-f [atātif] -ve attentive
- attention [atāsjō] *f.* attention; faire — to pay attention
- attentivement [atātivmē] attentively
- au [o] *contr. of à + le*
- auberge [oberz] *f.* inn
- aubergiste [oberzist] *m.* inn-keeper
- aucun [okœ] any, no; ne...— no, none, no one
- au-dessus [odsy] above; — de above
- Auguste [ögyst] *m.* Augustus
- aujourd'hui [əzurdqi] to-day, now; — en huit a week from to-day
- au près de [oprēde] into the presence of, to
- aurai [ore] *1 sg. fut. avoir*
- auraient [ore] *3 pl. condl. avoir*
- aussi [osi] too, also, likewise; as (*in comparison*); — bien besides; — bien que as well as
- aussitôt [osito] immediately, forthwith, at once
- autant [otā], —de as or so much, as or so many; d'— plus the more so; bien — quite as much
- autobus [otobys] *m.* motor car, auto car (public)
- automne [oton] *m.* autumn; en — in autumn
- auto(mobile) [otomobil] *m. or f.* automobile, motor car, auto car

autour de [otu:rðə] *prep.* around, round
 autre [otr] other; les —s others, the others, other people; d'—s others; l'un et l'— both; les uns les —s one another, both, all; nous —s Français we Frenchmen; bien — chose something very different

autrefois [otrøfwa] formerly, once Autriche [otriš] *f.* Austria

aux [o] *contr. of à + les*

avancer [avã:se] § 156 to advance, forward; s'— to advance, move forward; avancé advanced; proficient

avant [avã] before; en — forward; la tête en — head first, head foremost; — de before avant-hier [avã(t)jɛ:r] the day before yesterday

avant que [avã:kə] *conj. + subj.* before

avec [avek] with; — le temps qu'il fait in such weather as this

avenue [avny] *f.* avenue

avez [ave] 2 *pl. pres. indic.* avoir

Avignon [avipɔ̃] *m. city in the south of France, famous for medieval remains*

avis [avi] *m. opinion, notice*

avoir [avwa:r] § 154 to have; obtain, receive, get; y — *impers.*, il y a there is, there are; il y avait there was, *etc.*; il y a huit jours a week ago; il y eut there was, *etc.*; il eut le moulin he obtained or received the mill; cet enfant a quelque chose there is something the matter with that child; qu'est-ce que vous avez? what is the matter with you? il a dix ans he is ten years old or ten years of age; vous

n'avez qu'à parler you have only to speak; — raison to be (in the) right; en — à to be angry with

avril [avrɪl] *m.* April

ayez [ɛje] 2 *pl. impv.* avoir

ayons [ɛjɔ̃] 1 *pl. pres. subj.* avoir

B

bah! [ba] pooh! pshaw!

bain [bɛ̃] *m.* bath

baisser [bese] to lower, let down, hang (down); — la tête bow down, hang one's head; se — to stoop down, stoop

balle [bal] *f.* ball (*for playing*)

Balzac, Honoré de [ɔnɔʁe ðe balzak] *great French novelist b. 1799, d. 1850*

bander [bādə] to bind up

banque [bā:k] *f.* bank (*fin.*)

banquier [bākje] *m.* banker

Bart, Jean [ʒā ba:r] *famous French seaman, b. at Dunkirk 1651, d. 1702*

bas [ba] —se low; là — over there, yonder; tout — in an undertone, to oneself, softly, silently; au — at the bottom; en — below, at the bottom, down (below), downstairs; d'en — from down below

bas [ba] *m.* stocking

baseball [besbal] *m.* baseball

bassin [basɛ̃] *m.* basin, pool

Bastille [basti;j] *f.* Bastille (*state prison in Paris, captured and destroyed by the populace, July 14, 1789*)

bataille [batu;j] *f.* battle

bateau [bato] *m.* boat; se promener en — to go for a boat-ride, row, sail (*in a boat*)

bâtir [batir] to build

- bâton [batɔ̄] *m.* stick; stroke (*in learning to write*); coup de — blow with a stick
- beau, bel, belle, *pl.* beaux, belles [bo, bel, bel, bo, bel] beautiful, handsome, fine; au — milieu in the very midst; il fait — (*temps*) it is fine; avoir — to be in vain
- beaucoup (de) [bokudə] much, a great deal, very much, many, very many, a great many
- Beaumarchais, Pierre** [pjɛ:r bomaʁɛ] celebrated French play-wright, *b.* 1732, *d.* 1799
- beauté [bo:te] *f.* beauty
- bêcher [bɛʃe] to dig, delve
- bel, belle [bel] *see* beau
- bénir [beni:r] § 163 to bless
- berger [berʒe] *m.* shepherd; chien de — shepherd's dog
- besoin [bəzwɛ̄] *m.* need, necessity; avoir — de to need, be in need of; vous avez — que je vous aide you need my help; aussi bien nous fera-t-il — then besides we shall need him
- bête [beit] *f.* beast, brute, animal
- bête [beit] stupid
- beurre [bœ:r] *m.* butter
- bibliothèque [biblio:tɛ:k] *f.* library
- bicyclette [bisiklɛt] *f.* bicycle
- bien [bjɛ̄] well, very, indeed, really, I am sure, surely, of course, quite; — plus much more; j'ai — le temps I have plenty of time; être — to be well, be well off, be comfortable, be happy; — que (+ subj., though, although; ou — or indeed, or on the contrary; — de (du, des) much, a great deal of
- bien [bjɛ̄] *m.* good
- biens [bjɛ̄] *m. pl.* estate, property, goods, wealth, possessions; blessings
- bientôt [bjɛ̄to] soon, shortly, presently
- bijou [biju] *m.* jewel
- billet [bijɛ̄] *m.* note, letter; promissory note; ticket; — d'entrée ticket (of admission); — de banque, bank bill, bank note
- blanc [blā(:)] blanche white; le — *n. m.* the white
- blanchir [blāʃi:r] to become white, make white, wash, launder
- blé [ble] *m.* wheat, wheat field
- blesser [blesɛ̄] to wound, hurt
- blessure [blesy:r] *f.* wound, hurt
- bleu [blø̄] blue
- Blois [blwa] *m.* town southwest of Paris, with famous castle
- bœuf [bœf] *m.* ox; beef
- boire [bwa:r] § 181 to drink; donner pour — to give a gratuity or tip (*colloq.*)
- bois [bwo] *m.* wood(s), forest
- boîte [bwa:t] *f.* box
- bon [bɔ̄] —ne good; kind; moins — worse, not so good; sentir — to smell sweet
- bonbon [bɔ̄bɔ̄] *m.* bonbon, candy
- bonjour [bɔ̄ʒu:r] *m.* good morning, good day
- bonne [bon] *f.* maid, servant, nursery maid
- bonté [bɔ̄te] *f.* goodness, kindness
- bord [bo:r] *m.* shore, bank, margin, edge; board (*nav.*); à — de on board of
- Bordeaux [bɔ̄rdo] *m.* important seaport on the Garonne, and a centre of wine trade
- borner [borne] to limit; se — to be limited
- botte [bat] *f.* boot (*riding*)
- bottine [batin] *f.* high shoe (*for men or women, particularly the latter*)

bouche [bu;ʃ] *f.* mouth; à la — in one's mouth
 boulanger [bulāʒe] *m.* baker
 bouquiniste [bukinist] *m.* second-hand book dealer
 bourgeois [burʒwa] *m.* middle-class person
 bout [bu] *m.* end, tip; edge, extremity; au — de at the end of
 boutique [butik] *f.* shop, store
 branche [brā:ʃ] *f.* branch
 bras [bra] *m.* arm
 brave [bra:v] brave, gallant; good, kind, honest, worthy
 brigand [brigā] *m.* brigand, thief
 brin [brē] *m.* blade, sprig
 brosse [brōs] *f.* brush
 brosser [brōsē] to brush
 bruit [brui] *m.* noise, sound; fame, reputation; faire tant de — to attract so much attention
 brûlant [brylā̄] burning hot
 brûler [bryle] to burn
 brusque [brysk] blunt
 bureau [byro] *m.* office
 but [byt or by] object, end, goal; arriver à son — to attain his object

C

ça [sa] (*for cela*) that
 ça a été [sa ete] *for ça or ce a été*
 ça [sa] here; — et là here and there, up and down, hither and thither
 cabinet [kabine] *m.* cabinet; office, private office
 cacher [kaše] to hide, conceal; se — to hide oneself
 cadeau [kado] *m.* present, gift
 café [kafe] *m.* coffee; coffee-house, restaurant, café
 cahier [kaje] *m.* notebook, exercise book
 caillou [kajou] *m.* pebble, stone
 caissier [kesje] *m.* cashier

calmer [kalme] to calm
 camarade [kamarad] *m. or f.* comrade, playmate, chum
 campagne [kōpān] *f.* country, fields; à la — in the country
 Canada [kanada] *m.* Canada
 canadien [kanadjē] Canadian
 capitaine [kapitēn] *m.* captain
 car [kar] for (*conj.*)
 caravane [karavan] *f.* caravan
 caresse [kares] *f.* caress; faire mille — s à to overwhelm (one) with kindness
 caresser [karese] to caress, stroke
 carte [kart] *f.* card, ticket; map
 cas [ku] *m.* case
 casser [ka:se] to break
 cathédrale [katedral] *f.* cathedral
 catholique [katolik] catholic
 cause [ko:z] *f.* cause; à — de because of
 causer [koze] to cause; chat, talk; — une impression to make an impression
 ce [sə] *pron.* it, this, that; c'est nous it is we; ce sont eux it is they; ce qui, ce que that which, which, what
 ce, cet, cette, ces [sə, set, set, se] *adj.* this, that; ce ... -là that (*emphatic*)
 ceci [səsi] *pron.* this
 cela [səla] *pron.* that; — s'entend that is evident; of course
 célèbre [selebr] celebrated, famous
 célébrer [selebre] § 158 to celebrate
 celle [sel] *see celui*
 celui, celle, ceux, celles [səlqi, sel, sø, sel] this or that, this or that one; the one, he, him; — qui the one who, he or him who

celui-ci [səlqisi]	celle-ci, ceux-ci,	<i>(the great Emperor of the West, 742-814)</i>
celles-ci <i>pron.</i>	this, this man, this one, the latter, he (too)	
celui-là, etc. [səlqlila]	<i>pron.</i> that, that man, that one, the former, he	
cent [sā]	(a) hundred	
centime [sātim]	<i>m. the hundredth part of a franc</i>	
cependant [səpədā]	yet, never- theless; still, however, in the meantime, meanwhile	
cerise [səri:z]	<i>f. cherry</i>	
cerisier [serizje]	<i>m. cherry tree</i>	
certain [sərtē]	certain	
cesser [sese]	to cease, leave off (de)	
ceux [sø]	<i>see celui</i>	
chacun [ʃakœ̃]	<i>pron.</i> each, each one, every one	
chaise [ʃe:z]	<i>f. chair</i>	
chaleur [ʃalœ:r]	<i>f. heat</i>	
chambre [ʃā:br]	<i>f. room, bed- room; Chambre des députés</i> House of Parliament, Congress	
chameau [ʃamo]	<i>m. camel</i>	
champ [ʃā̃]	<i>m. field, farm</i>	
Champs-Élysées [ʃazelize]	<i>m. pl. name of a celebrated promenade in Paris</i>	
changement [ʃōzmã]	<i>m. change</i>	
changer [ʃāze]	§ 156 to change, alter, transform; se — to change or transform oneself, change (<i>intr.</i>)	
chanson [ʃāsɔ̃]	<i>f. song</i>	
chant [ʃā̃]	<i>m. singing, song; crow- ing (of a cock)</i>	
chanter [ʃāt̪e]	to sing; chant, in- tone, play	
Chantilly [ʃāt̪iji]	<i>town famous for its forests and magnificent châ- teau</i>	
chapeau [ʃapo]	<i>m. hat</i>	
chaque [ʃak]	each, every	
Charlemagne [ʃarlomān̪]	Char- lemagne, Charles the Great	
charmant [ʃarmā]	charming	
charmer [ʃarme]	to charm, de- light; <i>charmé</i> de charmed with, delighted with	
Chartres [ʃartr̪]	<i>f. city southwest of Paris, with famous cathedral</i>	
chasse [ʃas]	<i>f. chase, hunt, hunt- ing, hunting party</i>	
chasser [ʃase]	to chase, hunt, drive away	
château [ʃoto]	<i>m. castle, palace, country mansion</i>	
chaud [ʃo]	<i>warin, hot</i>	
chaud [ʃo]	<i>m. heat, warmth; il fait — it is warm, hot (of weather, etc.); avoir — to be warm, hot (of living beings)</i>	
chaussures [ʃosy:r]	<i>f. pl. shoes, boots</i>	
chef [ʃef]	<i>m. chief, commander; — d'escadre rear admiral</i>	
chemin [ʃemē̃]	<i>m. way, road;</i> <i>grand — main road, highway; — de fer railway; — faisant on the way; en — on the way</i>	
chemise [ʃomi:z]	<i>f. shirt</i>	
cher [ʃe:r]	<i>chère dear; beloved; payer — pay dear(ly) for, pay too much for</i>	
chercher [ʃerʃe]	to seek, search, look for; aller — to go for, go and get; — à to seek to, try to	
cheval [ʃeval]	<i>m. horse; à — on horseback; monter à — ride (on) horseback</i>	
cheveu [ʃevø̃]	<i>m. (a) hair; cheveux pl. hair</i>	
chèvre [ʃe:vr̪]	<i>f. goat</i>	
chez [ʃe]	to, at, in, into (the house, shop, office, etc., of); with; aller — le roi to go to the king's (palace, court, etc.); ils étaient — eux they were at home; — moi at my house, at	

- home; — vous at your house,
at home, with you
- chien [ʃjɛ] *m.* dog; — de berger
shepherd's dog
- Chine [ʃin] *f.* China
- choisir [ʃwazi:r] to choose
- chose [ʃo:z] *f.* thing, affair, matter;
quelque — *m. pron.* something;
quelque — d'extraordinaire something extraordinary
or unusual; elle a quelque —
there is something the matter
with her; bien autre — something
very different
- chou [ʃu] *m.* cabbage
- ci [si] *see* celui
- ciel *pl.* *cieux* [sjel, sjø] *m.* heaven,
heavens, sky
- cigare [siga:r] *m.* cigar
- cigarette [sigaret] *f.* cigarette
- cinq [sɛ:k] five
- cinquante [sékā:t] fifty
- cinquième [sékjem] fifth
- cité [site] *f.* city, heart of city
- civil [sivil] civil, civilian
- clair [kle:r] clear, bright, plain
- classe [kla:s] *f.* class, recitation,
lesson, classroom; manquer la —
to stay away from school,
play truant; faire la — to give
a lesson (*to a class*); teach (*a
class*); la — est terminée class
is over or dismissed
- cloche [klɔs] *f.* bell
- cœur [kœ:r] *m.* heart, heartiness,
courage, energy
- coin [kwɛ̃] *m.* corner
- colère [kɔle:r] *f.* anger; se mettre en — to get angry, be angry
- combien [kɔbjɛ̃] how much? how
many? at what price? how
much, how many; — êtes-
vous? how many are there of
you? — avez-vous payé? how
much *or* what did you pay
(for)?
- comédie [kɔmedij] *f.* comedy, play
- comme [kom] as, like, such as; as
it were, as if; as well as; now;
how! — voici, — suit as follows;
- il faut in fine style, exactly
right, as it should be
- commencement [kɔməsmɑ̃] *m.*
beginning, commencement
- commencer [kɔməsɛ̃] § 156 to
begin, commence (to, à, de)
- comment [kɔmā] how; how?
how! what! — cela? how is
that?
- commode [kɔmɔd] comfortable,
convenient
- compagne [kɔpaj̃] *f.* companion;
wife, mate
- compagnie [kɔpanji] *f.* company
- compagnon [kɔpanjɔ̃] *m.* companion;
— de voyage traveling
companion
- comparaison [kɔparezɔ̃] *f.* com-
parison
- comparer [kɔpare] to compare
- compartiment [kɔpartimɑ̃] *m.*
compartment
- compassion [kɔpasjɔ̃] *f.* compas-
sion, pity
- compatriote [kɔpatriɔ̃t] *m., f.*
fellow countryman *or* woman
- complet [kɔple] *m.* suit (*of
clothes*); complement; être au
— to be full
- compléter [kɔplete] to complete
- compliment [kɔplimɑ̃] *m.* com-
pliment
- comprendre [kɔprã:dr] § 202 to
understand, comprehend; in-
clude; faire — to explain
- compter [kɔte] to count, reckon;
intend, think, hope; be of im-
portance
- concert [kɔsε:r] *m.* concert
- concorde [kɔkɔrd] *f.* concord;
place de la Concorde *name of a
square in Paris*

- conducteur [kɔ̃dyktœ:r] *m.* conductor
 conduire [kɔ̃dqɪ:r] § 185 to conduct, lead, guide, drive, take, convey
 confiance [kɔ̃fjã:s] *f.* confidence, trust
 congé [kɔ̃ʒe] *m.* holiday; donner — à to give a holiday to
 connaissance [kɔ̃nesã:s] *f.* acquaintance; faire — avec to become acquainted with
 connaît [kɔ̃ne] 3 sg. pres. indic. connaître
 connaître [kɔ̃ne:tr] § 188 to know, be acquainted with, understand
 conseil [kɔ̃seɪ:j] *m.* counsel, advice
 conserver [kɔ̃sɛrve] to preserve, save, keep
 conte [kɔ̃:t] *m.* story, tale; faire un — to tell a story
 contenir [kɔ̃teni:r] § 177 to contain
 content [kɔ̃tā] *adj.* content, satisfied, pleased, gratified, happy
 contentement [kɔ̃tōtmā] *m.* contentment, satisfaction
 conter [kɔ̃te] to relate, tell
 continuer [kɔ̃tinqe] to continue (to, de), keep on, pursue
 contraire [kɔ̃trɛ:r] *m.* contrary; au — on the contrary
 contre [kɔ̃tr] against, from, at
 convenable [kɔ̃vənabl] suitable
 convenir [kɔ̃vəni:r] § 178 to suit, become, be fitting or appropriate
 copie [kɔ̃pi] *f.* copy; exercise
 corps [kɔ̃r] *m.* body, form
 corriger [kɔ̃riʒe] to correct
 Corse [kɔ̃rs] *f.* Corsica
 côté [kɔ̃tē] *m.* side, way; d'un — on one side; de l'autre — on the other side; de ce — on this side; de — to one side, aside; du — de in the direction
 of, towards; de son — on his part, he too; à — de beside
 coucher [kuʃe] *intr.* to lie, lie down; *tr.* to put to bed, lay down; se — to go to bed, retire (*to rest*); set (*of the sun*); être couché to be lying down
 coucher [kuʃe] *m.* setting; — du soleil sunset
 couloir [kulwa:r] *m.* passage, corridor
 coup [ku] *m.* blow, stroke; drink; — de poing a blow with the fist; — de pied a kick; d'un seul — at a single stroke; tout à — all at once; — de dent bite; — de bâton blow with a stick
 couper [kupe] to cut
 cour [ku:r] *f.* court; courtiers; yard, courtyard; faire la — to pay court; gens de la — courtiers
 couramment [kuramā] fluently
 courber [kurbe] to bend, bow
 courir [kuri:r] § 164 to run (about); hasten; hunt after
 court [kur] short (*adj.*); short (*adv.*)
 court [ku:r] 3 sg. pres. indic. courir
 couturier [kutizā] *m.* courtier
 couru [kury] *p. part.* courir
 cousin, -e [kuzē, kuzin] cousin
 couteau [kuto] *m.* knife
 coûter [kute] to cost
 coutume [kutym] *f.* custom, habit
 couturière [kutyrje:r] *f.* dress-maker
 couvert [kuve:r] *p. part.* couvrir covered; cloudy, overcast; with one's hat on
 couvrir [kuvri:r] § 176 to cover; se — to cover oneself, be covered

craie [kʁe] *f.* chalk
 craindre [krē:dr] § 190 to fear,
 be afraid of
 crainte [krē:t] *f.* fear
 cravate [kravat] *f.* necktie
 crayon [krejō] *m.* pencil
 créature [kreaty:r] *f.* creature
 crier [krie] to cry (out), shout,
 yell, scream, call (out), exclaim
 croire [krwâ:r] § 191 to believe;
 think; *se —* to believe or think
 oneself; faire — à to make
 (one) believe in; *je crois bien!*
 I should think so!
 croupe [krup] *f.* back, rump
 croyez [krwaje] 2 pl. pres. indic.
 croire
 cruel [kryel] -le cruel
 crus [kry] 1 sg. past def. croire
 cuiller [kuijɛr] *f.* spoon
 cuir [kui:r] *m.* leather
 cuisine [kuzin] *f.* kitchen, cooking
 cuisinière [kuzinje:r] *f.* cook
 curiosité [kyrjozite] *f.* curiosity

D

dame [dam] *f.* lady
 Danemark [danmark] *m.* Denmark
 dangereu-x [dāʒrø] -se dangerous
 dans [dū] in, within, to, into, at,
 on, among, between; — le
 temps at the time
 danser [dāse] to dance
 date [dat] *f.* date; de longue —
 long before
 datte [dat] *f.* date (*fruit*)
 Daudet, Alphonse [alfɔz dode]
 French novelist, b. at Nîmes,
 1840, d. 1897
 davantage [davātɔ:ʒ] more
 de [də] of, from, out of, for, with,
 in, on, by, at, to; — + infin.
 to, at, for, in, etc.; — ce que
 because

debout [dəbu] *adv.* upright, standing
 décembre [desā:br] *m.* December
 décider [deside] to decide, determine; *se —* to decide, resolve, make up one's mind
 découvrir [dekuvri:r] § 176 to discover; *se —* to uncover oneself, take off the hat
 dehors [dəo:r] outside, outdoors
 déjà [dega] already; déjà! so soon!
 déjeuner [deʒœn] *m.* breakfast; lunch; — du matin or premier —, petit — breakfast (*i.e., the first meal of the day*)
 demain [dəmɛ] *m.* to-morrow; à — I shall see you to-morrow until to-morrow
 demander [dəmāðe] to ask, ask for; — à to ask of or from (*indir. obj.*), ask; — à + infin. to ask to; *se —* to ask oneself, wonder
 demeurer [dəmcere] to live, dwell, reside; remain, be
 demi [dəmi] half; à — half
 demi-heure [dəmice:r] *f.* half an hour
 démontrer [demɔ̃tre] to show, prove
 denier [dənje] *m.* denarius (*obs.*), penny; (*pl.*) money
 dent [dā] *f.* tooth; coup de — bite
 départ [depair] *m.* departure
 dépêcher: *se —* [sə depɛʃe] to make haste, hurry
 dépenser [depāse] to spend, expend
 dépouiller [depuje] to strip, de-spoil, deprive
 depuis [dəpuj] since; from; — deux ans for two years back, for the last two years; — que

- since; — quand? since when?
how long?
- député [dep'yɛ] *m.* deputy, member of parliament, congressman
- déranger [derāʒe] § 156 to derange; se — to trouble oneself
- derni-er [dernje] -ère latter, last, final
- derrière [dérje:r] behind (*prep.*); behind, at the back (*adv.*); de — hind (*adj.*)
- des [de] *contr. of de + les*
- dès [de] from (dating from), not later than; — demain beginning to-morrow; — que as soon as, from the very moment that; — le même jour on the (very same) day; — le point du jour at daybreak
- désagréable [dezagreabl] disagreeable, unpleasant
- descendre [desō:dr] § 210 to descend, come *or* go down, alight, get off; go down (stairs), put up at
- désert [dezε:r] *m.* desert
- désir [dezi:r] *m.* desire, longing
- désirer [dezi:re] to desire, wish
- dessert [desε:r] *m.* dessert
- destination [destinasjɔ̃] *f.* destination
- destruction [destryksjɔ̃] *f.* destruction
- deux [dø] two; tous (*or toutes*) — both (of them)
- deuxième [døzjɛm] second
- devant [dəvā] *prep.* before, in front of, ahead of; *adv.* before, ahead, in advance
- devenir [dəvnri:r] § 178 to become; become of
- devint [dəvɛ̃] *3 sg. past def.* venir
- devoir [dəvwa:r] *m.* duty; exercise (*lesson*); rendre leurs — à to pay their respects to
- devoir [devwa:r] § 214 to owe; be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must; — + *infin.* to be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must
- devrais [dəvʁɛ] see devoir ought
- dictée [dikte] *f.* dictation
- Dieu [djø] *m.* God; ah! mon —! oh! dear me!
- différence [diferā:s] *f.* difference
- différent [diferā] different, divers, various
- difficile [difisil] difficult, hard
- difficulté [difikylte] *f.* difficulty
- dimanche [dimã:S] *m.* Sunday; tous les —s every Sunday
- dîner [dine] to dine
- dîner [dine] *m.* dinner; à — to *or* at dinner
- dire [di:r] § 193 to say, tell, relate; c'est à — that is (to say); vouloir — to mean
- directement [direkt(ə)mā] directly
- disait [dize] *3 sg. impf. indic.* dire
- discuter [diskyte] to discuss
- distinctement [distēkt(ə)mā] distinctly
- distribuer [distribye] to distribute, deal out, portion out
- dit [di] *3 sg. pres. indic., 3 sg. past def., and p. part. dire*
- dix [dis] ten
- dix-huit [dizqit] eighteen
- dix-neuf [diznœf] nineteen
- dix-neuvième [diznœvjɛm] nineteenth
- dix-sept [dissɛt] seventeen
- doigt [dwa] *m.* finger; toe
- dois [dwa] *1 and 2 sg. pres. indic.* devoir
- dollar [dɔla:r] *m.* dollar
- domestique [dоместик] *m. or f.* servant

- dommage [dɔmɑ̃ʒ] *m.* damage, pity
 donc [dɔ̃(k)] then, therefore, consequently
 donner [dɔ̃nɛr] to give; bear (*of trees*); — à souper to give a supper; se — to give to each other
 dont [dɔ̃] of whom, of (from, *etc.*) which, whose, with which, *etc.*, whence
 dormir [dɔ̃rmir] § 166 to sleep
 douloureusement [dulurøzmā] sadly
 doute [dut] *m.* doubt; sans — no doubt, doubtless, of course
 doux [du] — ce sweet; soft, gentle, kindly
 douze [duz] twelve
 droit [drwa] straight, right; upright, erect
 droite [drwot] *f.* right hand, right, right side; à —, de — to or on the right (hand)
 du [dy] *contr.* of de + le
 ducat [dyka] *m.* ducat (*a gold coin worth 10 or 12 francs*)
 Dumas, Alexandre [alegžādr dyma] French dramatist and novelist, b. 1803, d. 1870
 duquel [dykel] *contr.* of de + lequel
 durer [dyre] to last, continue, endure

E

- eau [o] *f.* water
 écarter [ekarte] to take away; s'— de to go away from, ramble, stray
 échange [eʃā;ʒ] *m.* exchange; en — de in exchange for
 échapper [eʃape] to escape; s'— to escape
 éclat [ekla] *m.* burst, outburst
 école [ekɔl] *f.* school; maison d'— schoolhouse
 écolier [ekɔlje] *m.* schoolboy, pupil
 écouter [ekute] to listen, listen to, hear
 écrier: s'— [sekrie] to cry out, exclaim
 écrire [ekri:r] § 194 to write
 écrit [ekri] *p. part.* écrire
 édifice [edifis] *m.* edifice, building
 Édouard [edwa:r] Edward
 éducation [edykasjɔ] *f.* education, training, upbringing
 effet [efe] *m.* effect; en — in effect, indeed, in fact
 effort [efɔ:r] *m.* effort, endeavor; force, might; tenter un dernier — to make a final effort
 égal [egal] equal
 égarer: s'— [segare] to lose one's way
 église [egli:z] *f.* church
 Égypte [eʒipt] *f.* Egypt
 eh! [e] ah! well! — bien! well: well then! well now!
 élève [ele:v] *m. or f.* pupil, scholar
 éléver [elve] § 158 to raise, raise up, lift up, exalt; rear, bring up; s'— to rise, exalt oneself, be lifted up, be exalted
 elle [el] she, it, her
 éloigné [elwane] distant
 éloigner: s'— [selwane] to go away
 embarras [ãbar] *m.* embarrassment
 embrasure [ãbrazy:r] *f.* embrasure, recess (*of window, etc.*)
 empêcher [ãpeʃe] to hinder, prevent (from, de)
 employé [aplwaje] *m.* employee, official
 employer [aplwaje] to employ, use

- emporter** [āpôrte] to carry away, carry off, take away
- empressement** [āprèsmã] *m.* eagerness
- en** [ā] *prep.* in, into; at; of; as a, like a; **en + pres. part.** in, while, whilst, by (*or untranslatable*); — route on the way; — argent made of silver; — quoi? of what (material)?
- en** [ā] *pron. and adv.* of (from, out of, for, by, etc.) it or them; of him, of her, some of it, some of them; some, any
- enchanter** [āʃāt̪e] to enchant, charm, delight; **enchanté** delighted
- encore** [ākɔ:r] yet, still, again, more, still more, moreover, besides, also, now, only; — un another, one more; — si even if
- encre** [ā:k̪r] *f.* ink; à l'— with ink
- encrier** [ākrie] *m.* inkstand
- encyclopédie** [āsiklɔpedi] *f.* encyclopedia
- endormir:** *s'*— [sādɔrm̪i:r] § 166 to go to sleep, fall asleep; **endormi** asleep
- endroit** [ādrwa] *m.* place, spot
- enfant** [āf̪ɑ̄] *m. or f.* child, son, daughter; boy, girl, offspring
- enfin** [āf̪ɛ̄] at last, finally, in fine, in short
- ennuyeux-x** [ānɥijø] —*se* tiresome, annoying
- enseigner** [āsɛɲe] to teach
- ensemble** [āsā:bl] together, all together
- ensuite** [āsɥit̪] afterwards, then, thereupon, after that
- entendre** [āt̪ā:dr] § 210 to hear; **cela s'entend** that is evident; of course
- enti-er** [āt̪je] —*ère* entire, whole; **tout** — wholly
- entre** [ā:tr] between, among, amongst
- entrée** [ātré] *f.* entrance, beginning; **entrée (a term in cookery)**; **billet (carte) d'**— ticket (of admission)
- entrer** [ātré] to enter, go *in*, come in; — *dans* to enter
- énumérer** [enymere] § 158 to enumerate
- envers** [āvɛ:r] towards
- envie** [āvi] *f.* envy, desire, inclination; **avoir — de** to feel like, wish *or* desire to
- environ** [āvirɔ̄] about, nearly
- envoyer** [āvwaje] § 157 to send
- épargner** [eparne] to save, economize
- épi** [epi] *m.* ear (*of wheat*)
- épingle** [epē:g̪l] *f.* pin
- époque** [epɔk] *f.* epoch, period, time
- épouser** [epuze] to marry (*trans.*), take in marriage, wed
- escadre** [eskadr̪] *f.* squadron, fleet; **chef d'**— rear-admiral
- Espagne** [espaɲ] *f.* Spain
- espagnol** [espanɔl] Spanish
- espérance** [esperāns] *f.* hope
- espérer** [espere] § 158 to hope, hope for, expect
- esprit** [espr̪i] *m.* spirit, mind, wit, intelligence; **Saint-Esprit** Holy Ghost
- essayer** [esɛje] § 157 to try, attempt; try on
- est** [ɛ̄] *3 sg. pres. indic.* être; —*ce que?* is it (the case) that? (*a statement prefixed by est-ce que?* becomes *interrogative*); *n'est-ce pas?* lit. is it not (so)? (*variously rendered to suit the context*)
- est** [est] *m.* east
- et** [e] and
- état** [eta] *m.* state; condition;

homme d'État statesman; **en —** de in a condition to
États-Unis [etazyni] *m. pl.*
 United States
été [ete] *m. summer; en —* in summer
êtes [et] *2 pl. pres. indic. être*
étoile [etwal] *f. star*
étrang-er [etrāzē] *—ère m. or f.*
 stranger, foreigner; *adj. foreign*
être [e:tr] § 154 to be; — à to belong to; — de to belong; en — à to be at a point; be busy at; **nous sommes cinq** there are five of us
étudier [etydje] to study
éumes [ym] *1 pl. past def. avoir*
Europe [cerop] *f. Europe*
européen [ceropeēn] *—ne European*
eus [y] *1 sg. past def. avoir*
eut [y] *3 sg. impf. subj. avoir*
eux [ø] *they, them*
eux-mêmes [ø me:m] *they themselves, themselves*
événement [evenmā] *m. event*
évidemment [evidamā] *evidently*
excellent [eksclā] *excellent*
excepté [ekseptē] *except*
exciter [eksīte] *to excite*
excursion [ekskyrsjō] *f. excursion, trip*
excuser [ekskyze] *to excuse*
exemple [egzāpl] *m. example, pattern; copy; par — for instance, for example; you don't say so! dear me!*
exercice [egzersis] *m. exercise*
expliquer [eksplike] *to explain*
exprimer [eksprime] *to express*

F

façade [fasad] *f. front, façade*
face [fas] *f. face; en — opposite, on the other side; en — de*

opposite to, facing before, face to face with, in the presence of
fâcher [fa:ʃe] *to vex, displease; fâché sorry, angry; se — to get angry*
facile [fasil] *easy*
facilement [fasilmā] *easily*
façon [fasō] *f. fashion, way, manner; outline, sketch; de — à ce que in such a way or manner that; de la même — in the same way*
facteur [faktœ:r] *m. postman, letter carrier*
faible [fe:bl] *weak, feeble*
faiblesse [febles] *f. weakness*
faim [fē] *f. hunger; avoir — to be hungry*
faire [fe:r] § 195 to do, make, act, cause (+ *infin.* to do or be done), produce, occasion, give, form; say, reply, exclaim, cry, remark; — — to have made, cause to be made; — vivre to keep alive, support.
 — **le tour de** to go round;
 — **plaisir** to give pleasure;
 — **peur à** to frighten; — attention to pay attention; — **sortir** to put out, expel; — **la cour** to pay court; — **la classe** to give a lesson, teach; **cela ne fait rien** that makes no difference; — **fête à** to welcome, hail with joy; — **voir** to show; — **mal à** to pain, hurt; — **un pas** to take a step; **fais donc**, do (so) then, do (it your own way) then, all right; — **une question** to ask a question; **il fait beau (chaud, etc.)** it is fine (hot, etc.)
faire: **se —** [sø fe:r] § 195 to make oneself, render oneself, make to or for oneself; be done; become; take place; be; **il se**

faisait un grand tapage there was a great uproar; *se* — à to adapt oneself to
fais [fe] 1 sg. pres. indic. faire
faisons [fəzɔ̃] 1 pl. pres. indic. faire
faites [fet] 2 pl. pres. indic. and impv. faire
fallait [fale] 3 sg. impf. indic. falloir
falloir [falwa:r] § 218 impers. *vb.* to be necessary, have to; *il faut + infin.* one (*etc.*) must, one has to; *il fallait que* it was necessary that (*he, etc.*), he was obliged to or had to; *il lui faut* he needs or must have; *il faut manger* one must eat; *il avait fallu* he had been obliged
fameu-x [famø] —se famous, celebrated
famille [famij] f. family
fatigant [fatigā] tiresome
fatigué [fatige] tired
fatiguer [fatige] to fatigue, weary, tire; *se* — to fatigue oneself, get tired
faudra [fodra] 3 sg. fut. falloir
faut [fo] 3 sg. pres. indic. falloir
faute [fo:t] f. fault, mistake
fau-x [fo] —sse false, deceitful
faux-col [fo kɔl] m. collar
félicitation [felisitasjɔ̃] f. congratulation
félicter [felisite] to congratulate
femme [fam] f. woman, wife
fenêtre [fene:tr] f. window
fer [fɛ:r] m. iron; *en* — iron (*adj.*), of iron; *chemin de* — railway; — à cheval horseshoe
ferai [fere] 1 sg. fut. faire.
ferme [ferm] firm(ly), hard
fermer [ferme] to shut (up), close; lock
ferrant [ferø] that shoes horses;

maréchal — blacksmith, horse-shoer
fête [fe:t] f. holiday, festival; festivity, feast, merrymaking;
être en — to be in festivity, hold a celebration; *jour de* — holiday
feuille [fe:lj] f. leaf, sheet (of paper)
février [fevrie] m. February
fi-er [fje:r] —ère proud
fier [fje]: *se* — [səfje] à to trust, have confidence in
fièrement [fjermā] proudly
figure [figy:r] f. figure, face, countenance
filie [fi:j] f. girl, daughter; *jeune* — girl, young lady
fillette [fijet] f. little girl
fils [fis] m. son
fin [fē] f. end; à la — finally, at last
finir [fini:r] to finish, conclude, end; *il finit par lui demander* he asked him finally; *c'est fini* it's all over
fis [fi] 1 sg. p. def. faire
flatter [flate] to flatter; *se* — to flatter oneself, hope
fleur [fle:r] f. flower; *en* — in flower, blooming
fleuve [fleo:v] m. river (*flowing into the sea*)
foi [fwa] f. faith; *ma* —! faith!
fois [fwa] f. time (*repeated occasion*); *tant de* — so many times, so often; *une* —, *deux* — once, twice; *encore une* — once more
folle [fɔl] f. of fou
fond [fɔ̃] m. bottom, depth, abyss; crown (of hat); *au* — de at or in the bottom of, at the back of, in the depth(s) of
fonder [fɔ̃de] to found
font [fɔ̃] 3 pl. pres. indic. faire
Fontainebleau [fɔ̃tenblo] town near

Melun, famous for its château and picturesque forests
 football [futbal] *m.* football
 forêt [fɔrɛ] *f.* forest
 forme [form] *f.* form, shape
 former [forme] to form
 fort [fɔ:r] *adj.* strong, powerful; big, thick; clever
 fort [fɔ:r] *adv.* much, very, very much; loud, loudly; m'a — servi has been of great service to me
 fortune [fɔrtyn] *f.* fortune, good luck; chercher — to seek one's fortune
 fou, fol, folle [fu, fɔl, fɔl] mad, foolish, crazy
 foule [fu:l] *f.* crowd
 fourchette [furʃet] *f.* fork
 fourmi [furm̩] *f.* ant
 foyer [fwaje] *m.* hearth
 franc [frā] *m.* franc (*a coin worth normally about 20 cents*)
 France [frā:s] *f.* France
France, Anatole [anatolfrā:s] *prominent French man of letters, b. 1844*
 français [frā:s̩] *adj.* French; un — Frenchman; le — French (*the language*); en — in French; parler — to speak French
François [frā:s̩wa] *m.* Francis; — Ier [frā:s̩wa pʁemj̩] Francis the First (*king of France, b. 1494, d. 1547*)
Franklin, Benjamin [bɛzam̩ frākl̩] *American statesman and philosopher, b. 1706, d. 1790*
 frapper [frape] to strike, knock, rap
Frédéric le Grand [frederik le grā] Frederick the Great, (*king of Prussia, b. 1712, d. 1786*)
 frère [frɛ:r] *m.* brother
 froid [frwa] *adj.* cold; — *m.* cold
 frotter [frôte] to rub

fruit [frqi] *m.* fruit
 fruitier [frqitje] fruit-bearing;
 arbre — fruit tree
 fumer [fyme] to smoke

G

gages [ga:ʒ] *m. pl.* wages
 gagner [gane], to gain, win, earn, obtain; reach; seize
 galerie [galri] *f.* gallery
 galop [galo] *m.* gallop
 gant [gā] *m.* glove
 garçon [garsɔ] *m.* boy, waiter
 garde [gard] *m.* guard, keeper
 garder [garde] to keep, guard, preserve, have in store
 gare [ga:r] *f.* station
 gauche [go:ʃ] *adj.* left
 gauche [go:ʃ] *f.* left hand, left, left side; à (la) —, de — to or on the left (hand)
 général [ʒeneral] general; *m.* general; en — in general, generally
 gens [ʒã] *m. or f. pl.* people; — de la cour courtiers
 gentil [ʒati] pretty, nice, well-behaved
 gentilhomme [ʒatijom] *m.* nobleman
 Germaine [ʒermen] *f.* Germaine
 glace [glas] *f.* ice; ice cream; mirror
 glisser [glise] to slip, slide
 gloire [glwa:r] *f.* glory
 gothique [gotik] gothic
 grain [grɛ] *m.* grain, corn
 grammaire [grame:r] *f.* grammar
 grand [grā] great, large, tall, big, grand; long
 grand'chose [grāʃo:z] *f.* much
 grandeur [grādœ:r] *f.* greatness, size
 grand'mère [grāmœ:r] *f.* grandmother

grand-père [grāpē:r] *m.* grand-father
 gras [gro] -se fat
 gravement [gravmā] gravely, seriously
 grimper [grēpe] to climb
 gris [gri] gray, dark-colored
 gros [gro] -se large, big, great; heavy
 guère [ge:r] but little, not much;
 ne . . . — hardly . . . at all
 guérir [geri:r] to cure
 guerre [ge:r] *f.* war

H

[*h* aspirate is indicated thus: 'h]
 habile [abil] able, clever
 habiller [abije] to dress; s'— to dress
 habit [abi] *m.* garment, dress, apparel, garb; coat; *pl.* clothes, apparel, costume
 habiter [abit̪e] to inhabit, live in
 habituer [abit̪qe] to accustom; habituate; s'— to accustom oneself, get used (to, à)
 'halles [al] *f. pl.* market
 'haricot [ariko] *m.* kidney bean; —s verts string beans
 'hasard [aza:r] *m.* chance; par — by chance, perchance
 'hâter: se — [sə ate] to hasten, hurry
 'haut [o] high, tall; loud
 'haut [o] *m.* height; top, upper part, summit; au — at the top; en — upstairs
 'haut [o] *adv.* loud
 hélas! [elə:s] alas!
 Henri [āri] *m.* Henry; — IV [ārikatr] Henry the Fourth (*king of France, b. 1553, d. 1610*)
 herbe [erb] *f.* grass, herb(s)

heure [œ:r] *f.* hour; time; quelle — est-il? what time is it? à quelle —? at what time? at what hour? à neuf — at nine o'clock; tout à l'— not long ago, just now, a little while ago, directly; de bonne — early, in good time

heureusement [œrø:zmā] happily, luckily, fortunately

heureu-x [œrø] -se happy, fortunate

hier [jɛ:r] yesterday; — soir yesterday evening

histoire [istwa:r] *f.* history, story

historique [istorik] historical

hiver [ive:r] *m.* winter; en — in winter

homme [om] *m.* man; — d'État statesman

honneur [õnce:r] *m.* honor

'honte [ɔ:t] *f.* shame; avoir — to be ashamed

hôpital [ɔ:pital] *m.* hospital

hôtel [œtl̪] *m.* hotel

hôtel de ville [œteldəvil] *m.* town hall

Hôtel-Dieu [œteldjø] *m.* hospital

Hugo, Victor [vikto:r ygo] *French writer, b. 1802, d. 1885*

'huit [qit] eight; — jours a week

I

ici [isi] here; ici-bas here below

idée [ide] *f.* idea

ignorant [iŋorā] ignorant

ignerer [iŋore] to be ignorant of, not to know

il [il] he, it; — en vint plusieurs there came several

il y a [ilja] *see* avoir there is, there are, ago

île [i:l] *f.* island; — de la Cité *island in the Seine, in the heart of Paris*

- ils [il] they
 importance [épôrtâ:s] *f.* importance
 important [épôrtâ] important
 importer [épôrte] to be of consequence; n'importe no matter; n'importe quel autre any other
 impossible [épôsibl] impossible
 impression [épresjô] *f.* impression
 incendier [éсадje] to set on fire, burn
 incliner [ékline] to incline, bend; s'— to bow
 Indes [é:d] *f. pl.* India
 indiquer [édiķe] to indicate, point out
 individu [édividy] *m.* individual, fellow
 industriel [édystriel] —le industrial, manufacturing
 influent [éflyâ] influential
 insecte [ések̄t] *m.* insect
 instant [éstâ] *m.* instant, moment; à l'— immediately
 instrument [éstrymâ] *m.* instrument
 intelligent [ételizâ] intelligent
 intention [étaşjô] *f.* intention; avoir l'— to intend
 intéressant [éteresâ] interesting
 intérieur [éterjœ:r] *m.* interior, inside
 introduire [étrôdqir] § 185 to introduce
 inviter [évite] to invite, beg
 irai [ire] *1 sg. fut. aller*
 Italie [itali] *f.* Italy
 italien [italjé] Italian
- japonais [zapône] Japanese
 jardin [zardé] *m.* garden
 je [zø] I
 Jean [zân] John
 Jeanne [zâ:n] Jean, Jane
 Jéricho [zérikô] Jericho
 Jérusalem [zéryzalem] Jerusalem
 Jésus-Christ [zézykri] Jesus Christ
 jeter [zete] § 158 to throw, cast, utter; se — to fall upon, rush
 jeu [zø] *m.* play, game, motion
 jeudi [zødi] *m.* Thursday
 jeune [zœn] young
 Joffre, Césaire-Joseph [sezɛ:r zɔzef zɔfr] *Marshall of France, the victor of the Marne, b. 1852*
 joli [zɔli] pretty, nice, fine
 jouer [zwe] to play
 jouet [zwe] *m.* toy
 jouir [zwi:r] to enjoy; — de to enjoy
 jour [zu:r] *m.* day, light; — de fête boliday; le — de l'an New Year's day; faire — to be daylight
 journal [zurnal] *m.* newspaper
 journée [zurne] *f.* day; toute la — all day long
 joyeux [zwajø] —se joyous, glad, merry
 juif [zqif] *m.* Jew
 juillet [zqijé] *m.* July
 juin [zqé or zwé] *m.* June
 jusque (jusqu'à) [zysk(a)] to, even, as far as, until; jusqu'à ce que till; jusqu'ici till now; —là till then
 juste [zyst] just, exactly

J

- jamais [zamε] ever, never; ne ... — never
 jambe [zâ:b] *f.* leg
 janvier [zâvje] *m.* January
 Japon [zapô] *m.* Japan

K

- kilo(gramme) [kilo(gram)] *m.* kilogram (*about 2½ lbs. avoir dupois*)

L

là [la] there; **celui-là** that one,
 the former
 là-bas [laba] yonder, over there
 labourer [labure] to plow, dig
 laboureur [laburœr] *m.* husband-
 man, plowman, farmer
 lac [lak] *m.* lake
 laisser [læsə] to leave, bequeath,
 let, let have; — **tomber** to let
 fall, drop
 lait [lɛ] *m.* milk
 laitue [læty] *f.* lettuce
 langue [lã:g] *f.* tongue, language
 lapin [lapɛ̃] *m.* rabbit
 large [larʒ] wide, broad
 latin [latɛ̃] Latin
 laver [lave] to wash; *se* — to
 wash oneself
 le, la, l', les [lø, la, l, le] the
 le, la, l', les [lø, la, l, le] him, her,
 it, them
 leçon [ləsɔ̃] *f.* lesson
 lecture [lækty:r] *f.* reading
 lég-er [leʒe] -ère light, slight
 légume [legym] *m.* vegetable
 lendemain [lãdmɛ̃] *m.* next day,
 day after, the morrow
 lentement [lãtəmã] slowly
 lequel, laquelle [ləkel, lakel] who,
 whom, which
Lésage, Alain-René [aléran
 lesa:ʒ] famous French novelist,
 author of 'Gil Blas,' b. 1668,
 d. 1747
 lettre [lɛtr] *f.* letter
 leur [lœ:r] poss. their; *le* —
 theirs
 leur [lœ:r] pers. to them, them
 lever [løve] § 158 to raise; *se* —
 to rise
 lever [løve] *m.* rising; — *du*
 soleil sunrise
 lévite [levit] *m.* Levite
 libre [libr] free

lieu [ljø] *m.* place; *au* — de instead of; avoir — to take place
 ligne [lin] *f.* line
Lille [lil] *f.* town in the northeast
 of France
 lire [li:r] § 197 to read
 lit [li] *m.* bed
 livre [li:vṛ] *m.* book
 loi [lwa] *f.* law
 loin [lwɛ̃] far, far off; *de* — in
 the distance; plus — farther
 off, farther on
Loire [lwa:r] *f.* river flowing west
 through center of France
 long [lɔ̃g] —ue long; *le* — *de* along;
 tout au — at full length
 longtemps [lɔ̃tɔ̃] long, a long while
 lorsque [lɔ̃skø] when
Louis-Philippe [lwi filip] king of
 France from 1830 to 1848
Louis XIV [lwi katɔ̃r] king of
 France from 1643 to 1715
Louis XV [lwi kɛ:z] king of France
 from 1715 to 1774
Louis XVI [lwi sɛ:z] king of
 France from 1774 to 1793
Louise [lwi:z] Louise, Louisa
 loup [lu] *m.* wolf
 lourdement [lurd(ə)mã] heavily
Louvre [lu:vr] *m.* great museum
 of works of art and antiquities
 in Paris
 lui [lɥi] him, to him, to her, it,
 himself; he; —-même himself;
 à — seul by himself, alone
 lundi [lœdi] *m.* Monday
 lune [lyn] *f.* moon; *clair de* —
 moonlight
 lut [ly] 3 sg. p. def. lire
 lutter [lyte] to struggle, wrestle
Lyon [ljɔ̃] *m.* Lyons city on the
 Rhône, a center of silk trade

M

madame [madam] *f.* madam,
 Mrs.

- Madeleine [madleɪn] *f.* Magdalén
 (also name of a church in Paris)
- mademoiselle [madmwazel] *f.*
 miss
- magasin [magazē] *m.* shop, store
- magnifique [majifik] magnifi-
 cent, splendid
- mai [me] *m.* May
- main [mē] *f.* hand; à la — in
 his (your, etc.) hand
- maintenant [mēt(ə)nō] now
- mais [me] but, well; — non not
 at all
- maison [mezō] *f.* house, home; à
 la — at home
- maitre [me:tṛ] *m.* master
- mal [mal] *m.* evil, ill; faire — à
 to hurt, be sore, ache; — aux
 dents toothache
- mal [mal] badly, ill, wrong
- malade [malad] sick, ill, sore; le —
 the sick one, the patient
- maladresse [maladres] *f.* clumsi-
 ness
- malgré [malgrē] in spite of
- malheur [malce:r] *m.* misfortune,
 unhappiness
- malheureusement [malcerø:zmō] un-
 happily
- malheureu-x [malcerø] -se un-
 fortunate, unhappy; *m.* poor
 creature
- manger [mā:ʒe] § 156 to eat, wear
 away; — dans to eat out of
- marchand [marʃā] *m.* merchant,
 shopkeeper
- marche [marʃ] *f.* march, walk,
 walking, progress, speed
- marché [marʃe] *m.* market; (à)
 bon — cheap
- marcher [marʃe] to march, walk,
 go
- mardi [mardi] *m.* Tuesday
- maréchal ferrant [mareʃal ferō]
 blacksmith, horseshoer
- mari [mari] *m.* husband
- Marie [mari] *f.* Mary
- marin [marē] *m.* sailor, seaman
- mars [mars] *m.* March
- Marseille [marse:j] *f.* Mar-
 seilles (important French seaport
 on the Mediterranean)
- matelot [matlo] *m.* sailor
- mathématiques [matematik] *f.*
 pl. mathematics
- matin [matē] *m.* morning; le —
 in the morning
- matinée [matine] *f.* morning
 (when duration is indicated)
- Maupassant, Guy de [gi de
 mopasā] famous French writer of
 novels and short stories, b. 1850,
 d. 1893
- Maurice [moris] *m.* Maurice
- mauvais [møvɛ] bad, ill, evil,
 poor; faire — to be bad
 weather
- me [me] me, to me, for me
- mécontent [mekɔ:tā] dissatisfied,
 displeased
- mécontentement [mekɔ:tātmā] *m.*
 dissatisfaction
- méfiance [mefjā:s] *f.* mistrust,
 distrust
- méfier: se — [sømefje] to mis-
 trust, distrust
- meilleur [mejœir] better, best
- membre [mō:br] *m.* member
- même [mē:m] same, even, self,
 very; de — the same; de —
 que as well as
- menacer [mənase] § 156 to men-
 ace, threaten
- mener [mene] § 158 to lead, con-
 duct, take, drive
- mer [me:r] *f.* sea; en — at
 sea
- merci [mersi] *m.* thanks, thank
 you
- mercredi [merkrēdi] *m.* Wednes-
 day
- mère [me:r] *f.* mother

messieurs [mesjø] *pl. of monsieur*
 mettre [mɛtr] § 198 to put, place,
 put on; le — à la porte to turn
 him out of doors; — de côté
 to lay aside; se — à to set
 oneself, begin; se — à table to
 sit down to dinner, *etc.*; se —
 en colère to get angry; s'y —
 to turn to, buckle to
 meurs [mœ:r] *1 sg. pres. indic.*
 mourir
 Mexique [mek'sik] *m.* Mexico
 midi [midi] *m.* noon; south
 mien [mjɛ̃] mine; le — mine
 miette [mjet] *f.* crumb
 mieux [mjø] better
 milieu [miljø] *m.* middle, midst;
 au — at the middle; au beau —
 in the very midst
 militaire [milite:r] military, sol-
 dier
 mille [mil] a thousand
 million [miljɔ̃] *m.* million
 minuit [minɥi] *m.* midnight
 minute [minyt] *f.* minute
 misérable [mizerabl] miserable,
 wretched, unfortunate
 misère [mize:r] *f.* misery, trouble,
 distress, poverty
 mit [mi] *3 sg. p. def.* mettre
 moderne [modərn] modern
 modeste [modɛst] modest
 modiste [modist] *f.* milliner
 moi [mwa] me, to me; I; —
 même (I) myself
 moins [mwɛ̃] less, least, fewer;
 pour le — at the least; du —
 at least
 mois [mwa] *m.* month
 moisson [mwasɔ̃] *f.* harvest
 moitié [mwatje] *f.* half; à —
 half
 Molière, Jean-Baptiste Poquelin
 [ʒabatist poklɛ̃ molje:r] *the*
 greatest of French dramatists, b.
 1622, d. 1673

molle [mol] *f. of mou*
 moment [mɔmɑ̃] *m.* moment,
 time; du — où since; au — où
 when, at the moment when
 mon, ma, mes [mɔ̃, ma, me]
 my
 monde [mɔ̃:d] *m.* world, people;
 tout le — everybody
 monnaie [mɔnɛ] *f.* coin, money,
 change
 monsieur [mæsjø] *m.* sir, gentle-
 man, the gentleman, Mr.
 montagne [mɔtanj] *f.* mountain
 montagneu-x [mɔtanjø] -se moun-
 tainous
 Monte-Cristo [mɔtə-kristo] “*le*
 Comte de Monte-Cristo,” fam-
 ous novel of Alexandre Dumas
 monter [mɔt̪e] to mount, go up,
 ascend, rise, get into (*of ve-*
 hicles)
 montre [mɔ:tr] *f.* watch
 Montréal [mɔreal] *m.* Montreal
 montrer [mɔt̪re] to show; se —
 to show oneself
 monture [mɔty:r] *f.* beast (*for*
 riding)
 monument [mɔnymɑ̃] *m.* monu-
 ment, building (of interest)
 morale [mɔral] *f.* moral
 morceau [mɔrso] *m.* bit, piece
 mort [mɔ:r] *f.* death
 mort [mɔ:r] *p. part.* mourir dead;
 le — the dead one
 mot [mo] *m.* word
 mou, mol, molle [mu, mol, mol]
 soft
 mouchoir [muʃwa:r] *m.* hand-
 kerchief
 mourir [muri:r] § 174 to die,
 perish; il est mort he died;
 — de faim to die of hunger,
 starve (to death), be very
 hungry; — de soif to be very
 thirsty
 mouton [mutɔ̃] *m.* sheep; mutton

moyen [mwajē] *m.* means, way;
le — de le faire? how shall we
do it?
muet [myε] —te mute, dumb
mur [my:r] *m.* wall
mûr [my:r] ripe
mûrir [myri:r] to ripen
musée [myze] *m.* museum
musique [myzik] *f.* music, band
(*military*)

N

naissance [nesā:s] *f.* birth
naître [nɛ:tr] § 200 to be born;
il est né he was born
Napoléon [napole5] Napoleon
Bonaparte (*born 1769 in Corsica,
became Emperor of the French
1804, died in St. Helena,
1821*)
narration [narasjɔ] *f.* narration,
relating
national [nasjɔnal] national
nature [naty:r] *f.* nature
naturel [natyrel] -le natural
Navarre [nava:r] *f.* ancient king-
dom in the south of France
né [ne] no, not; ne...pas no,
not; —...ni...ni neither
...nor; —...rien nothing;
—...que only (*untranslated
after comparatives*)
né [ne] *p. part.* naître
nécessaire [neces:r] necessary
neige [ne:ʒ] *f.* snow
neiger [ne:ʒe] to snow
n'est-ce pas? [nespa] isn't it
so? don't you? weren't you?
shall we not? *etc., etc.*
nettoyer [netwaje] § 157 to clean
neuf [noef] nine
neu-f [noef] -ve new
nez [ne] *m.* nose; se rire au —
to laugh at oneself; faire (en-
voyer) un pied de — à to put

one's fingers to one's nose,
make grimaces at, laugh at
ni [ni], neither, nor; ne...—...
— neither...nor
nid [ni] *m.* nest
Nîmes [nim] *f.* Nîmes (*town in
the south of France, famous for
Roman remains*)
Noël [noel] *m. or f.* Christmas;
le jour de — Christmas day
noir [nwa:r] black, dark; faire —
to be dark
noisette [nwazet] *f.* hazelnut
nom [nɔ] *m.* name
nombre [nɔ:br] *m.* number
nombreu-x [nɔbrø] —se numer-
ous
nommer [nɔme] to name, call,
appoint; se — to be named or
called
non [nɔ] no, not; ni moi — plus
nor I either; — pas que not
that
nord [nɔ:r] *m.* north
Normandie [nɔrmādi] *f.* Nor-
mandy
nos [no] *pl. of notre*
notre, nos [nɔtr, no] our
nôtre: le — [ləno:tɔr] ours
Notre-Dame [nɔtrdām] *f.* cathe-
dral church of Paris
nourrir [nuri:r] to nourish, feed,
bring up
nous [nu] we, us, to us
nouve-au, -l, -lle [nuvo, nuvel,
nuvel] new; de — again
Nouvelle-Orléans [nuvelɔrlæ̃] *f.*
New Orleans
nouvelles [nuvel] *f. pl.* news
novembre [novã:br] *m.* November
nu [ny] naked, bare
nuage [nua:ʒ] *m.* cloud
nuit [nɥi] *f.* night; cette — last
night; faire — to be dark
nul [nyl] —le no, no one
numéro [nymero] *m.* number

O

obélisque [əbelisk] *m.* obelisk
 objecter [əbʒɛkṭe] to object
 objet [əbʒɛ] *m.* object, article,
 thing
 obliger [əblizɛ] § 156 to force
 obstacle [əpstakl] *m.* obstacle
 obtenir [əptəni:r] § 177 to obtain
 occuper [əkypɛ] to occupy
 octobre [əktɔbr] *m.* October
 œil, *pl.* yeux [œ:j, jø] *m.* eye
 oiseau [wazo] *m.* bird
 on [ɔ̃] one, they, we, you, people,
 some one
 oncle [ɔ̃:kl] *m.* uncle
 ont [ɔ̃] *3 pl. pres. indic.* avoir
 onze [ɔ̃:z] eleven; le — the
 eleventh; les — [le ɔ̃:z] the
 eleven
 opinion [əpinjɔ̃] *f.* opinion
 or [ɔ̃:r] *m.* gold; d'— gold(en)
 or [ɔ̃:r] now, but; — ça come
 now
 oralement [ɔ̄ralmã] orally
 ordinaire [ɔ̄rdine:r] ordinary;
 d'— usually
 ordinairement [ɔ̄dinermã] ordi-
 narily
 ordonner [ɔ̄rdõne] to order, pre-
 scribe, command
 ordre [ɔ̄rdr] *m.* order
 oreille [ɔ̄re:j] *f.* ear
 origine [ɔ̄risin] *f.* origin
 orthographe [ɔ̄rtɔgraf] *f.* orthog-
 raphy, spelling
 ôter [ote] to take off, take out,
 remove
 ou [u] or; — . . . — either . . .
 or; — bien or
 où [u] where, when, in which,
 on which; d'— whence, from
 which, on which
 oublier [ublije] to forget
 ouest [west] *m.* west
 oui [wi] yes

outre [utr] beyond; en — in ad-
 dition; passer — to pass by
 without noticing
 ouvert [uve:r] *p. part.* ouvrir
 open
 ouvre [u:vr] *3 sg. pres. indic.*
 ouvrir
 ouvrir [uvri:r] § 176 to open;
 s'— to open

P

page [pa:ʒ] *m.* page (*attendant*);
 f. page (*leaf*)
 pain [pɛ] *m.* bread
 paire [pe:r] *f.* pair
 palais [palɛ] *m.* palace, building;
 — de justice courthouse
 pâlir [pali:r] to grow pale
 papier [papje] *m.* paper
 par [par] by, through; — où
 by what place, by which,
 through which; — exemple
 for example, (*interj.*) dear me!
 — delà beyond; — là by that
 place, over there
 paragraphe [paragraf] *m.* para-
 graph
 parc [park] *m.* park, grounds
 parce que [parskə] because
 par-ci par-là [parsiparla] here
 and there
 par-dessus [pardøsy] above,
 higher than, over; — (le) bord
 overboard; (*as noun*) overcoat
 pardon [pardɔ̃] *m.* pardon; ex-
 cuse me, I beg your pardon
 parent [parã] *m.* parent, relative
 Paris [pari] *m.* capital city of
 France, situated on the banks
 of the Seine
 parisien [parizjɛ] Parisian
 parler [parle] to speak, talk; —
 français to speak French
 parmi [parmi] amongst
 part [pa:r] *f.* part, share; de sa
 — from him; nulle — nowhere

- participe [partisip] *m.* participle
 partie [parti] *f.* part, game, party
 partir [parti:r] § 166 to leave,
 depart, go away, be off, start;
 à — de from, beginning with
 partout [partu] everywhere
 pas [pa] *m.* step, pace, footstep
 pas [pu] no, not; ne . . . — no,
 not; — un (ne) not one; — de
 no, not, none; non — not;
 n'est ce —? shall we not? etc.
 passage [pasa:ʒ] *m.* passage
 passé [pase] *m.* (the) past
 passé [pase] past, gone, over,
 last
 passer [pase] to pass, pass on,
 go, go by, put on; spend (*time*)
 — devant to pass, go past;
 — chez to call on; se — to
 take place, happen; se — de
 to do without
 patiner [patine] to skate
 patrie [patri] *f.* native land
 patte [pat] *f.* paw, foot; —s de
 derrière hind feet; —s de
 devant fore feet
 pauvre [po:vr] poor, paltry
 payer [peje] § 157 to pay, pay for
 pays [pei] *m.* country, locality
 paysage [peiza:ʒ] *m.* landscape
 paysan [peizā] *m.* peasant
 pêche [pe:ʃ] *f.* fishing
 peigne [pen] *m.* comb
 peine [pe:n] *f.* pain, difficulty,
 trouble, sorrow; à — hardly;
 ce n'est pas la — it is not worth
 while; faire de la — à to pain,
 hurt feelings
 peinture [pēty:r] *f.* paint, painting
 pencher [pāʃe] to incline, bend
 pendant [pādā] during; — que
 whilst
 pendre [pā:dr] § 210 to hang
 penser [pēse] to think; vous
 pensez si imagine whether; —
 à to think of; — de to have an
 opinion of; je pense bien I
 should think so
 perdre [perdr] § 210 to lose, ruin
 père [pe:r] *m.* father
 perle [perl] *f.* pearl
 permettre [permestr] § 198 to per-
 mit; se — to take the liberty;
 permis permitted
 personnage [persōna:ʒ] *m.* per-
 sonage, character
 personne [person] *f.* person; *pl.*
 people
 personne [person] *m.* anybody,
 nobody; ne . . . — not any one,
 no one, nobody
 petit [pāti] small, little, short;
 m. little one, young one
 petit-fils [pātifis] *m.* grandson
 petits pois [p(e)tipwa] *m. pl.*
 green peas
 peu [pø] *m.* little; (*also as ad-*
 verb) little; — à — little by
 little; dis-moi un — tell me
 now; si — de chose so little
 peuple [pœpl] *m.* people, nation
 peur [pœ:r] *f.* fear; lui faire —
 to frighten him; avoir — to
 be afraid; avoir grand' — to be
 in great fear; de — que . . . ne
 for fear lest
 peut [pø] *S sg. pres. indic.* pouvoir
 peut-être (que) [pøtē:tr (kø)] per-
 haps
 photographie [fotografi] *f.* photo-
 graph
 phrase [fro:z] *f.* phrase, sentence
 pièce [pjɛs] *f.* room; play (*the-*
 atrical)
 pied [pje] *m.* foot; à — on foot;
 coup de — kick
 pierre [pjɛ:r] *f.* stone
 Pierre [pjɛ:r] *m.* Peter
 pipe [pip] *f.* pipe
 pis [pi] worse
 pitié [pitje] *f.* pity; avoir — de
 to have pity on

place [plas] <i>f.</i> place, post, square, seat, room, position	Pologne [polɔ̃n̩] <i>f.</i> Poland
plafond [plafɔ̃] <i>m.</i> ceiling	pomme [pɔ̃m] <i>f.</i> apple; — de terre potato
plaie [plɛ] <i>f.</i> wound	pommier [pɔ̃mje] <i>m.</i> apple tree
plaintre [plɛ̃dr̩] § 190 to pity; se — to complain	pont [pɔ̃] <i>m.</i> bridge
plaine [plein̩] <i>f.</i> plain	Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃ncef] <i>m.</i> bridge over the Seine in Paris
plaire [plɛ:r̩] § 201 to please; s'il vous plaît if you please;	porte [pɔ̃rt] <i>f.</i> door, gate; — à — next door
plaît-il? what did you say?	porte-plume [port plym] <i>m.</i> pen-holder
plaisanter [plezāt̩] to joke, jest	porter [pɔ̃rt̩] to bear, carry, take, wear, put; se — (bien) to be (well); bien portant in good health, well; comment vous portez-vous? how are you?
plaisir [plezi:r̩] <i>m.</i> pleasure; faire — to give pleasure	portière [portje:r̩] <i>f.</i> coach door, window (of car)
plancher [plā:ʃe] <i>m.</i> floor	poser [po:ze] to place, lay, set; — une question to ask a question
plein [plɛ] full; en — air in the open air	posséder [pɔ̃sede] § 158 to possess, own
pleurer [plɔ̃re] to weep	possible [pɔ̃sibl̩] possible; faire son — to do his best
pleuvoir [ploevwa:r̩] § 220 to rain	poste [post] <i>f.</i> post (office)
plu [ply] <i>p. part.</i> pleuvoir	potage [pɔta:ʒ] <i>m.</i> soup
pluie [plqi] <i>f.</i> rain	poulet [pule] <i>m.</i> chicken
plume [plym] <i>f.</i> feather, pen	poupée [pupe] <i>f.</i> doll
plupart [plypa:r̩] <i>f.</i> greater part, majority	pour [pur] for, in order to, to; — que in order that; — ainsi dire so to speak
pluriel [plyrjel̩] <i>m.</i> plural	pourquoi [purkwa] why; c'est — therefore, so, hence, that is why
plus [ply] more; — de more, no more; le — the more, the most; — de (with numerals) more than; ne...— no more, no longer; d'autant — que the more so as; de — additional; n'être — que to be no longer anything but; ne...pas non — not...either	pourrai [pure] 1 <i>sg. fut.</i> pouvoir
plusieurs [plyzjœ:r̩] several, many	ourtant [purtā] however, still
plutôt [plyto] rather	pouvoir [puvwa:r̩] § 221 to be able, can, may; il se peut it may be; il ne se peut rien nothing can be; on pourrait dire one might say
poche [poʃ] <i>f.</i> pocket	prairie [preri] <i>f.</i> meadow
poids [pwa] <i>m.</i> weight	précieux [presjø] —se precious, valuable
point [pwɛ̄] <i>m.</i> point; être sur le — de to be at the point of; — du jour daybreak	précipiter: se — [səpresipite] to rush, dart, hasten
point [pwɛ̄] no, not; ne...— de not any, no	
poire [pwa:r̩] <i>f.</i> pear	
poirier [pwarje] <i>m.</i> pear tree	
pois [pwa] <i>m.</i> pea	
police [polis] <i>f.</i> police	

- précis [presi] precise, exact; à une heure —e at one o'clock
 precisely
- préférer [prefere] § 158 to prefer
- premi-er [prəmje] —ère first, former; marcher le — to walk ahead
- prendre [prā:dr] § 202 to take, catch, assume, seize, suppose, reckon; — un billet to buy a ticket (*railroad*)
- préparer [prepare] to prepare; se — to be prepared, get ready
- près [prē] near by; — de near, nearly; à peu — almost, nearly
- présent [prezā] *m.* present; à — now
- présenter [prezāte] to present, introduce; se — to present oneself
- président [prezidā] *m.* president
- presque [prəsk] nearly, hardly, almost
- prêt [pre] ready
- prêter [prate] to lend
- prêtre [pre:t'r] *m.* priest
- preuve [prœ:v] *f.* proof
- prier [pri:e] to pray, pray to, beg, ask; je vous en prie I beg of you
- prince [prē:s] *m.* prince, king
- printemps [prētā] *m.* spring; au — in spring
- pris [pri] *1 sg. p. def. and p. part.*
 prendre
- prise [pri:z] *f.* taking, capture
- prison [prizō] *f.* prison
- prix [pri] *m.* price; prize
- prochain [prɔʃē] next; *m.* neighbor, fellow creature
- produire [prədu:r] § 185 to produce
- professeur [profesɔ:r] *m.* professor, teacher
- profession [profesjō] *f.* profession, calling
- profiter [prɔfite] to profit, avail oneself
- projet [prɔʒe] *m.* project, plan
- promenade [prəmnad] *f.* walk, walking, drive; — en bateau, a row, sail; aller à la — to go for a walk
- promener [pramne] § 158 to carry about, drive about; se — à pied (en voiture, en bateau, à cheval etc.) to take a walk (go for a drive, go for a sail, ride, etc.); se — à bicyclette to ride a bicycle
- prononcer [prənɔ:se] to pronounce
 pronunciation [prənɔ:sjusjō] *f.* pronunciation
- proposer [propo:ze] to propose
- propre [prɔpr] clean; own
- protestant [prɔtestā] *m.* Protestant
- Provence [prɔvā:s] *f.* a province in the south of France
- proverbe [prɔverb] *m.* proverb
- prudence [prydā:s] *f.* prudence
- prudent [prydā] prudent
- Prusse [prys] *f.* Prussia (*a state in Germany*)
- pu [py] *p. part.* pouvoir
- puis [pq'i] *1 sg. pres. indic.* pourvoir
- puis [pq'i] then
- puits [pq'i] *m.* well
- punir [pyni:r] to punish
- pupitre [pypitr] *m.* desk
- pur [py:r] pure
- put [py] *3 sg. p. def.* pouvoir

Q

- quand [kā] when; depuis —?
 how long?
- quant à [kōta] as to, as for
- quarante [karā:t] forty
- quart [ka:r] *m.* quarter
- quatorze [katorz] fourteen

- quatre [katr] four
 quatre-vingts [katrəvɛ̃] eighty;
 quatre-vingt-dix-sept ninety-
 seven
 que [kɛ] *pron.* whom, which,
 that, what; qu'est-ce qui?
 what? qu'est-ce — c'est —?
 what is? ce — that which, what,
 which; qu'est-ce qu'il y a?
 what is there? qu'as-tu? what
 is the matter with you? c'est
 là — it is there that, that is
 where
 que [kɛ] *conj.* that (*used as a sub-
 stitute for other conjunctions like
 tandis que, lorsque, quand, si,
 etc.*); when, than, as, till, let
 (*with subjunctive*)
 que [kɛ] *adv.* how, how many,
 how much, what (a), than;
 ne... — only, but; ne... rien
 — nothing but; qu'elle est
 jolie! how pretty she is!
 quel [kel] —le what, which; who
 quelconque [kelkɔ̃k] whatever
 quelque [kelkɔ̃] some, few; —
 chose something
 quelquefois [kelkɔ̃fwa] sometimes
 quelqu'un, quelques-uns [kelkɔ̃]
 kelkɔ̃zœ̃] some one, some
 question [kɛstjɔ̃] *f.* question
 qui [ki] who, which, that, whom;
 à — whose; ce — what
 quinze [kɛ:z] fifteen; — jours
 a fortnight
 quitter [kite] to quit, leave, lay
 aside
 quoi [kwa] what; à — bon what
 use; en —? of what (material)?
 quoique [kwakɔ̃] although
- R**
- raconter [rakɔ̃te] to relate, tell
 raisin [rezɛ̃] *m.* grape(s)
 raison [rezɔ̃] *f.* reason, sense,
 avoir — to be (in the) right
- ramasser [ramase] to pick up
 ramener [ramne] § 158 to bring
 back, bring home again
 rapidement [rapidmā] rapidly,
 quickly
 rappeler: se — [sə raple] § 158
 to remember
 rapporter [rapɔ̃te] to bring back
 rare [ra:r] rare, scanty, infrequent
 rarement [rarmā] rarely, seldom,
 not often
 recevoir [rəsøvwa:r] § 213 to re-
 ceive
 réciter [resite] to recite
 recommencer [rakomāse] § 156
 to begin again, do again
 reconnaître [rəkɔ̃ne:tr] § 188 to
 recognize, acknowledge
 reçut [rasy] 3 *sg. p. def.* recevoir
 regarder [rəgarde] to look at, look
 règle [re:g] *f.* rule, ruler
 règne [ren] *m.* reign
 régner [rene] § 158 to reign, rule
 regret [rəgrɛ̃] *m.* regret
 regretter [rəgrɛ̃te] to regret
 rejoindre [rəʒwɛ:dr] § 190 to re-
 join, meet with, catch up to
 relever [ralve] § 158 to heighten,
 raise, lift up
 religieu-x [rəlizjø] -se religious
 religion [rəlizjɔ̃] *f.* religion
 remarquer [rəmarke] to remark,
 notice
 remercier [rəmersje] to thank
 remettre [rəmetr] § 198 to restore,
 put off, put back, put on again;
 se — to recover, begin again;
 remis recovered; se — en route
 to set out again
 remonter [rəmɔ̃te] to mount
 again, wind (*watch*).
 remplir [rəpli:r] to fill
 remuer [rəmɥe] to move, stir
 rencontre [rākɔ̃tr] *f.* meeting:
 aller à leur — to go to meet
 them

- rencontrer** [rākōtre] to meet
rendre [rā:dr] § 210 to render,
 give back, make; **se —** to go,
 proceed; surrender
rentrer [rātret] to return, return
 home
renverser [rāvērse] to overturn,
 upset
repas [rēpa] *m.* meal
répéter [repete] § 158 to repeat
répliquer [replike] to reply
répondre [repō:dr] § 210 to an-
 swer
réponse [repō:s] *f.* reply
repos [rēpo] *m.* repose, peace,
 rest
reposer [rēpoze] to repose, rest;
se — to rest
reprendre [rēprā:dr] § 202 to
 take again, reply
représenter [rēprezātē] to repre-
 sent, stand for
république [rep'yblik] *f.* republic
respecter [respekte] to respect
ressembler [rēsēble]: — à to
 resemble
restaurant [restɔ:r̥] *m.* restau-
 rant
rester [reste] to remain, stay;
en — là to stop there, get no
 further
retard [rēta:r̥] *m.* delay; **être en**
 — to be late
retarder [rētarde] to delay, be
 slow, be behind
retirer [rētire] to pull out; **se —**
 to retire
retour [rētu:r̥] *m.* return; **être de**
 — to have returned, be back
retourner [rēturne] to go back,
 return, turn up, turn over; **se**
 — to turn round
retraite [rētret] *f.* retreat, retire-
 ment, departure
réussir [reysi:r̥] to succeed
rêve [rē:v] *m.* dream
réveiller [revēje] to waken; **se —**
 to wake(n) (up)
révéler [revele] § 158 to reveal
revenir [rēvnī:r̥] § 178 to come
 back; **revenu** (having) returned
rêver [rēve] to dream
revoir [rēvwa:r̥] § 224 to see
 again; **au —** good-bye
révolution [revolysjō] *f.* revolu-
 tion
revolver [revolvə:r̥] *m.* revolver
ricaner [rikane] to sneer
riche [riʃ] rich
ridicule [ridikyl] *m.* ridicule;
tourner en — to ridicule
rien [rjē] anything, nothing; **ne**
 . . . — not anything, nothing;
je n'en sais — I do not know;
cela ne fait — that doesn't
 matter
rire [ri:r̥] § 204 to laugh, smile
rire [ri:r̥] *m.* laughter
rivière [rivje:r̥] *f.* river (*flowing*
into another larger river)
robe [rōb] *f.* robe, dress, frock,
 gown
Robert [rōbe:r̥] *m.* Robert
rocher [rōʃe] *m.* rock
roi [rwa] *m.* king
roman [rōmā] *m.* novel
Rome [rōm] *f.* Rome
rose [ro:z] *f.* rose
Rouen [rwā] *m. city on the Seine*
northwest of Paris
rouge [ru:ʒ] red
rouge-gorge [ru:ʒgorʒ] *m.* robin
rouleau [rulo] *m.* roll, roller
rouler [rule] to roll
route [rut] *f.* route, way, course;
en — on the way; **être en —**
 to be on the way, be off
royal [rwajal] royal
rue [ry] *f.* street
ruine [rjini] *f.* ruin
ruiner [rjine] to ruin, destroy
Russie [ryssi] *f.* Russia

S

- sable [sa:bł] *m.* sand
 sac [sak] *m.* sack, bag, satchel
 sage [sa:z] wise, well-behaved,
 good
 saint [sé] sacred, holy; *m.* saint
 Sainte-Chapelle [sé:tø:japɛl] *f.*
a church in Paris
 Saint Louis [sélwi] Louis IX
(king of France from 1226 to
1270)
 sais [se] *1 sg. pres. indic.* savoir
 saisir [sezi:r] to seize
 saison [sezɔ̃] *f.* season
 sait [se] *3 sg. pres. indic.* savoir
 salade [salad] *f.* salad
 sale [sal] dirty
 salle [sal] *f.* hall, room, theater;
 — de classe classroom; —
 à manger dining room
 salon [salɔ̃] *m.* drawing-room,
 parlor
 saluer [salve] to salute, bow to,
 bow
 Samaritain [samaritɛ] *m.* Samaritan
(biblical character; a merciful man)
 samedi [samdi] *m.* Saturday
 sang [sã] *m.* blood
 sans [sã] without, were it not for;
 — que without
 santé [sãtɛ] *f.* health
 sapristi! [sapristi] my goodness!
 sauter [sote] to leap, jump
 sauver [sove] to save
 savoir [savwa:r] § 222 to know,
 know how; — le français to
 know French; aucun homme
 ne saurait no man can
 savon [savɔ̃] *m.* soap
 scène [sé:n] *f.* scene
 science [sjã:s] *f.* science, knowl-
 edge
 se [sø] oneself, to oneself, him-
 self, herself, etc.
 sec, sèche [sek, seʃ] dry
 second [søgɔ̃] second
 seconde [søgɔ̃:d] *f.* second
 section [séksjɔ̃] *f.* section, para-
 graph
 Seine [sé:n] *f.* river on which
Paris is situated
 seize [se:z] sixteen
 seizième [sezjɛm] sixteenth
 semaine [sømen] *f.* week
 sembler [sã:ble] to seem
 sens [sã:s] *m.* sense, direction,
 way
 sentir [sati:r] § 166 to feel, smell;
 — bon to smell sweet; se —
 to feel oneself, feel
 sept [sɛt] seven
 septembre [septã:br] *m.* Septem-
 ber
 septième [setjɛm] seventh
 serai [sare] *1 sg. fut.* être
 servi [servi] *p. part.* servir ready
(of meals)
 serviette [servjet] *f.* towel, napkin
 servir [servi:r] § 166 to serve,
 be of service, be of use; — à
 quelque chose to be of some use;
 se — de to use
 seul [søl] alone, single
 seulement [sølmã] only, but,
 even, merely
 si [si] if, whether
 si [si] so, however; — rapide que
 however swift
 Sicile [sisil] *f.* Sicily *(an island*
and province of Italy)
 siècle [sjekl] *m.* century
 sien [sjɛ̃] his, hers, its; les — s
 his own
 siffler [sifle] to whistle, hiss, sing
 siflet [siflɛ̃] *m.* whistle
 signe [sip] *m.* sign; faire — to
 beckon
 signifier [sipifje] to mean
 silence [silã:s] *m.* silence
 singulier [ségylje] *m.* singular

- sire [si:r] *m.* sire, your majesty
 six [sis] six
 sixième [sizjem] sixth
 sœur [sœ:r] *f.* sister
 soi [swa] oneself, himself
 soie [swa] *f.* silk
 soif [swaf] *f.* thirst; avoir — to be thirsty
 soigner [swane] to care for
 soin [swɛ] *m.* care; avoir (prendre) — to take care
 soir [swa:r] *m.* evening; le — in the evening; hier — last evening
 soirée [sware] *f.* evening
 sois [swa] 1 *sg. pres. subj.* and 2 *sg. impv.* être
 soixante [swasə:t] sixty; —-dix seventy
 soixante-quinze [swazə:tke:z] seventy-five
 sol [sɔl] *m.* soil, ground
 soldat [sɔlda] *m.* soldier
 soleil [sole:j] *m.* sun
 somme [sɔm] *f.* sum
 sommeil [sɔme:j] *m.* sleep
 sommes [sɔm] 1 *pl. pres. ind.* être
 sommet [sɔme] *m.* summit, top
 son [sɔn] *m.* sound
 son, sa, ses [sɔn, sa, se] his, her, its
 songe [sɔŋ] *m.* dream
 songer [sɔŋe] § 156 to think
 sonner [sɔne] to sound, ring, strike (*clock*)
 sorte [sɔrt] *f.* sort; de — que so that
 sortir [sɔrti:r] § 166 to come out, go out, stick out, arise; faire — to put out, force out
 sot [so] —te foolish, stupid
 sou [su] *m.* sou, halfpenny, cent
 souffrant [sufrā] poorly, not well
 soulager [sulaze] § 156 to relieve
 soulier [sulje] *m.* (low) shoe
 soupe [sup] *f.* soup
 sous [su] under, in the reign of, in
- souvenir [suvni:r] *m.* recollection, remembrance
 souvenir: se — [səsuvni:r] § 178 to remember; je me souviens (de), il me souvient (de) I remember
 souvent [suvā] often
 soyez [swaje] 2 *pl. pres. subj. ana impv.* être
 soyons [swajɔ] 1 *pl. pres. subj. and impv.* être
 sport [spo:r] *m.* sport
 statue [stati] *f.* statue
 Strasbourg [strazbu:r] *m.* Strasbourg
 stylo(graphe) [stilo(graf)] *m.* fountain pen
 sud [syd] *m.* south
 suis [sqi] 1 *sg. pres. indic.* être, and suivre
 Suisse [sqis] *f.* Switzerland
 suite [sqit] *f.* continuation; tout de — immediately
 suivant [sqivā] *prep.* according to, following; *adj.* following; noun le (la) suivant (-e) the next (*boy, girl*)
 suivre [sqi:vr] § 206 to follow; — des yeux to look after, watch
 sujet [syʒe] *m.* subject, cause
 sur [syr] on, upon, over, about
 sûr [sy:r] sure, certain
 surtout [syrtu] above all, especially, particularly
 sus [sy] 1 *sg. p. def.* savoir
 syllabe [sila:b] *f.* syllable
 Syrie [siri] *f.* Syria

T

- table [tabl] *f.* table
 tableau [tablo] *m.* picture, blackboard; — noir blackboard
 tâcher [ta:ʃe] to try, endeavor
 taire: se — [sə te:r] § 201 to be silent, become silent

- tandis que [tādi(s)kə] whilst
tant [tā] so, so many, so much;
— de fois so often; — que as
much as, as long as; — mieux
so much the better; — pis so
much the worse
tante [tā:t] f. aunt
tard [ta:r] late; plus — later (on)
tasse [ta:s] f. cup
tâter [ta:tē] to feel
taxi(mètre) [taksi(mestr)] m. taxi-
cab (= meter for indicating
price of 'run' of a cab)
te [tə] thee, to thee, you, to you
tel [tel] — le such, like, so; un —
such a one
tellement [tēlmē] so, so much
temps [tā] m. time, weather;
avec le —, à — in time; de —
en — from time to time; dans
le — que whilst; en même —
at the same time; par le —
qu'il fait in such weather as
it is; faire beau — to be
fine weather; mauvais — bad
weather; quel — fait-il? what
sort of weather is it?
tendresse [tādres] f. affection
tenir [tēnir] § 177 to hold, have,
hold on, hold out, keep, resist;
be anxious, insist on; be con-
tained in, find room in; il ne
tiendra qu'à vous que it will be
your own fault if; — bon to
stand fast; tiens! tenez! now
then! here! look! indeed! se —
to hold oneself, stay, stand
tennis [tenis] m. tennis
tenter [tā:te] to attempt, tempt
terre [te:r] f. earth, ground, land;
par —, à — on the ground; la
Terre sainte the Holy Land
terrible [teribl] terrible
tête [tē:t] f. head
texte [tekst] m. text
thé [te] m. tea
- théâtre [tea:tr] m. theater
théière [tejē:r] f. teapot
Thomas [toma] m. Thomas
tien [tjē] thine, yours
tiens! [tjē] (1 sg. pres. indic. and 2
sg. impv. of tenir) hallo! in-
deed! is that so!
tiers [tjē:r] m. third part
tins [tē] 1 sg. p. def. tenir
tirer [tire] to draw, pull, deduce,
take, shoot
toi [twa] thee, thou, you
toilette [twalet] f. toilet, dress;
faire sa — to dress
tomber [tōbe] to fall; faire — to
knock down
ton, ta, tes [tō], ta, te] thy, your
ton [tō] m. tone, voice
tort [to:r] m. wrong; avoir — to
be (in the) wrong
tôt [to] soon; plus — sooner
toucher [tu:zē] to touch; — à to
be near, approach; n'y touchez
pas do not touch it, hands off
toujours [tužu:r] always, still,
at all events; disait — kept
saying; pour — for ever
tour [tu:r] f. tower
Touraine [turen] f. province in
the center of France, in which
Tours is situated
tourner [turne] to turn
Tours [tur] m. city southwest of
Paris, on the Loire river, the
seat of a famous cathedral
tout, toute, tous, toutes [tu, tut,
tu(s), tut] all, any, every,
everything; quite; — le monde
everybody; — le jour, toute la
journée the whole day; tous les
jours every day; tous or toutes
(les) deux both; toutes les
années every year; — à fait
altogether; — à l'heure a little
while ago; directly; — de suite
at once; — ce que all that,

whatever; — de même all the same; — à coup suddenly; rien du — nothing at all; le — the whole; pas du — not at all
traduction [tradyksjɔ̃] *f.* translation

traduire [tradɥi:r] § 185 to translate

train [trɛ̃] *m.* train; en — de busy at

trait [tre] *m.* trait, feature, action

trakter [tret̪e] to treat, entertain; — de to call

tramway [tramwe] *m.* tramway, street car

tranquille [trākil] quiet, calm, easy in mind, at peace; soyez — don't be uneasy, don't worry, be quiet

tranquillement [trākilmā̃] calmly

travail [trava(:)j] *m.* work, labor

travailler [travaje] to work

travers [trave:r] *m.* breadth; à — through, across; en — de across

traverser [traverse] to traverse, cross, go through; — en courant to run across

treize [tre:z] thirteen

trembler [trâble] to tremble

trente [trā:t] thirty

très [tre] very, very much

trésor [trezo:r] *m.* treasure

triomphe [triɔf] *m.* triumph

triste [trist] sad

trois [trwa] three

troisième [trwazjem] third

tromper [trɔpe] to deceive; se — to be mistaken

trop [tro] too, too much, too many

trot [tro] *m.* trot

trouver [truve] to find, think;

aller — to go to (see, meet); se — to find oneself, be, feel, be situated

tu [ty] thou, you

tuer [tɥe] to kill

Tuileries [tɥilri] *f. pl.* Tuileries (*once a royal palace in Paris; now only the gardens remain*)

tulipe [tylip] *f.* tulip

U

un, une [œ̃, yn] one, a, an; l'— one; l'— (et) l'autre both; les uns les autres one another

utile [ytil] useful

utilité [ytilite] *f.* utility, use

V

va [va] 3 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impv. aller

vacances [vakā:s] *f. pl.* holidays

vache [vaʃ] *f.* cow

vain [vē̃] vain; en — in vain

vais [ve] 1 sg. pres. indic. aller

vaisseau [veso] *m.* ship

vaisselle [vesel] *f.* dishes

valet [vale] *m.* servant

valeur [valœ:r] *f.* value

vallée [vale] *f.* valley

valoir [valwa:r] § 223 to be worth;

— mieux to be better; — la peine to be worth the trouble or worth while

varier [varje] to vary

vas [va] 2 sg. pres. indic. aller

vaudrai [vodre] 1 sg. fut. valoir

vaut [vo] 3 sg. pres. indic. valoir

vendre [vā:dr] § 210 to sell

vendredi [vā:drēdi] *m.* Friday;

Vendredi saint Good Friday

venir [veni:r] § 178 to come; vint

à passer happened to go by;

— de to have just; on venait

de lui donner they had just given him; il venait voir he came to see; lui — à l'esprit

to occur to him; il vint à nous he came to us; viens vẽs moi

come to me

- vent [vā] *m.* wind; il fait du — it is windy
- verrai [vɛrə] *1 sg. fut.* voir
- verre [vɛ:r] *m.* glass
- vers [vɛ:r] towards, to, about
- Versailles [versa:j] *m. city about twelve miles southwest of Paris. It contains the great château which was the chief residence of Louis XIV.*
- verser [verse] to pour (out)
- vert [vɛ:r] green
- vertu [vert'y] *f.* virtue
- veston [vestɔ] *m.* sack coat
- veuillez [vœje] *impv.* of vouloir be so good as, please
- veut [vø] *3 sg. pres. ind.* vouloir
- veux [vø] *1 sg. pres. ind.* vouloir
- viande [vjā:d] *f.* meat
- vide [vid] empty
- vie [vi] *f.* life, living
- vieil [vje:j] *see vieux*
- vieillard [vje:a:r] *m.* old man
- viendrai [vjɛd're] *1 sg. fut.* venir
- viens [vjɛ] *1 sg. pres. ind. and 2 sg. impv.* venir
- vieux, vieil, vieille [vjø, vjɛ:j, vje:j] old, aged; un vieux an old man, old fellow
- vigne [vij] *f.* vine(s)
- vignoble [vijnobl] *m.* vineyard
- vigoureux [vigurø] —se vigorous
- vilain [vilɛ] ugly, nasty
- village [vila:z] *m.* village
- ville [vil] *f.* town, city; en — downtown, in town
- vin [vɛ] *m.* wine
- vingt [vɛ] twenty (*for numerals between vingt and trente, see Lesson XXXV*)
- vint [vɛ] *3 sg. p. def.* venir
- vis [vi] *1 sg. p. def.* voir
- visite [vizit] *f.* visit
- visiter [vizite] to visit, see in detail, inspect
- vite [vit] quick, quickly, fast
- vivre [vi:vṛ] § 211 to live; faire — to maintain; vive! long live! hurrah for!
- voici [vwasi] see here, here is, here are; nous —! here we are!
- voilà [vwala] behold, there is, there are, that is, there we are! — que behold, lo; — ce que c'est that's how things go; en — un that's one; la —! here (there) it is! nous —! here we are!
- voir [vwa:r] § 224 to see; faire — to show; se — to be seen
- voisin [vwazɛ] neighboring; *m.* neighbor
- voiture [vwatyr] *f.* carriage, car; en — in a carriage; se promener en — to take a drive
- voix [vwa] *f.* voice
- voler [vole] to fly
- voler [vole] to steal, rob
- voleur [vole:r] *m.* thief, robber; au —! stop thief!
- volontiers [vəlɔ:tje] willingly, gladly
- Voltaire [vɔltɛ:r] famous French philosopher, writer and leader of social progress, b. 1694, d. 1778
- volume [vɔlym] *m.* volume
- vont [vɔ] *3 pl. pres. indic.* aller
- votre, vos [vɔtr, vo] your
- vôtre [vo:tr] yours
- voudrai [vudre] *1 sg. fut.* vouloir
- vouloir [vulwa:r] § 225 to will, wish, want; en — à to be angry with; je voudrais (bien) I should like; — dire to mean; aurait voulu would have liked
- vous [vu] you, to you, yourself, yourselves
- voyage [vwaja:z] *m.* journey, voyage; bon —! a pleasant journey! compagnon de — fellow traveler
- voyager [vwaja:zɛ] § 156 to travel
- voyageur [vwaja:zœ:r] *m.* traveler

vrai [vrɛ] true, real

vraiment [vrəmɑ̃] really

vraisemblablement [vresãblablə-
mã] probably

vu [vy] *p. part.* voir

vue [vy] *f.* sight, view

Y

y [i] there, in it, to it, at it, on it,
of it; il — a there is, there are;
il — en a there is (are) some
yeux [jø] *pl. of* œil eyes

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-FRENCH

[*h* aspirate is indicated thus: 'h']

A

a, an un, *m.*, une, *f.*; — franc — dozen un franc la douzaine; — franc — day un franc par jour
abandon abandonner
abbess abbesse, *f.*
ability capacité, *f.*, talent, *m.*
able: be — pouvoir, savoir
about de, autour de, environ, sur;
— three o'clock vers (les) trois heures; — it en; be — s'agir de, être sur le point de; he has this good thing — him il a cela de bon; set — se mettre à
above au-dessus de
abroad à l'étranger
absence absence, *f.*
absent absent
abundant abondant
accept accepter
accession accession, *f.*
accident accident, *m.*
accidental accidentel, par accident
accompany accompagner
according to selon, d'après
account: on — of à cause de; en
ache: have head — avoir mal à la tête; my head —s j'ai mal à la tête
acquaintance connaissance, *f.*
acquainted: be — with connaître; become — with faire connaissance avec, faire la connaissance de
acquire acquérir

across de l'autre côté de, en face de
act agir, se conduire
action action, *f.*, trait, *m.*
actor acteur, *m.*, comédien, *m.*
add ajouter
address adresser
adjective adjetif, *m.*
admire admirer
admit admettre
adorn faire l'ornement de
advance avancer
advice avis, *m.*, conseil, *m.*
advise conseiller, recommander
affair affaire, *f.*
affection affection, *f.*
afraid: be — (of) avoir peur (de), craindre; — of effrayé de; be much — avoir grand'peur, avoir bien peur
Africa Afrique, *f.*
after prep. and adv. après; ten minutes — five cinq heures dix (minutes)
after conj. après que
afternoon après-midi, *m.* and *f.*
afterwards ensuite, puis, après, plus tard
again encore, encore une fois, de nouveau
against contre
age âge, *m.*; be twenty years of — avoir vingt ans
ago il y a
ahead: walk — marcher le premier

aid aider, secourir	— je n'en ai pas; have you —?
air air, <i>m.</i>	en avez-vous? don't give him —
Ajaccio Ajaccio	ne lui en donnez pas; —thing
alas! hélas!	(with neg.) rien; —one (with
all tout (<i>pl. tous</i>); — that (which)	neg.) personne
tout ce qui; not at — pas du	anybody, anyone quelqu'un, on;
tout; — passions toutes les	not... — ne... personne, ne
passions	... aucun
allow laisser, permettre	anyone see anybody
almost presque	anything quelque chose, <i>m.</i> ; not
alone seul; let — laisser tran-	... — ne... rien; — good
quille	quelque chose de bon: not...
along par; as they went — che-	— good ne... rien de bon
min faisant	anywhere: not... — ne...
aloud à haute voix	nulle part
already déjà	apiece chacun, la pièce
Alsace Alsace, <i>f.</i>	appear paraître, apparaître, sem-
also aussi	bler, comparaître
although bien que, quoique	appetite appétit, <i>m.</i>
always toujours	applaud applaudir à
ambassador ambassadeur, <i>m.</i>	apple pomme, <i>f.</i>
ambition ambition, <i>f.</i>	apple tree pommier, <i>m.</i>
America Amérique <i>f.</i>	appoint nommer
American américain	approach <i>n.</i> approche, <i>f.</i>
amiable aimable	approach <i>v.</i> approcher de, s'appro-
among, amongst parmi, entre, chez	cher de
amuse amuser; — oneself, s'a-	approbation approbation, <i>f.</i>
muser	approve trouver bon
ancestors ancêtres, <i>m. pl.</i> ; aieux,	April avril, <i>m.</i>
<i>m. pl.</i>	Arab Arabe, <i>m.</i>
ancient ancien, antique	are see be; here is (or are) voici;
and et; go — visit aller visiter,	there is (or are) voilà
aller voir	argument argument, <i>m.</i>
angry: — at, — with fâché de	Ariosto Arioste (l')
(contre); be —, get — se fâcher	arise s'élever, naître
animal animal, <i>m.</i> , bête, <i>f.</i>	arithmetic arithmétique, <i>f.</i>
another un autre, encore un; not	arm bras, <i>m.</i>
— ne... pas (point) d'autre	army armée, <i>f.</i>
answer <i>n.</i> réponse, <i>f.</i>	around autour de; she looks —
answer <i>v.</i> répondre	her elle regarde autour d'elle;
ant fourmi, <i>f.</i>	go — the city faire le tour de la
antechamber antichambre, <i>f.</i>	ville
antiquity antiquité, <i>f.</i>	arouse exciter
anxious: be — tenir à	arrange arranger
any de + def. art.; de; en; au-	arrest arrêter
cun, quelconque, tout; I haven't	arrival arrivée, <i>f.</i>

arrive arriver	auburn châtain
art art, <i>m.</i>	audience assistance, <i>f.</i> , assistants, <i>m. pl.</i>
article article, <i>m.</i> , objet, <i>m.</i> ; — of dress article de toilette	August août, <i>m.</i>
artist artiste, <i>m.</i>	Augustus Auguste, <i>m.</i>
as comme; aussi, si; pendant que, en; — . . . — aussi . . . que; not — . . . — pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que; not so . . . — pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que, moins . . . que; — much money — autant d'argent que; — long — tant que; — soon — aussitôt que; — if comme si; — well — aussi bien que; — to quant à	author auteur, <i>m.</i>
ascend monter (sur)	autumn automne, <i>m.</i> ; in — en automne
ashamed: be —, feel — avoir honte	avenue avenue, <i>f.</i>
ask demander, prier; — for de- mander; — him for it le lui demander; — oneself se de- mander	avidity avidité, <i>f.</i>
asleep endormi; be — être en- dormi, dormir; we have been — nous avons dormi; fall — s'endormir	avoid éviter
assail assaillir	await attendre
assist aider	awake <i>intr.</i> se réveiller
associate s'associer (avec)	away: go — partir, s'en aller; take — ôter; far — loin, loin d'ici; run — se sauver
assure assurer	axe 'hache, <i>f.</i>
astonish étonner	
astonishment étonnement, <i>m.</i>	
at à, chez, de; — (the house, shop, office, etc., of) chez; — the doctor's chez le docteur; — my father's chez mon père; — home chez moi, chez toi, etc.; — my house chez moi; — our house chez nous; — daybreak dès le point du jour	B
attach attacher	back dos, <i>m.</i>
attack attaquer	back: be — être de retour; give — rendre; come — revenir; go — retourner; bring — ramener
attention attention, <i>f.</i> ; pay —, give — faire attention	bad mauvais, méchant, peu loyal badly mal; hurt (very) — faire (beaucoup de) mal à
attract attirer	Bæda Bède, <i>m.</i>
	bag sac, <i>m.</i>
	bake cuire
	ball (<i>for playing</i>) balle, <i>f.</i> ; play — jouer à la balle
	ball (<i>dance</i>) bal, <i>m.</i>
	banish bannir
	bank (<i>of stream</i>) bord, <i>m.</i> ; on the — au bord
	bank (<i>financial</i>) banque, <i>f.</i> ; — bill (<i>note</i>) billet (<i>m.</i>) de banque
	banker banquier, <i>m.</i>
	banking house maison (<i>f.</i>) de banque
	barefoot nu-pieds, les pieds nus
	bareheaded découvert, la tête nue
	bargain marché, <i>m.</i>
	bask se chauffer
	basket panier, <i>m.</i>
	Bastille Bastille, <i>f.</i>

- battle bataille, *f.*
 be être; *y avoir*; — (*of health*)
 se porter, aller; — about to
 aller, être sur le point de, de-
 voir; — born naître; — (*of
 weather*) faire; — (*of age*) avoir;
 — (*of time*) *y avoir*; — afraid
 avoir peur; here is (*are*) voici;
 there is (*are*) voilà, il y a;
 is he finishing? finit-il? is he
 not? etc. n'est-ce pas? how
 are you? comment vous por-
 tez-vous? comment allez-vous?
 comment ça va-t-il? comment
 ça va? I am well je me porte
 bien, ça va bien, etc.; I am to
 do it je dois le faire; I am going
 to do it je vais le faire; it is fine
 il fait beau; is it? vraiment?
 he is ten years old il a dix ans;
 a house to — sold une maison
 à vendre
 bean haricot, *m.*; string —s 'hari-
 cots verts
 bear *n.* ours, *m.*
 bear *v.* (*of fruit trees*) donner
 beard barbe, *f.*
 beast animal, *m.*, bête, *f.*; (*for
 riding*) monture, *f.*
 beat battre
 beautiful beau, joli
 beauty beauté, *f.*
 because parce que
 become devenir, se faire; — (*suit*)
 seoir; what has — of her?
 qu'est-elle devenue?
 bed: go to — se coucher; be in
 — être au lit, être couché
 bedroom chambre (*f.*) à coucher
 before prep. devant (*of place*);
 avant (*of time*); avant de +
infin.; — the judge par devant
 le juge
 before conj. avant que
 beg prier, demander, mendier; I
 — your pardon pardon
 beggar mendiant, *m.*
 begin commencer, se mettre à;
 — again recommencer
 beginning commencement, *m.*
 behave se comporter, se conduire
 behead décapiter
 behind derrière
 believe croire; it is believed on
 croit
 bell cloche, *f.*; little — (*spherical*)
 grelot; put the — on attacher
 le grelot à
 belong: — to être à (*de*), appar-
 tenir à
 below: here — ici-bas
 bend courber
 benefactor bienfaiteur, *m.*
 beside à côté de
 besides d'ailleurs, de plus
 best adj. le meilleur
 best adv. le mieux; to do his —
 faire son possible
 better adj. meilleur
 better adv. mieux; be —, be worth
 more valoir mieux; be — (*of
 health*) se porter mieux, aller
 mieux; like —, prefer aimer
 mieux
 between entre
 bicycle bicyclette *f.*; on a — à
 bicyclette
 bid: — good-bye to dire adieu
 (au revoir) à
 big grand, gros
 bind up bander
 bird oiseau, *m.*
 birthday fête, *f.*, anniversaire (*m.*)
 de ma (sa) naissance
 bite mordre
 bitterly amèrement
 black noir
 blackboard tableau noir, *m.*
 blacksmith forgeron, maréchal
 ferrant, *m.*
 blade brin *m.*
 blind aveugle

blond	blond	broad	large
blow <i>n.</i> coup, <i>m.</i> ; — with a stick	coup de bâton	brother	frère, <i>m.</i>
blue	bleu	brush	<i>n.</i> brosse, <i>f.</i>
blunt	brusque	brush	<i>v.</i> brosser
blush	rougir	build	bâtir, construire
board	bord, <i>m.</i> ; on — of à bord	building	édifice, <i>m.</i> , bâtiment, <i>m.</i> , monument, <i>m.</i>
de		bun	brioche, <i>f.</i>
boat	bateau, <i>m.</i> , canot, <i>m.</i> ; go for a — ride faire une prome- nade (se promener) en bateau (canot)	burn	brûler
body	corps, <i>m.</i>	burst	éclat, <i>m.</i>
boil	boillir	bury	enterrer, ensevelir
bold	'hardi	business	commerce, <i>m.</i> , affaires, <i>f. pl.</i> ; on — pour affaires; go into — se mettre dans les af- faires, se mettre en commerce
book	livre, <i>m.</i>	busy	occupé (de); be — doing anything, be — at anything être en train de faire quelque chose, être à faire quelque chose but mais; nothing — ne ... rien ... que
born:	be — naître; he was — il est né	butter	beurre, <i>m.</i>
Boston	Boston, <i>m.</i>	buy	acheter
both	tous (les) deux, l'un et l'autre; — ... and et ... et	by	par, de, sur, à, en; — rubbing en frottant; — the way à pro- pos; go — passer; — sight de vue; taller — an inch plus grand d'un pouce; six feet — seven six pieds sur sept; — my watch à ma montre; — what he says à ce qu'il dit; loved — aimé de
bother!	<i>interj.</i> peste de!		
bother	<i>v.</i> ennuyer, embêter		
bottom	fond, <i>m.</i> ; at the — of au fond de		
bow:	— to saluer		
box	boîte, <i>f.</i>		
boy	enfant, garçon, <i>m.</i> ; my — mon enfant, <i>m.</i>		
branch	branche, <i>f.</i>		
brave	courageux, brave		
bread	pain, <i>m.</i>		
break	casser, rompre; — out éclater; — one's arm se casser le bras; — off casser, ôter; — up se dissoudre, se lever		
breakfast	déjeuner, <i>m.</i>		
breathe	respirer		
brick	brique, <i>f.</i> ; — house maison (<i>f.</i>) en briques	C	
bridge	pont, <i>m.</i>	cabbage	chou, <i>m.</i>
bring	apporter; (<i>carry</i>) trans- porter; (<i>lead</i>) amener; — back ramener; — down descendre; — up (<i>rear</i>) éllever; — up ramener à la surface	Cædmon	Cedmon
		cage	cage, <i>f.</i>
		Cain	Cain
		call	appeler; faire venir; — a meeting convoquer une assem- blée; be —ed s'appeler
		camel	chameau, <i>m.</i>
		can	pouvoir, savoir; he —not il ne peut pas, il ne sait pas; it can't be cela ne se peut pas; see also could

Canada	Canada, <i>m.</i> ; in or to —	centime centime, <i>m.</i>
	au Canada	century siècle, <i>m.</i>
cane	canne, <i>f.</i>	certain certain, sûr
cannon	shot coup (<i>m.</i>) de canon, <i>m.</i>	chair chaise, <i>f.</i>
capital	adj. capital; <i>n.</i> chef-lieu, <i>m.</i>	chalk craie, <i>f.</i>
captain	capitaine, <i>m.</i>	chance 'hasard, <i>m.</i>
capture	pris, <i>f.</i>	change <i>n.</i> monnaie, <i>f.</i>
car	tramway, <i>m.</i> , wagon <i>m.</i> , voiture, <i>f.</i> (<i>both for railways</i>); motor — auto(mobile), <i>m. and f.</i>	change <i>v.</i> changer (de) chapter chapitre, <i>m.</i>
caravan	caravane, <i>f.</i>	charge charge, <i>f.</i>
card	carte, <i>f.</i>	charitable charitable
care:	— for soigner; take — of avoir soin de, soigner; take — prendre garde, avoir soin, faire attention	charm charmer, enchanter
careful:	be —! attention! prenez garde!	charming charmant, ravissant charmingly à ravir
carefully	soigneusement	chase chasser, poursuivre
careless	négligent	chat causer
carnival	carnaval, <i>m.</i>	cheap (à) bon marché, pas cher, peu coûteux; —er à meilleur marché, moins cher
carpenter	charpentier, <i>m.</i> , menuisier, <i>m.</i>	cherry cerise, <i>f.</i>
carriage	voiture, <i>f.</i>	chicken poulet, <i>m.</i>
carry	porter; — off emporter; — the day l'emporter	chief chef, <i>m.</i>
case	cas, <i>m.</i> ; in — (that) au cas que	child enfant, <i>m. and f.</i>
cat	chat, <i>m.</i>	chimney cheminée, <i>f.</i>
catch	attraper, prendre; — (a) cold s'enrhumer	China Chine, <i>f.</i>
cathedral	cathédrale, <i>f.</i>	chopper bûcheron, <i>m.</i>
catholic	catholique	Christian chrétien
cattle	bétail, <i>m.s.</i> , bestiaux, <i>m. pl.</i>	Christopher Christophe
cause	<i>n.</i> cause, <i>f.</i>	chum camarade, <i>m. and f.</i>
cause	<i>v.</i> causer; exciter; — to faire	church église, <i>f.</i> ; at (to) — à l'église
cavalry	cavalerie, <i>f.</i>	city ville, <i>f.</i> ; in the — à la ville, en ville
cease	cesser; without ceasing sans cesse	city hall hôtel (<i>m.</i>) de ville
ceiling	plafond, <i>m.</i>	clad see clothe
celebrate	célébrer	claimant prétendant, <i>m.</i>
celebrated	célèbre	class classe, <i>f.</i>
celebration	fête, <i>f.</i>	classroom classe, <i>f.</i>
cent	sou, <i>m.</i>	clean nettoyer

clothe vêtir, habiller	complicated compliqué
clothes vêtements, <i>m. pl.</i> , habits, <i>m. pl.</i>	compliment compliment, <i>m.</i>
clumsy: be so — as to avoir la maladresse de; — fellow mala- droit, <i>m.</i>	comprise comprendre
coat habit, <i>m.</i> , (<i>sack</i>) veston, <i>m.</i>	comrade camarade, <i>m. and f.</i>
cock coq, <i>m.</i>	conceal cacher
coffee café, <i>m.</i>	concert concert, <i>m.</i>
cold <i>adj.</i> froid; <i>n.</i> froid, <i>m.;</i> be — (<i>of living beings</i>) avoir froid; be (get) — (<i>of weather</i>) faire froid; I have — hands, my hands are — j'ai froid aux mains; catch (a) — s'enrhummer	conclude conclure
collar (<i>man's</i>) col, <i>m.;</i> faux-col, <i>m.</i>	condemn condamner
college collège, <i>m.</i>	condition condition, <i>f., état, m.</i>
colossal colossal	confess avouer
Columbus Colomb [kələbʊs]	confidence confiance, <i>f.</i>
comb peigne, <i>m.</i>	confound confondre
come venir, arriver; — again revenir; — back, — home re- venir; — to see, — and see venir voir; — down descendre; — up monter, arriver; — in entrer, rentrer; — out sortir; —! voyons! allons!	congratulate féliciter (<i>de or sur</i>)
comfortable commode; be — faire bon, être bien	conquer conquérir, vaincre
coming arrivée, <i>f.</i>	conscience conscience, <i>f.</i>
command commander	consecrate bénir
commandment commandement, <i>m.;</i> the Ten Commandments	consent consentir
les dix commandements, le décalogue	consider considérer, regarder
commence commencer	construct construire
commit commettre	contain contenir
companion compagnon, <i>m.</i> , com- pagne, <i>f.</i> , camarade, <i>m. and f.;</i> traveling — compagnon de voyage	continually sans cesse
company compagnie, <i>f.</i> , société, <i>f.</i>	continue continuer
compartment compartiment, <i>m.</i>	contract contrat, <i>m.</i>
compassion compassion, <i>f.</i>	contrary: on the — au contraire
complain se plaindre	convenient commode, utile
complete complet	cook cuisinier, <i>m.</i> , cuisinière, <i>f.</i>
	cool frais; it is — (<i>of weather</i>) il fait frais
	coolly tranquillement
	copper (<i>coin</i>) sou, <i>m.</i>
	copy exemplaire, <i>m.;</i> copie, <i>f.</i>
	coral corail, <i>m.</i>
	corkscrew tire-bouchon, <i>m.</i>
	corner coin, <i>m.</i>
	cost coûter
	costs frais, <i>m. pl.</i>
	could past of can; we — have written nous aurions pu écrire; I — not do so je ne pourrais pas le faire; he — do that when he was here il pouvait faire cela quand il était ici; I — je pourrais, je pouvais; I — have j'aurais pu
	count compter
	country pays, <i>m.;</i> (<i>native land</i>)

patrie, <i>f.</i> ; (<i>as opposed to town</i>) campagne, <i>f.</i> ; in the — à la campagne	date (<i>fruit</i>) datte, <i>f.</i>
county town chef-lieu, <i>m.</i>	daughter fille, <i>f.</i>
couple couple, <i>m. and f.</i>	day jour, <i>m.</i> , journée, <i>f.</i> ; every — tous les jours, chaque jour; in those —s à cette époque; what — of the month is it today? quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? etc.; the — after le lendemain (de); the — after to-morrow après-demain; the — before yesterday avant-hier; all — (long) toute la journée, tout le jour; from — to — de jour en jour; be — (<i>daylight</i>) faire jour
court cour, <i>f.</i>	daybreak point (<i>m.</i>) du jour; at (since) — dès le point du jour
courtier partisan, <i>m.</i>	dead mort
cousin cousin, <i>m.</i> ; cousine, <i>f.</i>	deaf sourd
cover couvrir; —ed with couvert de	deaf-mute sourd-muet
cow vache, <i>f.</i>	deal: a great —, a good — beau-coup
cravat cravate, <i>f.</i>	dear cher; not so — pas si cher, moins cher
crawl se traîner	death mort, <i>f.</i> ; be at the point of — être sur le point de mourir; put to — mettre à mort
create créer	debt dette, <i>f.</i>
creature créature, <i>f.</i> , être, <i>m.</i> , bête, <i>f.</i>	deceive tromper
crime crime, <i>m.</i>	December décembre, <i>m.</i>
criminal criminel, <i>m.</i>	declare déclarer
critic critique, <i>m.</i>	defect défaut, <i>m.</i>
Crœsus Crésus	dejection abattement, <i>m.</i>
crops récolte, <i>f.</i>	delay différer
cross <i>adj.</i> méchant	delight: — in se plaire à delighted enchanté, charmé
cross <i>v.</i> traverser	delightful charmant
crowd foule, <i>f.</i>	deliverance délivrance, <i>f.</i>
crown couronne, <i>f.</i>	delve bêcher, creuser
cry pleurer, crier; — out crier, s'écrier	deny nier
cup tasse, <i>f.</i> , coupe, <i>f.</i>	depart s'en aller, partir
cupboard armoire, <i>f.</i>	depend: — on dépendre de
cure guérir	describe décrire
curiosity curiosité, <i>f.</i>	deserve mériter
curse maudire	desire désirer, vouloir
custom coutume, <i>f.</i>	desk pupitre, <i>m.</i>
cut couper; have one's hair — se faire couper les cheveux	
D	
daily tous les jours, par jour	
dance danser	
danger danger, <i>m.</i>	
dangerous dangereux	
dark noir; be — faire noir, faire obscur	
date (<i>time</i>) date, <i>f.</i>	

despair désespérer	pas? — not (don't) speak ne parlez pas; I — not non, monsieur; I did oui, monsieur; did he speak? a-t-il parlé? be done se faire
dessert dessert, <i>m.</i>	doctor médecin, <i>m.</i> , docteur, <i>m.</i>
destination destination, <i>f.</i>	doctrine doctrine, <i>f.</i>
destroy détruire, perdre	dog chien, <i>m.</i>
determine déterminer, résoudre, décider, avoir l'idée	doll poupée, <i>f.</i>
devour dévorer	dollar dollar, <i>m.</i> , piastre, <i>f.</i> ; a — a dozen un dollar la douzaine
dial cadran, <i>m.</i>	don't, doesn't see do
diameter diamètre, <i>m.</i>	door porte, <i>f.</i> ; next — à côté
did see do	doubt <i>n.</i> doute, <i>m.</i> ; no — sans doute
die mourir; — away se mourir	doubt <i>v.</i> douter
difference différence, <i>f.</i> ; that makes no — cela ne fait rien	down : — stairs en bas; come —, go —(stairs) descendre, aller en bas; bring — descendre; — town en ville; bent — courbé; sit — s'asseoir; lie — se coucher
different différent	dramatic dramatique
difficult difficile	draw tirer; tracer; — near s'approcher (de)
difficulty difficulté, <i>f.</i> , peine, <i>f.</i>	drawing dessin, <i>m.</i>
dig creuser, bêcher	drawing-room salon, <i>m.</i>
diminish diminuer	dream <i>n.</i> songe, <i>m.</i> , rêve, <i>m.</i>
dine dinner	dream <i>v.</i> rêver, songer, faire des songes
dining room salle (<i>f.</i>) à manger	dress <i>n.</i> robe, <i>f.</i> ; toilette, <i>f.</i>
dinner dinner, <i>m.</i>	dress <i>v.</i> habiller; se mettre; s'habiller; be —ed être mis
direct <i>adj.</i> droit	drink boire
disagreeable désagréable	drive <i>n.:</i> go for a —, be out for a — se promener en voiture (auto)
disappear disparaître	drive <i>v.</i> conduire, mener, mouvoir, chasser; — away chasser
discover découvrir	drop laisser tomber
discuss discuter	drown se noyer
discussion discussion, <i>f.</i>	dry sec
dishes vaisselle, <i>f.</i>	ducat ducat, <i>m.</i>
disobliging désobligeant	duke duc, <i>m.</i>
disperse se disperser, se séparer	dumb muet
displease déplaire (à)	dupe dupe, <i>f.</i>
dispute se disputer	during pendant
distinction distinction, <i>f.</i>	
distinguished distingué, célèbre	
distract distraire	
distrust se défier de, se méfier de	
dive plonger	
divide diviser; partager	
do faire; — (<i>of health</i>) se porter, <i>etc.</i> ; — without se passer de; — you like? aimez-vous? (<i>emphatic auxiliary</i>); I — not do it	
je ne le fais pas; — not do so ne le faites pas; he does not speak	
il ne parle pas; he works, does he not? il travaille, n'est-ce	

duty devoir, *m.*
dwell demeurer

E

each chaque, tout
each one chacun
each other *reflex. pron. pl.* nous,
vous, se; *indef.* l'un l'autre,
les uns les autres
eagerly avec empressement
ear oreille, *f.*; —ache mal aux
oreilles; — (*of wheat*) épi, *m.*
earlier plus tôt, de meilleure
heure
early de bonne heure
earn gagner
earth terre, *f.*
easily facilement, aisément
easy facile
eat manger; — grass paître
economical (*of persons*) économique
educated instruit
education éducation, (*of persons*)
instruction, *f.*; receive a good
— faire de bonnes études
Edward Édouard
effort effort, *m.*
eight 'huit
eighty quatre-vingt(s)
either ou; nor . . . ni . . . non
plus; he hasn't any — il n'en a
pas non plus
eldest ainé
elect élire
elephant éléphant, *m.*
eleven onze
else autre; autre chose; not . . .
anything —, nothing — ne . . .
rien autre
elsewhere autre part, ailleurs
embrasure embrasure, *f.*
emperor empereur, *m.*
employ: admit into his — admis-
tre chez lui
empty vide

enclose clore, enclore
enclosed ci-inclus
encourage encourager
end *n.* fin, *f.*, bout, *m.*; come to
a bad — finir mal
end *v.* finir, se terminer
enemy ennemi, *m.*
engage s'engager
England Angleterre, *f.*
English anglais; —man Anglais,
m.; — (*the language*) l'anglais,
anglais, *m.*
enjoy jouir de; — oneself s'amuser
enough assez (de); not — pas
assez; kind — assez bon; be
— to suffice pour
enter entrer (dans)
enterprise entreprise, *f.*
entrance entrée, *f.*
equal: be — (to) égaler
equivalent équivalent, *m.*
error erreur, *f.*
escape éviter, échapper, s'échapper,
s'enfuir; have a narrow —
l'échapper belle
especially surtout
estate propriété, *f.*, biens, *m. pl.*,
domaine, *m.*
Europe Europe, *f.*
European européen
even même; — if, — though
quand même
evening soir, *m.*, soirée, *f.*; in
the — le soir; last —, yester-
day — hier (au) soir
ever jamais
every tout, chaque; — Sunday
tous les dimanches; — other
day tous les deux jours
everybody tout le monde, *m.*
everyone chacun
everything tout, toute chose; —
that tout ce qui (que)
everywhere partout
evil mal; —doing mal faire, *m.*

exactly	exactement, précisément,	farm	servant valet (<i>m.</i>) de ferme
(<i>with time</i>)	précis	farther	plus loin; — off plus
examine	examiner, visiter	loin	loin; — on plus loin
example	exemple, <i>m.</i> ; for — par	fashion	mode, <i>f.</i>
	exemple	fast	vite
excavation	excavation, <i>f.</i> , fouille,	fastidious	difficile
	<i>f.</i>	fate	destin, <i>m.</i> , sort, <i>m.</i>
excite	exciter; émouvoir	father	père, <i>m.</i>
exclaim	s'écrier	favor	faveur, <i>f.</i>
excuse	excuser; — me pardon	favorite	favori, <i>m.</i>
exercise	devoir, <i>m.</i> , exercice, <i>m.</i>	fear	<i>n.</i> crainte, <i>f.</i> , peur, <i>f.</i> ; for
exhibit	exposer		— that de crainte que; for —
expect	attendre, s'attendre, compre-		of de crainte de
	ter, espérer	fear	<i>v.</i> craindre, avoir peur
expense	dépense, <i>f.</i> , dépens, <i>m.</i> <i>pl.</i>	feast	festin, <i>m.</i> , banquet, <i>m.</i>
explain	expliquer	February	février, <i>m.</i>
eye	ceil, <i>m.</i> , yeux, <i>pl.</i>	feed	nourrir

F

façade	façade, <i>f.</i>	feel	tâter; sentir; — hungry
face	figure, <i>f.</i> , visage, <i>m.</i> ; shut		sentir la faim, avoir faim
	the door in one's — fermer la	feeling	sentiment, <i>m.</i>
	porte au nez à quelqu'un	fell	abattre
fact	fait, <i>m.</i> ; in — en effet	fellow	garçon, <i>m.</i> , individu <i>m.</i>
fail	faillir; to — in manquer à,		type, <i>m.</i> ; good — brave homme;
	de		my good — mon ami; the brave
fairy	fée, <i>f.</i> ; — story conte de		little —s les petits bonshommes;
	fée(s)		the clumsy — le maladroit
faithful	fidèle	fence	clôture, <i>f.</i>
fall	tomber; — due échoir; —	festival	festivity fête, <i>f.</i>
	out se brouiller; — asleep	fetch	aller chercher
	s'endormir	few	peu, peu de, quelques; a —
false	faux		quelques-uns; but — ne . . .
familiarity	familiarité, <i>f.</i>		guère, ne . . . que peu
familiarly	familièrement	fewer	moins de
family	famille, <i>f.</i>	field	champ, <i>m.</i>
famous	fameux, célèbre	fifteen	quinze
far <i>adv.</i>	loin; — from loin que,	fifteenth	quinzième, quinze
	loin de; be — from il s'en faut	fifth	cinquième, cinq
	de beaucoup; — away loin,	fifty	cinquante
	loin d'ici; as — as jusqu'à;	fight	combattre, se battre
	how — is it? combien y a-t-il?	fill	remplir
farmer	payson, <i>m.</i> , fermier, <i>m.</i> ,	finally	enfin, à la fin; — do finir
	cultivateur, <i>m.</i>		par faire
farmhouse	ferme, <i>f.</i>	find	trouver; — out découvrir;
			be found se trouver
		fine	beau, brave; it is — (weather)
			il fait beau (temps)

- fine-looking** beau, élégant
finger doigt, *m.*
finish finir
fire feu, *m.*; set — to mettre le feu à
first *adj.* premier; for the — time pour la première fois
first *adv.* d'abord; at — d'abord
fish *v.* pêcher
fishing pêche, *f.*
fit aller à; my suit —s me well mon complet me va bien
fitting convenable
five cinq
flattering flatteur
flee fuir, s'enfuir
fleet flotte, *f.*
floor plancher *m.*, (*hardwood*) parquet, *m.*
Florida Floride, *f.*
flower fleur, *f.*; in — en fleurs
fluently couramment
fly voler; — away s'envoler
foggy: be — faire du brouillard
folded croisé
follow suivre
following suivant; the — day le jour suivant, le lendemain
folly folie, *f.*, sottise, *f.*
fond: be — of aimer
food nourriture, *f.*
foolish fou, sot, bête
foot pied, *m.*; on — à pied; tread under — fouler aux pieds
for *prep.* pour, pendant, de, contre, par; — a moment un moment; — (during) pendant; set out — partir pour; — (since) depuis; — a long time, — a week depuis longtemps, depuis une semaine; — me pour moi; — it en; trade — échanger pour (contre); I am sorry — it j'en suis fâché
for *conj.* car
forbid défendre
force *n.* force, *f.*
force *v.* forcer; I was —d j'ai dû foreign, foreigner étranger; in — countries à l'étranger
forest forêt, *f.*
forget oublier
fork fourchette, *f.*
form former
former: the — celui-ci, celui-là formerly autrefois
fortnight quinzaine, *f.*, quinze jours, *m. pl.*
fortunate heureux
fortune fortune, *f.*; good — bonheur, *m.*; make one's — faire fortune
forty quarante; about — quarantaine, *f.*
four quatre
fourteenth quatorzième, quatorze
fourth quatrième, quatre; — part le quart
fox renard, *m.*
franc franc, *m.*
France France, *f.*; in —, to — en France
Frederick the Great Frédéric le Grand
free libre
freeze geler
French *adj.* français; — (*the language*) le français, français; — man Français, *m.*; — teacher professeur (*m.*) de français; — history histoire (*f.*) de France; — grammar grammaire française
Friday vendredi, *m.*
friend ami, *m.*; amie, *f.*
friendly aimable
friendship amitié, *f.*
frighten effrayer, faire peur à;
get (be) —ed avoir peur; be very much —ed être très (bien) effrayé, avoir très (bien, grand') peur

frog grenouille, *f.*

from de, de dessus, à, à partir de, dans, d'après, depuis; — day to day de jour en jour; — it en; — nature d'après nature; drink — a glass boire dans un verre; take — the table prendre sur la table; — me de ma part

front: in — of devant

fruit fruit, *m.*

frying pan poêle, *f.*

fulfill accomplir

full plein

furnish fournir

furthermore d'ailleurs

G

gallery galerie, *f.*

garden jardin, *m.*

Gascon Gascon, *m.*

gate porte, *f.*

gather cueillir

gay gai

general général, *m.*

generally en général, généralement, ordinairement

generous généreux

gentleman monsieur, *m.*; gentlemen messieurs

George George(s)

German allemand

get prendre; avoir; obtenir; go

and — aller chercher, aller

trouver; — up, rise se lever;

— up on monter sur; — (become) devenir; — made, have

made faire faire; — married se

marier; — angry se fâcher;

— on avancer; — to arriver à;

— out descendre; — in monter

ghost revenant, *m.*

girl (jeune) fille, *f.*, enfant, *f.*

give donner; — away donner;

— back rendre; — too much

for payer trop cher

glad: — at, — of content de,

charmed de

gladly volontiers, avec plaisir

glass verre, *m.*

glory gloire, *f.*

glove gant, *m.*

go aller, marcher; se rendre; —

away s'en aller, partir; — in, into entrer dans; — out sortir;

— with accompagner, aller avec; — by, — past passer

(devant); — up(stairs) aller en haut, monter; — down

(stairs) aller en bas, descendre; — and see aller voir; —

around the city faire le tour de la ville; — to bed se coucher;

— for a row, sail, etc. se promener en bateau; — (out) for a

walk aller se promener (à pied), aller faire une promenade (à pied); — for a drive se promener en voiture; — for a ride se

promener à cheval; — for, — after, — and get aller chercher;

— back (again) retourner; — downtown aller en ville; —

home aller chez soi, rentrer; — on continuer (à), aller en;

— to sleep s'endormir; — to

France aller en France, partir pour la France; — there ! vas-

y, allez-y !

goat chèvre, *f.*

God Dieu; gods dieux, *m. pl.*

gold or, *m.*; adj. (of gold) d'or,

en or

golden d'or

good bon, brave, sage, juste; my

— fellow mon ami, *m.*; be so

— as to, be — enough to

voulez-vous bien, ayez la bonté

de, veuillez

good bien, *m.*; do — faire du bien

good-bye adieu, au revoir

goodness bonté, *f.*

goods marchandises, <i>f. pl.</i>	harp 'harpe, <i>f.</i>
gooseberry bush groseillier, <i>m.</i>	harvest moisson, <i>f.</i>
grace grâce, <i>f.</i>	hasten se hâter, se dépêcher;
grain grain, <i>m.</i>	into the presence of accourir auprès de
grammar grammaire, <i>f.</i>	hat chapeau, <i>m.</i> ; have —(s) on être couvert(s); have —(s) off être découvert(s)
grandfather grand-père, <i>m.</i> , aïeul, <i>m.</i>	hate 'haïr
grandmother grand'mère, <i>f.</i>	hatred 'haine, <i>f.</i>
grape(s) raisin(s), <i>m.</i>	hatter chapelier, <i>m.</i>
grass herbe, <i>f.</i>	have avoir; obtenir; — (<i>as aux- iliary</i>) avoir, être; I — to be there il faut que j'y sois; — him go faites-le partir; — (<i>cause to be</i>) faire; I am having a house built je fais bâtir une maison; — done faire faire; — one's hair cut se faire couper les cheveux; — just venir de; — to do with avoir affaire à; he has spoken, has he not? il a parlé, n'est-ce pas? — to être obligé de; — on porter
gravely gravement	Havre le Havre
great grand, gros; — deal beau- coup	hay foin, <i>m.</i>
Great Britain Grande-Bretagne, <i>f.</i>	hazelnut noisette, <i>f.</i>
Greek grec	he il, lui; ce; — who celui qui; — himself lui-même
green vert; — peas petits pois, <i>m. pl.</i>	head tête, <i>f.</i> ; maître, <i>m.</i>
grind moudre	headache: have — avoir mal à la tête
ground terre, <i>f.</i> ; (up)on the — à terre, par terre	heal guérir
grow croître; — larger grandir	health santé, <i>f.</i>
grudge: have a — en vouloir à	hear entendre; — from recevoir des nouvelles de; I — from him je reçois de ses nouvelles; — of entendre parler de
guard garde, <i>m.</i>	heart cœur, <i>m.</i>
gun fusil, <i>m.</i>	heat chaleur, <i>f.</i>

H

hair cheveux, <i>m. pl.</i>
half adj. demi; — past eight huit heures et demie; — an hour une demi-heure
half <i>n.</i> moitié <i>f.</i> ; by — de la moitié
half <i>adv.</i> à demi
hand main, <i>f.</i> ; shake —s with donner la main à; on the right — à droite; on the left — à gauche; — (<i>of a clock</i>) aiguille, <i>f.</i>
hang pendre
happen arriver; venir à, avoir lieu
happily heureusement
happy heureux, content
hard difficile; work — travailler ferme
hardly à peine
harm faire mal à

hasten se hâter, se dépêcher;
into the presence of accourir auprès de
hat chapeau, <i>m.</i> ; have —(s) on être couvert(s); have —(s) off être découvert(s)
hate 'haïr
hatred 'haine, <i>f.</i>
hatter chapelier, <i>m.</i>
have avoir; obtenir; — (<i>as aux- iliary</i>) avoir, être; I — to be there il faut que j'y sois; — him go faites-le partir; — (<i>cause to be</i>) faire; I am having a house built je fais bâtir une maison; — done faire faire; — one's hair cut se faire couper les cheveux; — just venir de; — to do with avoir affaire à; he has spoken, has he not? il a parlé, n'est-ce pas? — to être obligé de; — on porter
Havre le Havre
hay foin, <i>m.</i>
hazelnut noisette, <i>f.</i>
he il, lui; ce; — who celui qui; — himself lui-même
head tête, <i>f.</i> ; maître, <i>m.</i>
headache: have — avoir mal à la tête
heal guérir
health santé, <i>f.</i>
hear entendre; — from recevoir des nouvelles de; I — from him je reçois de ses nouvelles; — of entendre parler de
heart cœur, <i>m.</i>
heat chaleur, <i>f.</i>
heavy lourd
Helena: St. — Sainte-Hélène
help aider, secourir
hen poule, <i>f.</i>
hence aussi, donc
Henry Henri, <i>m.</i>

her <i>adj.</i> son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à elle)	hotel hôtel, <i>m.</i>
her <i>pers. pron.</i> la, elle; to — lui, à elle; — own le sien, à elle	hour heure, <i>f.</i>
here ici, ci, y; — below ici-bas;	house maison, <i>f.</i> ; at (to) our — chez nous; at whose —? chez qui? at Mr. B's (—) chez Monsieur B; in the — à la maison, dans la maison
— is, — are voici	how comment, comme, combien; — ! comme! que! — much?
hero 'héros, <i>m.</i>	— many? combien? — much!
heroine héroïne, <i>f.</i>	— many! combien (de)! que de!
hers le sien, à elle	— long have you been here?
herself se, elle-même	depuis quand êtes-vous ici? — happy she is! qu'elle est heureuse!
hide cacher	— old is he? quel âge a-t-il? — is he? comment
high 'haut; — price grand prix, <i>m.</i> , tant	se porte-t-il? comment va-t-il?
hill colline, <i>f.</i>	— do you do? comment vous portez-vous (allez-vous)?
him le, lui; to —, for — lui; — who	however cependant; — good quelque bon que; — that may be quoi qu'il en soit; — little pour peu que
celui qui	howl cri, <i>m.</i> ; give a — pousser un cri
himself se, soi, lui, lui-même; to — en lui-même; he — lui-même	humble humble, petit
hinder empêcher	hundred : a (one) — cent
his <i>adj.</i> son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à lui)	hunger faim, <i>f.</i>
his <i>pron.</i> le sien, à lui; — own le sien	hungry affamé; be (feel) — avoir faim
historical historique	hunt (for) chasser, chercher
history histoire, <i>f.</i>	hunting chasse, <i>f.</i>
bither: — and thither là et là	hurrah for! vive(nt)!
hold tenir; — out tendre	hurry: — up se dépêcher; be in a — être pressé
hole trou, <i>m.</i>	hurt faire mal à; — oneself se faire mal, se blesser
holiday jour (<i>m.</i>) de fête; — s vacances, <i>f. pl.</i>	husbandman laboureur, <i>m.</i>
holy bénit; saint	
home: (at) — chez moi, chez toi, etc., à la maison; go — aller chez moi, chez toi, etc., aller à la maison, rentrer	
honest honnête, loyal, prohe	
honesty loyauté, <i>f.</i> , probité, <i>f.</i>	
honor <i>n.</i> honneur, <i>m.</i>	
honor <i>v.</i> honorer	
hope espérer, compter	
horse cheval, <i>m.</i>	
horseback: on — à cheval; ride — monter à cheval	I je, moi
horseshoe fer (<i>m.</i>) à cheval	ice glace, <i>f.</i>
hot chaud, brûlant; it is — il fait chaud	idea idée, <i>f.</i>
	idle paresseux; to be — ne rien faire

I

idleness paresse, <i>f.</i>	interesting intéressant
if si	interview: (private) — tête-à-tête,
ignorant ignorant; be — of ignor- er	<i>m.</i>
ill <i>n.</i> mal, <i>m.</i>	intimate intime
ill <i>adj.</i> malade	into dans, en; — it y, là dedans;
ill <i>adv.</i> mal	fall — the sea tomber à la mer;
ill fortune malheur, <i>m.</i>	— his presence auprès de lui
illuminate illuminer	introduce présenter
image image, <i>f.</i>	invention invention, <i>f.</i>
imagine s'imaginer	invite inviter
immediately tout de suite	Ireland Irlande, <i>f.</i>
impatient impatient	iron fer, <i>m.</i> ; (<i>adj.</i>) de fer
important important	is see be; here —, here are voici;
impossible impossible	here he — le voici
in dans, à, en, de, sur; — it y, là dedans; — (<i>after superlative</i>)	island île, <i>f.</i>
de; — the reign of sous; be — y être, être chez soi; — the evening le soir; one — ten	it il, elle, ce; le, la; cela; in —
un sur dix; — the west à (dans) l'ouest	<i>y</i> , dedans; of —, for — en; to
inch pouce, <i>m.</i>	— y; — is you c'est vous; —
income revenu, <i>m.</i>	is they ce sont eux, c'est eux;
increase augmenter	think of — <i>y</i> penser; is —?
incur courir	vraiment?
indeed! vraiment!	Italian italien
individual individu, <i>m.</i>	Italy Italie, <i>f.</i>
influence influencer	its son, sa, ses; en . . . le
influential influent	itself se, soi; lui-même; même
infrequent rare	
injustice injustice, <i>f.</i>	
ink encre, <i>f.</i>	
inn auberge, <i>f.</i>	
innkeeper aubergiste, <i>m.</i>	
instead of au lieu de	J
institution institution, <i>f.</i>	January janvier, <i>m.</i>
instrument instrument, <i>m.</i>	Japan Japon, <i>m.</i>
insult dire des injures à, insulter	Jericho Jéricho
intelligent intelligent	Jerusalem Jérusalem
intend avoir l'intention	John Jean
intention intention, <i>f.</i>	joke plaisanter
inter enterrer	journey voyage, <i>m.</i> ; set out again
interest <i>n.</i> intérêt, <i>m.</i> ; take — in	on a — se remettre en route
prendre intérêt à, s'occuper de	joyful joyeux
interest <i>v.</i> intéresser	judge <i>n.</i> juge, <i>m.</i> ; be a good — of
	se connaître à (en)
	judge <i>v.</i> juger
	June juin, <i>m.</i>
	July juillet, <i>m.</i>
	jump sauter; — over sauter par- dessus
	Jupiter Jupiter
	just <i>adj.</i> juste, précis

just *adv.* justement, donc; —
look! regardez donc! *to have*
 — venir de, ne faire que de; —
 then à ce moment; — as au
 moment où
justice justice, *f.*

K

keep garder, tenir; — on aller en
kernel amande, *f.*

key clef, *f.*

kick out mettre à la porte

kill tuer, faire mourir

kilometer kilomètre, *m.* ($\frac{5}{8}$ of a
mile)

kind *n.* espèce, *f.*, sorte, *f.*; what
 — of weather is it? quel temps
 fait-il?

kind *adj.* bon, aimable; — to bon
 pour; be so — as, be — enough
 to vouloir bien; it is — of him
 to c'est bon à lui de

kindness bonté, *f.*; have the —
 to vouloir bien, avoir la bonté
 de

king roi, *m.*

kingdom royaume, *m.*; United
 Kingdom Royaume-Uni, *m.*

kiss embrasser, baiser

kitchen cuisine, *f.*

knee genou, *m.*; fall on one's — s
 tomber à genoux

knife couteau, *m.*, canif, *m.*

knight chevalier, *m.*

knock frapper; there is a — on
 frappe

know savoir, connaître; — how
 savoir

knowledge science, *f.*, connais-
 sances, *f. pl.*

L

labor travail, *m.*, labeur, *m.*, ou-
 vrage, *m.*

lady dame, *f.*; young — (*unmar-*

ried) jeune fille, jeune personne,
 demoiselle; (*married*) jeune
 dame; ladies (*in address*) mes-
 dames, mesdemoiselles

lake lac, *m.*

lamp lampe, *f.*

lamp shade abat-jour, *m.*

land terre, *f.*

landlord aubergiste, *m.*

landscape paysage, *m.*

language langue, *f.*; — (*of ani-*
mals, etc.) langage, *m.*

large grand, gros; grow —
 grandir

last *adj.* dernier, passé; — year

l'année dernière, l'année passée;
 — evening hier (au) soir; —
 night cette nuit; at — enfin,
 à la fin

last *v.* durer

late tard, en retard; he is — il
 est en retard; be — for man-
 quer; it is — il est tard; it is
 getting — il se fait tard; later
 on plus tard

lately dernièrement, récemment

Latin latin

latter: the — celui-ci, ceux-ci, ce
 dernier

laud louer

laugh rire, ricaner; — at rire de,
 se moquer de

laughter rire, *m.*

law loi, *f.*

lawsuit procès, *m.*

lazy paresseux

lead mener, conduire

leaf feuille, *f.*

leap sauter

learn apprendre, savoir

learned: — man savant, *m.*

leathern de cuir

leave *tr.* quitter, laisser

leave *intr.* partir, sortir

left: I have none — je n'en ai
 plus; none — n'en rester plus

- left gauche; *on the — (hand)* à (la) gauche
 leg jambe, *f.*, patte, *f.* (*dog's*)
 lend prêter
 length longueur, *f.*; at — enfin,
 à la fin, à la longue
 less moins; — than two moins
 de deux
 lesson leçon, *f.*
 lest que . . . ne, de peur que . . . ne
 let laisser, permettre; — in laisser
 entrer; — us go; allons; — him
 finish qu'il finisse; — him be
 glad qu'il soit content
 letter lettre, *f.*
 lettuce laitue, *f.*
 Levite lévite, *m.*
 liberal libéral
 liberty liberté, *f.*
 library bibliothèque, *f.*
 lie (*speak falsely*) mentir; —
 (*buried*) gésir; here —s ci-gît;
 — down se coucher
 life vie, *f.*
 light *n.* lumière, *f.*, jour, *m.*; get
 — faire jour
 light *adj.*: — auburn hair cheveux
 châtain clair
 like *v.* aimer; vouloir, désirer;
 — better aimer mieux; — to
 aimer (à); I should — (very
 much) j'aimerais (bien), je
 voudrais (bien); I should —
 you to do it je voudrais que
 vous le fassiez (fissiez); I should
 — to have done it j'aurais
 voulu le faire; — it in se
 plaire à
 like *prep.* comme, en; anything —
 that quelque chose de pareil,
 ne . . . rien de pareil; be —
 each other se ressembler l'un à
 l'autre
 line ligne, *f.*, lignée, *f.*
 listen (*to*) écouter
 little *adj.* petit; *adv.* peu; a —
 un peu (de); however — pour
 peu que; a — while ago il y a
 quelques moments; — by —
 peu à peu, petit à petit
 live demeurer, vivre; — in de-
 muler à, dans, etc., habiter;
 — on vivre de; long —!
 vive(nt)!
 living vivant; — is dear il fait
 cher vivre; not a — soul ne . . .
 âme vivante
 log bûche, *f.*
 London Londres, *m.*
 long *v.* tarder; I — to il me
 tarde de; be — in tarder à
 long *adj. or adv.* long, longtemps;
 have you been here —? y
 a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes
 ici? how — were you there?
 combien de temps y avez-vous
 été? a — time, a — while
 longtemps; how —? depuis
 quand? as — as tant que; I
 have not seen them for a —
 time il y a longtemps que je ne
 les ai vus; a — way off loin
 longer: no — ne . . . plus
 look *tr.* regarder; — at regarder,
 parcourir, y jeter un coup d'œil;
 — around regarder autour; look
 out prendre garde; — out of
 the window regarder par la
 fenêtre; — for chercher; *intr.*
 avoir l'air, sembler, paraître;
 get a good — at bien voir; —
 at each other se regarder
 lose perdre; — sight of perdre
 de vue
 loss perte, *f.*
 lot of (a) beaucoup (de)
 loud(ly) *adv.* fort, haut
 Louis Louis, Lewis
 love *n.* amour, *m.* and *f.*, affection,
 f., tendresse, *f.*; my first --
 mes premières amours (*poet.*)
 love *v.* aimer

loyal loyal, honnête, fidèle
luck: good — fortune, *f.*

M

machine machine, *f.*madam madame, *f. pl.* mesdames

magnificent magnifique

maid bonne, *f.*; — of all work
bonne à tout fairemail *v.* mettre à la postemail *n.*: here's your — voici votre
courriermajority majorité, *f.*make faire, rendre; be made se
faire; — use se servirman homme, *m.*, monsieur, *m.*;
old — vieillard, *m.*; (*soldier*)
soldat, *m.*; the — who, a — who
celui qui; young men jeunes
gensmanner manière, *f.*many: very —, a great — beau-
coup (de), bien (des); so —
tant (de); — a maint; as —
autant (de); how —? combien
(de)? — (people) beaucoup de
personnes; — years bien des
annéesmap carte, *f.*March mars, *m.*

march marcher

mark marque, *f.*, signe, *m.*market marché, *m.*; to, at (the)
— au marchémarry (*give in marriage, unite
in marriage*) marier; (*take in
marriage*) épouser, se marier à
(avec); (*be married, get married*)
se marierMarseilles Marseille, *f.*

Mary Marie

master maître, *m.*masterpiece chef-d'œuvre, *m.*mate compagne, *f.*matter affaire, *f.*; what is the —
with you? qu'avez-vous? whatis the —? qu'y a-t-il? de quoi
s'agit-il? no —, that does not —
n'importemaxim maxime, *f.*May mai, *m.*may pouvoir; that — be cela se
peut; it — be il se peut; — it
please qu'il plaise; you — say
what you like vous avez beau
parler; see mightme me, moi; to —, for — me,
moi; for — pour moi; with —
avec moi

mean vouloir dire

meat viande, *f.*meet rencontrer; se réunir; se
rencontrermeeting assemblée, *f.*, réunion, *f.*:
call a — convoquer une assem-
blée (réunion)memorandum mémoire, *m.*memory mémoire, *f.*mention: don't — it il n'y a pas
de quoimerchant marchand, *m.*

Mercury Mercure

mere simple

merely seulement, rien que

merit *n.* mérite, *m.*merit *v.* mériter

merry joyeux, gai

meter mètre, *m.*method méthode, *f.*, façon, *f.*Michael Angelo Michel-Ange
[mikelāž] great Italian painter,
sculptor, and architect, b. 1475,
d. 1564

Michaelmas la Saint-Michel

middle milieu, *m.*midnight minuit, *m.*midst milieu, *m.*; into the — au
milieumight past of may: I — have
j'aurais pu; you — have seen
them vous auriez pu les voir

mild: be — faire doux

- mile mille, *m.*
 military militaire
 milk *n.* lait, *m.*
 milk *v.* traire
 mill moulin, *m.*
 miller meunier, *m.*
 mind âme, *f.*, avis, *m.*, opinion, *f.*
 mine le mien; à moi; a friend of — un de mes amis; — and thine le mien et le tien
 minister ministre, *m.*
 minute minute, *f.*; five —s to five cinq heures moins cinq (minutes), quatre heures cinquante-cinq
 miser avaré, *m.*
 misery misère, *f.*
 misfortune malheur, *m.*
 Miss mademoiselle, *f.*
 miss manquer
 mistake: make a — se tromper
 mistaken: be — se tromper
 modern moderne
 modest modeste
 moment moment, *m.*; (at) this — à l'instant
 monarch monarque, *m.*
 monastery monastère, *m.*
 Monday lundi, *m.*
 money argent, *m.*, monnaie, *f.*
 monk moine, *m.*
 month mois, *m.*; what day of the — is it? quel jour (*or* quel quatrième) du mois est-ce (*or* sommes nous) aujourd'hui? in the — of May au mois de mai
 Montreal Montréal, *m.*
 more plus (de), encore, d'avantage; have you any — money? avez-vous encore de l'argent? I have no —, I have not any — je n'en ai plus; — money than plus d'argent que; I have some — j'en ai encore; no — ne . . . plus; — than twenty times plus de vingt fois; it is worth — il vaut mieux; — than one plus d'un
 morning matin, *m.*, matinée, *f.*; good — bonjour; in the — le matin; it is a cold — il fait froid ce matin
 Morrow lendemain, *m.*
 mortification mortification, *f.*
 most très, bien, fort; the — le plus; — people la plupart des gens
 mother mère, *f.*
 motor car auto(mobile), *m. and f.*
 mountain montagne, *f.*
 mouth bouche, *f.*
 move mouvoir, émouvoir, remuer; se remuer
 Mr. M., monsieur, *m.*
 much beaucoup (de), bien, très, grand'chose; very — beaucoup, bien; as — as autant que; so — tant, tellement; how —? combien (de)? too — trop; as — autant (de); pay twice as — payer deux fois plus cher; give too — payer trop cher
 mud vase, *f.*, boue, *f.*
 museum musée, *m.*
 music musique, *f.*
 must falloir, devoir; I — go il me faut partir, il faut que je parte; he — have done it il a dû le faire
 my mon, ma, mes; me (*dat.*) . . . le; I wash — face je me lave la figure; — own le mien, à moi
 myself me, moi, moi-même
 mysterious mystérieux

N

- name *n.* nom, *m.*
 name *v.* appeler; be —d s'appeler;
 what is the — of? comment s'appelle?

nap somme, <i>m.</i>	main; — time la prochaine fois;
Napoleon Napoléon	— door à côté; the — one celui à côté; — morning le lendemain matin
narrow étroit; have a — escape l'échapper belle	next <i>adv.</i> après, ensuite
nation nation, <i>f.</i>	nice joli, gentil
national national	night nuit, <i>f.</i> ; all — (de) toute la nuit; last — hier soir, cette nuit
native natif	nine neuf
natural naturel	nineteen dix-neuf
nature nature, <i>f.</i>	ninety quatre-vingt-dix
naughty méchant	ninety-two quatre-vingt-douze
near près de; — by tout près; be — falling penser tomber	no non, ne... pas, aucun; — man, — une personne, aucun;
nearly près de, presque	— longer, — more ne... plus
necessary nécessaire; be — être nécessaire, falloir	noble noble
neck cou, <i>m.</i>	nobleman noble, <i>m.</i> , gentilhomme, <i>m.</i>
need <i>n.</i> besoin, <i>m.</i>	nobody, no one ne... personne; — at all ne... qui que ce soit (fût)
need <i>v.</i> avoir besoin de, falloir; what does he —? que lui faut- il? de quoi a-t-il besoin?	noise bruit, <i>m.</i>
needless inutile	none pas, nul; I have — je n'en ai pas; there are — il n'y en a pas; have — left n'en avoir plus
neglect négliger	nonsense! allons donc!
negro nègre, <i>m.</i>	noon midi, <i>m.</i>
neighbor voisin, <i>m.</i> , voisine, <i>f.</i>	nor ni, et ne... pas; — I either ni) moi non plus
neighboring voisin	Normandy Normandie, <i>f.</i>
neither ni l'un ni l'autre... ne; — ... nor (ne...) ni... ni	north nord, <i>m.</i> , du nord; — wind bise, <i>f.</i> , vent (<i>m.</i>) du nord
never ne... jamais; — can any one on (personne) ne peut jamais	North America l'Amérique (<i>f.</i>) du Nord
nevertheless cependant	nose nez, <i>m.</i>
new nouveau, neuf	not ne... pas (point), non; is he —? n'est-ce pas? — for me (non) pas pour moi; — that non (pas) que; — one (ne...) pas un, aucun; — at all pas du tout; — very long after- wards pas longtemps après; — much is lacking il s'en faut de peu que... ne
newly-married couple nouveaux mariés	
New Orleans la Nouvelle-Or- léans	
news nouvelle(s), <i>f.</i> ; what is the —? qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? have you — from him? avez- vous de ses nouvelles?	
newspaper journal, <i>m.</i>	
New Year's Day le jour de l'an	
next <i>adj.</i> prochain, premier; — year l'année prochaine; the — day le lendemain; the very — day dès demain, dès le lende-	

note billet, *m.*, mot, *m.*
 notebook cahier, *m.*
 nothing (ne ...) rien; that is —
 to him cela ne lui fait rien; —
 good (ne ...) rien de bon; —
 at all rien du tout, ne ... quoi
 que ce soit (fût); do — but ne
 faire que
 notice apercevoir, s'apercevoir
 novel roman, *m.*
 November novembre, *m.*
 now maintenant, à présent, déjà;
 tiens! not to have — n'avoir
 plus; — and then de temps en
 temps
 number nombre, *m.*, numéro, *m.*,
 compte, *m.*
 numerous nombreux
 nut noix, *f.*, noisette, *f.*

O

obelisk obélisque, *m.*
 obey obéir (à)
 oblige obliger, forcer; —d a dû
 obliging obligeant
 observe observer, remarquer
 occasion occasion, *f.*
 occasionally de temps en temps
 occupied occupé
 occur arriver, avoir lieu; (*of ideas*)
 venir à qqn. à l'esprit
 o'clock heure(s), *f.*; at four —
 à quatre heures
 October octobre, *m.*
 of de; — it, — them en, y
 offend offenser, déplaire à
 offer offrir, fournir, présenter
 office bureau, *m.*
 often souvent; how — combien
 de fois
 oil huile, *f.*
 old (*in years*) vieux, âgé; (*former*)
 ancien; how — are you? quel
 âge avez-vous? be five years —
 avoir cinq ans, être âgé de cinq
 ans; — man vieillard, *m.*

on sur, à, de, en; — the right à
 (la) droite; — business pour
 affaires; — this side de ce côté
 (often omitted with time expres-
 sions, e.g., — the sixth le six)
 once une fois, autrefois; at —
 tout de suite
 one num. un, une
 one indef. pron. on, vous (*obj.*);
 — must eat il faut manger; no
 — personne (*with ne*); I am
 the — who c'est moi qui; the
 white —s les blanches; an iron
 — un en fer; a small — un
 petit; the — who celui qui;
 that — celui-là; I am — too je
 le suis aussi; — of my friends,
 a doctor un docteur de mes amis;
 the —s ceux (celles)
 one's son; le
 oneself se, soi
 only ne ... que, seulement; not
 — non seulement; — (one)
 seul
 open adj. ouvert; wide — grand(e)
 ouvert(e)
 open v. ouvrir; s'ouvrir, éclore
 opium opium, *m.*
 opportune opportun
 opportunity occasion, *f.*
 opposite contraire; en face de
 or ou; ni (*after sans*); no ... —
 ne ... ni ... ni
 orator orateur, *m.*
 order n. ordre, *m.*; in — to pour,
 afin de; in — that pour que,
 afin que
 order v. (*give orders*) ordonner,
 commander; (*send for*) faire
 venir
 organize organiser
 origin origine, *f.*
 other autre; —s d'autres; many
 —s bien d'autres; of —s des
 autres, d'autrui; people give
 each — on se donne; write to

each — s'écrire; every — day
tous les deux jours
ought devoir; he — to do it il
devrait le faire; he — to have
done it il aurait dû le faire
our notre, nos; at — house chez
nous
ours le nôtre
ourselves nous, nous-mêmes
out: come —, go — sortir; be —
être sorti; — of the window par
la fenêtre
outburst éclat, *m.*
out-doors (en) dehors
outside hors de; au dehors
over sur, par, par-dessus; be all
— with en être fait de; — there
là-bas
overcoat par-dessus, *m.*
owe devoir
own adj. propre; my — le mien;
of his — à lui
own *v.* posséder

P

page (*servant*) page, *m.*, (*of book*)
page, *f.*
pain peine, *f.*, douleur, *f.*
paint peindre
painter peintre, *m.*
palace palais, *m.*, château, *m.*
paper papier, *m.*; journal, *m.*
pardon *n.* pardon, *m.*; I beg your
— pardon
pardon *v.* pardonner; I have — ed
him all je lui ai tout pardonné
parent parent, *m.*
Paris Paris, *m.*; in — à Paris;
in — itself dans Paris (même)
Parisian parisien
park parc, *m.*
parliament parlement, *m.*; Cham-
bre (*f.*) des députés; member of
— député, *m.*
parlor salon, *m.*
partot perroquet, *m.*

part *n.* partie, *f.*, part, *f.*, région,
f.; play a — jouer un rôle; on
our — de notre part
part *v.*: — with (from) se séparer de
participle participe, *m.*
partner associé, *m.*
pass, go past passer (devant,
près de); — through traverser;
— by on the other side passer
outre
passion passion, *f.*
past *n.* passé, *m.*
past *adj.* passé; et; at half —
one à une heure et demie
patience patience, *f.*
patient malade, *m. and f.*
pay, pay for payer; — too much
for it le payer trop cher; —
attention faire attention
payment paiement, *m.*
pea pois, *m.*; green —s petits
pois
peace paix, *f.*
peach pêche, *f.*
pear poire, *f.*
pearl perle, *f.*
peasant paysan, *m.*
pebble caillou, *m.*
peel peler
peep of day point (*m.*) du jour
pen plume, *f.*
pencil crayon, *m.*
penny deux sous, *m.*
people peuple, *m.*, on, gens, *m.*
and *f.*, monde, *m.*, personnes, *f.*
pl.; few — peu de gens (monde,
personnes); most — la plupart
des gens; young — les jeunes
(gens)
perceive apercevoir, s'apercevoir
de
perfection perfection, *f.*
perhaps peut-être
peril péril, *m.*
permit permettre (à); we are per-
mitted to il nous est permis de

- persist persister
 person personne, *f.*
 persuade persuader
 petition pétition, *f.*
 phrase phrase, *f.*
 physician médecin, *m.*
 pick up ramasser
 picnic pique-nique, *m.*
 picture tableau, *m.*, peinture, *f.*;
 — gallery galerie (*f.*) de peintures
 piece morceau, *m.*
 pin épingle, *f.*
 pipe pipe, *f.*
 pitifully à faire pitié
 pity *n.* pitié, *f.*; it's a — c'est dommage; what a — quel dommage; which is a great — (ce) qui est bien dommage
 pity *v.* plaindre; to be pitied à plaindre
 place *n.* endroit, *m.*, lieu, *m.*, place, *f.*; take — avoir lieu; it is my — to c'est à moi de place *v.* mettre, placer
 plain plaine, *f.*
 plainly franchement
 plan plan, *m.*, projet, *m.*
 plant *n.* plante, *f.*
 plant *v.* planter
 plate assiette, *f.*
 play jouer; — at (*games*) jouer à; — on (*instruments*) jouer de
 pleasant agréable, aimable
 please plaisir à, faire plaisir à; if you — s'il vous plaît, veuliez; as we — comme il nous plaira
 pleased content
 pleasure plaisir, *m.*; give — faire plaisir
 plow labourer
 plum prune, *f.*
 pocket poche, *f.*
 poem poème, *m.*, vers, *m. pl.*
 poet poète, *m.*
- poetry poésie, *f.*, vers, *m. pl.*
 point point, *m.*; at the — of sur le point de
 Poland Pologne, *f.*
 Pole Polonais, *m.*
 police police, *f.*
 policeman agent (de police), *m.*
 polite poli
 political politique
 pond étang, *m.*, mare, *f.*
 poor pauvre, mauvais
 population population, *f.*
 portion part, *f.*
 portrait portrait, *m.*
 position place, *f.*; put in a — to mettre à même de
 possession possession, *f.*
 possible possible
 post, post office poste, *f.*; put in the — mettre à la poste
 postage stamp, timbre (poste), *m.*
 postman facteur, *m.*
 potato pomme de terre, *f.*
 poultry volaille, *f.*; — yard basse-cour, *f.*
 pound livre, *f.*
 pour verser
 powerful puissant, fort
 practise mettre en pratique
 praise louer
 pray prier, prier Dieu
 precious précieux
 precise précis
 precisely précisément; at two o'clock — à deux heures précises
 prefer préférer, aimer mieux
 prepare préparer
 prescribe prescrire, ordonner
 presence présence, *f.*; into his — auprès de lui
 present *n.* cadeau, *m.*
 present *adj.* présent, actuel; at — à présent; be — at être présent à, assister à
 present (with) *v.* présenter

preserve conserver, confire
 president (monsieur) le président
 pretend faire semblant de
 pretended prétendu
 pretty *adj.* joli
 pretty *adv.* assez
 prevail over l'emporter sur
 prevent empêcher
 price prix, *m.*; at what — à quel
 prix, (à) combien
 priest prêtre, *m.*, curé, *m.*
 prince prince, *m.*
 principle principe, *m.*
 prison prison, *f.*
 private interview tête-à-tête, *m.*
 probable probable
 probably probablement
 procession cortège, *m.*
 produce produire
 progress progrès, *m. pl.*
 promenade promenade, *f.*
 promise *n.* promesse, *f.*
 promise *v.* promettre
 pronounce prononcer, donner
 pronunciation prononciation, *f.*
 proof preuve, *f.*
 property propriété, *f.*, biens, *m. pl.*
 prophet prophète, *m.*
 propose proposer
 prosperous florissant
 proud fier, orgueilleux
 proudly fièrement
 prove prouver, démontrer
 provide with fournir à
 province province, *f.*
 provisions aliments, *m.*, comestibles, *m.*, vivres, *m.*, provisions
 (*f.*) de bouche; de quoi manger
 prudence prudence, *f.*
 prudent prudent
 public public; — works les travaux (*m.*) publics; the — le public
 punish punir
 pupil élève, *m. and f.*, disciple, *m. and f.*

purchase emplette, *f.*, achat, *m.*
 purpose but, *m.*, intention, *f.*; — on — exprès; with the — dans le but
 purse porte-monnaie, *m.*
 pursue poursuivre, continuer
 put mettre, attacher; — on (*clothing*) mettre; — out (*fire, etc.*) éteindre; — out (*of doors*) mettre à la porte; — to death mettre à mort

Q

quality qualité, *f.*
 quantity quantité, *f.*
 quarrel dispute, *f.*, querelle, *f.*
 quarter quart, *m.*; in a — of an hour dans un quart d'heure;
 a — past one une heure et quart; a — to one une heure moins le (un) quart
 queen reine, *f.*
 question question, *f.*; it is a — il s'agit (de)
 quickly vite
 quiet tranquille
 quietly tranquillement
 quite tout, tout à fait

R

rabbit lapin, *m.*
 railroad, railway chemin (*m.*) de fer
 rain *n.* pluie, *f.*
 rain *v.* pleuvoir
 rainy pluvieux; in — weather quand il pleut, quand le temps est à la pluie
 raise lever, éléver, relever; — your eyes from lever les yeux de dessus
 rapidly rapidement, vite
 rare rare
 rarely rarement; il est rare que

rat rat, <i>m.</i>	republic république, <i>f.</i>
rather assez; plutôt	reputation renommée, <i>f.</i>
reach arriver à (chez), atteindre	resemble ressembler à
read lire	resolve résoudre, décider
reading lecture, <i>f.</i> ; amuse yourself — vous amuser à lire	resort: have — avoir recours, <i>m.</i>
ready prêt, servi	respect <i>n.</i> respect, <i>m.</i>
really réellement, vraiment	respect <i>v.</i> respecter
reappear reparaître	respectable respectable, honorable, honnête
rear admiral chef (<i>m.</i>) d'escadre	respectfully respectueusement
reason raison, <i>f.</i>	rest (the) les autres
reasonable raisonnable	rest <i>v.</i> (se) reposer, (se) rétablir
recall se rappeler	restaurant restaurant, <i>m.</i>
receive recevoir; —d reçut, eut;	restore rendre; rétablir
—d a good education fit de bonnes études	retain garder
recognize reconnaître	retire se retirer
recompense <i>n.</i> récompense, <i>f.</i>	return <i>n.</i> retour, <i>m.</i> ; on my — à mon retour
recompense <i>v.</i> récompenser	return <i>v.</i> revenir, retourner (<i>go back</i>); — home rentrer (chez soi)
refuge refuge, <i>m.</i> ; take — se réfugier	reveal révéler
regret <i>n.</i> regret, <i>m.</i>	revolution révolution, <i>f.</i>
regret <i>v.</i> regretter	revolver revolver, <i>m.</i> [revòlvèr]
regular régulier, vrai	reward <i>n.</i> récompense, <i>f.</i>
reign <i>n.</i> règne, <i>m.</i>	reward <i>v.</i> récompenser
reign <i>v.</i> régner	ribbon ruban, <i>m.</i>
rejoice at se réjouir de	rich riche
rejoin rejoindre	riches richesse, <i>f.</i>
relate raconter	rid: be — of, get — of se débarrasser de
relative parent, <i>m.</i>	ride: go for a —, be out for a — se promener à cheval
relic reste, <i>m.</i>	right <i>n.</i> droit, <i>m.</i> ; be (in the) — avoir raison; all —! à la bonne heure!
religion religion, <i>f.</i>	right <i>adj.</i> droit; bon; on the — hand, to the — à (la) droite
remain rester	ring sonner
remains restes, <i>m. pl.</i>	ripe mûr; get — mûrir
remarkable remarquable	ripen mûrir
remember se souvenir de, se rappeler, retenir; — me to them rappelez-moi à leur bon souvenir	rise (up) se lever
render rendre	rival rival
repeat répéter	river fleuve, <i>m.</i> , rivière, <i>f.</i>
reply <i>n.</i> réponse, <i>f.</i> ; make a — répondre	road route, <i>f.</i> , chemin, <i>m.</i> ; on the — en route
reply <i>v.</i> répondre	
repose repos, <i>m.</i>	
represent représenter	

roar rugir, crier	oui (si); — to each other, — to oneself se dire; let us — no more about it n'en parlons plus; how old would you — that man is? quel âge donneriez-vous à cet homme? — again redire
robber voleur	scarce, scarcely à peine; — any très peu de
robin rouge-gorge, <i>m.</i>	scare effrayer, faire peur à; be —d avoir peur
roll <i>n.</i> rouleau, <i>m.</i>	scene vue <i>f.</i>
roll <i>v.</i> rouler	scholar savant, <i>m.</i> ; (<i>pupil</i>) écolier <i>m.</i>
room pièce, <i>f.</i> , salle, <i>f.</i> , chambre, <i>f.</i> ; in his — dans sa chambre, chez lui	school école, <i>f.</i> ; at (to) — à l'école
rose rose, <i>f.</i>	schoolboy écolier, <i>m.</i> , collégien, <i>m.</i>
round rond; to go — faire le tour de	schoolfellow, schoolmate camarade (<i>m.</i>) d'école
row: go for a — se promener en bateau (canot)	science science, <i>f.</i> ; man of — savant, <i>m.</i>
rub frotter, se frotter: — out faire partir (sortir)	scientific man savant, <i>m.</i>
ruin <i>n.</i> ruine, <i>f.</i>	Scotland Écosse, <i>f.</i>
ruin <i>v.</i> perdre	scoundrel coquin, <i>m.</i> , scélérat, <i>m.</i> , gredin, <i>m.</i> , mauvais drôle
rumor on dit, <i>m.</i>	scratch gratter
run (about) courir; — away se sauver; — over parcourir; — them out chasser	scream crier
rush se précipiter, s'élancer, accourir	sculptor sculpteur [skyltœ:r], <i>m.</i>
Russia Russie, <i>f.</i>	sea mer, <i>f.</i>
Russian russe	seaport port (<i>m.</i>) de mer
S	
sad triste	search: make a — chercher
saddle <i>v.</i> seller	season saison, <i>f.</i>
safety sûreté, <i>f.</i>	seat banc, <i>m.</i> , place, <i>f.</i>
sail faire voile; go for a — se promener en bateau	seated assis
sailor marin, <i>m.</i> , matelot, <i>m.</i>	second second, deuxième
salad salade, <i>f.</i>	see voir, regarder; — again revoir
sale vente, <i>f.</i> ; for — à vendre	seek chercher, désirer
Samaritan Samaritain, <i>m.</i>	seem sembler
same même	seize saisir
sand sable, <i>m.</i>	self même, se; enjoy one— s'amuser
satisfied satisfait, content	selfish égoïste
Saturday samedi, <i>m.</i> ; on —s le samedi	sell <i>v. tr.</i> vendre; <i>v. intr.</i> se vendre
save sauver, conserver; (<i>money</i>) épargner, économiser	send envoyer; — for envoyer chercher, faire appeler, faire venir; — upstairs faire monter
Saxon saxon	
say dire; it is said on dit; — no dire que non; — yes dire que	

- sense sens, *m.* [sə:s]
 sensible sensé, raisonnable
 sentence sentence, *f.*; (*gram.*)
 phrase, *f.*, locution, *f.*
 September septembre, *m.*
 seriously sérieusement
 servant valet, *m.*, domestique, *m.*
 and f., servante, *f.*, bonne, *f.*
 service service, *m.*
 set mettre; — a high value upon
 attacher une grande valeur à;
 — about se mettre à
 set out partir
 seven sept
 seventeen dix-sept
 seventy soixante-dix
 seventy-five soixantequinze
 several plusieurs
 severe sévère, dur
 sew coudre
 sewing machine machine (*f.*) à
 coudre
 shake secouer; — hands se donner la main, se serrer la main
 shall devoir; — I go? dois-je
 aller? irai-je? voulez-vous que
 j'aille? we — go nous ironsons;
 what — I sing? que voulez-
 vous que je chante?
 shame honte, *f.*; it is a — c'est
 honteux
 she elle, *ce*
 sheep mouton, *m.*
 shell coquille, *f.*
 shepherd berger, *m.*
 ship vaisseau, *m.*, navire, *m.*
 shirt chemise, *f.*
 shoe soulier, *m.*, chaussure, *f.*
 shop magasin, *m.*, boutique, *f.*;
 to go shopping aller faire des
 emplettes
 shore bord, *m.*; on the lake —
 au bord du lac
 short court, petit, bref; in —
 bref; be — of manquer de
 shortly bientôt
- should: you — do it vous devriez
 le faire; if we — be there si
 nous y étions; I — be glad if he
 were here je serais content s'il
 était ici; I — like you to do it
 je voudrais que vous le fassiez;
 shouldn't I? n'est-ce pas? he
 — have gone il aurait dû partir
 shoulder épaule, *f.*
 shout crier
 show *v.* montrer, faire voir; —
 itself se montrer; — in faire
 entrer; — upstairs faire monter
 shut fermer
 side côté, *m.*; on this — de ce
 côté; on the other — de l'autre
 côté
 sight spectacle, *m.*, vue, *f.*; at
 — of that à cette vue; lose —
 of perdre de vue; by — de
 vue
 sign signer
 silent muet, silencieux; be (*be-*
 come) — se taire
 silk soie, *f.*
 silver *n.* argent, *m.*
 silver *adj.* d'argent, en argent
 sin péché, *m.*
 since *prep.* depuis
 since *conj.* depuis que, puisque,
 que; it is two months — I saw
 him il y a deux mois que je ne
 l'ai vu
 sing chanter
 single seul
 sir monsieur, *m.*
 sire sire, *m.*
 sister sœur, *f.*
 sit s'asseoir, être assis; — down
 to dinner se mettre à table
 sitting assis
 situated situé
 six six
 sixteen seize
 sixty soixante
 size grandeur, *f.*

skate patiner; go skating (aller)	something quelque chose, <i>m.</i> ; —
patiner	good quelque chose de bon; —
skill habileté, <i>f.</i> , adresse, <i>f.</i>	strange and mysterious je ne
skin peau, <i>f.</i>	sais quoi de mystérieux
sky ciel, <i>m.</i>	sometimes quelquefois
slander médire (de)	son fils, <i>m.</i>
slave esclave, <i>m. and f.</i>	song chanson, <i>f.</i> , chant, <i>n.</i>
sleep <i>n.</i> sommeil, <i>m.</i>	soon bientôt; as — as aussitôt
sleep <i>v.</i> dormir; go to — s'endor-	que; too — trop tôt
mir; go to — ! dormez!	sooner plus tôt
sleepy: be — avoir sommeil	sore <i>adj.</i> : have a — hand avoir
slip glisser, s'échapper	mal à la main
slippery: be — faire (être) glissant	sore <i>adv.</i> fort ↗
slow lent	sorrow douleur, <i>f.</i> , chagrin, <i>m.</i>
slowly lentement	sorry fâché, désolé; be — (for)
small petit	regretter; I am — for her elle
smell sentir	me fait pitié
smile sourire	sort sorte, <i>f.</i> , espèce, <i>f.</i> ; what —
smoke <i>n.</i> fumée, <i>f.</i>	of weather? quel temps?
smoke <i>v.</i> fumer	soul âme, <i>f.</i>
snatch arracher	sound son, <i>m.</i>
snow <i>n.</i> neige, <i>f.</i>	soup potage, <i>m.</i>
snow <i>v.</i> neiger	south sud, <i>m.</i> , midi, <i>m.</i>
so si, ainsi, par conséquent, aussi,	South America Amérique (<i>f.</i>) du
c'est pourquoi; — many, —	Sud
much tant (de), tellement; not	southern méridional
— ... as ne ... pas si ... que;	sow semer
I think — je le crois; I am —	Spain Espagne, <i>f.</i>
je le suis; — as to afin de, de	speak parler; French is spoken
manière à; — that afin que,	on parle français; so to — pour
de sorte que; — well si bien,	ainsi dire
tant; will you be — kind as to	speech discours, <i>m.</i>
veuillez, voulez-vous bien; he	spend (time) passer, (money) dé-
did — il l'a fait, c'est ce qu'il	penser
a fait; say — le dire	spite: in — of malgré
soap savon, <i>m.</i>	splendid magnifique
so-called soi-disant, prétendu	spoil <i>intr.</i> se gâter
soldier soldat, <i>m.</i> , militaire, <i>m.</i>	spoon cuiller, <i>f.</i>
solve résoudre	sport jeu, <i>m.</i> ; make — of se
some <i>adj.</i> du, de la, des; quel-	moquer de
que(s); for — time pendant	spot endroit, <i>m.</i> , coin, <i>m.</i>
quelque temps; — day un jour	spring printemps, <i>m.</i> ; in — au
some <i>pron.</i> en; quelqu'un, quel-	printemps
ques-uns; — of it en; I have	square place, <i>f.</i>
— j'en ai	stable (<i>for horses</i>) écurie, <i>f.</i> , (<i>for</i>
somebody, someone quelqu'un, on	<i>cattle</i>) étable, <i>f.</i>

- stair(s) escalier, *m.*; up—*s* en haut; down—*s* en bas; go down—*s* descendre
 stake pieu, *m.*; be at — y aller de stamp (*postage*) timbre (*poste*), *m.*
 stand être debout, se tenir, se trouver
 start (*with fear, etc.*) tressaillir; (*set out*) partir; — off partir
 starvation faim, *f.*
 starve mourir de faim
 statesman homme d'État
 station (*railway*) gare, *f.*
 statue statue, *f.*
 stay rester, s'arrêter; — in rester à la maison, rester chez soi
 steal voler, dérober
 steam vapeur, *f.*
 steamboat, steamer bateau (*m.*) à vapeur, vapeur, *m.*
 steam engine machine (*f.*) à vapour
 step *n.* pas, *m.*
 step *v.* marcher
 sterling sterling (*invar.*)
 St. Helena Sainte-Hélène, *f.*
 stick bâton, *m.*
 stick out sortir
 still encore, toujours
 stir remuer, bouger
 stocking bas, *m.*
 stone pierre, *f.*
 stoop se baisser
 stop s'arrêter, cesser de
 store magasin, *m.*, boutique, *f.*
 stork cigogne, *f.*
 storm (*thunder*) orage, *m.*, (*wind*) tempête, *f.*
 story histoire, *f.*, conte, *m.*
 stove poêle [pwɑ:l], *m.*, fourneau, *m.*
 straight droit
 strange étrange
 stratagem stratagème, *m.*
 street rue, *f.*; from one — to another de rue en rue
- street car(s) tramway, *m.*
 strength force, *f.*
 strike frapper
 strip dépouiller
 stroke coup, *m.*
 strong fort
 struggle *n.* lutte, *f.*
 struggle *v.* lutter
 study *n.* étude, *f.*
 study *v.* étudier, apprendre
 stupid sot, bête
 style style, *m.*, manière, *f.*; in (the) French — à la française
 subdue subjuger
 subject sujet, *m.*
 submit se soumettre
 succeed succéder à; réussir
 success succès, *m.*
 such tel; — a un tel; — a foolish man un homme si bête
 suffer souffrir, subir
 suffice suffire
 sugar sucre, *m.*
 suit *v.* convenir
 sum somme, *f.*
 summer été, *m.*; in — en été
 sun soleil, *m.*; the — is shining il fait du soleil
 Sunday dimanche, *m.*
 sunrise lever (*m.*) du soleil
 sunset coucher (*m.*) du soleil
 superfluous superflu, de trop
 support soutenir
 sure sûr
 surgeon chirurgien, *m.*, médecin, *m.*
 surprise surprendre
 surprised surpris, étonné
 suspect soupçonner, se douter (de)
 swear jurer
 Swedish suédois
 sweet doux; smell — sentir bon
 swim nager
 Swiss suisse
 Switzerland Suisse, *f.*

Ttable table, *f.*tail queue, *f.*tailor tailleur, *m.*

take prendre, porter, emporter, mener, conduire; — after tenir de; — a walk (aller) se promener, faire une promenade; — up the collection faire la quête; — place avoir lieu; — advantage of abuser de; — care of avoir soin de; — interest in s'intéresser à, s'occuper de; — away ôter, emporter; — care not to prendre garde de; — a journey faire un voyage; — off ôter, quitter; — up monter; — away from prendre à

taking prise, *f.*

talk (about) parler (de)

tall grand, haut

Tasso Tasse (le)

taxicab taxi(mètre), *m.*tea thé, *m.*

teach enseigner, apprendre

teacher professeur, *m. and f.*, maître, *m.*, maîtresse, *f.*teapot théière, *f.*tear *n.* larme, *f.*; with —s in her eyes les larmes aux yeuxtear *v.* déchirerTe Deum Te Deum, *m.*tell raconter, dire, annoncer; (*understand*) comprendre, savoir

tempt tenter

ten dix

terrible terrible

terrify épouvanter

text texte, *m.*than que, de (*before numerals*)

thank remercier; no, I — you je vous remercie

thanks remercîments, *m.*; no, — mercithat *dem. adj.* ce, cet, cette; ce . . . làthat *dem. pron.* ce, cela, celui(-là); all — tout cela; — is voilà, voilà qui, c'est, celui-là est; is — the house? est-ce là la maison?that *rel. pron.* qui, que, lequel; all — tout ce qui (que)that *conj.* quethe le, la, les; — richer one is plus on est riche; — less one has of them moins on en a theater théâtre, *m.*their *adj.* leur, leurstheirs *pron.* le leur

them les, leur, eux, elles; of — d'eux, en; to — à eux, leur, y themselves se, eux, eux-mêmes then alors, ensuite, puis

there là, là-bas, y; — is (are) voilà, il y a; — it is le (la) voilà; — will be rain il pleuvra; — is a knock on frappe; — happens il arrive; if — ever was s'il en fut (jamais); — he comes! le voilà qui vient!

thereupon là-dessus

these *adj.* ces; ces . . . -cithese *pron.* ceux, ceux-ci; — are ce sont; — books of yours vos livres que voici

they ils, elles, on, ce; there — are les voilà; it is — ce sont eux

thief voleur, *m.*, brigand, *m.*

thine le tien

thing chose, *f.*, affaire, *f.*, objet, *m.*, article, *m.*; this good — cela de bon

think penser, croire, songer, réfléchir (à); what are you —ing of (about)? à quoi pensez-vous? one would — on croirait; I told him what I — of him je lui ai dit son fait; what do you —

(what is your opinion) of it?	(que); most of the — la plupart
qu'en pensez-vous?	du temps; at a — when à une
third troisième, trois, tiers	époque où; every — that toutes
thirsty: be — avoir soif, <i>f.</i> ; be	les fois que, chaque fois que;
very — avoir bien soif, mourir	he had given ten —s as much
de soif	as the thing was worth il avait
thirteen treize	donné (payé) dix fois plus que
thirty trente	l'objet ne valait; cost three —s
this <i>adj.</i> ce, cet, cette; ce . . . -ci	as much coûter trois fois plus
this <i>pron.</i> ce, ceci, celui(-ci); —	cher; have a good — s'amuser
one celui-ci; — book of mine	bien
mon livre que voici	tire fatiguer, ennuyer; be (get)
those <i>adj.</i> ces, ces . . . -là	—d (of being) s'ennuyer
those <i>pron.</i> ceux(-là); all — tous	tired fatigué, ennuyé
ceux; — who ceux qui; — are	tiresome ennuyeux
mine voilà les miens	to à, chez, de, pour, en, jusqu'à,
thou tu, toi	envers; at five minutes —
though bien que, quoique	three à trois heures moins
thought pensée, <i>f.</i>	cinq
thoughtless étourdi	to-day aujourd'hui
thousand mille, mil	toe orteil, <i>m.</i> , doigt, <i>m.</i> ; step on
threaten menacer	one's —s vous marcher sur le
three trois	pied
throne trône, <i>m.</i>	together ensemble
through par, à travers, au tra-	to-morrow demain; day after —
vers de	après-demain
throw jeter	too aussi; trop; — much, —
Thursday jeudi, <i>m.</i>	many trop
thus ainsi	tooth dent, <i>f.</i>
thy ton, ta, tes	toothache mal (<i>m.</i>) aux dents
ticket billet, <i>m.</i>	toothpick cure-dent, <i>m.</i>
till <i>prep.</i> jusqu'à, avant	top haut, <i>m.</i>
till <i>conj.</i> jusqu'à ce que, que	touch toucher
time temps, <i>m.</i> , fois, <i>f.</i> , époque,	tour tour, <i>m.</i>
<i>f.</i> , heure, <i>f.</i> , moment, <i>m.</i> ; some	towards vers, envers
— quelque temps; in the — of	towel serviette, <i>f.</i>
(a king) sous; at that — dans	tower tour, <i>f.</i>
ce temps-là, à cette époque, à ce	town ville, <i>f.</i> ; in —, down — en
moment; a long — longtemps;	ville; to — à la ville
this long — depuis si long-	toy jouet, <i>m.</i>
temps; next — la prochaine	trace tracer
fois; what — is it? quelle heure	trade changer
est-il? many a — bien des fois;	train train, <i>m.</i>
have — to avoir le temps de;	translate traduire
I have not — je n'ai pas le	travel <i>n.</i> voyage, <i>m.</i>
temps; be — to être temps de	travel <i>v.</i> voyager; — over par-

courir; —ing companion com-	nothing of it je n'y comprends
pagnon (<i>m.</i>) de voyage rien	
traveler voyageur, <i>m.</i>	undertake entreprendre
tread under foot fouler aux pieds unfortunate malheureux	
treasure trésor, <i>m.</i>	unhappy malheureux
treat traiter United Kingdom Royaume-Uni,	
treatment traitement, <i>m.</i> <i>m.</i>	
treaty traité, <i>m.</i>	United States États-Unis, <i>m.</i> ;
tree arbre, <i>m.</i> in the — aux États-Unis	
tremble trembler unknown inconnu	
trifling insignifiant unless à moins que . . . ne	
trip excursion, <i>f.</i> , promenade, <i>f.</i> until jusqu'à ce que, que	
troops troupes, <i>f. pl.</i>	up en haut; to be — être levé;
trouble peine, <i>f.</i>	get — se lever; come — mon-
troupe troupe, <i>f.</i>	ter; — to jusqu'à
true vrai, fidèle, réel, véritable upholsterer tapissier, <i>m.</i>	
trunk malle, <i>f.</i>	upon sur
trust <i>n.</i> confiance, <i>f.</i>	upright droit
trust <i>v.</i> avoir confiance en, se upstairs en haut	
fier à	us nous (autres)
truth vérité, <i>f.</i>	use <i>n.</i> usage, <i>m.</i> , emploi, <i>m.</i> ;
try tâcher, essayer; — and save make — of se servir de, em-	
tâcher de conserver ployer; be of some — être de	
try on essayer quelque utilité; have — for	
Tuesday mardi, <i>m.</i> avoir besoin de; be no — in	
turn <i>n.</i> tour, <i>m.</i> ; in — tour à avoir beau	
tour	use <i>v.</i> se servir de, employer
turn <i>v.</i> tourner; — round se used accoutumé; be — to avoir	
retourner; — out of chasser coutume de; — to is often ex-	
de; — out of doors mettre à pressed by the imperfect indic-	
la porte ative	
twelve douze; — (o'clock) midi, useful utile	
<i>m.</i> , minuit, <i>m.</i>	
twenty vingt useless inutile; be — ne valoir	
twenty-five vingt-cinq rien; it is — for you to say so	
twenty-four vingt-quatre vous avez beau dire	
twenty-nine vingt-neuf usual usuel, accoutumé, ordinaire	
twice deux fois utter proférer, articuler	
two deus; — weeks quinze jours	

U

uncle oncle, <i>m.</i>	
under sous, au-dessous de	
undergo subir	
understand comprendre; I can —	

V

vain vain; in — en vain; be in	
— avoir beau	
valuable précieux	
value valeur, <i>f.</i> ; be of — valoir	
vast vaste	
vegetable légume, <i>m.</i>	

verb verbe, *m.*

verbal verbal

verse vers, *m.*, (*Bible*) verset, *m.*

very très, bien, fort, beaucoup, dès; — much beaucoup, bien, très; that — evening le soir même

vice vice, *m.*

Victoria Victoria

victory victoire, *f.*

view vue, *f.*

vigor vigueur, *f.*

village village, *m.*

violent violent

violin violon, *m.*

virtue vertu, *f.*

virtuous vertueux

visible visible

visit visiter, faire (une) visite à, rendre visite à, aller voir

voice voix, *f.*

volley volée, *f.*

volume volume, *m.*, tome, *m.*

W

wag remuer

wages gages, *m. pl.*

wait, — for attendre

wake, waken éveiller, réveiller, se réveiller

Wales le pays de Galles

walk *n.* promenade, *f.*; go for a —, take a — (aller) se promener; faire une promenade (à pied)

walk *v.* marcher, se promener; — in entrer

walking marche, *f.*, marcher, *m.*; be good — faire beau (bon) marcher

wall mur, *m.*, muraille, *f.*

walnut noix, *f.*; — tree noyer, *m.*

wander s'égarter, s'écartier

want avoir besoin, vouloir, désirer, demander, manquer (de); you are —ed on vous demande

warm *adj.* chaud, chaleureux; be — (*of living beings*) avoir chaud; be (get) — (*of weather*) faire chaud

warm *v.* chauffer; — your hands vous chauffer les mains

was see be; he — to be there il devait y être

watch *n.* montre, *f.*

watch *v.* suivre des yeux, veiller

water *n.* eau, *f.*

water *v.* abreuver; make his mouth — lui faire venir l'eau à la bouche

way route, *f.*, chemin, *m.*; manière, *f.*, façon, *f.*, moyen, *m.*; on the — en route, chemin faisant; by the — à propos; a long — off bien loin; lose one's — s'égarter; in that — de cette manière-là; in such a — de telle sorte; have one's — faire à sa tête; which —, the — par où

we nous, on

weak faible

weakness faiblesse, *f.*

wear porter; mettre

weather temps, *m.*; what kind of — is it? quel temps fait-il? it is fine — il fait beau (temps); the — is warm il fait chaud

Wednesday mercredi, *m.*

week semaine, *f.*, huit jours, *m. pl.*; a — from to-day d'aujourd'hui en huit; two —s from today d'aujourd'hui en quinze; from — to — de semaine en semaine

weep pleurer

weigh peser

welcome accueillir; be — être le bienvenu

well *n.* puits, *m.*

well *adv.* bien, eh bien, très; so — si bien; very — très bien,

eh bien; **be** — off avoir de quoi vivre, être à son aise; **be** — se porter bien, aller bien; **do** — faire le bien; **as** — as aussi bien que

well-known bien connu

went *see go*

were past tense of be; **if you — to go there** si vous y alliez; **if he — to say** s'il disait; — it only ne fût-ce que; — you not? n'est-ce pas?

west ouest, *m.*

what adj. quel; — o'clock (*time*) is it? quelle heure est-il?

what pron. que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ce à quoi, ce dont, qu'est-ce que? qu'est-ce qui? qu'est-ce que c'est que? ce que c'est que; **by** — he says à ce qu'il dit; **not to know — to do** ne savoir que faire; — is that to him? qu'est-ce que cela lui fait? — is his name? comment s'appelle-t-il?

whatever tout ce qui (que), quoi que, quel que, qui que, quelconque

wheat blé, m.; — field champ (m.) de blé

when quand, lorsque, que, à quelle heure; hardly... — à peine... que; — you will quand vous voudrez

whenever quand, lorsque, toutes les fois que

where où; from — d'où

whereas tandis que; vu que

whether si, que, soit que; — ... or (soit) que... ou (que)

which adj. quel; — ones? lesquels (lesquelles)?

which pron. qui, que, lequel; of — dont, duquel; at — où, auquel; in — où, dans lequel; **from** — dont, duquel

while *n.*: a long — longtemps

while prep. en

while, whilst conj. pendant que, tandis que, tant que

whistle *n.* sifflet, *m.*

white blanc

who qui, quel, lequel

whoever qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque

whole tout; **the — evening** toute la soirée; **the — year** toute l'année; **the — world** le monde entier

whom qui, que, lequel; **of — dont**, de qui, duquel

whose à qui, de qui, dont, du quel; **at — house** chez qui

why pourquoi; — yes mais oui

wicked méchant

wide large; — open grand(e) ouvert(e)

wife femme, f., épouse, f.

will vouloir; **he — come il viendra;** — you come? voulez-vous venir? — you kindly? voulez-vous bien?

William Guillaume

willing : be — vouloir

willingly volontiers

win remporter, gagner

wind n. vent, *m.*

wind v. remonter

window fenêtre, f.; out of the — par la fenêtre

windy : be — faire du vent

wine vin, m.

wing aile, f.

winter hiver, m.

wipe essuyer

wisdom sagesse, f.

wise sage

wish désirer, vouloir; **as you — comme vous voudrez;** **when-(ever) you — quand vous vourez;** **if you — si vous voulez;**

- I — you were here je voudrais
que vous fussiez ici
wit esprit, *m.*
- with avec, chez, à, de, envers,
par; go (be) — accompagner;
the man — the big nose l'homme
au gros nez
- withdraw se retirer
- within dans, au bout de
- without *prep.* sans; —... and
(or) sans... ni; do — se
passer de
- without *conj.* sans que (*with subj.*)
- woman femme, *f.*
- wonder s'étonner, se demander
- wont: be — avoir coutume de
- wood(s) bois, *m.*
- woodchopper, woodman bûcheron,
m.
- word mot, *m.*, parole, *f.*; send —
faire savoir
- work *n.* travail, *m.*, ouvrage, *m.*,
œuvre, *m. and f.*
- work *v.* travailler; that —s ça
marche, ça y est
- world monde, *m.*, globe, *m.*
- worse plus mauvais, pire, pis,
plus malade; which is — qui
pis est
- worth valeur, *f.*; be — valoir;
feel his own — sentir ce qu'il
vaut; — the trouble (while)
valoir la peine
- worthy digne, brave
- would *past tense of will*; if you
were here you — do it si vous
étiez ici vous le feriez; he —
not do it il ne voulait pas le
faire; — you be kind enough
to veuillez, voulez-vous bien,
voudriez-vous bien; I — as
soon... as j'aimerais autant
... que de; — to God! plutôt à
Dieu! would is also often ex-
pressed by the *impf. indic.*
- would-be soi-disant, prétendu
- wound *n.* blessure, *f.*, plaie, *f.*
- wound *v.* blesser
- wrecked: be — faire naufrage
- wretch misérable, *m.*
- wretched misérable
- write écrire; — to each other
s'écrire
- wrong mal, *m.*; be (in the) —
avoir tort, être dans l'erreur;
do — faire le mal; take the —
road se tromper de chemin;
adj. mauvais

Y

- yard cour, *f.*, jardin, *m.*, (*measure*)
mètre, *m.*
- year année, *f.*, an, *m.*; last —
l'année dernière, l'année passée;
in the — 1860 l'an 1860; 20
francs a — 20 francs par an
- yell crier
- yes oui, si; — you have si, si
- yesterday hier
- yet encore, toujours, cependant;
déjà; not — pas encore
- yield céder
- yonder là-bas; over — là-bas
- you vous, tu, te, toi; on
- young jeune, petit
- your votre, vos, ton, ta, tes
- yours le vôtre, le tien; à vous, à
toi
- yourself vous, te, toi, vous-même,
toi-même
- youth jeunesse, *f.*

INDEX TO PART I

A

a, denoting indirect object, § 24; à + le = au, § 46, § 123, 2; with infinitive, § 99, 3, 4; with names of cities and countries, § 119.
 accent, acute, § 5, 1; circumflex, § 5, 3; grave, § 5, 2.
acheter, orthographic peculiarities, p. 89; future, § 93; conjugation, § 158, 2.
 adjectival phrases with de, § 60.
 adjectives, plural of, § 31, § 45; feminine of, §§ 51–52; position, 53; comparison, §§ 68–70; followed by de or à + infinitive, § 99, 2, 3, 4; *see also* demonstrative, interrogative, possessive.
 adverba, comparison, § 71; pronominal, §§ 80–81.
afin que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.
 age, idioma, § 144, 5.
 agreement, grammatical, § 25; of past participle with avoir, § 74, with être, § 76, with reflexive object, § 83; of present participle, § 101; of possessive pronouns, § 122; of relative pronouns, § 131.
 aller, conjugation, §§ 72–73, § 92, § 117, § 160; meaning of, p. 82, B (2).
 alphabet, names of letters of, § 4.
any = en, § 36.

apostrophe, § 5, 6, § 19, 1; p. 19 (6).
 appeler, orthographic peculiarities, p. 89; conjugation, § 158, 2.
après, before infinitive, p. 118, b.
 articles, *see* definite, indefinite.
au = à + le; aux = à + les, § 46.
aucun, § 137, 4; un autre distinguished from encore un, § 137, 2.
 auxiliary verba, § 154.
avant de + infinitive, p. 170 (3).
avant que + subjunctive, § 106, 4.
 avoir, conjugation, § 33, § 37, § 86, § 91, § 100, § 111, § 115, § 147, § 151; tables, § 154; forming compound tenses, §§ 63–64; avoir besoin, etc., § 61.

B

bien que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

C

capital letters, § 21.
 case, § 24.
ce, cet, cette, ces, § 44.
ceci, § 127.
cedilla, § 5, 4.
ce dont, § 132, 7.
cela, § 127.
celui, § 128; **celui-ci, celui-là**, § 129; **celui qui**, § 132, 8.
cent, § 138, *note*, § 139, § 140; Appendix.
ce que, ce qui, § 132, 7.

c'est, ce sont, § 44, 2, *a*; with logical subject, §§ 96–97; distinguished from il est, § 97, *note*.
changer de, p. 180.
cinq, § 138, *note*.

commencer, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; imperfect, § 89; conjugation, § 156.
 comparison, of adjectives, §§ 68–70; of adverbs, § 71.

compound tenses, with avoir, § 63; with être, § 76; of reflexive verbs, § 82; tables, § 155.

conditional, mood and sentence, §§ 114–117.

conjugations, regular, § 41; tables, §§ 153–155; irregular, §§ 160–225.

connaitre, conjugation, § 133, § 188.

consonants, §§ 16–17; doubled consonants, § 17, 19. content, before infinitive, p. 71.

contractions, de, § 35; à, § 46, § 123, 2.

countries, etc., with article, §§ 118–119.

D

dates, § 144; **idioma**, § 144, 3; Appendix.
days, of month, § 144, 2; of week, p. 110, B; time of day, § 145.
 de, contraction, § 35; denoting possession, § 24; after words of quantity (**beaucoup**, etc.), § 59, 4, (million, etc.), § 139; denoting partitive, § 36,

§ 59; Appendix; in adjectival phrases, § 60; after superlative, § 69; with infinitive, § 99, 2, 4; before countries, § 118, 2. definite article, § 22; plural of, § 31; with general nouns, § 57; with names of countries, etc., §§ 118–119; with superlative, § 69; with possessive force, § 84.

demi, as noun and adjective, § 145, 4; Appendix.

demonstrative adjective, § 44.

demonstrative pronoun, § 44, 2, a, § 97, §§ 125–129.

depuis (quand), with idiomatic present, § 67.

des = de + les, § 35.

devoir, meanings of, pp. 186–187 (3); conjugation, § 214.

diæresis, § 5, 5.

dire, conjugation, § 124, § 193.

donner, conjugation, § 42, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 111, § 114, § 146, § 150; tables, § 153, § 155.

dont, § 132, 3.

du = de + le, § 35, § 123, 2.

dû, p.p. of devoir, pp. 186–187.

E

elision, § 19.

elle, = it, § 40.

en, pronoun, § 36, 3; position of, § 36, 4, § 81, § 113; does not agree with past participle, § 74.

en, preposition, §§ 118–119; with present participle, § 101; before countries, § 118, 2.

est-ce que? § 43, § 49. être, conjugation, § 39, § 86, § 91, § 100, § 111, § 115, § 146, § 151; forming compound tenses, § 76; with reflexive verbs, § 82; tables, § 154; être + à, denoting ownership, § 123; *see also il est.* eu, pronunciation in avoir, § 62, § 64.

F

faire, conjugation, § 50, § 88, § 91, § 109, § 117, § 149; in expressions of natural phenomena, § 98; table, 195; *see also il fait.*

falloir, *see il faut.*

finir, conjugation, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 114, § 146, § 150; tables, § 153, § 155.

first, § 144, 2.

fois, distinguished from temps, p. 83.

fractions, *see numerals.*

future, *see indicative.*

G

gender, § 23.

general noun, § 57.

gerund, *see present participle with en.*

get, translations of, p. 169, C.

H

half, § 143, § 145, 4.

huit, § 138, *note.*

hyphen, § 5, 7; *see also interrogation,* p. 29; § 38; Appendix.

I

idiomatic present indicative, § 67.

idioms, p. 180, (2); age, § 144, 5; dates, § 144, 3.

il = it, § 40; with impersonal verbs, § 98, § 103.

il est, distinguished from c'est, § 97, *note;* with expressions of time, § 98, d, § 145.

il fait, describing natural phenomena, § 145, 5, *note.*

il faut, impersonal, § 98, b; obligation, § 103, § 106, 3.

il y a, use of, § 47, + object noun, § 98, c.

imperative mood, § 73, §§ 110–113; tables, § 154.

imperfect, *see indicative, subjunctive.*

impersonal verbs, § 98, § 103; with subjunctive, § 106 and pp. 121–122.

indefinite article, § 26.

indefinite pronoun, § 48, §§ 136–137.

indicative mood, §§ 153–155; present, § 33, § 37, § 39, § 42, § 50, § 56, § 72; idiomatic present, § 67; imperfect, §§ 85–88; past indefinite, § 64, § 66, § 76; past definite, §§ 146–149; pluperfect, § 63, § 86; future, § 90–94; of reflexive verbs, § 82; *see also aller, voir, savoir, etc.*

infinitive mood, § 41, § 99; without preposition, § 99, 1; with de, § 99, 2; with à, § 99, 3; with par, p. 117, B (3); after entendre, p. 71; infinitive or subjunctive, pp. 121–122; past infinitive after après, p. 118.

interrogation, § 29, § 38; Appendix; § 39, § 43, § 49.

interrogative adjective, § 54.
interrogative pronoun, §§ 134-135.
irregular conjugation, §§ 160-225.

L

Pon, p. 87, *footnote*, p. 135, *footnote*.
le, la, les, as article, § 22; as pronoun, § 30.
quel, relative, § 132, 5; interrogative, § 135, 6.
liaison, § 18.
logical subject, §§ 96-97.

M

manger, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; imperfect, § 89; conjugation, § 156, 2.
même, § 137, 7.
mener, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; conjugation, § 158.
mil, mille, in dates, § 144, and Appendix.
mille, milliard, million, § 139.
moins, comparative, § 68.
months, of the year, § 144, 4.
mood, *see* indicative, infinitive, participle, imperative, subjunctive, conditional.
multiplicatives, *see* numerals.

N

names, of countries, etc., §§ 118-119; of *daya*, p. 110, B; of *montha*, § 144, 4.
nasalization, § 12, 2, 4, § 13, 3, § 14, 2, § 25, 4.
natural phenomena, § 98, a, § 145, 5, *note*.
necessity, *see* obligation.

negation, § 28, § 36, 2, § 59, 1, § 112, § 136, 4, § 137, 4.
noun, plural of, § 31, § 45; general, § 57; partitive, § 36, § 59.
nul, § 137, 4.
numerals, cardinal, §§ 138-140, and Appendix; in dates, *daya* and titles, § 144, 1, 2, and Appendix; ordinal, § 142; multiplicatives, § 141; fractions, § 143.

O

om, § 48, § 136; *see also Pon*.

once, § 141.
onze, § 138, *note*.
orthographic signs, § 5; peculiarities (commencer, *manger*, *mener*), § 78, § 89, §§ 156-158.
où, § 132, 4.
ownership, article with parts of body, clothing, etc., § 84; être + à, § 123; *whose* = à *qui*, § 135, 2.

P

participle, present, §§ 100-101; gerund, § 101; past, § 62, § 63, § 74, § 76, §§ 82-83, § 155; agreement, § 74.
partir, meaning of, p. 83; conjugation, § 166.
partitive, noun and pronoun, § 36, § 59.
pas with *ne*, § 28; *pas un*, § 137, 4.
past definite, *see* indicative.
past descriptive, *see* imperfect, § 87.
past indefinite, *see* indicative.
payer, with two objects, p. 88 (8).

penser à, penser de, p. 165, *note*.
personal pronoun, object, § 30, § 77, § 79; position, § 81, § 113; disjunctive, §§ 95-96.
personne, § 136, 4.
peu, un peu, p. 75.
phonetic symbols, § 3; transcription, pp. 12-13.
pièce, distinguished from *chambre, salle*, p. 165 (9).
plural, of nouns and adjectives, § 31, § 45.
plus, comparative, § 68.
position, *see* word order.
possessive adjective, § 27, § 32.

possessive pronoun, §§ 121-123.

pour que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

pouvoir, conjugation, § 102, § 221.

prendre, special meaning, p. 79.

pronoun, in address, § 34; plural of, § 31; position of pronoun objects, § 77, § 81, § 113; *see also demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, personal, relative, reflexive pronouns*.

pronunciation, §§ 1-19; *see also Exercises in Pronunciation*, Lessons I-XIX; of commencer, *manger*, *mener*, § 78; of acheter, appeler, p. 89; of numerals, § 138. *punctuation*, § 20.

Q

quarter, § 143.
quatre-vingt(s), § 138, *note*, § 140, and Appendix.
que, conjunction, after comparatives, § 68; *in*

subordinate clauses, § 106.
que, pronoun, relative, § 75, § 106, 5, § 132; interrogative, § 134, § 135, 3.
quel, § 54.
quelque, p. 75.
quelque chose, § 136, 3.
quelqu'un, § 136, 2.
qu'est-ce que? § 49.
qu'est-ce qui? § 135, 4.
qui, § 75, § 132; à qui, § 135, 2; de qui, § 135, 2.
quitter, meaning of, p. 83.
quel, relative, § 132, 6; interrogative, § 135, 5.
quoique, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

R

reflexive pronouns, §§ 82–83.
reflexive verbs, conjugation, §§ 82–84.
regular conjugation, §§ 41–42, § 153.
relative pronouns, § 75, §§ 130–132.
ressembler à, p. 180.
result clause, § 116, 2, 3.
rien, § 136, 4.

S

savoir, conjugation, § 120, § 222.
seasons, § 144, 4.
si, in conditional sentences, § 116; elision of i, § 19.
some = en, § 36.
sounds, § 2.
stress, § 7, § 25, 7, § 30, (1).
subjunctive mood, §§ 153–

155; present, §§ 104–109; imperfect, §§ 150–152; tense sequence, § 107, § 152; subjunctive or infinitive, pp. 121–122.
such = si or **tellement**, § 137, 5.
superlative, of adjectives, § 69.
syllabication, § 6, § 25, (5).
symbols, table of, § 3.

T

tel, un tel, § 137, 5.
temperature, see natural phenomena.
temps, distinguished from fois, p. 83.
tense sequence, § 107, § 152.
tenses, formation, § 159; see also compound.
time, of day, § 145; il est with expressions of time, § 98, d, § 145.
titles, § 144.
tolérances, see Appendix.
tout, § 58, § 137, 6.

V

vendre, conjugation, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 114, § 146, § 150.
verbs, in -cer, -ger, § 78, § 89, § 156; in -yer, § 157; with stem-vowel e or é, § 78, § 158; principal parts, § 159; reflexive, § 82; impersonal, § 98, § 103; regular conjugations, §§ 153–155; irregular verbs, §§ 160–225; ref-

erence list of irregular verbs, § 226; see also conjugations, moods, tenses.

vingt, § 138, note; § 140; Appendix.

voici, § 30, note.

voilà, § 30, note; distinguished from il y a, § 47, 2.

voir, conjugation, § 124, § 224.

vouloir, meanings of, p. 187; conjugation, § 108, § 225.

vowels, §§ 9–15; vowel quantity, § 8.

W

weather, see natural phenomena.

what (absolute) = ce qui, § 132, 7.

what? = que? § 33, 3.

whose = à qui, § 135, 2.

willing and desiring, governing subjunctive, § 106, 1.

word order, auxiliary verb, § 65; after entendre, p. 71 (3); after voir, p. 81, footnote; pronoun objects, § 77; pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, § 36, 4, § 81, § 113; déjà, encore, p. 99 footnote; position of adjectives, § 53.

Y

y, use of, § 55, § 80; p. 93, footnote; position, § 81, § 113.

INDEX TO PART II

A

à (prep.), of indir. obj., § 362, 2, § 451, 1; verb + à = Eng. tran., § 296, 2; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; with names of countries, § 333, 3; denoting possession after être, § 377, 1; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; = *concerning, of*, § 436, 2; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2; of 'motion towards,' § 451, 2; = *with* (characteristic), § 454, 4.
 abbreviations, § 461.
about, § 436.
 adjective, *see also* possessive, demonstr., interrog., indef., numeral; fem., §§ 336–337; pl., §§ 338–339; agreement, §§ 340–344; as adv., § 410, § 343, 1; nouns as adjs., § 344; adva. as adjs., § 358, b; comparison, §§ 345–349; position, §§ 350–353; with à, § 355; with de, § 356; with en, § 357; with envers, § 358.
 adverb, list, § 408; in -ment from adjs., § 409; adjs. as advs., § 410; adverbial locutions, § 411; comparison, § 412; position, § 413; negatives, §§ 414–419; distinctions in use,

§ 420; numeral advs., § 426.
afin que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.
after, § 437.
agir, impers., § 252, 1, obs. aïeul, pl., § 309.
all, pl., § 309.
aimer, + à, without prep., 281, 1.
aller, + infin., § 230, 8; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; s'en aller, § 247; allez, allons, special force, § 267, b.
âme qui vive, âme vivante, with ne, § 415, 2, c.
à moins que, with ne, § 419, 1.
among, § 438.
amour, gender, § 304, 3, b.
and, untranslated, § 456, 2; = ni, 457, 2.
apposition, use of art., § 330, 4.
approuvé, § 289, a.
après, § 437.
après, + infin., § 282, 4.
après-midi, gender, § 304, 3, a.
arriver, impers., § 252, 1. article, §§ 315–335, *see also* def. art. and indef. art.; agreement and repetition, § 318; use with nouns, §§ 319–335; omission, § 330; in apposition, § 330, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; with proper names, §§ 332–335.
at, § 439.

attendant: *en — que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 1.
attendu, § 289, a.
au = à + le, § 317.
aucun(s), § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with ne, § 415.
aucunement, with ne, § 415.
au-dessous de, § 453, 2.
au-dessus de, § 448, 1.
aussi, *in comparison* (adj.), § 345; (adv.), § 412.
autant, § 420, 2.
automobile, § 304, 3, c.
autour de, § 436, 1.
autre, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 2; with ne, 419, 3, n.
autrement, with ne, § 419, 3, n.
autrui, § 403, 2; nee, § 405, 1.
aux = à + les, § 317.
auxiliary verbs, use, §§ 227–229; modal auxs., § 230, 5, n.
avant, § 440, 2.
avant que, with ne, § 419, 1, b; *avant que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 1.
avec, § 454, 1, 3.
avoir, conjgn., § 154; used to form comp. tensea, § 227, § 229; y avoir, § 250; il y a and voilà, § 250, 3; avoir besoin, etc. (without art.), § 330, 1; avoir l'air, agreement of adj. with, § 343, 4, c, denoting dimension, § 428, obs. 3; denoting age, § 430.

B

beaucoup, + de, agreement of verb, § 232, 2, a, b; with partitive, § 325, 1, d; replaced by plusieurs, § 406, 4; comparison, § 412, 2. before, § 440. bel, § 337, 1, (3). bestiaux, § 308, 4, n. bétail, pl., § 308, 4, n. bien, with partitive, § 325, 1, b; irreg. comparison, § 412, 2. bien que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4. bon, comparison, § 346; + à or pour, § 355, a, § 358, a. bouger, with ne alone, § 418, 4. bout: au — de, § 437, 2. brin, with ne, § 415, 2, b. by, § 441; of 'dimension,' § 428, a.

C

ça, § 378, 2, obs. ça, for cela, § 388, e, f; distinguished from ça and ça!, § 388, f. n. ça, ça!, distinguished from ça, § 388, f. n. cardinals, § 421, § 427; in dates, etc., § 427; for ordinals, § 427. cas: au — où, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, c. n.; au — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3; dans le — où, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, c. n.; en — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3. case relations, of nouns, § 313; of conjunctive pers. prons., § 362. ce (adj.), § 378, 1; use, § 380. ce (pron.), § 378, 2; agreement of verb with,

§ 232, 3; use, §§ 383–387; + être, § 383, § 384; c'est and il est, § 384; + a relat., § 385; in phrases, § 386; ce semble, § 386, a; pleonastic, § 387; ce n'est pas que + subj., § 455. ceci, § 378, 2; use, § 388. ceia, § 378, 2; use, § 388; replaced by là, § 388, d. celui, § 378, 2; use, § 381. celui-ci, § 378, 2; use, § 382. celui-là, § 378, 2; use, § 382; replacing celui, § 381, b. cent(s), § 421, b, c, d, e. -cer, verbs in, § 156. certain, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 1. certifié, § 289, a. cesser, with ne alone, § 418, 4. cet, for ce, § 378, 1, obs. chacun, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 2. chaque, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 2. chez, § 439, 2, § 451, 2, § 454, 2. -ci, § 380. ciel, pl., § 309. ci-inclus, § 289, b. ci-joint, § 289, b. collationné, § 289, a. collectives, § 423. combien, agreement, § 232, 2, b. comme, for que in comparison, § 345, b. comparison, of adjs., §§ 345–349; of advs., § 412; irreg. (adj.), § 346; irreg. (adv.), § 412, 2; remarks, § 349; followed by ne, § 419, 3. complement, predicative, § 295; prepositional, § 296; composite, § 298. compound adjs. pl., § 343, 2; nouns, pl., § 311.

compound tenses, formation, §§ 227–229; in condl. sent., § 275, a.

compris (y), non —, § 289. concerning, § 436, 2.

condition: à la — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, c.

conditional sentences, § 274, § 275; use of mood and tense in, § 275.

conditional, tense, § 265, in condl. sent., § 275.

conditional anterior, tense, § 266; replaced by plurpf. subj., § 272, 3; by impf. indic. in 'result' clause, § 275, c.

conjunction, list, § 455; with indic., subj., indic. or subj., see list, § 455; use of certain, §§ 456–459; distinctions, § 459.

conjunctive pron., § 359 and n.; use, §§ 362–371.

couple, gender, § 304, 3, f.

croire, with ne, § 419, 2. crainte: de — que ... ne, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.

D

d'abord, § 426, a. dans, § 444, 1, 3. dates, § 421, c, d, § 427. dative, of pers. pron., § 362, 2; ethical, § 362, n. davantage, § 420, 3. de, as partitive sign, §§ 323–325; agent after passive, § 240, § 441, 1; after adjs., § 356; verb + de = Eng. transitive, § 296, 1; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; with names of countries, § 333, 2; de = in, after superl., § 347, 2; denoting 'by how much,' after superl., § 349, 2; pleonastic after interrog., § 391, n.; of 'di-

inension,' § 428, obs. 1, § 430, obs. 3; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; *de = by* (measure), § 441, 3; *de = from*, § 443, 1; of 'place' (after superl.), § 444, 4; *de = of*, § 445, 1; *de = with*, § 454, 6; = *concerning*, *of*, § 436. *de ce que*, constr., § 269, 4, b. *décider*, + à, + de, § 281, 2. *défier*, + à, + de, § 281, 3.

definite article, forms, § 316; contractions, § 317; agreement and repetition, § 318, § 347, a; with general noun, § 321; with partitive noun, § 323; in titles, § 327; for possessive adj., § 328; distributively, § 329; omission, § 330, § 333, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; with names of persons, § 332; of countries, § 333; of cities, etc., § 334; of mountains and rivers, § 335; in superlative, §§ 347-349; replacing demonstr. adj., § 380, b; in fractions, § 424, b.

délice, gender, § 304, 2, d. *demi*, agreement, § 343, 4, a; in compounds, § 311, 2, a, § 343, 4, a; in fractions, § 424, a.

demonstrative adjective, forms, § 378, 1; agreement, § 379; repetition, § 379, a; use, § 380; replaced by def. art., § 380, b.

demonstrative pronoun, forms, § 378, 2; agreement, § 379; use, §§ 381-388.

depuis, § 443, 3; with *ne*, § 419, 6; — *que* distinguished from *puisque*, § 459, 3. *dernier*, + subj., § 270, 3; + à + infin., § 279, 3, a. *des* = *de + les*, § 317. *dès*, § 443, 3. *descendre*, + à, + dir. infin., § 281, 4. *désobéir*, passive use, § 241, 1. *determinatives*, position, § 353. *déterminer*, + à, + de, § 281, 5. *deuxième*, for second, § 422, b. *devant*, § 440, 1. *devoir*, + infin., § 230, 2; + *de + infin.*, § 278, 6. *différents*, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3. *dire*, + de, + dir. infin., § 281, 6. *direct*, obj., § 293. *disjunctive pron.*, § 359 and n.; use, § 372; avoided, § 372, 6, n. *divers*, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3. *donner*, conjugation, § 153. *dont*, § 395; use, § 398. *double*, as adv., § 425, a. *du* = *de + le*, § 317. *dû*, agreement, § 292, 4, b. *dur*, + pour, § 358, a. *durant*, position, § 433, b.

E

either, nor —, *not* —, § 457, 3. *-eler*, verbs in, § 158, 2. *elliptical tense forms*, § 256. *empêcher*, with *ne*, § 419. *empresser(s')*, + à, + de, § 281, 7. *en* (pron. adv.), § 360; use, § 367, § 372, 6, n.;

agreement of past part., § 292, 3, a; position, § 370. *en* (prep.), in gerunds, § 286, 3; with names of countries (no art.), § 333, 2; repetition, § 434; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2, 3; of 'material,' § 445, 2; of 'motion towards,' § 451, 2. *encore que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4. *encore un*, § 406, 2, a. *en premier lieu*, § 426, a. *ensuite*, § 426, a. *entendre*, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, b. *entendu*, § 289, a, § 292, 4, a. *entre*, § 438, 1, 2; *d'entre*, after superl., § 347, 2. *envers*, § 451, 3. *environ*, § 436, 4. *ès* = *en les*, § 317, n. 2. *-esse*, fem. ending, § 306. *est-ce que*, use of, § 236, 4. *et* (conj.), use of, § 456. *été*, invar., § 239, obs. *-eter*, verbs in, § 158. *ethical dative*, § 362, n. *être*, § 154; forming comp. tenses, § 228, § 229; forming passive, § 239; forming reflexive comp. tenses, § 242; as imper. verb, § 250, 2; + à + infin., § 279; + à, + à ... de, + à ... à, § 281, 8. *eu*, past part., agreement, § 292, 4, d. *-eur*, fem. of, § 337, 2, (2). *éviter*, with *ne*, § 419, 1. *excepté*, § 289, a.

F

fâché, + contre, § 356, a. *façon*: *de* — *que*, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, a.

faire, + infin., § 230, 6; + de + infin., § 278, 6, b; of weather, etc., § 249, 2; + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, a; passive force of trans. infin., § 241, 3.

fait (past part.), agreement, § 292, 4, c.

falloir, § 251.

fatiguer(se), + à, + de, § 281, 9.

feu, § 343, 4, b.

finir, conjugation, § 153; + à, + de, § 281, 10.

fois (une fois), § 425, 2.

fol, § 337, 1, (3).

for, § 442.

force, agreement, § 232, 2, a.

fort, + sur, § 357, a.

foudre, gender, § 304, 3, i.

fractions, § 424.

franc de port, § 343, 4, a.

from, § 443.

future, § 263; in condl. sentence, § 275; replaced by pres., § 257, 4, 5; replaced by condl., § 265, 3.

future anterior, § 264; replaced by past indef., § 259, 3.

G

garde-, in compounds, § 311, 5, a.

gender, of nouns, § 300; by meaning, § 303; by endings, § 302; by derivation, § 301; double, § 304; of compounds, § 305; formation of fem., § 306, §§ 336–337; of adjs., §§ 336–337.

general noun, § 321; and partitive, § 326.

gens, gender, § 304, 3, k.

gent, pl., § 308, 5.

gerund, § 286, 3; English, § 287, 2.

goutte, with ne, § 415, 2.

guère, with ne, § 415, b.

H

hair, + de + infin., § 279, 6, c.

haut, for **hauteur**, § 428, obs. 4

homme qui vive, with ne, § 415, 2, c.

however, § 404, 5, b and n.

hymne, gender, § 304, 3.

I

ignorant, + sur, § 357, a.

ignorer, + negative, constr. after, § 269, 5, d.

il (impers.), agreement, § 232, 4, § 361, d; as subject of impers. verb, § 248, § 252, 2, § 253;

il y a, § 250, 3; **il est**, § 250, 2, § 383, 1, a, b;

il faut, § 251; **il s'en faut**, § 251, 5; distinguished from **ce**, § 384, 1; **il est vrai**, § 384, 1, a; **il semble**, § 386, a;

il s'en faut, with ne, § 419, 5; **il y a**, with ne, § 419, 6.

imperative, § 267; retention of -s in 2 sg. before y or en, § 153, § 159, 4; in condl. sentence, § 275; replaced by fut., § 263, 4.

imperfect, (indic.), § 258; in narrative, examples of, § 261; in condl. sentence, § 275; replacing plupf. or condl. ant. in condl. sentence, § 275, c; (subj.), § 273, 2, a.

impersonal verbs, §§ 248–253; verbs used impersonally, § 252; de + infin. as logical subj. of, § 280, 1.

importe (qu'), § 232, 4, a.

in, § 444.

indefinite article, forms, § 315; agreement and repetition, § 318; use, § 320; omission, § 330; unclassified examples, § 331; with names of persons, § 332, 3.

indefinite adj., forms, § 403, 1–3, § 407, 1; use, § 404, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 416.

indefinite pron., forms, § 403, 2, 3, § 407, 2; use, § 405, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 416.

indicative mood, § 254, *see also* the various tenses; in conditions, § 275, obs.

indirect discourse, mood of, § 254, n. 1; tense of, § 258, 5.

indirect obj., § 293, 2, § 294, § 362, 2, § 451, 1.

indulgent, + pour or à, § 358, a.

-ine, fem. ending, § 306, 3.

infinitive mood, § 276; without prep., § 278, reference list, § 278, 6; with à, § 279, reference list, § 279, 6; with de, § 280, reference list, § 280, 6; historical, § 280, 4; distinctions, § 281; with other preps., § 282; for subordinate clause, § 283; with passive force, § 284; for Eng. *-ing*, § 285, § 287.

interjection, § 460.

interrogation, word order. § 236; indirect, § 238.

interrogative adj., forms, § 389, 1; agreement, § 390; use, § 391, § 392, 1, b, 2.

interrogative locutions, § 394

interrogative pron., forms, § 389, 2; agreement, § 390; use, §§ 392, 393. *into*, § 444. intransitive verbs, § 294. inversions, rhetorical, § 237.

irregular verbs, § 156; list of, § 226; in -er, §§ 156–161; in -cer, -ger, § 156; in -yer, § 157; with stem-vowel e (é), § 158; in -eler, -eter, § 158; in -ir, §§ 162–179; in -re, §§ 180–211; in -oir, §§ 212–225; in -andre, -endre, -erdre, -ondre, -ordre, § 210. *-issime*, superl. ending, § 348, a.

J

jamais, with ne, § 415. *je soussigné*, § 372, 2, n. *jumelle*, § 337, 1, (3). *jurer*, + de, + dir. infin., § 281, 11. *jusqu'à*, § 451, 4; *jusqu'à ce que*, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

L

-là, § 380. *laissé*, § 292, 4, a. *laisser*, + infin., § 230, 7; + de + infin., § 278, 6, c; + à, + de, + dir. infin., § 281, 12; constr. of obj., § 293, b. *large*, for *largeur*, § 428, obs. 4. *lasser* (*se*), + à, + de, § 281, 13. *le* (*la*, *les*), *see* def. art. and pers. pron.; predicative, § 364; pleonastic, § 365; = *one*, so, § 365, b. *length*, *see* quantity.

lequel? § 389, 2; use, § 391.

lequel, § 395; use, § 400. *less*; *less and less*, § 345, d; *the less*, § 345, d; *less than* (adv. of quantity), § 412, b.

loin que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.

long, for *longueur*, § 428, obs. 4.

lorsque, distinguished from *quand*, § 459, 1.

l'un, § 406, 7, (1), a.

l'un l'autre, § 406, 7, (2).

M

maint, § 403, 1; use, § 404.

mal, irreg. comparison, § 412, 2.

malgré que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

ma mie, m'amour, § 374, n.

manière: de — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, a.

manquer, + à, + de, § 281, 14.

mauvais, irreg. comparison, § 346.

meilleur, § 346.

même, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 3.

mie, with ne, § 415, 2, b. *mien*, etc., for *le mien*, § 377, 2.

mieux, § 412, 2.

mil, in dates, § 421, c.

mille, § 421, e.

mine, etc., translated, § 377, 1.

moi, for me, § 370, 3, obs.

moindre, § 346.

moins, § 412, 2; in comparison (adj.), § 345, (adv.), § 412; *moins de*, § 412, 1, b; à moins que

... ne, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3, — + de deux,

agreement of, § 232, 2, c.

mol, § 337, 1, (3).

mon, for *ma*, § 374, 1, obs.

1; in address, § 376, 4. mood, see the various moods; of subordinates clause, § 254, n. 2.

more; *more and more*, § 345, d; *the more*, § 345, d; *more than*, (adv. of quantity), § 412, b.

mot, with *ne*, § 415, 2, b. multiplicatives, § 425.

N

n'avoir garde, § 418, 5.

ne (n'), with *pas*, point, etc., § 415; position, § 416; omission, § 417; alone as negative, § 418; pleonastic, § 419; *ne ... que*, position, § 416, c; *ne ... ni*, position, § 416, d; *ne . . . que* and *seulement*, § 420, 4.

negation, §§ 414–419; *see also* *ne*, *non*, *pas*, etc.

neither . . . nor, translated, § 416, d, § 457, 3.

ni, use, § 233, b, § 457, 1; with *ne*, § 415; *ni . . . ne*, position, § 416, d.

n'importe, § 418, 5.

nombre, + de, agreement with verb, § 232, 2, a.

non (*pas*, point), § 414; *que non*, § 420, 1, a.

nonante, § 421, n.

nonobstant que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

non (*pas*) *que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.

nor; — *either*, § 457, 3.

not; — *either*, § 457, 3.

noun, gender, §§ 300–306, §§ 336–337; number, §§ 307–312; case relation, § 313; agreement, § 314; as adj., § 343,

3, § 344, § 352, 2, (3).

nous, for *je*, § 361, a; pleonastic, § 372, 5, a;

nous autres, § 406, 2, a.

nouvel, § 337, 1, (3).
nu, agreement, § 343, 4, a.
nul, § 403, 3, § 337, 1, (2), b; use, § 406, 1; with *ne*, § 415.
nullement, with *ne*, § 415.
number of nouns, general rule, § 307; exceptions, § 308; double pl., § 309; foreign nouns, § 310; comp. nouns, § 311; pl. of proper nouns, § 312; of adjs., §§ 338–339.
numerals, cardinals, § 421; ordinals, § 422; collectives, § 423; fractions, § 424; multiplicatives, § 425; adverb, § 426; remarks on use, §§ 427–430; in dates, titles, etc., § 427; for dimension, § 428; for time of day, § 429; for age, § 430.

O

obéir, in passive, § 241, 1.
object, dir. and indir., § 293; position, § 297.
obliger, + à, + de, § 281, 15.
occuper(s'), + à, + de, § 281, 16.
octante, § 421, n.
œil, pl. of, § 309.
œuvre, gender, § 304, 3, j. of, § 445; *a friend of mine*, etc., § 377, 3.
on (*l'on*), § 403, 2; use, § 405, 3; replacing passive, § 241, 2, a.
on, § 446.
once, § 425, 2.
one, = le, § 365, b.
only, translated, § 420, 4.
or, = ni, § 457, 2.
ordinals, § 422.
orge, gender, § 304, 3, h.
osé, agreement, § 292, 4.
oser, + infin., § 230, 5; with *ne* alone, § 418, 4.
others, § 405, § 406, 2, b.

où (rel. pron.), § 395; use, § 399, § 398, b.
oui, § 420, 1; que *oui*, § 420, 1, a.
oui, § 289, a.
ouïr, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, b.
out of, § 447.
over, § 448.
own, translated, § 376, 3, § 377, 4.

P

pal, pl., § 309.
pâque(s), gender, § 304, 3, g.
par, § 441, 1, 2, § 443, 2, § 448, 2, § 449, 1, 2; agent after passive, § 240; + infin., § 282, 1; of price, § 329, 1, a.
par-dessus, § 448, 2.
paraître, il paraît, constr. after, § 269, 5, b.
pardonner, in passive, § 241, 1.
parler français, § 321, a.
parmi, § 438, 1.
participles, pres., § 286; Eng. forms in -ing, § 287; past, §§ 288–292; as adjs., position, § 352, 1, (3).
partir: à — de, § 443, 3.
partitive noun, §§ 322–326; partitive and general noun, § 326.
pas, with *ne*, § 415; position, § 416; without verb, § 417, a; without *ne* (fam.), § 415, n. 2.
passé, § 289, a.
passive voice, formation, § 239; agreement of past part., § 239 and obs.; agent after, § 240; limitations and substitutes, § 241; replaced by *on*, etc., § 405, 3, a.
past anterior, § 262.
past definite, § 260; in

narrative, examples, § 261; replaced by impf., § 258, 8; in 'if' clauses, § 275, f.
past indefinite, § 259; in narrative, examples, § 261; subjunctive sequence after, § 273, 2, a.
past participle, agreement in passive, § 239 and obs.; without aux., § 289; as prep., § 289, a; with être, § 290, § 244; with avoir, § 291; invar. after impers. être, § 290, a; remarks, § 292.
pas un, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with *ne*, § 415.
payé, § 289, a.
pendant que, distinguished from tandis que, § 459, 2.
penser, + à, + dir. infin., § 281, 17.
perfect subj., § 273, 1, b; for plupf., § 273, 2, b.
periphrastic forms in conjugation, § 255, § 287, 1.
personal pronouns, forms, § 359; agreement, § 361; case relations and use of conjunctives, § 362; reflexives, § 366; position of subject, §§ 235–238; position of objects, § 369; omission of obj., § 371; disjunctives, use of, § 372; in address, § 373.
personne, § 403, 2; use of, § 405, 4; with *ne*, § 415; gender, § 405, 4, n.
petit, irreg. comparison, § 346.
peu, irreg. comparison, § 412, 2; + de, § 232, 2, a, b; with partitive, § 325, 1, d.
peur: de — que...ne, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.
peut-être que, constr.

§ 269, 5, n.; no inversion, § 237, 3.
pire, § 346.
pis, § 412, 2.
plain, when invar., § 343, 4, a.
plupart, agreement of verb, § 232, 2, a, b; with partitive, § 325, 1, c.
pluperfect (indic.), § 262; replaced by plupf. subj., § 272, 3; replaced by impf. indic., § 275, c; replaced by perf. subj., § 273, 3, c; replacing plupf. indic. or condl. ant., § 272, 3; sequence, § 273, 2, b; replacing plupf. indic. in 'if' clause or 'result' clause, § 275, b.
plus, § 412, 2; in comparison (adj.), § 345, (adv.), § 412; — de, § 412, 1, b; with ne, § 415; plus and dantage, § 420, 3; — d'un, agreement, § 232, 2, c. plusieurs, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 4.
plus tôt, with ne, § 419, 3, n.
plutôt, with ne, § 419, 3, n.
point, with ne, § 415, and n. 1; position, § 416.
possessive adj., forms, § 374, 1; agreement, § 375; repetition, § 375, a; use, § 376; def. art. for, § 328, § 376, 1; en, + def. art. for, § 367, 2, (2), § 376, 2.
possessive pron., forms, § 374, 2; agreement, § 375; use, § 377.
pour, § 442, 1, 2, 3; + infin., § 282, 2; — que + subj., § 455, § 271, 2; — peu que + subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — . . . que, constr., § 404, 5, n.

pourvu que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
pouvoir, + infin., § 230, 3; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; with ne alone, § 418, 4.
predicate noun, omission of art., § 330, 3.
predicative complement, § 295, § 330, 3.
premier, in dates, etc., § 427, § 330, 4, a; + subj., § 270, 3; + à + infin., § 279, 3, a.
prendre garde, + à, + de, § 281, 18.
preposition, list of simple, § 431; position, § 433; locutions, § 432; repetition, § 434; idiomatic distinctions, §§ 435–454.
prepositional complement, § 296.
près: — de, § 436, 4; à peu —, § 436, 4.
present, indic., § 257; for historical past, examples, § 261; replaced by impf., § 258, 5; in condl. sentences, § 275.
present participle, § 286.
present subj., § 273.
prétendre, + à, + dir. infin., § 281, 19.
prier, + à, + de, § 281, 20.
primary tenses, see principal parts.
primo (secundo, etc.), § 426, a.
principal parts, formation of tenses from, § 159.
pronominal advs., § 360.
pronoun, §§ 359–407, see also personal, possessive, etc.
proper nouns, pl., § 312; use of art. with, §§ 332–335.
propre, § 376, 3.
pu, agreement, § 292, 4, b.
puis, § 426, a.

puisque, distinguished from depuis que, § 459, 3.
Q
qualifier de, § 330, 3, b.
quand, distinguished from lorsque, § 459, 1.
quand (même), condl. after, § 265, 6, § 275, e; sometimes takes subj., § 271, 4, c; + indic. or subj., § 271, 4, c, § 455.
quantité, + de, agreement of verb, § 232, 2.
quart, § 422, n. 1.
quatre-vingt(s), § 421, b.
que? § 389, 2; use, § 393.
que! § 393, 1, b.
que (relat.), § 395; use, § 397; in inversions (emphatic), § 397, 2, n., § 385, a, n.; past part. invar. after, § 292, 5.
que (conj.), condl. after, § 265, 6; replacing other conj., § 271, 6, § 458, 2; = than, as, in comparison, § 345, § 412; with ne, § 415; for à moins que, § 419, 1; + indic. or subj., § 455, § 269, § 271, 6, § 458; not omitted, § 458, 3.
quel? § 389, 1; use, § 391, § 392, 2.
quel! § 391, a.
quelconque, § 407; with ne, § 415, 2, a.
quel que, + subj. of être, § 407.
quelque, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 5; as adv., § 404, 5, a.
quelque . . . que, + subj., § 407.
quelqu'un, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 5.
qu'est-ce qui? § 393, 2.
question, direct, § 236; indirect, § 238.

qui? § 389, 2; use, § 392; replaced by quel, § 391, b, § 392, b.
 qui!, § 395; use, § 397; replacing *celui qui*, les uns...les autres, ce qui, § 397, 1, a, b; qui que, + subj. of être, § 407; qui que ce soit, § 407; qui que ce soit + ne, § 415, 2, a.
 quiconque, § 407.
 quint, § 422, n. 2.
 quinze-vingt(s), § 421, n.
 quoi? § 389, 2; use, § 393.
 quel, § 395; use, § 401; — que...+ subj., § 407; — que ce soit, § 407; with ne, § 415, 2, a.
 quoique, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

R

reciprocal verbs, § 243.
 reflexive pers. prons., § 366.
 reflexive verb, formation of comp. tenses, § 242; with reciprocal force, § 243; agreement of past part., § 244; omission of reflex. obj., § 245; comparison with Eng., § 246; replacing passive, § 241, 2, b.
 refuser, + à, + de, § 281, 21.
 relative pron., forms, § 395; agreement, § 396; use, §§ 397–402; remarks, § 402; not omitted, § 402, 1; relative clause for Eng. -ing, § 287, 3; indef. relat., § 407.
 résoudre, + à, + de, § 281, 22.
 rien, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 4; with ne, § 415.
 rompre, conjugation, § 153.

S

sache, irreg. use, § 272, 2.
 sans, + infin., § 282, 3; — doute que, constr., § 269, 5, n.; — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
 savoir, + infin., § 230, 4; with ne alone, § 418, 4.
 se, reflex. pron., § 366, 1.
 sembler: Il semble, constr. after, § 269, 5, b, 6, c.
 s'en aller, conjugation, § 247.
 s'en falloir, § 251, 5.
 septante, § 421, n.
 sequence, of subj. tenses, § 273.
 seul, + subj., § 270, 3; + à + infin., § 279, 3, a.
 seulement, § 420, 4.
should, distinctions, § 265, 1, b.
 si, subjunctive after, § 275, b; replaced by que + subj., § 271, 6; in conditional sentence, § 274; omission, § 275, d; si (= whether) + fut. or cond., § 275, g; for aussi, § 345, a, § 412, a; + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, a; — bien que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — peu que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; si... (que), constr., § 404, 5, n.
 si (= yes), si fait, § 420, 1; que si, § 420, 1, a.
 six-vingt(s), § 421, n.
 so = ie, § 365, b.
 soi, reflex. pron., § 366, 2.
 soi-disant, § 286, 2, n. 2.
 soit que...soit que (ou que), + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
 son for sa, § 374, 1, obs. 1; for indef., § 375, b.

sorte: de (telle) — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, a; en — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, a.

sous, § 453, 1.

subjunctive, in subordinate clause, §§ 268–271; in noun clause, § 269; in adjective clause, § 270; in adverbial clause, § 271; in principal clause, § 272; as imperative, § 272, 1, a; tense sequence, § 273.

such, § 406, 5 and n.

suffire, + pour + infin., § 279, 6, a.

superlative (adjs.), §§ 347–349, (advs.), § 412, 3; relative, § 347; absolute, § 348; remarks, § 349.

supposant: en — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.

supposé, § 289, a; — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.

sur = with, about (the person), § 436, 3; = by (relative dimension), § 441, 3; = on, upon, § 446; of 'motion above,' § 448, 2.

T

-t-, inserted in interrog., § 236, 1, a.

tandis que, distinguished from pendant que, § 459, 2.

tant, § 420, 2.

tel, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 5 tellement...que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, a.

témoin, § 344, a.

tenses, formation of comp., § 155, §§ 227–229; formation from principal parts, § 159; of indic., §§ 255–266; periphras-

tic Eng., § 255; elliptical Eng., § 256; in narration, §§ 258–261; tense sequence of subj., § 273.

-teur, fem. of, § 337, 2, (3).

through, § 449.

tiers, § 422, n. 1.

till, § 450.

time, how expressed, § 249, 1, § 429.

to, § 451.

toi, for *te*, § 370, 3, obs. 1.

ton, for *ta*, § 374, 1, obs.

tous (*les*) deux, § 406, 6.

tout, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 6; as adv. (variable), § 406, 6, *a*; with *gens*, § 304, 3, *k*.

tout...que, constr., § 404, 5, *b*, n.

tout-puissant, § 406, 6, *a*.

towards, § 452.

traiter de, § 330, 3, *b*.

transitive verbs, § 293, § 294, n.; in Fr. = Eng. verb + prep., § 296, 3.

travail, pl., § 309.

travers: à —, au — de, § 449, 1.

trembler, + à, + de, § 281, 23.

tu = *you, thou*, in address, § 373, 1, 2.

U

un, see indef. art.

un (adj. pron.), § 403, 3; use of, § 406, 7.

un (num.), § 421, *a*.

under, § 453.

underneath, § 453.

unique, + subj., § 270, 3.

until, § 450.

upon, § 446.

V

va, special force, § 267, *b*.

valoir, impers., § 252, 1, obs.

venir de + infin., § 230, 9; + à, + de, + dir. infin., § 281, 24.

verb, regular conjugations, § 153; auxiliaries, § 154; use of auxs., §§ 227–229; irreg. verbs, §§ 156–226; formation of comp. tenses, § 155, §§ 227–229; phrases, § 230; agreement with subject, §§ 231–234; position of subject, §§ 235–238; passive voice, §§ 239–241; reflexives, §§ 242–247; impersonals, §§ 248–253; moods and tenses, §§ 254–292; indicative, §§ 254–266; imperative, § 267; subjunctive, §§ 268–273; infinitive, §§ 276–285; participles, §§ 286–292; government, §§ 293–299.

vers, § 436, 4, § 451, 3.

vieil, § 337, 1, (3).

voici, position of pers. pron. obj., § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a*.

voilà, distinguished from *il y a*, § 250, 3; position of pers. pron. obj., § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a*; with *ne*, § 419, 6.

voir, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.

votre (*vos*), for politeness, § 376, 5.

vouloir, + infin., § 230, 1.

voulu, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.

vous, agreement, § 361, *b*, § 239, obs., 2, § 244, 2, n. 2, § 340, *b*; replacing on, § 405, 3, *c*; — autres, § 406, 2, *c*; pleonastic, § 372, 5, *a*; in address, § 373.

voyons, special force, § 267.

vu, § 289, *a*, § 292, 4, *a*.

W

what? as subject, § 393, 2.

what (= *that which*), § 401.

whatever, § 407.

whose? § 392, 2.

will, distinctions, § 263, 1.

with, § 454.

would, distinctions, § 265, 1, *b*.

Y

y, pron. adv., § 360.

y, + *avoir*, § 250.

y (pron. adv.), § 360; use, § 368, § 372, 6, n.; position, § 369, 1, *c*, n.

-yer, verbs in, § 157.

APPENDIX

The following are the deviations permitted by the decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction referred to in the Preface:

- § 29. The hyphen may be omitted.
- § 232, 2. Verb may agree with pl. complement of *de*.
- § 232, 2, c. *Plus d'un*, when followed by a pl. complement, may have verb in sing. or pl.
- § 232, 3. Either *est* or *sont* may be used before a pl. subst. or a pl. pron. in 3d pers.
- § 233, b, c, e, f. Verb may be either sing. or pl. in such cases.
- § 236, 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
- § 289, a, b. Agreement optional in either position.
- § 292, 4 and 4, a. Past part. may, in all such cases, be invariable.
- § 304, 1 and 3, a. *Enfant* and *automne*, masc. or fem.
- § 304, 3, b, d. *Amour* and *orgue* masc. in sing., and masc. or fem. in pl.
- § 304, 3, e. *Hymne*, masc. or fem. in all senses.
- § 304, 3, g. *Pâques* may be fem., either as a date or as a church festival.
- § 304, 3, h, k. Any adj. agreeing with *orge* or *gens* may be fem.
- § 310. Such nouns, if fully naturalized, may have pl. in -s, e.g., *déficits*, *exéats*.
- § 311. All compound nouns may be written without hyphen.
- § 312. Any proper noun preceded by a pl. art. may take the pl. sign.
- § 324, 1. It is permissible to use *du*, *de la*, *des*, before adj. + noun.
- § 332, 2. A mistake in this usage is not to be counted an error.
- § 341, 1, b. Adj. may be masc. pl., no matter which noun is nearest.
- § 342. Phrases like *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne* may omit the second art.
- § 343, 1, a. *Fort* may agree like an adj.
- § 343, 2. Compound adjs., e.g., *nouveau-né*, *court-vêtu*, etc., may be written as one word, and may form fem. and pl. by the general rule.
- § 343, 4, a. *Franc*, agreement optional when preceding.
- § 343, 4, a, b. *Nu*, *demi*, *feu*, may agree when preceding their subst.
- § 343, 4, c. Adj. may agree either with the subst. fem. or with *air*.
- § 348. The def. art. may agree.
- § 376, 6. The object possessed may be either sing. or pl.
- § 405, 2, a, c. Either *son* or *leur* may be used indifferently.
- § 406, 3 (2). Hyphen may be omitted.
- § 419, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. *Ne* may be omitted in all such cases.
- § 421, obs. 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
- § 421, b. *Vingt* and *cent* may take -s even before another numeral.
- § 421, c. *Mille* or *mil* may be used.



